

BEGINNING  
CHINESE

*by John DeFrancis*

*with the assistance of*

*Yung Teng Chia-yee*

SECOND REVISED EDITION

---

*New Haven and London, Yale University Press*

Published with assistance from the foundation  
established in memory of Philip Hamilton McMillan  
of the Class of 1894, Yale College.

Copyright © 1963, 1976, by Yale University.  
Second Revised Edition, 1976.

All rights reserved. This book may not be  
reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form  
(beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107  
and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by  
reviewers for the public press), without written  
permission from the publishers.

Library of Congress catalog card number: 76-5099  
ISBN: 0-300-02054-6 (cloth), 02058-9 (paper)

Printed in the United States of America by  
The Murray Printing Company, Inc.,  
Westford, Massachusetts.

20 19 18 17 16 15

TO KAY

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

In the first edition of this book I was happy to acknowledge my indebtedness for the help and guidance of two men, Leonard Bloomfield and George A. Kennedy. Although both of these scholars are now no longer living, their influence persists, and I should like to record my continued indebtedness to them both in this revised edition.

The revision would not have been possible without the extensive support provided by Seton Hall University. I wish particularly to express my appreciation for the encouragement and help of Dr. John B. Tsu, Director of the Institute of Far Eastern Studies, who saw to it that I was provided with all the facilities and assistance I needed.

Dr. Tsu was also helpful in discussing many points regarding presentation of material. He deserves special credit for initiating the decision to base the Chinese work at Seton Hall University on the transcription used in this text.

Other Seton Hall personnel whose assistance I gratefully acknowledge are Dr. John C. H. Wu, Mr. C. S. Fu, Mrs. Teng Chia-yee, Mrs. Aileen Wei, and Mrs. Lucy Chao Ho. The assistance rendered by Mrs. Teng was particularly extensive. She was most active in the preparation of the dialogues, contributed largely to the various exercises, and helped me constantly at almost every step of the work.

Miss Diana Y. Ma is to be thanked for drawing the delightful illustrations.

I am grateful to my wife for taking on the appalling task of putting my scrawl into typewritten form.

I am indebted to David Horne of Yale University Press for seeing the book through the press, and to Elinor Horne for her expert and painstaking editorial revision.

J. De F.

Madison, Connecticut  
March 1963

This revision has been made possible by the invaluable assistance provided by Mr. Patrick Destenay and Mr. Constantin Milsky, both of the Université de Provence in Aix-en-Provence, who kindly shared with me their unique knowledge of recent developments in the Chinese language obtained by their own long sojourns in the People's Republic of China and by their continuing contacts with exchange teachers, students, and other visitors to France from the PRC. I am also grateful to my long-standing associate, Mrs. Yung Teng Chia-yee, for assistance in compiling additional drill material along the lines worked out in the course of a summer's extensive consultations with my colleagues in France. Finally, I should like to thank the many users of the text, teachers and students alike, who have been kind enough to suggest corrections and revisions in the text.

John DeFrancis

Honolulu, Hawaii  
January 1976

# CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS . . . . .	vii
PREFACE TO SECOND REVISED EDITION . . . . .	xv
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xix
To the Reader . . . . .	xix
Language and Writing . . . . .	xxi
The Sounds of Chinese . . . . .	xxii
SETTING THE STAGE . . . . .	xxxv
UNIT I . . . . .	1
Lesson 1. Greeting Friends . . . . .	3
Dialogue . . . . .	3
Vocabulary . . . . .	3
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	4
Pattern Drills . . . . .	5
Substitution Tables . . . . .	7
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	8
Boy Meets Girl . . . . .	9
Notes . . . . .	9
Lesson 2. Meeting People . . . . .	12
Dialogue . . . . .	12
Vocabulary . . . . .	13
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	13
Pattern Drills . . . . .	15
Substitution Tables . . . . .	17
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	18
Snatches of Conversation . . . . .	19
To Be or Not To Be? . . . . .	19
Putting On an Act . . . . .	20
Notes . . . . .	20
Lesson 3. Shopping at a Bookstore (1) . . . . .	22
Dialogue . . . . .	22
Vocabulary . . . . .	23
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	24
Pattern Drills . . . . .	27
Substitution Tables . . . . .	29
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	30
Questions and Answers . . . . .	30
True or False . . . . .	31
What Would You Say? . . . . .	31
Notes . . . . .	32
Lesson 4. Shopping at a Bookstore (2) . . . . .	35
Dialogue . . . . .	35
Vocabulary . . . . .	37
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	38
Substitution Tables . . . . .	40
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	41
Number Practice . . . . .	41

Lesson 4. Shopping at a Bookstore (2) [continued]	
Multiplication Table . . . . .	42
Boom! . . . . .	42
Numbers and Measures . . . . .	42
A Charge Account . . . . .	43
Information Please! . . . . .	43
Notes . . . . .	44
Lesson 5. Receiving a Phone Call . . . . .	46
Dialogue . . . . .	46
Vocabulary . . . . .	47
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	48
Pattern Drills . . . . .	50
Substitution Tables . . . . .	52
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	52
Clock Time . . . . .	53
Pidgin Chinese . . . . .	53
Listening In . . . . .	54
Brain-Twister . . . . .	55
Notes . . . . .	55
Lesson 6. Review . . . . .	57
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	57
Analogy Drill . . . . .	58
Single Replacement Drill . . . . .	60
Double Replacement Drill . . . . .	61
Insertion Drill . . . . .	61
Raise You One . . . . .	62
Answering Questions . . . . .	63
Questioning Answers . . . . .	64
Dialogue I . . . . .	65
Dialogue II . . . . .	65
Narrative . . . . .	66
UNIT II . . . . .	67
Lesson 7. Inquiring about Places . . . . .	69
Dialogue . . . . .	69
Vocabulary . . . . .	70
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	71
Pattern Drills . . . . .	75
Substitution Tables . . . . .	79
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	80
Definite vs. Indefinite . . . . .	81
Say Where . . . . .	81
Relativity Problems . . . . .	82
Notes . . . . .	83
Lesson 8. Exchanging Information . . . . .	86
Dialogue . . . . .	86
Vocabulary . . . . .	87
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	88
Pattern Drills . . . . .	92
Substitution Tables . . . . .	97
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	98
Checkerboard Problem . . . . .	99
Notes . . . . .	100

Lesson 9. Asking Directions . . . . .	103
Dialogue . . . . .	103
Vocabulary . . . . .	104
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	105
Pattern Drills . . . . .	109
Substitution Tables . . . . .	114
Just the Opposite . . . . .	115
Take Your Pick . . . . .	116
Checking Up . . . . .	116
Notes . . . . .	117
Lesson 10. Conversing with a Ticket Seller . . . . .	119
Dialogue . . . . .	119
Vocabulary . . . . .	121
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	122
Pattern Drills . . . . .	127
Substitution Tables . . . . .	131
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	132
What's in a Name? . . . . .	133
Frère Tiger . . . . .	134
Match and Finish . . . . .	134
Notes . . . . .	135
Lesson 11. Discussing Travel . . . . .	138
Dialogue . . . . .	138
Vocabulary . . . . .	140
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	141
Pattern Drills . . . . .	144
Substitution Tables . . . . .	147
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	148
Questions and Answers . . . . .	149
Let's Be Reasonable . . . . .	151
Double Jeopardy . . . . .	151
Notes . . . . .	151
Lesson 12. Review . . . . .	154
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	154
Analogy Drill . . . . .	155
Replacement Drill . . . . .	157
Insertion Drill . . . . .	159
Answering Questions . . . . .	159
Narrative . . . . .	161
Dialogue . . . . .	162
Questionnaire . . . . .	163
UNIT III . . . . .	165
Lesson 13. Getting Acquainted . . . . .	165
Dialogue . . . . .	165
Vocabulary . . . . .	167
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	168
Pattern Drills . . . . .	174
Substitution Tables . . . . .	181
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	182
Expansion Drills . . . . .	183
Questions and Answers . . . . .	184

Lesson 13. Getting Acquainted [continued]	
Monologue . . . . .	185
Setting Things Right . . . . .	186
What Would You Say? . . . . .	186
Notes . . . . .	187
Lesson 14. Discussing School Work . . . . .	191
Dialogue . . . . .	191
Vocabulary . . . . .	194
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	195
Pattern Drills . . . . .	200
Substitution Tables . . . . .	211
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	212
The Topic-Comment Construction . . . . .	213
Monologue . . . . .	214
Checking Up . . . . .	215
Notes . . . . .	215
Lesson 15. Studying and Traveling . . . . .	221
Dialogue . . . . .	221
Vocabulary . . . . .	224
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	225
Pattern Drills . . . . .	229
Substitution Tables . . . . .	234
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	235
Expansion Drills . . . . .	236
A Little Variety . . . . .	237
Answering Questions . . . . .	238
Notes . . . . .	239
Lesson 16. Visiting Friends . . . . .	244
Dialogue . . . . .	244
Vocabulary . . . . .	248
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	249
Pattern Drills . . . . .	254
Substitution Tables . . . . .	262
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	263
Answering Questions . . . . .	265
Notes . . . . .	265
Lesson 17. Playing 'Guess-Fingers' . . . . .	270
Dialogue . . . . .	270
Vocabulary . . . . .	274
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	275
Pattern Drills . . . . .	280
Substitution Tables . . . . .	286
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	287
Expansion Drills . . . . .	290
Sentence Conversion . . . . .	291
Answering Questions . . . . .	291
Notes . . . . .	292
Lesson 18. Review . . . . .	295
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	295
Analogy Drill . . . . .	296
Replacement Drill . . . . .	300



Lesson 18. Review [continued]	
Insertion Drill . . . . .	300
Transformation Drill . . . . .	301
Miscellaneous Sentences . . . . .	302
Dialogue . . . . .	304
Narrative . . . . .	305
Answering Questions . . . . .	305
Crossword Puzzle . . . . .	307
UNIT IV . . . . .	309
Lesson 19. Eating Family Style . . . . .	311
Dialogue . . . . .	311
Vocabulary . . . . .	315
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	316
Pattern Drills . . . . .	321
Substitution Tables . . . . .	327
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	328
Sentence Conversion . . . . .	330
Answering Questions . . . . .	330
What Would You Say? . . . . .	331
Notes . . . . .	332
Lesson 20. Calling a Friend . . . . .	336
Dialogue . . . . .	336
Vocabulary . . . . .	339
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	340
Pattern Drills . . . . .	344
Substitution Tables . . . . .	348
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	349
A Conversation . . . . .	350
English to Chinese . . . . .	351
Answering Questions . . . . .	352
Notes . . . . .	352
Lesson 21. Eating in a Restaurant . . . . .	355
Dialogue . . . . .	355
Vocabulary . . . . .	358
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	359
Pattern Drills . . . . .	364
Substitution Tables . . . . .	369
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	370
Chinese Menu . . . . .	372
Answering Questions . . . . .	374
What Would You Say? . . . . .	374
Notes . . . . .	375
Lesson 22. Discussing Chinese . . . . .	378
Dialogue . . . . .	378
Vocabulary . . . . .	384
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	385
Pattern Drills . . . . .	389
Substitution Tables . . . . .	391
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	392
Combining Forms . . . . .	394
Monologue . . . . .	396

Lesson 22. Discussing Chinese [continued]	
Answering Questions . . . . .	396
Notes . . . . .	397
Lesson 23. Leaving China . . . . .	401
Dialogue . . . . .	401
Vocabulary . . . . .	406
Sentence Build-Up . . . . .	407
Pattern Drills . . . . .	411
Substitution Table . . . . .	413
Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	414
Miscellaneous Sentences . . . . .	416
Monologue . . . . .	418
Answering Questions . . . . .	419
Notes . . . . .	419
Lesson 24. Review . . . . .	422
Pronunciation Review . . . . .	422
Pattern Review . . . . .	423
Foreign Correspondence . . . . .	427
Dialogue Summaries . . . . .	429
UNIT V . . . . .	441
Lesson 25. Introduction to Chinese Characters . . . . .	443
Lesson 26. Lesson 1 in Character Form . . . . .	454
SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIALS AND INDEXES . . . . .	459
Memorization Exercises (Chinese) . . . . .	461
Memorization Exercises (English) . . . . .	476
Supplementary Lessons . . . . .	498
Supplementary Vocabulary . . . . .	543
Index of Pronunciation Drills . . . . .	555
Glossary and Index . . . . .	557

## PREFACE TO SECOND REVISED EDITION

The old saying "When in Rome do as the Romans do," which implies adjusting our behavior to whatever is appropriate to a given situation, if not taken too literally can be said to apply to the area of language as well as to other areas of human activity. It suggests that while we may not be able, or may not desire, to conform completely to the speech habits of people we may encounter, we should at the very least be aware that language usage varies. This is true within a single language as well as between different languages. There are different ways of saying (or writing) things—sometimes by different speakers in the same situation, sometimes by the same speaker in different situations.

As native speakers of a language, such as English, we are quite accustomed to attuning our ears and sometimes our tongues to variant forms of expression. Old friends may familiarly greet each other with "Hi!" but people who do not know each other well are likely to use a more formal greeting such as "How do you do?" An Eastern shopper requests a bag for his groceries, a mid-Westerner a sack. An American's "elevator" is an Englishman's "lift." "Sign here" and "Please put your signature here" are only partially identical since it is possible to think of situations where one would be more appropriate than the other. Yesterday's slang is today's oddity; today's will doubtless undergo the same transformation a few years hence. What some view as "America's generous financial contributions" may be denounced by others as "Yankee imperialism's silver bullets." As the last example especially makes clear, such different usages have a significance beyond the words themselves in that they suggest to us something about when and where and by whom a particular form might be used.

The Chinese language, spoken by over 800,000,000 people in the Chinese mainland, Taiwan, and overseas Chinese communities, is even more varied and unstable than English. In particular, the extensive changes that have taken place in Chinese society since the establishment of the Chinese People's Republic in 1949 have sparked changes in the Chinese language itself. While the basic features of the language have remained the same, so that Professor John McCoy is undoubtedly correct in saying that 98% of the language is identical everywhere,\* some changes have taken place in the areas of pronunciation, vocabulary, syntax, and situational settings in which language usage occurs.

This new edition of Beginning Chinese has been prepared to take account of some of these changes. This has been done chiefly by the addition of twenty-four Supplementary Lessons paralleling those in the original text. In addition, some errors in the original text have been corrected and some improvements have been made in it without disturbing the basic content or approach, since these remain valid and continue to receive wide approval from students and teachers of Chinese.\*\*

---

\*Paper presented at annual meeting of Chinese Language Teachers Association on November 29, 1975.

\*\*Among the improvements is the use of the enumerative comma. (See Beginning Chinese Reader, p. 13).

In the area of pronunciation, the attempt to promote Pǔtōnghuà 'Common Speech' in the People's Republic is leading toward lesser use of the r-ending typical of the Peking dialect. However, Common Speech is a hybrid norm, and Peking pronunciation remains quite acceptable as one variant of modern standard Chinese. Therefore in the original text I have retained the r-ending while showing its optional nature by enclosing it in parentheses in the vocabulary, as in the case of dìanyǐng(r) 'movie,' but in the Supplementary Lessons I have emphasized non-r forms. This actually involves only four words out of 600-odd items in the text.

In the area of vocabulary, some ten items in the original text have been displaced by new usages in the People's Republic. A similar number are in competition with new usages and it is not yet clear which will eventually win out (or whether both will continue indefinitely to be used together). All of these changes are discussed in the Notes of the Supplementary Lessons and are drilled in the accompanying Exercises.

In the area of grammatical constructions, it so happens that none of the usages in the original text has been displaced by new structures.

In the area of situational changes, these also are noted and drilled in the Supplementary Lessons. They include such items as the new social relations and their effect on forms of address (Lesson 1), the merging of theory and practice as reflected in the new term for "to study" (Lesson 8), and the elimination of tipping (Lesson 21). In general there has been a decrease in stereotyped forms of politeness. In some cases, however, older forms have simply been replaced by other equivalents. In other cases the actual situation is confused by the tendency, especially marked in some PRC language-teaching materials, to reflect not actual usage but what the government aspires to have as ordinary usage. For example, the official attempts to broaden the use of the polite pronoun nín 'you' and to get people to call each other "Comrade" instead of using titles of rank or position are by no means universally accepted.

The new usages can be most clearly understood and most efficiently learned if they are contrasted with the older usages, especially since these "older" usages are still very much alive among Chinese outside the mainland of China and will be found in written materials that are still widely read. Students in the United States, and even in countries like France, which have had longer and closer contacts with the People's Republic, will have more occasion to speak to Chinese outside of China than in it. Most of these Chinese will be accustomed to the earlier uses of language. Hence students need to learn both the People's Republic and non-People's Republic forms and to use whichever is appropriate in the situations in which they find themselves. For example, students should not offer a tip to a waiter in the People's Republic of China, but they should not fail to do so to one in Taiwan or outside China. They may ask about someone's àirén 'lover' in the People's Republic but run the risk of getting their faces slapped if they use it in a conversation outside the mainland of China. Moreover, while students can limit what they say, they cannot limit what other speakers will say to them, or what they may encounter in reading, so they must acquire at least a passive command of variant forms of expression.

In order to cope with the present reality in which there are variant forms of Chinese all of which are valid and worth learning and yet are more or less distinctive, the new material has been placed in Supplementary Lessons so that teachers and students can choose whether to emphasize one or the other. Some things may be learned actively, others passively. As an aid to active

mastery the new material in the Supplementary Lessons has for the most part been presented in the form of short dialogues or narratives that can be memorized.

A further reason for adopting the procedure noted here of leaving the original lessons basically intact and adding new material relevant to the People's Republic as Supplementary Lessons is in order to make the companion volume Character Text for Beginning Chinese even more useful as a reading text. Although not primarily designed for this purpose, the character version has been widely used as reading text by those who, with good pedagogical reasons, believe that it is useful to study in written form w. at one has already learned in spoken form. I believe strongly that foreign students must acquire a mastery of both regular and simplified characters, and that this is most efficiently accomplished by learning the regular first and the simplified second. Therefore in Character Text for Beginning Chinese the original content is presented, appropriately, in regular characters and the new material is presented, also appropriately, in simplified characters.\*

One of the primary aims of these revisions is to impress on students that Chinese, like English and all other languages, uses different forms of expressions in different situations. Students must be prepared to encounter these varieties of linguistic usage, perhaps even among their own teachers, and must attempt to sharpen their command of the language by noting the sociolinguistic significance of these variations. Only thus can students progress from mechanical mastery of linguistic forms to a sensitive awareness of Chinese culture as embodied in its language.\*\*

---

\*This procedure has also been adopted in my Beginning Chinese Reader, a text specifically planned to accompany Beginning Chinese as a basic reading text. In the revision of this text the original division between regular and simplified characters has been preserved, but the material in simplified characters has been revised to bring the content more in line with usage in the People's Republic.

\*\*For amplification of some of the remarks made in this Introduction see my "Sociolinguistic Aspects of Chinese Language Teaching Materials," Journal of Chinese Linguistics 3.2/3 (May-September 1975).

# INTRODUCTION

## TO THE READER

The study of a language generally requires the cooperative effort of at least three people: the textbook writer, the teacher, and the student. In my capacity as the first of these three I should like to address a few remarks to you, whether teacher or student, in the hope that they will help toward a more efficient utilization of this book.

My aim in writing this Chinese textbook has been to provide material that can be used at both the high-school and college levels. Its suitability will be apparent if we compare and contrast the needs of students at both levels.

One major point of similarity is that all students, of whatever age and whatever objective (whether a speaking or a reading knowledge), should start with spoken Chinese. Hence this book is primarily oriented toward helping you speak the language.

A second point of similarity is that high-school and college students have—in somewhat varying degrees, to be sure—the ability to absorb a systematic program of language study, as against the more informal approach of elementary grades with their emphasis on songs, stories, and limited subjects of conversation. In line with this, I have provided fairly extensive notes and explanations of the material. Nor have I hesitated to use a few technical terms. Actually these terms are minimal, amounting to far less than the technical terminology found in an introductory ninth-grade algebra text. In any case, technical expressions and explanations should not occupy too much of the teacher's and student's time. If a note or explanation is too hard to understand, ignore it. Don't waste time talking about Chinese when you should be talking Chinese. Much more important than the notes and explanations are the extensive drills concentrating on specific points of pronunciation or grammar. Provision of these drills reflects my confidence in the ability of high-school and college students alike to benefit from such structured material.

It may be true, however, that high-school students need more drill and review than older students. I have written the book with this requirement in mind. Units I-IV each consist of six lessons. The first five lessons of each unit introduce new material. Within each lesson, the new material should be studied first in the Sentence Build-Ups, various Pattern Drills, and Substitution Tables and then, in effect, reviewed at the end by means of the dialogues and various other exercises. The sixth and final lesson in each unit is a thoroughgoing review which introduces nothing new. Still further drill is provided in the tape recordings which accompany the text.

Extensive though this material is, it is not excessive. It is hard to conceive of too much drill material for students at any level. Extensive practice is the only road to fluency in a language; and after all, it is fluency—not agonizing translation *à la Latin* as traditionally taught—which should be the objective in studying a living language.

It is important to note that the relatively great size of this book is not due to any large amount of material. As a matter of fact, the vocabulary entries total less than 600, a comparatively small figure, and the structural patterns are by no means exhaustive. It is repetition and review which account for the bulk. With regard to the amount of material presented, it is a sobering thought

that the Dialogues, which constitute the heart of the material and the basis for the extended drills in each lesson, represent less than one hour of actual speech, and that the entire Chinese contents of the book can be spoken by a native Chinese in just a few hours.

A major difference between college and high-school students is the fact that more is usually expected of the former than of the latter. Partly this is a matter of curricular programming which permits greater concentration on fewer subjects. Partly it is a matter of relative maturity. It is doubtful, however, whether there is any substantial difference in language ability on the part of the two groups, and if there is, it may well lie with those in the younger age bracket. Nevertheless, it is probably true that the two groups cannot proceed at the same pace. In view of this, I have attempted to make the book as flexible as possible so that it can be adapted to programs varying from two or three hours a week to intensive full-time courses. Some college programs may be able to complete all the material in a semester of intensive study, some semi-intensive high-school classes may be able to cover it all in one year, and others may be able to cover between eighteen and twenty-four lessons. The latter would probably be normal for high-school classes which have available no more than the usual four clock hours or less of classroom time per week. In any case, the emphasis, particularly at the beginning, should be on quality rather than quantity. Better to study a little well than a lot badly.

Another possible difference between high-school and college students is that the latter can more easily put up with material presented in a dull and humorless manner. Although there is much unavoidable drudgery in repetitive drills, a language text doesn't have to be dull, and I have attempted to enliven this one a bit by throwing in an occasional game, illustration, or other type of material that would be entertaining as well as instructive. College students who feel above this sort of thing can simply ignore it.

Partly as entertainment, partly with a serious end in view, I have provided two lessons introducing Chinese characters. These lessons can be studied either after completion of the rest of the material, or simultaneously with the first lesson. In the latter case, study of the characters should not distract us from the primary objective of mastering the speech sounds of Chinese. At this stage of our study, characters should be taken as a dessert, perhaps as an appetizer, but certainly not as the main course. At a later stage, the separate volume entitled Character Text for Beginning Chinese—though designed primarily as an aid for native Chinese teachers—can also be used for further character study.

The kind of spoken Chinese which we are studying here is the Peking dialect. This bears about the same relationship to other kinds of Chinese as Parisian French has to other varieties of French. It is understood by more people than any other language in the world. Apart from introducing you to the largest speech community, it also opens the gate to the largest continuous civilization the world has ever seen.

Chinese is thus an important as well as a fascinating language. But it is not an easy one for speakers of English. In this book, I have not glossed over the difficulties but have attempted to meet them head on. By so doing I hope to have done my part in easing the task of the teacher in presenting the Chinese language and that of the student in mastering it.

## LANGUAGE AND WRITING

Man spoke long before he wrote. Writing was invented only after hundreds of thousands of years in which the sole means of communication, other than gestures, was speech; only over the past few thousand years have various systems of writing, ranging from pictographic to alphabetic, been devised. It is well to remember that even today only about half of the world's 4,000 or so languages have been reduced to writing.

The early creators of writing systems were, of course, not trained in the science of language. We cannot therefore assume that the systems they created accurately represented the languages they spoke. Furthermore, in the later evolution of these languages, what with shifts in pronunciation and other changes, the writing systems became even less reliable as indicators of the spoken word.

Changes have taken place in even so short a period as three hundred odd years in English, as is obvious to any reader of Shakespeare's plays. That English writing does a poor job of representing the sounds of the language is also well known, and is caricatured by such jokes as the one about 'fish' being spelled ghoti: gh as in tough, o as in women, and ti as in nation. It is plain that speech and writing cannot be mechanically equated.

The trouble is that the two things are commonly equated, especially when the term 'language' is loosely used in reference to both. Instead, it is preferable to adopt the practice of reserving 'language' as a term synonymous with 'speech.' This is the practice among linguists—that is, scholars engaged in the scientific study of language, not (as the term is often used) persons who speak a number of languages, more properly termed polyglots.

If we use 'language' to mean only 'speech,' then, we will avoid—or at least use with clearer understanding—such expressions as 'spoken language,' which is redundant, and 'written language,' which is a contradiction in terms. We will also avoid the confusion which results from uncritically using 'language' in reference to both speech and writing. This lack of discrimination leads to muddled ideas about the nature of language, which in turn leads to a confused approach to the teaching and learning of language.

The confusion in connection with Chinese is especially great because the term 'Chinese,' like the term 'language,' is used in more than one meaning. There is a widely held but quite erroneous idea that Chinese speak entirely in words of one syllable, that their language is ambiguous, and that they often have to resort to writing to make themselves understood. The confusion can also be illustrated by the following dialogue:

A: I hear you've begun to study Chinese.

B: Yes.

A: It's a tough language, isn't it?

B: Sure is.

A: What's this Chinese character mean?

B: I don't know.

A: I thought you said you were studying Chinese.

B: I mean I'm learning how to speak Chinese.

Here A uses a catch-all expression 'Chinese' in the meaning of 'Chinese writing' and assumes that to study the Chinese language is to study Chinese writing.

Linguists are unanimously agreed, however, that since language is speech, to study a language is to study the speech of a given community. Even if the ultimate and main objective is to read, this objective is most quickly and most



efficiently reached by starting with speech. Such an approach is all the more necessary in the case of Chinese. The traditional Chinese system of writing has been from the beginning an exceedingly poor device for indicating the sounds of the language. Today the gap between writing and speech is greater in China than in any other country in the world.

In view of all this, it is not desirable to start the study of Chinese with the traditional script. We begin instead by representing Chinese speech with an alphabetic system, called pinyin 'spelling,' which is widely used on the mainland of China. This orthography is the basis of education in the first few years of elementary school. It is also used in a variety of ways in dictionaries, journals, and other publications. Our use of the system provides not only a serviceable pedagogical tool but also an introduction to a great deal of material published in China.

It is likely that this orthography will have wider and wider application in the future in view of the current attempt to promote a single national language in China. In this connection it is worth noting that the catch-all term 'Chinese,' which we saw above was ambiguous because it failed to distinguish between speech and writing, also leads to confusion even when the term is applied only to speech. There are in fact many forms of speech in China, often called 'dialects'; and the situation is further confused by the fact that some so-called dialects of Chinese are as far apart as English is from Dutch, or Italian from Spanish.

Of the approximately two-thirds of a billion people who speak Chinese, some three-fourths of them speak Mandarin Chinese and the remainder speak mutually unintelligible forms of Chinese. The non-Mandarin 'dialects,' which include Cantonese, Wu (Shanghai), Hakka, Amoy-Swatow, and Foochow, are spoken by about 150,000,000 people. Mandarin Chinese, spoken by about half a billion people, is not intelligible to the rest of the population unless it has been learned as another language. Mandarin Chinese is subdivided into a number of genuine dialects—that is, mutually intelligible variants. Of these, the most important is the Peking dialect. An approximation of this dialect has for many years been the socially most acceptable form of speech.

The Peking dialect is the basis of what is being promoted in China as the standard national language. It is this dialect which is used here in beginning the study of Chinese.

## THE SOUNDS OF CHINESE

### 1. Syllable Structure

The syllable in Chinese is made up of three parts: an initial, a final, and a tone. For example, in mǎ the m represents the initial, a the final, and ˇ the tone.

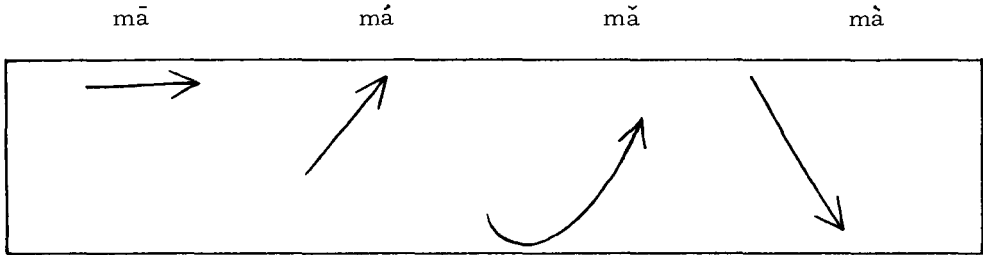
### 2. Tones

Although tones are a distinctive feature of Chinese, we have something akin to them in English. Thus the word 'yes' can convey many different shades of meaning according to just how it is uttered. Rudy Vallée once presented a radio skit in which he demonstrated a dozen or more ways of saying 'yes.' Varying his intonation, he expressed anger by 'Yes!', inquiry by 'Yes?', doubt

by 'Y-e-s,' and so on, concluding the catalogue with the Sweet Young Thing's 'No.'

What makes Chinese tones unlike the expressive intonation of English is that they are an integral part of a syllable and help to distinguish quite different words, in much the same way as the vowels a and u do in English hat and hut. Thus Chinese mā means 'mother,' while mǎ means 'horse.'

There are four basic tones in the Peking dialect. The accompanying Tone Chart demonstrates these, in relation to the range of a speaker's voice.



TONE CHART

The first tone starts near the top of a speaker's voice range and continues on that level until the end. The second tone starts at mid-range and rises rapidly to the top of the range. The third tone starts below mid-range, dips to the lowest pitch, and rises above mid-range. The fourth tone starts near the top of the range and falls very rapidly toward the bottom.

The four tones are represented by the following marks:

- |                               |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. first tone, high level:    | mā 'mother' |
| 2. second tone, high rising:  | má 'hemp'   |
| 3. third tone, low dipping:   | mǎ 'horse'  |
| 4. fourth tone, high falling: | mà 'scold'  |

The tone mark is placed over a vowel letter. If there are three vowels in a syllable, it is written over the middle vowel. If there are two vowels, it is placed over the first, unless this is i or u:

āi, āo, ēi, ōu                      iā, iē, iū                      uā, uē, uī, uō

### 3. Simple Initials

The following are the simple initials:

- b like the p in spy (not like the b in buy; see description below)
- p as in pie, but with a much stronger aspiration, as described below
- m as in might
- f as in fight
- d like the t in sty (not like the d in die)
- t as in tie, but with a much stronger aspiration
- n as in night
- l as in light
- g like the k in sky (not like the g in guy)
- k as in kite, but with a much stronger aspiration
- h like the ch in German nach—that is, much rougher than English h

No two languages have the same speech sounds, and one of the first tasks of the language learner is to discover in what ways he must modify the pronunciation patterns of his native language in order to reproduce words in the new

language—perfectly if possible, but in any event enough like the original to be understood. The new speech sounds do not “come naturally”; they must be learned and practiced.

Of the simple initials listed above, for example, six require special attention; they are like English sounds in some respects but different in others. These are the so-called STOP SOUNDS, represented by these pairs of letters:

b	p
d	t
g	k

The Chinese sounds represented by b, d, g differ from the corresponding English sounds (as in bay, day, gay) in this way: they are VOICELESS, which means they are not accompanied by voice sound, or vibration of the vocal cords. (You can hear this vibration as a loud buzzing if you pronounce “zzzzz” while pressing your hands over your ears. Now pronounce “sssss” and notice the absence of buzzing or “voicing”; s is a voiceless sound, while z is VOICED.)

Chinese b, d, g, then, are unlike English b, d, g in that they are voiceless. They are not, however, identical with English p, t, k. When English speakers say p, t, k (often spelled “c”) at the beginning of words, our speech habits force us to pronounce them with a puff of breath (ASPIRATION) after them: you can feel this by holding the back of your hand to your lips while you pronounce pare, tear, care.

After “s” at the beginning of words, however, we pronounce p, t, k without aspiration: test this with your hand to your lips while you say spare, stare, scare. Now try out the contrast more strikingly by pronouncing pare, spare; tear, stare; care, scare. (The louder you speak, the more noticeable the difference.)

We say, then, that Chinese b is like the p sound of spy (unaspirated and voiceless) rather than like the b of buy (also unaspirated; but voiced). Similarly, Chinese d and g resemble the unaspirated, voiceless t and k sounds of sty and sky. Where English has three separate sounds in the b-p range, Chinese has only two, and similarly for d-t and g-k:

	<u>Aspirated</u>	<u>Unaspirated</u>	<u>Voiced</u>
English	<u>p</u> as in <u>pie</u>	<u>p</u> as in <u>spy</u>	<u>b</u> as in <u>buy</u>
Chinese	<u>p</u> as in <u>pie</u> (represented by <u>p</u> )	<u>p</u> as in <u>spy</u> (represented by <u>p</u> )	[no equivalent]
English	<u>t</u> as in <u>tie</u>	<u>t</u> as in <u>sty</u>	<u>d</u> as in <u>die</u>
Chinese	<u>t</u> as in <u>tie</u> (represented by <u>t</u> )	<u>t</u> as in <u>sty</u> (represented by <u>d</u> )	[no equivalent]
English	<u>k</u> as in <u>kite</u>	<u>k</u> as in <u>sky</u>	<u>g</u> as in <u>guy</u>
Chinese	<u>k</u> as in <u>kite</u> (represented by <u>k</u> )	<u>k</u> as in <u>sky</u> (represented by <u>g</u> )	[no equivalent]

The aspirated consonants of Chinese (represented by p, t, k) differ from their English counterparts (as in pie, tie, kite) mainly in that the aspiration is much stronger in Chinese. Hold a lighted match a few inches from your lips while saying pie. If you can make the flame go out, you are saying a good Chinese p sound.

#### 4. Group-a Finals

a	as in <u>father</u>
an	between the <u>an</u> in <u>can</u> and the <u>on</u> in <u>con</u>
ang	<u>a</u> as in <u>father</u> and <u>ng</u> as in <u>sing</u>
ai	as in <u>aisle</u>
ao	like the <u>au</u> 's in <u>sauerkraut</u>

## 5. Combinations of Simple Initials with Group-a Finals\*

Initials	Finals				
	a	an	ang	ai	ao
∅*	ā	ān	āng	ài	ǎo
b	bā	bān	bāng	bái	bào
p	pà	pān	páng	pái	pào
m	mā	màn	máng	mǎi	mào
f	fā	fān	fāng		
d	dá	dān	dāng	dài	dào
t	tā	tān	tāng	tài	tào
n	ná	nán	náng	nài	nào
l	lā	lán	láng	lài	lǎo
g	gā	gān	gāng	gài	gào
k	kǎ	kàn	kàng	kāi	kào
h	hā	hán	háng	hài	hǎo

## 6. Group-o/e Finals

o like the wa in wall

e begins as the e of error and passes quickly into the o in of

en like the en in chicken

eng like the ung in lung

ei as in eight

ou as in soul

ong like the ung in German jung or, roughly, u as in put plus ng as in sing

---

\* It is convenient to speak of a syllable that consists only of a final as having a "zero initial," indicated in the table by the symbol ∅. Note that no combinations of f plus ai or ao occur.

## 7. Combinations of Simple Initials with Group-o/e Finals

Initials	Finals						
	o	e	en	eng	ei	ou	ong
∅		è	ēn	ēng		ǒu	
b	bō		bèn	bēng	bēi		
p	pō		pén	péng	péi	pōu	
m	mō		mén	mèng	méi	mǒu	
f	fó		fēn	féng	féi	fǒu	
d		dé		děng	děi	dōu	dōng
t		tè		téng		tōu	tóng
n			nèn	néng	nèi	nòu	nóng
l		lè	lèn	lěng	léi	lǒu	lóng
g		gē	gēn	gèng	gěi	gǒu	gōng
k		kè	kěn	kēng	kěi	kǒu	kōng
h		hē	hěn	héng	hēi	hòu	hóng

## 8. Group-u Finals

- u as in rule, but with more lip-rounding and with the tongue drawn farther back
- ua like the wa in wander
- uo like the wa in waltz
- uai like the wi in wide
- ui between we and weigh in the first and second tones, like weigh in the third and fourth tones.
- uan starts with a w sound and ends like the an in the group-a finals
- un somewhat like the wen in Owen
- uang starts with a w-sound and ends like the ang in the group-a finals
- ueng starts with a w-sound and ends like the ung in lung

## 9. Combinations of Simple Initials with Group-u Finals\*

Initials	Finals								
	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	un	uang	ueng
∅	wū	wá	wǒ	wài	wèi	wān	wèn	wáng	wēng
b	bù								
p	pù								
m	mù								
f	fū								
d	dù		duō		duì	duān	dūn		
t	tù		tuō		tuì	tuán	tún		
n	nú		nuó			nuǎn			
l	lù		luó			luàn	lún		
g	gǔ	guā	guó	guài	guì	guǎn	gǔn	guāng	
k	kū	kuā	kuò	kuài	kuì	kuǎn	kūn	kuāng	
h	hū	huà	huó	huài	huì	huān	hūn	huāng	

## 10. Retroflex and Sibilant Initials

## Retroflex

- zh like the ch in chew, but unaspirated and with the tongue tip curled far back
- ch like the zh above, but aspirated, as the ch-h in teach history
- sh like the sh in shoe, but with the tongue tip curled far back
- r like the r in crew, but with the tongue tip curled far back

## Sibilant

- z like the t's in it's Al (not the dds of adds), but with the tongue farther forward
- c like the t's h in it's Hal, but with much more breath and with the tongue farther forward
- s as in soon, but with the tongue farther forward

\* The group-u finals can all occur by themselves (that is, with zero initial), but in this occurrence they are written with a w initial; note also the other spelling modifications in the ∅ row.

The four retroflex initials represent sounds made by curling the tongue far back, farther even than in pronouncing the r of English crew. The retroflex consonants are spoken by themselves with a sort of r-sound final, so that Chinese sh, for example, sounds somewhat like English shr in shrill. Similarly, the sibilant consonants are pronounced by themselves with a sort of buzzing sound like a prolonged z in buzz. These final sounds of both groups of consonants are written with the letter i. The sounds represented by this i are quite different from those of the group-i sounds discussed below. When referring to the former we shall write "i" in quotation marks to avoid confusion with the i-sounds as pronounced in other positions.

### 11. Combinations of Retroflex and Sibilant Initials with "i" and Group-a Finals

Initials	Finals					
	"i"	a	an	ang	ai	ao
zh	zhī	zhā	zhǎn	zhāng	zhái	zhāo
ch	chī	chà	chán	chāng	chái	chāo
sh	shī	shā	shān	shāng	shài	shāo
r	rì		rán	ràng		ráo
z	zì	zá	zān	zāng	zài	zǎo
c	cì	cā	cān	cāng	cāi	cǎo
s	sì	sà	sān	sāng	sài	sǎo

### 12. Combinations of Retroflex and Sibilant Initials with Group-o/e Finals

Initials	Finals						
	o	e	en	eng	ei	ou	ong
zh		zhě	zhěn	zhēng	zhèi	zhōu	zhōng
ch		chē	chén	chēng		chōu	chōng
sh		shé	shěn	shēng	shéi	shōu	
r		rè	rén	réng		róu	róng
z		zé	zěn	zēng	zéi	zōu	zōng
c		cè	cén	céng		còu	cóng
s		sè	sěn	sēng		sǒu	sòng

13. Combinations of Retroflex and Sibilant Initials  
with Group-u Finals

Initials	Finals'							
	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	un	uang
zh	zhū	zhuā	zhuō	zhuāi	zhuī	zhuān	zhūn	zhuāng
ch	chū		chuò	chuāi	chuī	chuān	chūn	chuáng
sh	shū	shuā	shuō	shuāi	shuǐ	shuàn	shùn	shuāng
r	rù		ruò		ruǐ	ruǎn	rùn	
z	zū		zuò		zuì	zuān	zūn	
c	cū		cuò		cùi	cuàn	cùn	
s	sú		suǒ		sùi	suàn	sūn	

14. Group-i Finals

- i as in machine
- ia like the ya in yacht
- iao like the yow in yowl
- ie like the ye in yet (note that e after i is not the same as e in the group-o/e finals)
- iu in the first and second tones, close to u in union; in the third and fourth tones, close to yo in yoke
- ian like the i in machine plus a sound between the an of man and the en of men in English (note that an after i is not the same as the an in the group-a finals)
- in like the ine in machine
- iang like i in machine plus ang as in the group-a finals
- ing like i in machine plus ng as in sing
- iong like i in machine plus ong as in the group-o/e finals



## 15. Combinations of Simple Initials and Group-i Finals\*

Initials	Finals									
	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in	iang	ing	iong
∅	yī	yá	yào	yě	yǒu	yán	yīn	yáng	yīng	yòng
b	bǐ	biǎo	bié		biān	bīn		bīng		
p	pí	piāo	piě		piān	pīn		píng		
m	mǐ	miào	miè	miú	mián	mín		mìng		
d	dì	diāo	diē	diū	diān			dīng		
t	tí	tiāo	tiē		tiān			tīng		
n	nǐ	niǎo	niè	niǔ	nián	nín	niáng	níng		
l	lǐ	liǎo	liè	liǔ	lián	lín	liáng	líng		

## 16. Palatal Initials

- j like the tch in itching (not voiced, like the j in jeep); made by pressing the flat part of the tongue against the palate or front roof of the mouth
- q like the ch in cheap, but with much more breath, as for the ch-h in each house; tongue position as for j
- x between the s in see and the sh in she; tongue position as for j

17. Combinations of Palatal Initials  
with Group-i Finals

Initials	Finals									
	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in	iang	ing	iong
j	jī	jiā	jiāo	jiē	jiǔ	jiān	jīn	jiāng	jīng	jiǒng
q	qī	qià	qiāo	qiē	qiū	qiān	qīn	qiāng	qīng	qióng
x	xī	xiǎ	xiāo	xiè	xiū	xiān	xīn	xiāng	xīng	xióng

\* The group-i finals can all occur by themselves—that is, with a zero initial—though they are written with a y initial in this occurrence, and with the spelling modifications shown. Note again that the i sound is altogether different from the “i” sound. Since they never occur after the same initials, it is unambiguous to use the same letter to represent both sounds; but learners must take special pains to differentiate their pronunciation. (See the Pronunciation Drills in Lesson 5.)

## 18. Group-ü Finals

- ü like the French u in rue or the German ü in über; made by pronouncing the i of machine with the lips rounded as for the oo of ooze
- üe ü as above plus e as in ie in the group-i finals (not like the e of the group-o/e finals)
- üan ü as above plus an as in ian in the group-i finals (not like the an of the group-a finals)
- ün ü as above followed by a final n

19. Combinations of Palatal and Other Initials  
with Group-u Finals\*

Initials	Finals			
	ü	üe	üan	ün
∅	yú	yuè	yuǎn	yún
j	jū	jué	juǎn	jūn
q	qù	què	quǎn	qún
x	xù	xué	xuǎn	xùn
n	nǚ	nüè		
l	lǚ	lüè		

## 20. Group-r Finals

Final r occurs as part of the syllable er and as a suffix attached to many of the finals listed in the previous tables.

The syllable er is pronounced like the ur of fur in the first and second tones, and between -ur and are in the third and fourth. This syllable is widely used in other dialects as well as in that of Peking.

The suffix r modifies the spelling of a preceding final in various ways, as follows:

---

\* The group-ü finals can all occur by themselves. Although spoken with a zero initial, they are written with a y initial and modified in spelling as indicated above. Note further that the two dots in ü are written only after n and l, where they are needed to distinguish lu from lü and nu from nü. Be careful not to confuse the sound of un in zhun with the un in jun, or the uan in chuan with the uan in quan; the form un represents different sounds after different initials, just as the letter i does (above, p. xxviii).

- I. a, o, e, u, ng: add r. Examples: gē, gēr; fēng, fēngr.
- II. ai, an, en: drop final letter and add r. Examples: hái, hár; wán, wár; fēn, fēr.
- III. i, ü after consonants: add er. Examples: jī, jīer; yú, yúer.
- IV. "i," in, un: drop final letter and add er. Examples: shì, shèr; xìn, xièr; zhǔn, zhuǐr.

The suffix r is common to all speakers of the Peking dialect. Educated speakers, however, are aware that it is a substandard form in some other dialects, and so tend to limit their use of it, particularly in formal and public speech. For the same reason, the r suffix is generally minimized when the Peking dialect is being taught—whether as the National Language (to Chinese who speak other dialects natively) or to foreigners.

## 21. Juncture

Although the syllable is an important unit of sound in Chinese, it is by no means correct (as we pointed out above) to speak of the language as mono-syllabic. Some syllables can never stand alone but are always joined closely with others in speech. We say that these are in "close juncture" and write the syllables together as one word, as in tàitai. In the joining of syllables, unless there are special reasons for doing otherwise, we comply with the practices followed in other literature which uses the same writing system.

N before a vowel in the middle of a word is read as part of the following syllable. If ng occurs before a vowel in the middle of a word, n is read as part of the preceding syllable and g as part of the following. Exceptions to these rules are marked by an apostrophe.

yínán = yí + nán

yīn'àn = yīn + àn

míngē = mín + gē

míng'é = míng + é

We use hyphens to join two or more syllables which can under some conditions be separated by a pause or by the insertion of additional elements, but which in the specific case before us are spoken without a pause: mǎi-shū, nǐ-tàitai.

We use blank space to mark places where it is possible in slow speech to hesitate briefly or stop to catch one's breath: Nèiběn-shū yě-kànwán-le.

We use commas and periods to mark places where phrases or sentences are often separated by longer pauses: Wōmen-yǒu-shū, méi-yǒu-huàr.

## 22. Stress

In a phrase or sentence, the last syllable with a tone mark on it usually receives the chief stress, that is, is spoken most loudly. If the chief stress is elsewhere, we mark it by a stress symbol or, more rarely, by a single underline (double if the sentence is already underlined):

Wáng-Tàitai (stress on Tài); 'Wáng-Tàitai (stress on Wáng)

Wǒ-shuō-jīntiān-qu (stress on tiān)

In Chinese, as in English, a word which is strongly emphasized or strongly contrasted with something is spoken louder than the rest of the sentence. By

shifting the stress from one word to another we can create differences in meaning within the same string of words. Note how this is done in the following English sentences:

He is leaving tomorrow.                      He is leaving tomorrow.  
 He is leaving tomorrow.                      He is leaving tomorrow.

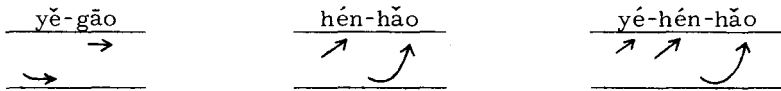
### 23. Modification of Tones

A third tone (low dipping) has its full contour only when it is followed by a pause. Before any other tone, it is pronounced as a low tone without its final rise in pitch. We do not indicate this change of a full third tone to a 'half third tone,' as it is easily learned and quickly becomes automatic in connected speech.

If two third-tone syllables are spoken in uninterrupted succession, the first changes to a second tone. Thus hěn plus hǎo becomes hén-hǎo. We do indicate this change.

If three third tones occur in uninterrupted succession, the first two change to second tone. Thus yě plus hěn plus hǎo becomes yé-hén-hǎo. We mark these changes.

The above three changes in a third tone are illustrated in the accompanying chart, in which all syllables (except gāo) are original third tones.



If four or more third-tone syllables occur together, various combinations of the changes noted above are possible.

Stressed syllables always have one of the four tones. The same syllables sometimes occur unstressed, in which case the tone often disappears. Some syllables never have stress. Such unstressed syllables are said to have neutral tone or to be toneless or neutral syllables and are written without tone marks.

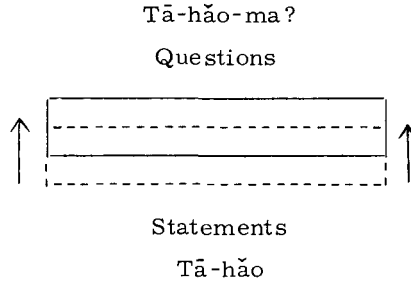
If a neutral tone stands at the beginning of an utterance, as in bu-gāo, it is pronounced at about the mid-range of the speaker's voice. If a neutral tone comes at the end of an utterance, it is affected by the tone of the preceding syllable. The pitch of a neutral syllable after each of the four tones is indicated by the heavy dot in the accompanying chart.



### 24. Intonation

In addition to the tones appearing on individual syllables, there are tone patterns (intonations) accompanying sentences: some statements, for example, have a different intonation from some types of questions. With certain

questions—especially those asked out of genuine curiosity and interest and not merely from politeness—the whole pitch level is likely to be shifted slightly upward. This is illustrated by the following chart, in which the dotted figure represents the normal range for statements and the solid figure represents the range for questions.



It is essential to bear in mind that questions in Chinese do not have the same intonation patterns as questions in English. In English, questions which anticipate a “yes” or “no” answer normally end on a high pitch (“Is it raining?” “Are you happy?”), while questions asking for supplemental information are pronounced like statements, with dropping pitch at the end (“What time is it.” “Where are you going.”). In Chinese, on the contrary, it is the entire sentence which is uttered on a higher pitch—not merely the last word or some other part of it—regardless of the kind of answer expected.

## 25. Marking of Sounds

In the lessons which follow, we seek to provide all the information you need to pronounce the material correctly. We mark the required shift of a third tone to second before another third tone, together with a few other required tonal changes; we also indicate juncture and stress. Note that there are often several different ways of pronouncing the same sentence; different speakers may interpret the same sentence in different ways, for example in determining which part of the sentence should be stressed. Do not be disturbed if you hear native speakers pronounce a sentence differently from what we have indicated. It is always safe to imitate the native speaker.

## SETTING THE STAGE

Cast of Characters

Bái Wénshān: Vincent White, an American college student spending his junior year in China.

Gāo Měiyīng: A middle-school student, daughter of Mr. and Mrs. Gao.

Mr. Gao : Manager of the Three Friends Bookstore.

Mrs. Gao : Wife of Mr. Gao.

Mr. Mao : A clerk in the Three Friends Bookstore.

Mr. Qian : Friend and neighbor of the Gaos.

Mr. Wan : Professor Wanamaker, a specialist in Chinese.

Ticket-seller on the No. 3 bus.

Waiter in the Ten Thousand Years Restaurant.

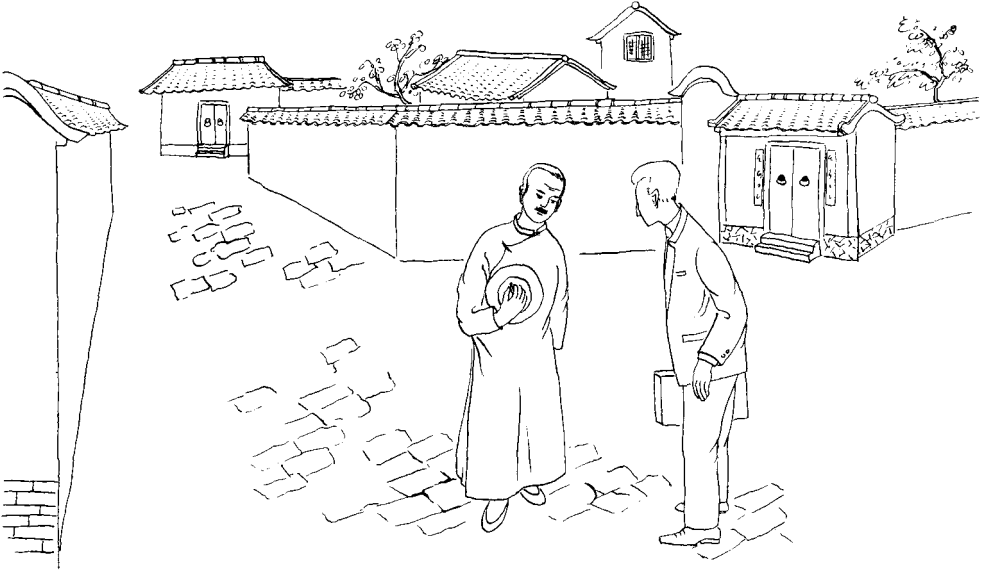
Place

A city in China

Time

September 7	Lesson 1	June 5	Lesson 20
September 10	Lesson 2	June 7	Lesson 21
September 14	Lesson 3	August 1	Lesson 22
September 16	Lesson 4	August 25	Lesson 23
January 22	Lessons 5-19		

Lesson 1 GREETING FRIENDS



“ 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a?’ ”

Dialogue: Mr. White and Mr. Gao exchange greetings when they meet on the street. (Mr. White is younger than Mr. Gao and therefore uses more polite forms in addressing him.)

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a?	Mr. Gao, how are you?
Gāo: Wó-hén-hǎo. Nǐ-ne?	I'm fine. And you?
Bái: Hǎo, xièxie-nin. Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie yé-hǎo-ma?	Fine, thank you. And how are Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao?
Gāo: Tāmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie.	5 They're both well, thanks.
Bái: Zàijiàn, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng.	Good-bye, Mr. Gao.
Gāo: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.	See you again.

VOCABULARY \*

(For the abbreviations used below, see the list at the beginning of the Glossary and Index)

a	(question particle: Note 14)
bái	white (SV) (also, a surname)

\* In all English translations of Chinese material, square brackets enclose more literal renderings of idiomatic equivalents; parentheses are used for English words with no equivalent in the Chinese but necessary for smoother English, as well as other explanatory material.

dōu	all, both, entirely (AD)
gāo	tall, high (SV) (also, a surname)
hǎo	good, well, fine, O.K. (SV)
hěn	very (AD)
ma	(question particle: Note 13)
men	(pluralizing suffix: Note 3)
ne	(question particle: Note 15)
nǐ	you (singular) (PR)
nín	you (polite form) (PR) (Note 3)
tā	he, him; she, her (PR)
tàitai	married lady (N); Mrs. (Note 7)
wǒ	I, me (PR)
xiānsheng	gentleman, husband (N); Mr. [lit. first born] (Note 7)
xiǎojie	young (unmarried) lady, daughter (N); Miss [lit. little sister] (Note 7)
xièxie	thank; thanks, thank you (TV) (Xiè is also a surname)
yě	also, too (AD)
zàijiàn	good-bye [lit. again see]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| nǐ<br>hǎo                          | you (singular)<br>well                                 |
| 1. Ní-hǎo?                         | How are you?   |
| nín                                | you (polite form)                                      |
| 2. Nín-hǎo?                        | How are you?   |
| nǐ<br>nǐmen                        | you (singular)<br>you (plural)                         |
| 3. Nǐmen-hǎo?                      | How are you?   |
| hǎo-a?                             | well (question form)                                   |
| 4. Ní-hǎo-a?                       | How are you?   |
| hǎo-ma?                            | well (question form)                                   |
| 5. Nín-hǎo-ma?                     | How are you?   |
| bái<br>Xiānsheng<br>'Bái-Xiānsheng | white (also, a surname)<br>gentleman; Mr.<br>Mr. White |
| 6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, ní-hǎo-ma?      | How are you, Mr. White?                                |
| gāo<br>'Gāo-Xiānsheng              | tall, high (also, a surname)<br>Mr. Gao                |
| 7. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma?     | How are you, Mr. Gao?                                  |



- |     |                          |                                |
|-----|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
|     | Xiáojie<br>'Gāo-Xiáojie  | young lady; Miss<br>Miss Gao   |
| 8.  | 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní-hǎo-ma? | Miss Gao, how are you?         |
|     | Tàitai<br>'Gāo-Tàitai    | married lady; Mrs.<br>Mrs. Gao |
| 9.  | 'Gāo-Tàitai, nín-hǎo-ma? | How are you, Mrs. Gao?         |
|     | xièxie                   | thank; thanks, thank you       |
| 10. | Xièxie-ni.               | Thank you.                     |
|     | wǒ<br>wǒmen              | I<br>we                        |
| 11. | Wǒmen-xièxie-ni.         | We thank you.                  |
|     | tā<br>tāmen              | he, him; she, her<br>they      |
| 12. | Tāmen-xièxie-ni.         | They thank you.                |
|     | hěn<br>hén-hǎo           | very<br>very well              |
| 13. | Wó-hén-hǎo.              | I'm very well.                 |
|     | yě<br>yé-hén-hǎo         | also<br>also very well         |
| 14. | Tā-yé-hén-hǎo.           | He's also very well.           |
|     | dōu<br>dōu-gāo           | all<br>all tall                |
| 15. | Tāmen-dōu-gāo-ma?        | Are all of them tall?          |
|     | wó-hǎo<br>nǐ-ne?         | I'm fine<br>how about you?     |
| 16. | Wó-hǎo. Nǐ-ne?           | I'm fine. And you?             |
|     | zàijiàn                  | good-bye                       |
| 17. | Zàijiàn, 'Gāo-Tàitai.    | Good-bye, Mrs. Gao.            |

PATTERN DRILLS \*

Pattern 1.1. Statements with Stative Verbs  
(Notes 8 and 11, below, p. 10)

S	AD	SV
Subject	Adverb	Stative Verb
Tā	hěn	hǎo.
'He's very well.'		

\* Each pattern is numbered by lesson and drill; Pattern 1.1, then, is the pattern demonstrated in Lesson 1, Drill 1.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Hǎo.   | Fine.                                |
| 2. Hén-hǎo.                                     | Very well.                           |
| 3. Yé-hǎo.                                      | (Someone) is also well.              |
| 4. Wó-hǎo.                                      | I'm fine.                            |
| 5. Wó-hén-hǎo.                                  | I'm very well.                       |
| 6. Yé-hěn-gāo.                                  | (Someone) is also very tall.         |
| 7. Tāmen-dōu-hǎo.                               | They're all well.                    |
| 8. Tāmen-dōu-hěn-gāo.                           | They're all quite tall.              |
| 9. 'Gāo-Xiáojie yé-hǎo.                         | Miss Gao is also well.               |
| 10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, 'Bái-Tàitai<br>dōu-hěn-gāo. | Mr. and Mrs. Bai are both very tall. |

Pattern 1.2. Statements with Transitive Verbs  
(Notes 9 and 10, below, p. 10)

S	V	O
Subject	Verb	Object
Wǒ	xièxie	ni.
'I thank you.'		

- |                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-xièxie-ta.        | I thank him.        |
| 2. Tā-xièxie-wo.        | He thanks me.       |
| 3. Tā-xièxie-ni.        | He thanks you.      |
| 4. Wó-yě-xièxie-ta.     | I also thank him.   |
| 5. Tāmen-dōu-xièxie-ni. | They all thank you. |

Pattern 1.3. Questions Formed with the Particle ma  
(Note 13, below, p. 11)

S	(AD)	SV	<u>ma</u>
Subject	(Adverb)	Stative Verb	Question Particle
Nǐ	yě	hǎo	ma?
'Are you also well?'			

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ní-hǎo-ma?                               | How are you?                         |
| 2. Tāmen-dōu-gāo-ma?                        | Are all of them tall?                |
| 3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yé-hǎo-ma?                | Is Mr. Bai also well?                |
| 4. 'Bái-Tàitai, 'Bái-Xiáojie<br>dōu-hǎo-ma? | Are Mrs. Bai and Miss Bai both well? |
| 5. Nǐmen-dōu-hǎo-ma?                        | Are you (plural) all well?           |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

Substitution tables are a device for rapid drill, as either individual study or classroom work. They enable the student to construct a number of different sentences on the same structural pattern, by substituting a variety of appropriate vocabulary items into a given sentence known to be grammatically correct. The number of sentences or phrases which can be formed from a table is indicated at the top of the table.

A break in a solid line above a substitution table indicates a place where it is possible to divide a table into two or more parts. Thus Table IV below can be divided into two parts and each part can be worked on separately, especially as a preliminary to forming the longer and more complicated sentences of the whole table.

A long dash in a column indicates you have the choice of selecting nothing from that column.

Taking Table IV, for example, you can get 48 sentences from the small vocabulary of Lesson 1 by varying only one item at a time. Half of these are statements formed by selecting nothing from the final column, and the other 24 are questions formed by adding ma to the sentences already created. One way to produce the first half of these sentences would be like this:

Bái Xiānsheng yé hǎo	Bái Xiānsheng hén hǎo
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Tàitai " "	Bái Tàitai " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Xiáojie " "	Bái Xiáojie " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Xiānsheng yě gāo	Bái Xiānsheng hěn gāo
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Tàitai " "	Bái Tàitai " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "
Bái Xiáojie " "	Bái Xiáojie " "
Gāo " " "	Gāo " " "

Substitution tables have varied uses. One of the simplest—the build-up drill or fluency drill—is performed by having the student repeat increasingly long sentences in direct imitation of the Chinese speaker, as follows:

<u>Teacher</u>	<u>Student</u>
Hǎo	Hǎo
Yé-hǎo	Yé-hǎo
Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo	Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo
Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo	Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo

Another useful exercise, the substitution drill, is performed by having the student substitute into a given sentence pattern, one by one, different vocabulary items called off by the teacher, as:

<u>Teacher</u>	<u>Student</u>
Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo	Gāo-Xiānsheng-yé-hǎo
Tàitai	Gāo-Tàitai-yé-hǎo
Xiáojie	Gāo-Xiáojie-yé-hǎo

Each table should be used as the basis of as many drills as the teacher's ingenuity can invent.

I: 9 sentences (Notes 3, 14, 16)

nǐ	hǎo	—
nín		a
nǐmen		ma

II: 54 sentences (Notes 3, 4, 16)

Bái	Xiānsheng	-	hǎo	-
Gāo	Tàitai	nǐ		a
	Xiáojie	nín		ma

III: 36 sentences (Notes 7, 9, 10)

Bái	Xiānsheng	xièxie	wǒ	-
Gāo	Tàitai		nǐ	men
	Xiáojie		tā	

IV: 48 sentences (Notes 12-13)

Bái	Xiānsheng	yě	hǎo	-
Gāo	Tàitai	hěn	gāo	ma
	Xiáojie			

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. The Unaspirated-Aspirated Contrast

(a) bà pà	(c) bái pái	(f) bǎo pǎo
(b) dā tā	(d) dài tài	(g) dàoào
	(e) gāi kāi	(h) gǎo kǎo

## II. Contrasts in Tones

Read the following pairs first downward by columns, then across by rows, with pauses between syllables. (Digits indicate tone sequences.)

1, 1 m̄ā, m̄ā	2, 1 má, m̄ā	3, 1 mǎ, m̄ā	4, 1 mà, m̄ā
1, 2 m̄ā, má	2, 2 má, má	3, 2 mǎ, má	4, 2 mà, má
1, 3 m̄ā, mǎ	2, 3 má, mǎ	3, 3 mǎ, mǎ	4, 3 mà, mǎ
1, 4 m̄ā, mà	2, 4 má, mà	3, 4 mǎ, mà	4, 4 mà, mà

## III. Combinations of Tones

Read the following phrases first down, then across. (The asterisked phrase involves a change of third tone to second tone.)

1, 1 t̄ā-b̄ān	2, 1 hái-gāo	3, 1 mǎi-dāo	4, 1 tài-gāo
1, 2 t̄ā-ná	2, 2 hái-lái	3, 2 mǎi-táng	4, 2 tài-máng
1, 3 t̄ā-mǎi	2, 3 hái-hǎo	3, 3 mái-mǎ*	4, 3 tài-hǎo
1, 4 t̄ā-pà	2, 4 hái-kàn	3, 4 mǎi-bào	4, 4 tài-dà

IV. Changes in Third Tones  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 23)

A. Full Third Tone to Half Third Tone

wǒ gāo > wǒ-gāo  
wǒ máng > wǒ-máng  
wǒ dà > wǒ-dà

B. Third Tone to Second Tone

wǒ hǎo > wó-hǎo      wǒ hěn hǎo > wó-hén-hǎo  
nǐ hǎo > ní-hǎo      nǐ hěn hǎo > ní-hén-hǎo  
hěn hǎo > hén-hǎo      wǒ yě hǎo > wó-yé-hǎo  
yě hǎo > yé-hǎo      nǐ yě hǎo > ní-yé-hǎo

V. Intonation Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 24)

Tā-yé-hǎo.	He's also well.
Tā-yé-hǎo-ma?	Is he also well?
Tāmen-hěn-gāo.	They're very tall.
Tāmen-hěn-gāo-ma?	Are they very tall?

BOY MEETS GIRL

State in English who says what to whom.

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní-hǎo?  
Gāo: Hǎo. Nín-hǎo-ma?  
Bái: Hén-hǎo. Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai dōu-hǎo-ma?  
Gāo: Dōu-hǎo, xièxie-nín.  
Bái: Zài jiàn, zài jiàn.  
Gāo: Zài jiàn, 'Bái-Xiānsheng.

NOTES

1. Chinese has parts of speech which we speak of as nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, etc. These do not always have the same characteristics as the English parts of speech with the same names. In the English sentence 'All are well,' for example, 'all' is a noun or pronoun or perhaps an adjective, but in the corresponding Chinese sentence the word meaning 'all' is an adverb.

2. Chinese pronouns, unlike those of English, are not inflected for case or gender. Thus tā can mean 'he,' 'him,' 'she,' or 'her,' according to context.

3. Chinese personal pronouns are made plural by adding the suffix men:

wǒ 'I, me'	wǒmen 'we, us'
nǐ 'you' (singular)	nǐmen 'you' (plural)
tā 'he, him, she, her'	tāmen 'they, them'
nín 'you' (polite singular)	nínmen 'you' (polite plural)

Nín is also used without men as a polite plural form.

4. Chinese surnames generally consist of only one syllable. As in English, some of them are ordinary words, such as bái 'white.'
5. When foreigners take on Chinese names, they attempt to represent either the meaning or the sound of their original name. Thus someone with the surname 'White' would most likely call himself Bái in Chinese, translating the meaning; on the other hand, the name 'Gowan' would probably become Gāo, as a representation of the sound.
6. In the English translations of all Chinese material, we give the foreign equivalent of Chinese names which refer to non-Chinese; untranslated names will then be understood as referring to Chinese people.
7. A Chinese title follows the surname: Bái-Xiānsheng 'Mr. White.' Care should be taken to use appropriate titles. (See Supplementary Lesson 1, Note 1)
8. Chinese verbs, like English verbs, name actions (eat, come, are, etc.); unlike English verbs, they are not inflected for person, number, tense, or mood. Verbs may serve as grammatically complete sentences in Chinese: the subjects are often omitted if they can be inferred from the context. This is different from English; we say 'I'm fine' or 'Fine,' but not 'Am fine.'
9. Transitive verbs—those which take objects—are normally used (as in English) in the pattern Subject-Verb-Object: Wǒ-xièxie-ni. 'I thank you.'
10. Pronouns in object position often lose their tones, as with ni 'you' in the example in Note 9. However, if the sentence is spoken slowly, or if nǐ is stressed, the tone is retained.
11. Stative verbs are verbs which can be preceded by a word meaning 'very.' They describe a state of being and thus in meaning resemble adjectives in English: hǎo '(to be) good, (to be) well.' A statement containing a subject and a stative verb most often contains an adverb as well: Wǒ-yé-hǎo. 'I'm also well.'
12. Adverbs are words which can stand only before a verb or another adverb. The two adverbs appearing in Lesson 1 are hěn 'very,' as in Hěn-gāo '(Someone) is very tall' and dōu 'all,' as in Dōu-hǎo '(They) are all well.' Chinese adverbs are much more restricted than English adverbs, which can appear in various parts of a sentence. 'All' in the English sentence 'All of them are very well' is expressed in Chinese by the adverb dōu:

Tāmen-dōu-hén-hǎo. It is impossible to translate 'all of them' by placing dōu before tāmen, since Chinese adverbs occur only before verbs.

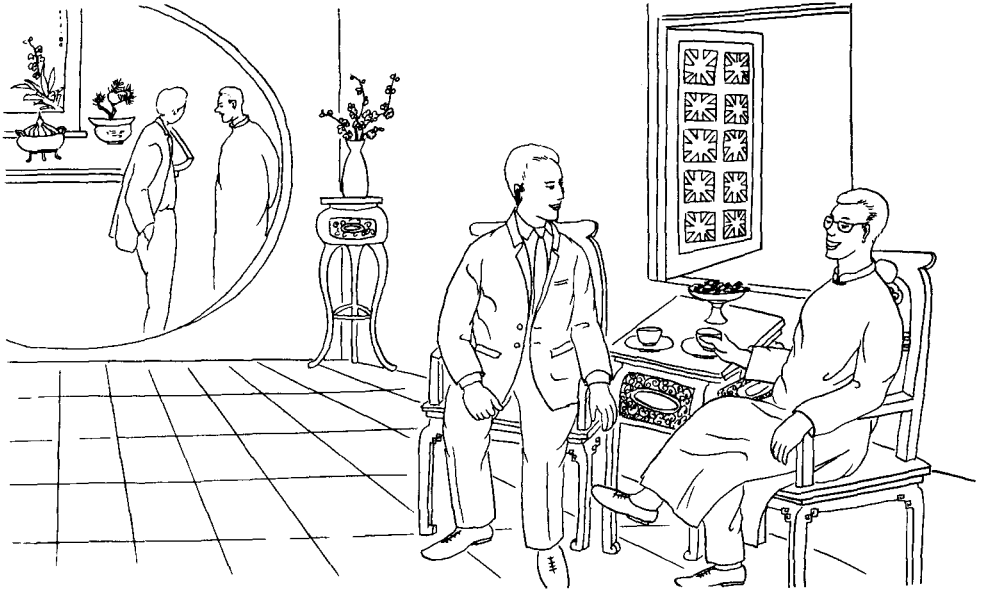
13. A statement is often turned into a yes-or-no question (a question that can be answered by 'yes' or 'no') without any change in word order, by the addition of a question particle at the end—the most common is ma. This form of question is nearly always used when the verb of the sentence is preceded by an adverb: Tā-hǎo-ma? 'Is he well?' Tā-yé-hǎo-ma? 'Is he also well?'
14. The particle a added to a statement changes it to a polite command, suggestion, or presumption. It often suggests that the speaker presumes his listener agrees with him; thus the Chinese sentence Ni-hǎo-a? is like English 'You are well, I suppose?' or 'How are you?' spoken as a greeting rather than as a real question.
15. The question particle ne makes questions from portions of speech which are less than a full sentence: Nǐ-ne? 'And you?' as a return greeting.
16. Conventional greetings are also expressed without a question particle. Three of the nine possible sentences from Substitution Table I, on page 7, for example, though they have the form of statements, would be understood in a conversational setting as questions:

Ní-hǎo?	How are you? (singular)
Nín-hǎo?	How are you? (polite form)
Nǐmen-hǎo?	How are you? (plural)

17. The vast majority of Chinese words consist of one or more syllables each of which has meaning. Syllables have varying degrees of freedom. Some stand alone, like English 'Fine!' Others sometimes stand alone and sometimes combine with other syllables, like 'rail' and 'road' in 'rail-road.' Still others, though they have meaning, never stand alone, like the suffix -er 'one who...' in 'teacher.' As it is sometimes helpful in memorizing words of more than one syllable to know how they are made up, we give meanings for individual syllables in the Vocabulary when it seems useful to do so. But be careful not to use the syllables in the meanings indicated unless you are sure the Chinese use them that way; some are combining forms rather than full words, and their use is restricted.
18. Coordinate items in succession are usually listed without intervening conjunctions and with or without pauses between them when spoken. In ordinary Chinese writing, that is in materials written in Chinese characters, they are generally separated by a special symbol which in Beginning Chinese Reader (p. 13) I have labelled the "enumerative comma." I have introduced this symbol into the present transcription text. Note that the use of the enumerative comma in contrast to the ordinary comma makes it possible to distinguish sentences which would otherwise be identical in writing but which are recognized in speech by quite different intonations, as in the following examples:

'Máo-Xiānsheng, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng yé-hǎo-ma? 'Mr. Mao, is Mr. Gao also well?'  
 'Máo-Xiānsheng, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng yé-hǎo-ma? 'Are Mr. Mao and Mr. Gao also well?'

Lesson 2 MEETING PEOPLE



"Nín-guìxìng?"

Dialogue: Mr. White, at a party, introduces himself to a Chinese gentleman.

- |       |   |    |  |
|-------|---|----|--|
| Bái : | Qǐng-wèn-Xiānsheng, 'nín-guìxìng?                                       |    | May I ask your name, Sir?                            |
| Qián: | Wǒ-xìng-Qián. Nín-shi 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ba?                               |    | My name is Qian. I take it you're Mr. King?          |
| Bái : | Bú-shi. Wǒ-xìng-Bái.  | 5  | No, my name is White.                                |
| Qián: | Oh, nín-shi 'Bái-Xiānsheng. Nín-shi 'Yīngguo-rén-ma?                    |    | Oh, you're Mr. White. Are you English?               |
| Bái : | Bú-shi. Wǒ-shi 'Měiguó-rén. Qǐng-wèn, nín-huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà-bu-huì? | 10 | No, I'm American. [May I ask,] do you speak English? |
| Qián: | Wǒ-'bú-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.                                |    | No. I can only speak Chinese.                        |



## VOCABULARY

ba	(final particle) (Note 7)
bù, bú, bu	not; no (AD)
guìxìng?	What is your name? [lit. Honorable surname?-from guì, expensive, valuable, honorable' plus xìng 'surname']
guó	country, nation (N) (Note 1)
huà	speech, language (N)
huì	able to, can (V)
jiù	only, merely (AD)
Měiguó	America, United States (PW) [lit. beautiful country]
qián	money (N) (also, a surname)
qǐng	invite, request, ask; please (TV)
qǐng-wèn	May I ask?
rén	person, man, people (N)
shì, shi	be, am, is, are (EV) (Notes 3-6)
shuō	speak, talk, say (TV)
wáng	king (N) (also, a surname)
wèn	inquire, ask (TV)
xìng	have such-and-such surname, be called, named (EV)
Yīngguó	England (PW) [lit. brave country]
Zhōngguó	China (PW) [lit. middle country]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| Wáng                             | King (a surname)       |
| 'Wáng-Xiānsheng                  | Mr. King               |
| 1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng, 'nín-hǎo-ma? | Mr. King, how are you? |
| xìng                             | be called              |
| xìng-Wáng                        | be called King         |
| 2. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.                 | My name is King.       |
| xìng-Bái                         | be called White        |
| 'bú-xìng-Bái                     | not be called White    |
| 3. Tā-'bú-xìng-Bái-ma?           | His name isn't White?  |

- shì  
bú-shi
4. Tā-bú-shi 'Wáng-Xiānsheng.
- Zhōngguo  
rén  
'Zhōngguo-rén
5. Tā-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.
- Yīngguo  
'Yīngguo-rén
6. Wǒ-bú-shi 'Yīngguo-rén.
- Měiguo  
'Měiguo-rén
7. Wǒmen-dōu-shi 'Měiguo-rén.
- shuō  
tā-shuō
8. Tā-shuō tā-xìng-Bái.
- huà  
'Zhōngguo-huà
9. Tāmen-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-ma?
- shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà  
shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà-ba!
10. Wǒmen-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-ba!
- huì  
'huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà
11. Wǒ-'bú-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.
- 'Yīngguo-huà  
'huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà
12. Nǐ-'huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà-ma?
- jiù  
'jiù-huì
13. Wǒ-'jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.
- Qián  
'Qián-Xiānsheng
14. 'Qián-Xiānsheng shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?
- be, am, are, is  
not be; am not, are not, is not
- He isn't Mr. King.
- China  
person  
Chinese person
- He's Chinese.
- England  
Englishman
- I'm not an Englishman. or  
I'm not English.
- America  
American person
- We're all Americans.
- say, speak  
he says, he speaks
- He says his name is White.
- language  
Chinese language
- Are they speaking Chinese?
- speak Chinese  
speak Chinese!
- Let's speak Chinese! [lit. We, speak Chinese!]
- know how to, be able to  
know how to speak Chinese,  
be able to speak Chinese
- I can't speak Chinese.
- English language  
know how to or be able to  
speak English
- Can you speak English?
- only  
only be able to, can only
- I can only speak Chinese.
- Qian  
Mr. Qian
- Is Mr. Qian English?

- |     |                                       |   |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---|
|     | shì<br>bú-shì                         | be, am, are, is<br>not be; am not, are not, is<br>not |
|     | shì-bu-shi?                           | is or is not?   |
| 15. | Tā-shì-bu-shi 'Yīngguo-rén?           | Is he English?  |
|     | shi-'Yīngguo-rén                      | be an Englishman, be Eng-<br>lish                     |
|     | bú-shì                                | is not  |
| 16. | Tā-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shi?           | Is he English?  |
|     | huì                                   | able to   |
|     | 'bú-huì                               | not be able to  |
|     | 'huì-bu-huì?                          | be able to or not be able to?<br>can or can't?        |
| 17. | Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà?    | Can you speak Chinese?                                |
|     | huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà                | able to speak Chinese                                 |
|     | 'bú-huì                               | not able to   |
| 18. | Nǐ-'huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-bu-huì?    | Can you speak Chinese?                                |
|     | qǐng                                  | request, ask  |
|     | qǐng-ta                               | request him, ask him                                  |
| 19. | Qǐng-ta-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà.            | Ask him to speak English.                             |
|     | wèn                                   | inquire, ask  |
|     | tā-wèn-wo                             | he asked me   |
| 20. | Tā-wèn-wo: "Nín-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?" | He asked me: "Are you English?"                       |
|     | qǐng-wèn                              | may I ask   |
| 21. | Qǐng-wèn, nín-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?    | May I ask, are you English?                           |
|     | guìxìng                               | honorable name  |
|     | 'nín-guìxìng?                         | (what is) your [honorable]<br>name?                   |
| 22. | Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-guìxìng?               | [May I ask,] what is your name?                       |

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 2.1. Sentences with Equational Verbs (Note 3 below)

S	EV	C
Subject	Equational Verb	Complement
Tā	shì	'Yīngguo-rén.
'He is an Englishman.'		

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.                                       | My name is King.                    |
| 2. Tā-shi 'Qián-Xiáojie-ma?                            | Is she Miss Qian?                   |
| 3. Tāmen 'dōu-xìng-Wáng-ma?                            | Are they all named King?            |
| 4. 'Wáng-Tàitai shi-'Yīngguo-rén.                      | Mrs. King is English.               |
| 5. Tā-'yě-xìng-Qián-ba?                                | I take it he's also called Qian?    |
| 6. Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén, bú-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.            | He's American, not English.         |
| 7. Tā-bú-xìng-Bái-ma?                                  | Isn't his name White?               |
| 8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng, 'Wáng-Tàitai 'dōu-shi-Yīngguó-rén. | Mr. and Mrs. King are both English. |
| 9. 'Gāo-Tàitai 'yě-shi-Zhōngguó-rén-ba?                | I suppose Mrs. Gao is also Chinese? |
| 10. Qǐng-wèn, nín-shi-'Yīngguó-rén-ma?                 | May I ask, are you English?         |

Pattern 2.2. Sentences with Auxiliary Verbs (Note 9 below)

S	AV	MV	O
Subject	Auxiliary Verb	Main Verb	Object
Tā	huì	shuō	'Yīngguó-huà.
'He can speak English.'			

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Tā-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ma?                         | Can he speak Chinese?                |
| 2. Tāmen-'bú-huì-shuō 'Yīngguó-huà.                      | They can't speak English.            |
| 3. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà.          | Mr. Qian can only speak Chinese.     |
| 4. Wǒ-huì-shuō 'Yīngguó-huà, 'bú-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà. | I can speak English but not Chinese. |
| 5. Tāmen-'dōu-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà.                    | They can all speak Chinese.          |

Pattern 2.3. Choice-type Questions (Notes 4 and 6 below)

S	V	<u>bu</u> V	(O or C)
Subject	Verb	Negative Verb	(Object or Complement)
Tā	shì	bu shì	'Yīngguo-rén?
'Is he an Englishman?'			

1. Tā-'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Is he well?
2. Nǐ-shì-bu-shì 'Qián-Tàitai? Are you Mrs. Qian?
3. Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà? Can you speak Chinese?
4. 'Wáng-Xiáojie shì-bu-shì-'Měiguó-rén? Is Miss King American?
5. Tāmen-'huì-bu-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà? Can they speak English?

Pattern 2.4. Split Choice-type Questions (Notes 5 and 6 below)

S	V	O or C	<u>bu</u> V
Subject	Verb	Object or Complement	Negative Verb
Nǐ	shì	'Yīngguo-rén	bu shì?
'Are you English?'			

1. Tā-shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng-bu-shì? Is he Mr. White?
2. Tāmen-'huì-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà-bu-huì? Can they speak Chinese?
3. Tāmen-shì-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shì? Are they English?
4. 'Gāo-Tàitai huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà-bu-huì? Can Mrs. Gao speak English?
5. 'Wáng-Xiáojie shì-'Měiguó-rén-bu-shì? Is Miss King American?

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 36 sentences (Note 3)

wǒ	-	xìng	Bái	-
nǐ	bu		Gāo	ma
tā			Wáng	

II: 36 sentences (Note 3)

wǒ	—	—	shi	Měiguó	rén
nǐ	men	bú		Yīngguó	
tā				Zhōngguó	

III: 18 sentences (Notes 4-6)

wǒ	—	shì-bu-shì	Měiguó	rén?
nǐ	men		Yīngguó	
tā			Zhōngguó	

IV: 18 sentences (Notes 5-6)

wǒ	—	shì	Měiguó	rén	bu-shì?
nǐ	men		Yīngguó		
tā			Zhōngguó		

V: 12 sentences (Notes 5-6)

wǒ	—	huì	shuō	Yīngguó	huà	bu-huì?
nǐ	men			Zhōngguó		
tā						

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The e-en, e-eng Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 6)

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| (a) gē gēn | (d) gè gèng |
| (b) kě kěn | (e) hé héng |
| (c) hē hèn | (f) lè lèng |

II. Lip-rounding versus No Lip-rounding  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 9)

- |              |               |             |              |                |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| (a) gù gè    | (d) guò gè    | (g) bō bā   | (j) guǎn gǎn | (m) guāng gāng |
| (b) kù kè    | (e) kuò kè    | (h) pò pà   | (k) kuǎn kǎn | (n) kuàng kàng |
| (c) hú hé    | (f) huó hé    | (i) mó má   | (l) huàn hàn | (o) huáng háng |
| (p) guài gài | (r) gòng gèng | (t) kǔn kěn |              |                |
| (q) huài hài | (s) hóng héng |             |              |                |

## SNATCHES OF CONVERSATION

Imagine that you overhear the following bits of conversation. Translate the excerpts and invent some concrete situations in which they might be said.

1. Xiānsheng-guìxìng?  
Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.  
Oh! 'Wó-yě-xìng-Wáng.
2. Tā-shì-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shi?  
Bú-shi. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén.
3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, zài jiàn.  
Zài jiàn, zài jiàn.
4. Qǐng-wèn-Xiáojie, 'nín-guìxìng?  
Wǒ-xìng-Gāo. Nín-ne?
5. Nǐmen-hǎo-ma?  
Wǒmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie.
6. Ní-hǎo?  
Hǎo.  
Tàitai-'yé-hǎo-ma?  
Yé-hǎo, xièxie-ni.
7. Nǐ-'huì-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà-bu-huì?  
Bú-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà.
8. Tā-bu-xìng-Bái-ma?  
Tā-'bú-xìng-Bái. Tā-xìng-Wáng.
9. Wǒ-wèn-ta: "Nǐ-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma?"  
Tā-shuō: "Bú-shi. Wǒ-shi-'Yīngguó-rén."
10. Nǐ-shi-'Gāo-Tàitai-ma?  
Bú-shi. Wǒ-xìng-Qián.
11. 'Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà-ma?  
'Wǒ-bú-huì. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-huì.
12. Nǐ-shi-Wáng-Xiáojie-ba?  
Bú-shi. Wǒ-shi-Wáng-Tàitai.
13. Qǐng-ta-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà.  
Tā-shuō-tā-'bú-huì.

## TO BE OR NOT TO BE?

Translate the following into Chinese. Be careful to translate 'is' with shì only when it is appropriate to do so.

1. He is very well.
2. He is Chinese.

3. He is able to speak Chinese.
4. He is named White.

### PUTTING ON AN ACT

Act out the following conversation in Chinese, with each person taking turns in the roles of A and B. For individual practice, have one person take both parts.

- A: May I ask, what is your name?  
 B: My name is King.  
 A: Mr. King, are you English?  
 B: No. I'm American.  
 A: Can you speak Chinese?  
 B: No.

### NOTES

1. Chinese names of countries are formed most often, though not always, with the syllable guo or guó 'country.' Zhōngguó 'China' is made up of the two syllables zhōng 'middle' and guó 'country' or 'kingdom' (with the second syllable appearing in the neutral tone)—a reflection of the ancient notion that China was at the center of the universe. In Yīngguó 'England,' the syllable yīng is an approximation of the sound Eng., and the měi of Měiguó 'America' is also a representation of sound, probably of the syllable -mer.\*
2. Titles are used as polite forms in address as the equivalent of 'you.' Thus one might say Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma? 'Sir, are you well?' or simply Xiānsheng-hǎo-ma? 'Is the gentleman well?'—that is, 'Are you well?' or 'How are you?'; Tàitai-hǎo-ma? 'How are you, madam?' Titles are also used in referring to persons who are not present: Tàitai-hǎo-ma? when addressing a husband would mean 'How is your wife?'
3. Equational verbs are verbs which connect or equate two nominal expressions on either side of the verb, like English 'is' in the sentence 'He is a man': here, 'is' equates 'he' with 'man.' The verb shì (often pronounced shi, with neutral tone) is the most common equational verb: Tā-shì-rén 'He is a man.' Remember that shì 'be' is used only to connect nominal expressions; it is not used in a sentence like Wó-hǎo 'I am well,' for hǎo is not a noun—it is a verb, meaning 'be well.'
4. Choice-type questions are formed by stating the affirmative and negative forms of a verb in rapid succession. For example, Tā-shì-bu-shì 'Yīngguó-ren?' '[lit.] He is/is not an Englishman?' is answered by choosing either shì 'is' or bú-shì 'is not.' These forms can be used by themselves as an answer, or they can form part of fuller replies, such as:

---

\* In addition to representing sounds, the syllables yīng and měi have complimentary connotations: yīng means 'brave' and měi means 'beautiful.'



Tā-'shì-'Yīngguo-rén. 'He is an Englishman.'

Tā-'bù-shì-'Yīngguo-rén. 'He is not an Englishman.'

5. Split choice-type questions are formed by placing the negative form of the verb at the end: Tā-shì-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shì? 'Is he an Englishman or not?' They are identical in meaning with the forms described in Note 4.
6. Stress in choice-type questions is on the first syllable: 'shì-bu-shì? Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì?
7. The final particle ba changes a statement to a request or suggestion, or adds a note of compliance or supposition:
 

Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ba. 'I suppose he's an American.'

Wōmen-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà'-ba. 'Let's talk Chinese.'

Hǎo-ba. 'It's all right (with me).' 'Fine!'

8. English 'yes' and 'no' are used as answers to questions containing all sorts of verbs, such as:

Are you well?	Yes.
Can you speak English?	Yes.
Are you an American?	Yes.
Is your name King?	Yes.
Do you have a notebook?	Yes.
Do you want a pen?	Yes.

Chinese does not answer these questions with any single word meaning 'yes' or 'no.' Instead, it answers them with the affirmative or negative form of the verb used in the question, much as if we said in English:

Can you speak English?	Can.
Do you have a notebook?	Have.

Since the six questions listed above would all be expressed with different verbs in Chinese, there would be six different ways of saying 'yes.' Here are the Chinese questions and possible 'yes' answers for the first three questions:

Ní-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?	Hǎo.
Nǐ-'huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà-bu-huì?	Huì.
Nǐ-shì-'Měiguó-rén-bu-shì?	Shì.

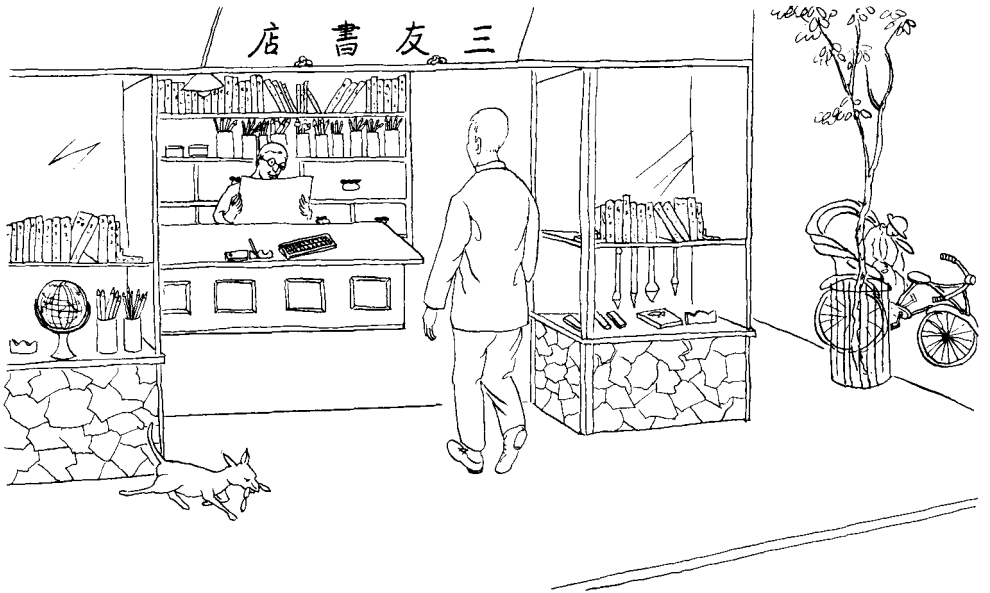
Be careful not to use shì and bù-shì for 'yes' and 'no' except when the question has shì or bù-shì as the main verb. (There is one situation, however, in which these forms do occur with any verb—when they are used as an initial affirmation or negation before the usual form. For example: Tā-huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà'-ma? . . . Shì, tā-huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà. 'Can he speak English? . . . Yes, he can speak English.')

9. In Chinese, as in English, the auxiliary verb precedes the main verb:
 

Tā-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà. 'He can speak English.'
10. Note the differences in meaning conveyed by changes in word order in the following expressions:
 

bù-dōu 'not all'	dōu-bù 'all not, none'
bù-hěn 'not very'	hěn-bù 'very not'
Wōmen bù-dōu-shì-Měiguó-rén. 'Not all of us are Americans.'	
Wōmen dōu-bù-shì-Měiguó-rén. 'None of us are Americans.'	
Tā-bù-hěn-hǎo. 'He's not very good.'	
Tā-hěn-bù-hǎo. 'He's very bad.'	

Lesson 3 SHOPPING AT A BOOKSTORE (1)

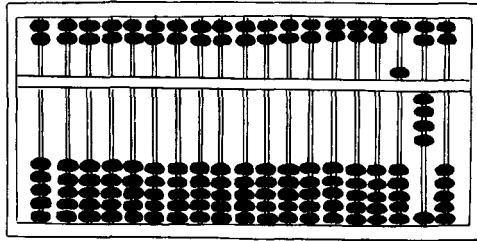


“Wǒ-yào-mǎi-shū.”

Dialogue: A clerk, Mr. Mao, helps Mr. White make his purchases.

- |  |    |  |
|--|----|--|
| Máo : Xiānsheng, nín-mǎi-shénmo?                       |    | What will you have, sir?   |
| Bái : Wǒ-yào-mǎi-shū. 'Nèiběn-shū 'duōshao-qián?       |    | I'd like to buy (some) books. (Points to a book.) How much is that book? |
| Máo : 'Néiběn?   | 5  | Which one?   |
| Bái : Nèiběn-'Zhōngguo-shū.                            |    | That Chinese book.   |
| Máo : 'Zhèiběn-shū shì-liǎng-kuài-èrmáo-qián.          |    | This book is two dollars and twenty cents.                               |
| Bái : Hǎo, wó-mǎi-'liángběn.                           |    | Fine, I'll buy two copies.   |
| Máo : Nín-'hái-yào mǎi-shénmo-ne?                      | 10 | What else do you want to buy?  |
| Bái : Nǐmen-mài-'bǐ-bu-mài?                            |    | Do you sell pens?  |
| Máo : Mài. Wǒmen-mài 'Zhōng-guo-bǐ, yě-mài 'wàiguó-bǐ. | 15 | Yes. We sell Chinese pens, and also foreign pens.                        |

Bái : Yìzhī-máobǐ 'duōshao-qián?		How much for a Chinese writing brush?
Máo: Yìzhī liǎngmáo-qián. Nín-yào mái-'jǐzhī?		They're twenty cents each. How many do you want to buy?
Bái : Sān-sìzhī. Bù. Wó-mái-'wǔzhī.	20	Three or four. No. I'll buy five.
Máo: Wǔzhī yíkuài-qián.		Five—one dollar.
Bái : Yígòng 'duōshao-qián?		How much altogether?
Máo: Liángběn-shū, sìkuài-sì-máo-qián. Wǔzhī-máobǐ, yíkuài-qián. Yígòng wǔ-kuài-sì.	25	Two books, four dollars and forty cents. Five Chinese writing brushes, a dollar. Altogether, five-forty.



"wǔkuài-sì"

## VOCABULARY

běn	volume, copy (M)
bǐ	pen, pencil (N)
duōshao	how many? how much? [lit. many few <u>or</u> much little]
èr	two (NU) (Note 10)
hái	additionally, in addition, still, more (AD)
jǐ	how many? (NU) (Note 9)
kuài	lump; dollar* (M)

\* An earlier form of money in China consisted of silver chunks or lumps of varying sizes. This use of kuài was extended to minted silver dollars and still later to paper currency. (See also Supplementary Lesson 3, Note 1)

liǎng	two, a couple (NU) (Note 10)
mǎi	buy (TV)
mài	sell, sell for (TV) (Note 18)
máo	hair (N); feather (also, a surname)
máo	dime (M) (Note 12)
máobǐ	Chinese writing brush (N) [lit. hair pen]
nà, nèi	that (thing) (SP) (Note 19)
nǎ, něi	which (thing)? (SP) (Note 19)
sān	three (NU)
shénmo, shénme	what (thing)?
shū	book (N)
sì	four (NU)
wàiguó	foreign country (PW) [lit. outside country]
wǔ	five (NU)
yào	want (TV)
yī, yí, yì	one (NU) (Note 15)
yígòng	altogether, in all (MA) [lit. one together]
zhè, zhèi	this (thing) (SP) (Note 19)
zhī	(measure for long, slender objects)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| zhè<br>shénmo?     | this (thing)<br>what (thing)? |
| 1. Zhè-shì-shénmo? | What is this?                 |
| zhèi<br>shū        | this (thing)<br>book          |
| 2. Zhèi-shì-shū.   | This is a book.               |
| nà<br>shì-shénmo?  | that (thing)<br>is what?      |
| 3. Nà-shì-shénmo?  | What is that?                 |

- |     |   |   |
|-----|---|---|
| 4.  | bǐ<br>Zhōngguo-bǐ<br>Nà-shi-'Zhōngguo-bǐ.                 | pen<br>Chinese pen<br>That's a Chinese pen.                             |
| 5.  | nèi<br>nèi-yě-shi<br>Nèi-'yě-shi-Zhōngguo-bǐ.             | that (thing)<br>that also is<br>That's a Chinese pen, too.              |
| 6.  | máo<br>máobǐ<br>Zhèi-shi-'máobǐ.                          | hair<br>Chinese writing brush<br>This is a writing brush.               |
| 7.  | qián<br>'Qián-Tàitai<br>'Qián-Tàitai-hǎo-ma?              | money (also, a surname)<br>Mrs. Qian<br>Is Mrs. Qian well?              |
| 8.  | máo<br>'Máo-Xiānsheng<br>'Máo-Xiānsheng, 'nín-hǎo-ma?     | hair (also, a surname)<br>Mr. Mao<br>How are you, Mr. Mao?              |
| 9.  | máobǐ<br>shi-máobǐ<br>Zhèi-shi-'máobǐ-bu-shi?             | Chinese writing brush<br>is a writing brush<br>Is this a writing brush? |
| 10. | yào<br>yào-shénmo?<br>Tā-yào-'shénmo?                     | want<br>want what?<br>What does he want?                                |
| 11. | běn<br>zhèiběn-shū<br>Wǒ-yào 'zhèiběn-shū.                | volume (also, measure for<br>books)<br>this book<br>I want this book.   |
| 12. | zhī<br>zhèizhī-bǐ<br>Wǒ-yào 'zhèizhī-bǐ.                  | (measure for long objects)<br>this pen<br>I want this pen.              |
| 13. | nèiběn-shū<br>Tā-yào 'nèiběn-shū.                         | that book<br>He wants that book.  |
| 14. | yī<br>máo<br>yìmáo-qián<br>Zhèizhī-bǐ 'yìmáo-qián.        | one<br>dime<br>one dime<br>This pen (is) a dime.                        |
| 15. | liǎng<br>liǎngmáo-qián<br>Nèizhī-bǐ yě-shi-liǎngmáo-qián. | two<br>twenty cents<br>That pen is also twenty cents.                   |
| 16. | sān<br>sānmáo-qián<br>Tā-yào 'sānmáo-qián.                | three<br>thirty cents<br>He wants thirty cents.                         |

- |     |   |   |
|-----|---|---|
| 17. | sì<br>sì máo-qian<br>Zhèizhī-máobǐ 'sì máo-qian.                    | four<br>forty cents<br>This writing brush is forty cents.                         |
| 18. | wǔ<br>wǔ máo-qian<br>Zhèibēn-shū 'yě-shi-wǔ máo-qian-ma?            | five<br>fifty cents<br>Is this book also fifty cents?                             |
| 19. | kuài<br>yī kuài-qian<br>Zhèi-shi-'yī kuài-qian.                     | dollar<br>one dollar<br>This is one dollar.                                       |
| 20. | liǎng<br>liǎng kuài-qian<br>'Nèibēn-shū 'yě-shi-liǎng kuài-qian.    | two<br>two dollars<br>That book is also two dollars.                              |
| 21. | wúběn-shū<br>Tā-yě-yào wúběn-shū.                                   | five books<br>He also wants five books.   |
| 22. | jǐ?<br>jībēn-shū?<br>Nǐ-yào-'jībēn-shū?                             | how many?<br>how many books?<br>How many books do you want?                       |
| 23. | wǔkuài-qian<br>èrmáo-qian<br>'Zhèizhī-bǐ wǔkuài-èrmáo-qian.         | five dollars<br>twenty cents<br>This pen is five dollars (and) twenty cents.      |
| 24. | wǔkuài-èr<br>Nèizhī-bǐ 'yě-shi-wǔkuài-èr.                           | five-twenty<br>That pen is also five-twenty.                                      |
| 25. | něi?<br>nèizhī bǐ?<br>Nǐ-yào 'nèizhī-bǐ?                            | which (thing)?<br>which pen?<br>Which pen do you want?                            |
| 26. | liǎngzhī-bǐ<br>'néi-liǎngzhī-bǐ?<br>Tā-yào 'néi-liǎngzhī-bǐ?        | two pens<br>which two pens?<br>Which two pens does he want?                       |
| 27. | duōshao?<br>duōshao-qian?<br>Zhèibēn-shū 'duōshǎo-qian?             | how much?<br>how much money?<br>How much is this book?                            |
| 28. | yí gòng<br>yí gòng 'duōshao-qian?<br>Shū, bǐ 'yí gòng-duōshao-qian? | altogether<br>how much altogether?<br>How much are the books and pens altogether? |
| 29. | hái<br>hái-yào<br>Tā-'hái-yào-shénmo?                               | in addition<br>want in addition<br>What more does he want?                        |

- |  |                                       |  |  |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| <p>30. Nǐ -yào-mǎi-shū-ma?</p>         | <p>mǎi<br/>mǎi-shū</p>                | <p>buy<br/>buy books</p>                             | <p>Do you want to buy some books?</p>      |
| <p>31. Tāmen-'mài-shū-ma?</p>          | <p>mài<br/>mài-shū</p>                | <p>sell<br/>sell books</p>                           | <p>Do they sell books?</p>                 |
| <p>32. Tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén-ma?</p>      | <p>wàiguó<br/>wàiguó-rén</p>          | <p>foreign country<br/>foreign person</p>            | <p>Is he a foreigner?</p>                  |
| <p>33. Wǒ-'bú-huì-shuō wàiguó-huà.</p> | <p>wàiguó-huà<br/>shuō-wàiguó-huà</p> | <p>foreign language<br/>speak a foreign language</p> | <p>I can't speak a foreign language.</p>   |
| <p>34. Tā-yào-mǎi 'sì-wúběn-shū.</p>   | <p>sìběn-shū<br/>wúběn-shū</p>        | <p>four books<br/>five books</p>                     | <p>He wants to buy four or five books.</p> |
| <p>35. Zhèiběn 'yé-hén-hǎo.</p>        | <p>zhèiběn-shū<br/>zhèiběn</p>        | <p>this book<br/>this one</p>                        | <p>This one is also very good.</p>         |

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 3.1. Noun Phrases with Numbers and Measures  
(Notes 2-6 below)

NU	M	N
Number	Measure	Noun
yì	běn	shū
'one book'		

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. liǎngzhī-bǐ</p> <p>2. liǎngmáo-qián</p> <p>3. sānkuài-qián</p> <p>4. wúběn-shū</p> <p>5. 'jǐzhī-bǐ?</p> | <p>two pens</p> <p>two dimes; twenty cents</p> <p>three dollars</p> <p>five books</p> <p>how many pens?</p> |
|---|---|

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 6. 'jíbēn-shū?                        | how many books?                                  |
| 7. liǎngzhī-máobǐ                     | two Chinese writing brushes                      |
| 8. sìkuài-èrmáo-qián                  | four dollars and twenty cents                    |
| 9. Zhèi-shí-sānkuài-qián.             | This is three dollars.                           |
| 10. Wǒ-yào-wǔzhī-bǐ.                  | I want five pens.                                |
| 11. Tā-yào sìkuài-sānmáo-qián.        | He wants four dollars and thirty cents.          |
| 12. Yìzhī-máobǐ liǎngmáo-qián.        | One writing brush is twenty cents.               |
| 13. Tāmen-yào-sānbēn-shū.             | They want three books.                           |
| 14. Nǐ-yào-'jíbēn-shū?                | How many books do you want?                      |
| 15. Bǐ 'yíkuài-èr, shū 'liǎngkuài-èr. | The pen is a dollar twenty, the book two-twenty. |

Pattern 3.2. Noun Phrases with Specifiers and Measures (Note 7 below)

	SP	M	N
	Specifier	Measure	Noun
	zhèi	běn	shū
	'this book'		
1. nèizhī-máobǐ			that Chinese writing brush
2. nèizhī-bǐ			that pen
3. zhèibēn-shū			this book
4. nèibēn-shū			that book
5. Tā-yào-'zhèibēn-shū-ma?			Does he want this book?
6. Zhèizhī-bǐ 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?			How's this pen?
7. Zhèizhī-bǐ 'jǐkuài-qián?			How much [lit. how many dollars] is this pen?
8. Nèizhī-bǐ 'yě-shí-sānkuài-qián.			That pen is also three dollars.
9. Zhèizhī-máobǐ 'bù-hén-hǎo.			This writing brush isn't very good.
10. Nǐ-yào-'zhèibēn-shū-ma?			Do you want this book?

Pattern 3.3. Noun Phrases with Specifiers, Numbers, and Measures (Note 7 below)

	SP	NU	M	N
	Specifier	Number	Measure	Noun
	zhèi	sān	běn	shū
	'these three books'			
1. nèi-liǎngkuài-qián				those two dollars
2. 'nèi-sānzhī-bǐ?				which three pens?
3. zhèi-wǔmáo-qián				this fifty cents
4. 'nèi-sìbēn-shū?				which four books?



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. zhèi-liǎngzhī-máobǐ                             | these two Chinese writing brushes                   |
| 6. Nǐ-yào 'néi-liángběn-shū?                       | Which two books do you want?                        |
| 7. Zhèi-'sìzhī-bǐ 'yígòng-duōshao-qíán?            | How much altogether are these four pens?            |
| 8. Nèi-sānzhī-máobǐ 'dōu-hén-hǎo.                  | Those three writing brushes are all very good.      |
| 9. Zhèi-sānběn-shū 'yígòng-wǔ-kuài-qíán.           | These three books are five dollars in all.          |
| 10. 'Wáng-Tàitai-shuō tā-yào-'zhèi-liǎngzhī-máobǐ. | Mrs. Wang says she wants these two writing brushes. |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 20 sentences

zhè	shi	shénmo?
zhèi		shū
nà		bǐ
nèi		máobǐ
		qíán

II: 30 sentences

wǒ	—	yào	shénmo?
nǐ	men		shū
tā			bǐ
			máobǐ
			qíán

III: 12 phrases (Note 7)

zhè	-zhī bǐ
zhèi	-běn shū
nà	-zhī máobǐ
nèi	

IV: 75 phrases (Notes 2-6, 10)

yí	-kuài	yī	—
liǎng		èr	máo
sān		sān	máo-qíán
sì		sì	
wǔ		wǔ	

V: 72 Sentences (Notes 2-6)

zhèi shi	yì	-běn shū
wǒ yào	liǎng	-zhī bǐ
tā yào	sān	-kuài qíán
	sì	-máo qíán
	wǔ	
	jǐ	

## VI: 72 phrases

zhèi	—	-běn shū
nèi	yī	-zhī bǐ
nèi	liǎng	-máo qián
	sān	-kuài qián
	sì	
	wǔ	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Non-Palatals versus Palatals

(a) bǎo	biǎo	(e) bàn	biàn
(b) pào	piào	(f) pān	piān
(c) máo	miáo	(g) màn	miàn
(d) dào	diào	(h) dàn	diàn
(i) náng	niáng	(k) dé	dié
(j) láng	liáng	(l) tè	tiè

II. The i-in, i-ing Contrast

(See The Sounds of Chinese, 14)

(a) lí	lín	(d) ní	nín	(g) dì	dìng
(b) bì	bìn	(e) mǐ	mǐn	(h) tí	tíng
(c) pǐ	pǐn	(f) lì	lìn	(i) mì	mìng

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

- Zhèiběn-'Zhōngguo-shū 'duōshao-qián?  
'Nèiběn-shū wǔkuài-sì. How much is this Chinese book?  
That book is five-forty.
- Zhèi-shi-shénmo?  
Nà-shi-máobǐ. What's this?  
That's a Chinese writing brush.
- Nǐmen mài-'shū-bu-mài?  
Wǒmen-'jiù-mài 'Zhōngguo-shū.  
'Bú-mài 'wàiguó-shū. Do you sell books?  
We only sell Chinese books.  
We don't sell foreign books.
- 'Wáng-Tàitai huì-'shuō-'wàiguó-huà-ma?  
Tā-'bú-huì. Can Mrs. Wang speak a foreign language?  
No. [lit. She can't.]
- Tā-yào 'duōshao-qián?  
Tā-yào 'sānkuài-qián. How much money does he want?  
He wants three dollars.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. Nǐ -yào-mǎi jǐ zhī -bǐ?<br>Qǐng-wèn, duōshao-qián-yìzhī?       | How many pens do you want to buy?<br>(May I ask,) how much for one?             |
| 7. Zhè-'yí gòng 'duōshao-qián?<br>'Yí gòng sānkuài-yī.            | How much is this altogether?<br>Altogether (it's) three-ten.                    |
| 8. Zhè-shì-'Měiguó-bǐ-bú-shì?<br>Bú-shì. Shì-'Yīngguó-bǐ.         | Is this an American pen?<br>No. It's an English pen.                            |
| 9. Zhèzhī-bǐ 'duōshao-qián?<br>Sìkuài-qián. Zhèzhī-bǐ hén-hǎo.    | How much is this pen?<br>Four dollars. This pen is very fine.                   |
| 10. Tàitai-yào-mǎi-shénmo?<br>Tā-yào-mǎi-shū.                     | What does the lady want to buy?<br>She wants to buy some books.                 |
| 11. Zhèzhī-bǐ wǔkuài-qián. Ní-mǎi-yìzhī-ma?<br>Xièxie, wǒ-bù-mǎi. | This pen is five dollars. Are you buying one?<br>(No) thanks, I'm not [buying]. |

## TRUE OR FALSE

Read each of the following statements aloud, then tell whether it is true or false.

1. Yìběn-shū sānkuài-qián. Yìzhī-máobǐ liǎngmáo-qián. 'Yí gòng-wǔkuài-qián.
2. Wǒ-yào-mǎi liǎngzhī-'Zhōngguó-bǐ, yìzhī-'wàiguó-bǐ. Wǒ-'yí gòng mǎi-'sānzhī-bǐ.
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-yào-mǎi sānběn-'Zhōngguó-shū.
4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō tāmen-mǎi 'wàiguó-bǐ.
5. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-yào-mǎi-shū, 'bú-yào-mái-bǐ.
6. Wó-mǎi-'yìběn-shū. Ní-mǎi-'liángběn-shū. Wǒmen-'yí gòng mǎi-'sìběn-shū.
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xìng-Wáng.

## WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Put yourself in the role of both customer and clerk and make up (either orally or in written form) a dialogue appropriate for the following situation:

A clerk in a store greets you by name as Mr. White and asks what you want to buy. You ask if they sell foreign books. The clerk answers that they don't, and adds that they only sell Chinese books. You ask if they sell foreign pens. He says they sell foreign pens, and also Chinese pens. You say you want to

buy a foreign pen, point to one, and ask how much it is. He mentions a price. You tell him that that's fine and that you'll buy one. The clerk thanks you and says good-bye.

## NOTES

1. The first five Chinese numbers, plus the interrogation number, are:

yī 'one'	sān 'three'	wǔ 'five'
èr 'two'	sì 'four'	jǐ 'how many?'

2. A grammatical element that follows a number is a MEASURE: in yíkuài 'one lump,' for example, kuài is a measure.
3. An element that can occur directly after a measure is a NOUN: the expression yíkuài-qían 'one dollar' [lit. 'one lump (of) money'] consists of the number yī 'one' plus the measure kuài 'lump' plus the noun qían 'money.'
4. Often, specific measures are used with certain nouns: zhī with the names of long slender objects, běn 'volume, copy' with shū 'books,' and so on. It is advisable to memorize the appropriate measure for each noun you learn.
5. The number or quantity of a Chinese noun is expressed not by a change in the noun itself but by the use of different expressions of amount before the noun: compare English 'three head of cattle,' 'four head of cattle.' Examples:

sānkuài-qían 'three dollars' [lit. 'three lumps money']  
 sìkuài-qían 'four dollars' [lit. 'four lumps money']  
 sānběn-shū 'three (volumes) books'  
 sìběn-shū 'four (volumes) books'

A measure must always intervene between a number and a noun (as, sānběn-shū); a number cannot precede a noun directly.

6. Different measures are often used with the same noun, just as with English 'one grain of rice,' 'two bowls of rice,' 'three pounds of rice.' The measures kuài 'lump; dollar' and máo 'dime' are both used before qían 'money':

sānkuài-qían 'three dollars'  
 sānmáo-qían 'three dimes'  
 sānkuài-sānmáo-qían 'three dollars (and) thirty cents'

7. A SPECIFIER is a word which can precede or replace a number before a measure. Examples include zhèi 'this,' nèi 'that,' and the question word něi 'which?':

zhèiběn-shū 'this book'  
 nèiběn-shū 'that book'  
 něiběn-shū 'which book?'  
 zhèi-sānběn-shū 'these three books'

The alternate forms zhè for zhèi and nà for nèi are used as subjects in expressions not containing a number or measure:

Zhè-shi-shū. 'This is a book.'

8. Question words are used to form questions which cannot be answered by 'yes' or 'no.' In this, they resemble English 'how many?' 'who?' etc. Unlike these English expressions, however, they do not change the order of words in the sentence: Chinese question words occupy the same position in the sentence as the word which replaces them in the answer.

9. There are two differences between the question words duōshao 'how many? how much?' and jǐ 'how many?'. First, duōshao is used as either a noun or a measure, whereas jǐ 'how many?' is used only before a measure. Second, duōshao suggests either an indefinite amount or a large number, whereas jǐ suggests less than ten:

duōshao-qián? 'how much money?' (an indefinite, or large, amount)  
jǐkuài-qián? 'how many dollars?' (this question anticipates an answer of only a few dollars)

10. The number for 'two' before a measure is most often liǎng 'two, a couple.' The number èr is used in compound numbers (see next lesson), before máo 'dime,' and (optionally) when there is more than one measure:

liǎngkuài èrmáo-qián 'two dollars (and) twenty cents'

11. A noun may be omitted after a measure if it can be understood from the context:

Nǐ-yào jíbēn-shū? 'How many books do you want?'  
Wǒ-yào-sānběn. 'I want three.'

The measure, on the other hand, may NOT be omitted.

12. The measure máo 'dime' may be omitted from money expressions when they are compound: 'three dollars and forty cents,' for example, is either sānkuài-sìmáo-qián or sānkuài-sì or simply sānkuài-sì. With 'two,' however, máo may be omitted only after èr, not after liǎng: for example, sānkuài-liǎngmáo-qián can only be abbreviated as sānkuài-èr.

13. English expressions like 'three or four' require no connecting form in Chinese: sān-sìbēn-shū 'three (or) four books.'

14. The question words duōshao 'how many? how much?' and shénmo 'what?' are used either before a noun or independently:

Tā-yào shénmo-shū? 'What book does he want?' [lit. 'He wants what book?']

Tā-yào-shénmo? 'What does he want?'

Tā-yào-duōshao-qián? 'How much money does he want?'

Tā-yào-duōshao? 'How much does he want?'

15. The number 'one' is pronounced yī in isolation, yí before a fourth tone (yíkuài), and yì before other tones. When it is unstressed, it often becomes neutral in tone; if it is attached to an expression in object position, it may even disappear completely.

16. Some Chinese sentences occur without verbs:

Zhèiběn-shū wǔkuài-qián. 'This book (is) five dollars.'

17. The particle ne often expresses the continuation of an action, especially if the sentence also contains the adverb hái 'still':

Tā-hái-shuō-huà-ne. 'He's still talking.'

18. Note the following uses of mài 'to sell, to sell for':

Tāmen-mài-shū-ma? 'Do they sell books?'

Zhèiběn-shū mài-duōshao-qián? 'How much does this book sell for?'

19. The Specifiers nǎ, nà, and zhè usually become něi, nèi, and zhèi before Measure words:

Nà-shì-shénmo? 'What's that?'

Nèiběn-shū duōshao-qián? 'How much is that book?'

Lesson 4 SHOPPING AT A BOOKSTORE (2)



“ 'Yígòng-duōshao-qián?’ ”

Dialogue: Mr. Mao helps Mr. White make some further purchases.

Máo: Xiānsheng, nín-mǎi-shénmo?

Sir, what will you have?

Bái: Wó-mǎi-yíge-běnzǐ. Zhèige-běnzǐ 'duōshao-qián-yìběn?

I'd like to buy a notebook. How much for one of these notebooks?

Máo: 'Nèige-běnzǐ liùmáo-wǔfēn-qián-yìběn.

5

That notebook is sixty-five cents.

Bái: Wó-mǎi-'yìběn.

I'll buy one.

Máo: Hǎo. Nín-'hái-mǎi-shénmo?

Fine. What else will you have?

Bái: Yǒu-'mòshuǐ-ma?

Do you have any ink?

Máo: Nín-mǎi 'shénmo-yánse-mòshuǐ?

10

What color ink do you want?

Bái: Yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ-ma?

Do you have red ink?

Máo: 'Méi-yǒu. Yǒu-'hēi-mòshuǐ, 'lán-mòshuǐ.

No. We have black ink and blue ink.

Bái: Yǒu-'qiānbǐ-méi-you?

Do you have pencils?

Máo: Qiānbǐ, gāngbǐ, máobǐ—wǒmen-'dōu-yǒu.

15

Pencils, fountain pens, writing brushes—we have them all.

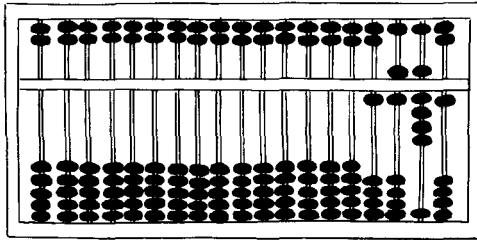
Bái: 'Qiānbǐ duōshao-qián-yìzhī?

How much [each] are the pencils?

- Máo : 'Jiǔfēn-qián-yìzhī.  
 Bái : Wó-mǎi-'liùzhī-qiānbǐ.  
 Máo : Liùzhī-qiānbǐ: 'liù-jiú-wǔmáo-sì.  
 Bái : Gāngbǐ duōshao-qián-yìzhī?  
 Máo : Nín-mái-'něizhī?  
 Bái : 'Zhèizhī.  
 Máo : 'Zhèizhī liǎngkuài-bāmáo-liù. Nín-mǎi-'máobǐ-ma?  
 Bái : Bù-mǎi, wó-yǒu. Nǐmen-yǒu-dìtú-ma?  
 Máo : Yǒu. 'Zhōngguo-dìtú, 'Měiguó-dìtú, wǒmen-'dōu-yǒu. Nín-mǎi 'něiguó-dìtú?  
 Bái : Wó-mǎi-'Zhōngguo-dìtú.  
 Máo : 'Zhèige-dìtú-hén-hǎo. Nín-'mǎi-yìzhāng-ba.  
 Bái : 'Duōshao-qián-yìzhāng?  
 Máo : Liǎngkuài-jiǔmáo-qī-yì-zhāng.  
 Bái : Oh, wǒ-'hái-yào-mǎi. Wǒ-hái-mǎi 'wūshízhāng-zhǐ. 'Duōshao-qián?  
 Máo : Sìmáo-jiǔfēn-qián.  
 Bái : Yǒu-'zìdiǎn-ma?  
 Máo : Yǒu.  
 Bái : Wǒ-yào-yìběn-'Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn. 'Duōshao-qián?  
 Máo : Yíkuài-bāmáo-qián.  
 Bái : Yìběn-'Yīngwén-zìdiǎn 'duōshao-qián?  
 Máo : Liǎngkuài-jiǔmáo-qián.  
 Bái : Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn-ne?  
 Máo : Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn sìkuài-qīmáo-qián.  
 Bái : 'Yígòng-duōshao-qián?
- Nine cents each.  
 I'll buy six [pencils].  
 20 Six pencils: six nines (are) fifty-four cents.  
 How much are the fountain pens?  
 Which are you buying?  
 This one.  
 25 This one is two dollars (and) eighty-six cents. Would you like to buy some writing brushes?  
 No, I have some. Do you have any maps?  
 30 Yes. We have both Chinese [maps] and American maps. What country do you want a map of? [lit. What country map do you buy?]  
 I'd like to buy a map of China.  
 35 This map is excellent. [I suggest you buy one.]  
 How much for one?  
 Two dollars (and) ninety-seven cents.  
 40 Oh, I want to buy something more. I'd also like to buy fifty sheets of paper. How much (are they)?  
 Forty-nine cents.  
 Do you have any dictionaries?  
 Yes.  
 45 I'd like a Chinese dictionary. How much is it?  
 A dollar (and) eighty cents.  
 How much for an English dictionary?  
 50 Two dollars and ninety cents.  
 How about a Chinese-English dictionary?  
 A Chinese-English dictionary is four dollars and seventy cents.  
 How much altogether?



Máo: Běnzǐ liùmáo-wǔ, 'qiānbǐ wǔmáo-sì, 'gāngbǐ liǎngkuài-bāmáo-liù, dìtú liǎngkuài-jiǔmáo-qī, zhǐ sìmáo-jiǔ, 'Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn yíkuài-bā, 'Yīngwén-zìdiǎn liǎngkuài-jiǔ, 'Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn sùkuài-qī . . . 'Yí gòng shíliùkuài-jiǔmáo-yìfēn-qían.	55	Notebook 65 cents, pencils 54 cents, fountain pen \$2.86, map \$2.97, paper 49 cents, Chinese dictionary \$1.80, English dictionary \$2.90, Chinese-English dictionary \$4.70. (Mao checks up each item on his abacus as he speaks, so he is now ready to announce immediately.) Altogether \$16.91.
Bái : Hǎo.	60	O. K.
Máo: 'Xièxie-nin, 'zàijiàn.	65	Thank you, good-bye.
Bái : Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.		Good-bye.



“Shíliùkuài-jiǔmáo-yìfēn-qían”

### VOCABULARY

bā	eight (NU)
běnzǐ	notebook (N)
dìtú	map (N) [lit. land chart]
fēn	part; cent (M) (Note 7)
gāngbǐ	pen (fountain pen or pen with detachable point) (N) [lit. steel pen]
ge	(general measure: see Notes 3 and 4)
hēi	black (SV)
hóng	red (SV)
jiǔ	nine (NU)
lán	blue (SV); (also, a surname)
liù	six (NU)
méi	not (AD) (Note 8)

mòshuǐ	ink (N) [lit. ink water]
qī	seven (NU)
qiānbǐ	pencil (N) [lit. lead pencil]
shí	ten (NU) (Notes 5-6)
wén	language, literature (N) (Notes 1-2)
yánse	color (N) [lit. pigment color; yán is also a surname]
Yīngwén	English language and literature (N)
yǒu	have (V) (Note 8)
zhāng	(measure for flat objects; also, a surname)
zhǐ	paper (N)
Zhōngwén	Chinese language and literature (N)
zìdiǎn	dictionary (N) [lit. character book]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| yǒu<br>yǒu-shū                          | have<br>have a book                                       |
| 1. Ní-yǒu-shū-ma?                       | Do you have a book?                                       |
| méi-yǒu<br>méi-yóu-bǐ                   | not have<br>not have a pen                                |
| 2. Wó-'yě-méi-yóu-bǐ.                   | I don't have a pen either [lit. I also don't have a pen]. |
| qiānbǐ                                  | pencil  |
| 3. Ní-yóu-'jǐzhī-qiānbǐ?                | How many pencils do you have?                             |
| gāngbǐ                                  | [steel] pen   |
| 4. Zhèizhī-'gāngbǐ yíkuài-qián.         | This pen is one dollar.                                   |
| liǎngge<br>nèi-liǎngge-rén              | two of something<br>those two people                      |
| 5. Nèi-liǎngge-rén 'dōu-shi-wàiguó-rén. | Both of those people are foreigners.                      |
| běnzǐ<br>sānge-běnzǐ                    | notebook<br>three notebooks                               |
| 6. Wó-yǒu-'sānge-běnzǐ.                 | I have three notebooks.                                   |
| wén<br>Zhōngwén                         | language and literature<br>Chinese language               |
| 7. Tāmen-'jiù-mài 'Zhōngwén-shū.        | They sell only Chinese books.                             |
| Yīngwén                                 | English language  |

- Yīngwén-shū  
8. Zhèibēn-'Yīngwén-shū 'duōshao-qián?  
book in English  
How much is this English-language book?
- zìdiǎn  
Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn  
9. Nǐmen-mài-'Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn-bu-mài?  
dictionary  
Chinese dictionary  
Do you sell Chinese dictionaries?
- Zhōng-Yīng  
Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn  
10. Zhèibēn-Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn 'duōshao-qián?  
Chinese-English  
Chinese-English dictionary  
How much is this Chinese-English dictionary?
- dìtú  
Zhōngguo-dìtú  
11. Zhè-shi-'Zhōngguo-dìtú.  
map  
map of China  
This is a map of China.
- zhāng  
sānzhāng-dìtú  
12. Sānzhāng-dìtú 'yíkuài-wǔ.  
(measure for flat objects)  
three maps  
Three maps are a dollar fifty.
- 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng  
13. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a?  
Mr. Zhang  
How are you, Mr. Zhang?
- zhǐ  
yìzhāng-zhǐ  
14. Wǒ-'jiù-yǒu-yìzhāng-zhǐ.  
paper  
one sheet of paper  
I have only one sheet of paper.
- mòshuǐ  
15. Zhèige-mòshuǐ-'hén-hǎo.  
ink  
This ink is excellent.
- hēi  
hēi-mòshuǐ  
16. Wǒ-'méi-yǒu hēi-mòshuǐ.  
black  
black ink  
I don't have any black ink.
- hóng  
hóng-mòshuǐ  
17. Nǐ-yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ-méi-yǒu?  
red  
red ink  
Do you have any red ink?
- lán  
lán-mòshuǐ  
18. Wǒmen-yé-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ.  
blue  
blue ink  
We also have blue ink.
- yánse  
shénmo-yánse?  
19. Zhèige-mòshuǐ shi-'shénmo-yánse?  
color  
what color?  
What color is this ink?
- fēn  
wǔfēn-qián  
20. Yìzhī-qiānbǐ 'wǔfēn-qián.  
cent  
five cents  
One pencil is five cents.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 21. Wó-yǒu-liùběn-'Zhōngwén-shū.<br>liù<br>liùběn-shū          | six<br>six books<br>I have six Chinese books.                                     |
| 22. Qīzhī-bǐ 'sānmáo-qián.<br>qī<br>qīzhī-bǐ                   | seven<br>seven pens<br>Seven pens are thirty cents.                               |
| 23. Wó-yǒu 'qī-bākuài-qián.<br>bā<br>bākuài-qián               | eight<br>eight dollars<br>I have seven or eight dollars.                          |
| 24. Sìzhāng 'sānmáo-jiǔ.<br>jiǔ<br>sānmáo-jiǔ                  | nine<br>thirty-nine cents<br>Four sheets are thirty-nine cents.                   |
| 25. Tā-'jiù-yǒu-shíyīkuài-qián.<br>shí<br>shíyī                | ten<br>eleven<br>He has only eleven dollars.                                      |
| 26. Shū-'yígòng-èrshíyīkuài-qián.<br>èrshí<br>èrshíyī          | twenty<br>twenty-one<br>The books are twenty-one dollars in all.                  |
| 27. 'Zhāng-Tàitai shi-'něiguó-rén?<br>'něiguó?<br>'něiguó-rén? | which country?<br>a native of which country?<br>What nationality is Mrs. Johnson? |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 64 phrases

yī	-zhāng zhǐ
liǎng	-zhāng dìtú
sān	-ge běnzi
sì	-ge rén
zhèi	-ge Zhōngguo rén
nèi	-zhī gāngbǐ
něi	-zhī qiānbǐ
jǐ	-zhī máobǐ

II: 81 phrases

—	-shi-	yī
èr		èr
sān		sān
sì		sì
wǔ		wǔ
liù		liù
qī		qī
bā		bā
jiǔ		jiǔ

III: 60 phrases

yí	-kuài	liù	-máo	yī
liǎng		qī		èr
sān		bā		sān
sì		jiǔ		
wǔ				

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Sibilants

(a) zhā	zā	(d) zhé	zé	(g) zhài	zài
(b) chā	cā	(e) chè	cè	(h) chāi	cāi
(c) shā	sā	(f) shè	sè	(i) shài	sài
(j) zhōu	zōu	(m) zhèng	zèng	(p) zhōng	zōng
(k) chòu	còu	(n) chéng	céng	(q) chóng	cóng
(l) shōu	sōu	(o) shēng	sēng		

II. Practice on Initial r

rào	rè	ràng	ròu
rán	rén	rēng	róng

## NUMBER PRACTICE

yī	1	shíyī	11	èrshí	20	èrshiyī	21
èr	2	shí'èr	12	sānshí	30	èrshí'èr	22
sān	3	shísān	13	sìshí	40	èrshijiǔ	29
sì	4	shísì	14	wǔshí	50	sānshiyī	31
wǔ	5	shíwǔ	15	liùshí	60	sìshìsì	44
liù	6	shíliù	16	qīshí	70	wǔshiliù	56
qī	7	shíqī	17	bāshí	80	liùshiwǔ	65
bā	8	shíbā	18	jiǔshí	90	qīshibā	78
jiǔ	9	shíjiǔ	19			bāshìsì	84
shí	10					jiǔshijiǔ	99

## MULTIPLICATION TABLE

(See Note 6 below)

yī yī dé yī	èr yī dé èr	sān yī dé sān
yī èr dé èr	èr èr dé sì	sān èr dé liù
yī sān dé sān	èr sān dé liù	sān sān dé jiǔ
yī sì dé sì	èr sì dé bā	sān sì shí'èr
yī wǔ dé wǔ	èr wǔ yī shí	sān wǔ shíwǔ
yī liù dé liù	èr liù shí'èr	sān liù shíbā
yī qī dé qī	èr qī shí sì	sān qī èrshíyī
yī bā dé bā	èr bā shí liù	sān bā èrshí sì
yī jiǔ dé jiǔ	èr jiǔ shí bā	sān jiǔ èrshí qī

The rest of the tables can be made up on the model of the 3 table. Practice extending the table until you feel at ease with the numbers.

## BOOM!

Practice numbers by playing 'Boom!' Count off in Chinese—one student says '1,' the next '2,' and so on—but the word 'Boom!' must be substituted for four and for every number containing or divisible by four. Play the game through the number 99. Those who survive the first round without forgetting to say an appropriate 'Boom!' can sit out the next round. Switch the taboo number from time to time.

## NUMBERS AND MEASURES

A. Answer the following questions, using 'one' in the first sentence, 'two' in the second, and so on.

1. Ní-yóu-'jǐ máo-qián?
2. Tā-yóu-'jǐ zhī-bǐ?
3. Ní-mái-'jǐ zhāng-dì tú?
4. Nǐmen-'yí gòng yóu-'jǐ kuài-qián?
5. Nín-yóu-'jǐ běn-shū?
6. Tāmen-yào-mái-'jǐ zhāng-dì tú?
7. Tā-yóu-'jǐ fēn-qián?
8. Tāmen-'yí gòng shì-'jǐ ge-rén?
9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-'jǐ zhī-qiānbǐ?
10. Wáng-Xiānsheng, Wáng-Tàitai 'yí gòng-yóu-'jǐ ge-běnzi?

B. Answer the following questions, using 'eleven' in the first sentence, 'twelve' in the second, and so on, taking care to use an appropriate measure in each case.

1. Ní-yǒu-shū-ma?
2. Tā-yào-dìtú-ma?
3. Nǐmen-mài-bǐ-ma?
4. Ní-yóu-zhǐ-ma?
5. Tāmen-yào-mái-běnzi-ma?
6. Nín-yǒu-'gāngbǐ-ma?
7. Nǐmen-yǒu-qián-ma?
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎi-zìdiǎn-ma?
9. 'Máo-Xiáojie yǒu-'máobǐ-ma?
10. Tāmen-yào-qián-ma?

#### A CHARGE ACCOUNT

Suppose a Chinese bookstore which you patronize sends you the following bill at the end of the month. Translate the bill, state how much one of each item costs, add the figures, and tell how much change you would get back if you paid for the bill with a twenty-dollar check.

Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn, liángběn	bákuài	qī máo	liùfēn	qián
běnzi, sībēn	yíkuài	liù máo		"
Zhōngguo-dìtú, yìzhāng		jiǔ máo	jiǔfēn	"
máobǐ, sānzhī	yíkuài	èr máo		"
qiānbǐ, shí'èrzhī		bā máo	sìfēn	"
gāngbǐ, yìzhī	liǎngkuài	liù máo	bāfēn	"
zhǐ, qīshiwǔzhāng		qī máo	wǔfēn	"

#### INFORMATION PLEASE!

(Answer in Chinese)

1. Nǐ-shi-'něiguó-rén?
2. Nǐ-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma?
3. Ní-'yǒu-méi-yóu-běnzi?
4. Ní-'yǒu-'duōshao-qián?
5. Nǐ-xìng-Wáng-ma?
6. Ní-'yǒu-'Zhōngguo-dìtú-méi-yǒu?

7. Nǐ-yào-bu-yào-mǎi yìběn-'Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn?
8. Nǐ-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ-ma?
9. Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngwén-bu huì?
10. Nǐ-quìxìng?
11. Nǐ-yóu-'jǐge-běnzi?
12. Nǐ-shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng-ma?

## NOTES

1. Zhōngwén, although originally referring to Chinese writing, is also used more generally for 'Chinese language,' that is it includes Chinese speech. For 'to speak Chinese' some speakers prefer shuō-Zhōngwén over the more colloquial shuō-Zhōngguo-huà. Zhōngwén-shū refers specifically to a book in the Chinese language, as contrasted with Zhōngguo-shū, which might mean simply a book produced in China.
2. Many Chinese expressions occur sometimes in full form, sometimes in abbreviated form, the latter being especially common in combinations. Zhōngguo 'China' and Yīngguo 'England,' for example, are abbreviated in the combination Zhōng-Yīng 'Chinese-English, Sino-British.' Zhōngwén 'Chinese language' and Yīngwén 'English language' are also abbreviated in combination to Zhōng-Yīng, so that out of context this expression is ambiguous. In Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn 'Chinese-English dictionary,' however, the combination is clearly an abbreviation of Zhōngwén and Yīngwén. Other similar abbreviations are Zhōng-Měi 'Sino-American' and Yīng-Měi 'British-American.'
3. The most widely used measure in Chinese is ge. If you do not know or cannot remember the appropriate measure for a noun, use ge.
4. Note the distinction in the Dialogue between the use of ge as a general measure for běnzi and of běn when referring specifically to one item or copy or volume:
 

Wó-mǎi-yíge-běnzi. 'I'd like to buy a notebook.'  
Wó-mǎi-'yìběn. 'I'll buy one.'
5. A number following shí 'ten' is added to it; a number preceding shí multiplies it:
 

shíyī 'eleven' ('ten and one')  
shí'èr 'twelve'  
shíjiǔ 'nineteen'

èrshí 'twenty' ('two tens')  
sānshí 'thirty'  
jiǔshí 'ninety'

èrshiyī 'twenty-one'  
jiǔshíjiǔ 'ninety-nine'
6. The multiplication table is recited in various ways in Chinese. One of the simplest is the one given on page 42. Note the following points in connection with these:



- (a) If the product contains only one syllable, the word dé 'get' is used,\* as in yī-sān dé-sān 'one (times) three is three.'
- (b) 'Two fives' and 'five twos' have the special form yìshí 'one ten' in order to retain the rhythm.
- (c) The stress is on the first of the multipliers: 'qī-jiǔ liùshisān.'

7. Qián 'money' and fēn 'cent' are often omitted at the end of an expression referring to dimes and cents or to dollars, dimes, and cents (cf. Note 12 in Lesson 3, page 33):

sānmáo-wǔ 'thirty-five cents'

sānkuài-liǎngmáo-sì 'three dollars and twenty-four cents'

8. The special negative prefix méi is used with the verb yǒu 'have':

Wǒ-'méi-yǒu-qián. 'I don't have any money.'

'Ní-yǒu-méi-yǒu-qián?

or

'Ní-yǒu-qián-méi-yǒu?

} 'Do you have any money?'

9. In něizhī-bǐ? 'which pen?' the syllable zhī, of course, is a measure. In něiguó-dìtú? 'which country map?'—i.e. 'a map of what country?'—the syllable guó 'country' has the same function as zhī and is therefore also classified as a measure. This flexibility of function is one of the special characteristics of the Chinese language.

10. The object of a verb is frequently transposed to the beginning of the sentence, especially for emphasis: Wǒ-jiù-mái-bǐ. Shū wǒ-bù-mǎi. 'I'm just buying a pen. (As for) books, I'm not buying (them).'

11. A number-plus-measure expression (like yìběn 'one volume') following a money expression means 'apiece' or 'per unit of that measure':

sānkuài-qián-yìběn 'three dollars apiece'

sānmáo-qián-yìzhī 'thirty cents each' (referring to pens or other long objects)

When yíge is used in this way, the last syllable is pronounced with a falling tone:

sānmáo-qián-yíge 'thirty cents each' (referring to notebooks or other objects)

12. The syllables qī 'seven' and bā 'eight' change to qí and bá (i.e. second tone) before ge and (optionally) before a fourth tone:

qī 'seven'

qíge rén 'seven people'

qīkuài qián or qíkuài qián 'seven dollars'

bā 'eight'

báge rén 'eight people'

bākuài qián or bákuài qián 'eight dollars'

---

\* Dé is introduced here just for the multiplication table. Other uses are presented in Lesson 23, so do not attempt any further usage of it at this time.

Lesson 5 RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

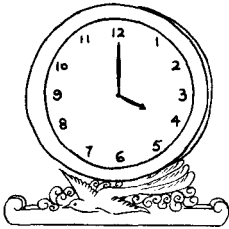


“Shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?”

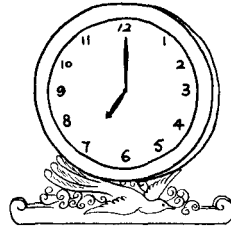
Dialogue: Mr. White receives a phone call from Mr. Gao.

- |   |    |  |
|---|----|--|
| Gāo: Wai! wai! Ní-nǎr? Shi-'Bái Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?   |    | Hello, hello. Who's this? Is this Mr. White's home?                                  |
| Bái: Shì. Nín-zháo-'něiwèi-shuō-huà?  |    | Yes. Who are you calling?  |
| Gāo: Qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà.  | 5  | I'd like to speak to Mr. White.  |
| Bái: Wǒ-jiù-shì. Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-shì-shéi?   |    | Speaking. Who's calling, please?   |
| Gāo: Wǒ-xìng-Gāo.   |    | This is Gao.   |
| Bái: Oh, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. 'Nín-hǎo-ma?                                   | 10 | Oh, Mr. Gao, (I) haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?                      |
| Gāo: 'Hén-hǎo. 'Ní-hǎo-ma?  |    | Very well. How are you?  |
| Bái: Wó-hén-hǎo. Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie 'dōu-hǎo-ma?                                     |    | I'm fine. Are Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao both well?                                       |
| Gāo: 'Dōu-hǎo, xièxie-ni. 'Jīn-tian-wǎnshang ní-yǒu-gōng-fu-ma? Wó-xiǎng qíng-ni-chī-fàn. | 15 | They're both well, thanks. Are you free this evening? I'd like to ask you to dinner. |

Bái : Hǎo. Xièxie-nin. 'Jídiǎn-zhōng?	20	(How) nice. Thank you. At what time?
Gāo: 'Qīdiǎn-zhōng-kéyi-ma?		Can (you manage it) at seven o'clock?
Bái : Qǐng-wèn, xiànzài-shi-'shénmo-shíhou?		Could you tell me, please, what time is it now?
Gāo: Xiànzài-'sìdiǎn-zhōng.		It's now four o'clock.
Bái : Kéyi.	25	I can (manage it).
Gāo: Wǒ-hái-qǐng yíwèi-'Yīng-guo-péngyou. Yě-shi-wó-'hén-hǎode-péngyou.		I'm also asking an English friend. He's a very good friend of mine too.
Bái : Hǎo, hǎo.		Very nice.
Gāo: Qīdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.	30	See you at seven o'clock.
Bái : Qīdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.		See you at seven.



"sìdiǎn-zhōng"



"qīdiǎn-zhōng"

## VOCABULARY

chī	eat (TV)
de	(subordinating particle: Notes 2-4 below)
diǎn	dot, hour (of the clock) (M) (Note 5 below)
fàn	rice, food (N)
gōngfu	(leisure) time (N) (See Supplementary Lesson 5, Note 1)
'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn	Haven't seen you for a long time
jiā	home, house (N)
jiàn	see, meet (people) (TV)
jīntian	today (TW) [lit. today day]
jiù	definitely, indeed, precisely (AD)
kéyi, kéyǐ	may, can (AV)
nǎr?	where? (PW)

péngyou	friend (N)
shéi	who?
shíhou(r)	time (by calendar or clock) (N)
wai	Hello! (on phone)
wǎnshang	evening (TW)
wèi	(polite measure for persons)
xiànzài	now (TW) [lit. present at]
xiǎng	think (of), think to, plan to (TV)
zhǎo	seek, look for, visit (TV)
zhōng	clock (N)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| chī                                      | eat                              |
| chī-shénmo?                              | eat what?                        |
| 1. Nǐ-chī-shénmo?                        | What will you eat?               |
| iàn                                      | food                             |
| Zhōngguo-fàn                             | Chinese food                     |
| 2. Wǒ-yào-chī 'Zhōngguo-fàn.             | I want to eat Chinese food.      |
| gōngfu                                   | leisure time                     |
| yǒu-gōngfu                               | have the time (to do some-thing) |
| 3. Nín-yǒu-'gōngfu-méi-you?              | Do you have time?                |
| jīntian                                  | today                            |
| 4. Wǒ-jīntian 'méi-yǒu-gōngfu.           | I don't have time today.         |
| wǎnshang                                 | evening                          |
| jīntian-wǎnshang                         | this evening                     |
| 5. Nǐmen-jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu-ma? | Do you have time this evening?   |
| shíhou                                   | time                             |
| 'shénmo-shíhou?                          | what time?                       |
| 6. Wǒmen-'shénmo-shíhou-chī-fàn?         | What time do we eat?             |
| zhōng                                    | clock                            |
| yǒu-zhōng                                | have clocks                      |
| 7. Nǐmen-yǒu-zhōng-ma?                   | Do you have any clocks?          |
| yìdiǎn-zhōng                             | one o'clock                      |
| 8. Wǒmen-'yìdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn.          | We eat at one o'clock.           |

9. Wōmen-'jídìǎn-zhōng?  
what o'clock? what hour?  
At what time do we eat?
10. Wōmen-wǎnshang-'jídìǎn-zhōng  
chī-fàn?  
what hour in the evening?  
When are we having dinner this evening?
11. Xiànzài-'jídìǎn-zhōng?  
now  
What time is it now?
12. Tā-shi-shéi?  
who?  
Who is he?
13. Zhè-shi-'wōde-shū.  
wōde  
wōde-shū  
my  
my book  
This is my book.
14. Zhèibēn-shū shi-nǐde.  
nǐde  
your or yours  
This book is yours.
15. Tāmen-shi-wōmende-péngyou.  
péngyou  
wōmende-péngyou  
friend  
our friend or our friends  
They are our friends.
16. Ní-zhǎo-shénmo?  
zhǎo  
zhǎo-shénmo?  
seek  
seek what?  
What are you looking for?
17. 'Nèiwèi-tàitai-shi-shéi?  
wèi  
nèiwèi-tàitai  
(measure for people)  
that lady  
Who is that lady?
18. Ní-xiáng-mǎi-'jībēn-shū?  
xiǎng  
xiáng-mǎi-shū  
think of, plan to  
plan to buy books  
How many books do you plan to buy?
19. Nà-shi-Qián-jia-ma?  
jiā  
Qián-jia  
home  
the Qian home  
Is that the Qian home?
20. Tā-shi-wōde-hǎo-péngyou.  
hǎo-péngyou  
wōde-hǎo-péngyou  
good friend  
a good friend of mine  
He's a good friend of mine.
21. Tā-yě-shi wó-'hén-hǎode-péngyou.  
hén-hǎode-péngyou  
wó-hén-hǎode-péngyou  
very good friend  
a very good friend of mine  
He also is a very good friend of mine.
22. Hǎode-shi-nǐde.  
nǐde  
hǎode  
your(s)  
good one  
The good one is yours.

23. sānkuài-qián  
sānkuài-qiánde-bǐ 'yé-hén-hǎo.  
hǎo.  
three dollars  
a three-dollar pen  
A three-dollar pen is also very good.
24. yíkuài-qiánde  
'bù-hén-hǎo  
'Yíkuài-qiánde 'bù-hén-hǎo.  
a dollar one  
not very good  
A dollar one isn't very good.
25. lán de  
Bái-Xiānsheng de  
Lán de shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng de.  
the blue one  
Mr. White's  
The blue one is Mr. White's.
26. hēide  
shéide?  
Hēide-shi-shéide?  
the black one  
whose?  
Whose is the black one?
27. kéyi  
kéyi-shuō-huà  
Wǒmen-kéyi-shuō-huà-ma?  
can or may  
may speak  
May we speak?
28. wai  
ní-nǎr?  
Wai, ní-nǎr?  
hello!  
who's this?  
Hello, who's this?
29. jiù  
jiù-shi  
'Tā-jiù-shi 'Qián-Tàitai.  
definitely  
indeed is  
She is (indeed) Mrs. Qian.
30. jiàn  
Jīntian-wǎnshang-jiàn!  
see (people)  
See you this evening!
31. háo-jiǔ  
bù-jiàn  
'Háo-jiǔ-bù-jiàn.  
a good while  
not see  
Haven't seen you for quite a while.
32. nǚwèi-Xiáojie  
'Zhāng-Xiáojie  
Nǚwèi-Xiáojie shi-'Zhāng-Xiáojie?  
which young lady?  
Miss Johnson  
Which young lady is Miss Johnson?

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 5.1. Subordination of Nouns and Pronouns with de  
(Note 2 below)

N or P	- <u>de</u>	N
Noun or Pronoun	-de	Noun
Wáng-Xiānsheng	-de	shū
'Mr. King's book(s)'		

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. tāmende-shū                         | their books                        |
| 2. wǒde-běnzi                          | my notebook                        |
| 3. wǒmende-máobǐ                       | our Chinese writing brushes        |
| 4. nǐde-zhǐ                            | your paper                         |
| 5. 'shéide-jiā?                        | whose home?                        |
| 6. 'sānkuài-qiánde-bǐ                  | a three-dollar pen                 |
| 7. 'Wáng-Xiānshengde 'Zhōngguo-péngyou | Mr. King's Chinese friends         |
| 8. 'nèige-xiáojiède-zìdiǎn             | that young lady's dictionary       |
| 9. Zhèi-shi-'shéide-shū?               | Whose book is this?                |
| 10. 'Wǔmáo-qiánde-bǐ bù-hén-hǎo.       | A fifty-cent pen isn't very good.  |
| 11. Tāde-běnzi shi-'bāmáo-qián.        | His notebook is eighty cents.      |
| 12. Tāde-Yīngguo-péngyou xìng-Wáng.    | His English friend is called King. |
| 13. Zhèi-shi-'tāde-qián, bú-shi-nǐde.  | This is his money, not yours.      |
| 14. Wǒde-'yé-hén-hǎo.                  | Mine is also very good.            |
| 15. Zhè-shi-'nǐde-bu-shi?              | Is this yours?                     |

Pattern 5.2. Subordination of Stative Verbs with de  
(Note 2 below)

AD	SV	-de	N
Adverb	Stative Verb	-de	Noun
hěn	hǎo	-de	shū

'a very good book'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. 'bù-hǎode-zìdiǎn                                  | a poor dictionary   |
| 2. hěn-'gāode-xiānsheng                              | a quite tall gentleman  |
| 3. hěn-'báide-zhǐ                                    | very white paper  |
| 4. 'bù-hén-hǎode-bǐ                                  | pens which aren't very good                                   |
| 5. hěn-'bù-hǎode-bǐ                                  | pens which are very bad                                       |
| 6. Zhèi-shi-'hén-hǎode-zìdiǎn.                       | This is an excellent dictionary.                              |
| 7. 'Hǎode-shi-wǒde, 'bù-hǎode 'yě-shi-wǒde.          | The good one is mine, (and) the bad one is also mine.         |
| 8. Tāmen-dōu-shi hěn-'gāode-rén.                     | They are all very tall people.                                |
| 9. Báide shi-yíkuài-qián, lán de shi-liǎngkuài-qián. | The white one is a dollar, (and) the blue one is two dollars. |
| 10. Tāmende 'dōu-shi-hén-hǎode-bǐ.                   | Theirs are all very good pens.                                |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 16 phrases (Notes 6-7)

——	jǐ	diǎn zhōng
wǎnshang	liù	
	qī	
	bā	
	jiǔ	
	shí	
	shíyì	
	shí'èr	

II: 48 phrases (Notes 2-3)

Wáng	Xiānsheng	-de	——
Bái	Tàitai		shū
Qián	Xiáojie		péngyou
Gāo			zìdiǎn

III: 12 phrases (Notes 2-3)

bù	hǎo	-de	——
hěn	gāo		rén
			xiānsheng

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Palatals

(a) zhā	jiā	(d) zhào	jiào	(g) zhàn	jiàn
(b) chà	qià	(e) chǎo	qiǎo	(h) chán	qián
(c) shā	xiā	(f) shào	xiào	(i) shān	xiān
(j) zhāng	jiāng	(m) zhǒng	jiǒng	(o) zhǒu	jiǔ
(k) cháng	qiáng	(n) chóng	qióng	(p) shòu	xiù
(l) shāng	xiāng				

## II. Some Sibilant-Retroflex-Palatal Contrasts

(a) sā	shā	xiā	(d) sāng	shāng	xiāng
(b) sāo	shāo	xiāo	(e) sǒu	shǒu	xiǔ
(c) sǎn	shǎn	xiǎn			



CLOCK TIME

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Xiànzài-'jídiǎn-zhōng?<br>Xiànzài-'yìdiǎn-zhōng.   | What time is it now?<br>It's now one o'clock.  |
| 2. Wǒmen-'jídiǎn-zhōng chī-fàn?<br>Wǒmen-'liù-qīdiǎn-zhōng chī-fàn.                             | At what time do we eat?<br>We eat at 6:00 or 7:00.   |
| 3. Jīntian-wǎnshang 'bādiǎn-zhōng-hǎo-ma?<br>Bādiǎn-zhōng 'hén-hǎo.                             | Is this evening at 8:00 all right?<br>Eight o'clock is fine.   |
| 4. 'Jiúdiǎn-zhōng-hǎo-ma?<br>Jiúdiǎn-zhōng 'hén-hǎo.<br>'Shídiǎn-ne?<br>'Shídiǎn-zhōng 'yé-hǎo. | Is nine o'clock all right?<br>Nine o'clock is fine.<br>How about ten o'clock?<br>Ten o'clock is also fine. |
| 5. Xiànzài-shi-'shénmo-shíhou?<br>Xiànzài-shí-'yīdiǎn-zhōng.                                    | What time is it now?<br>It's now one o'clock.  |
| 6. Wǒmen-'qīdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn<br>'hǎo-bu-hǎo?<br>Chī-'shénmo-fàn?<br>Wǒmen-chī-'wàiguó-fàn-ba. | Is it all right to eat at 7:00?<br><br>What (kind of) food shall we eat?<br>Let's eat foreign food.        |

PIDGIN CHINESE

As you have probably noticed, a Chinese sentence that is translated into English word for word is likely to result in an intelligible but queer-sounding pattern—like Pidgin English. To express the meaning adequately, you must shape the Pidgin construction into a normal English pattern, which we might call the SITUATIONAL EQUIVALENT, as distinguished from the literal rendering.

The reverse translation process involves a similar problem. Literally translated English sentences make Pidgin Chinese. It is not enough to know the Chinese for each individual English word; you must then learn their proper groupings into Chinese patterns, so that your sentences are in fact Chinese and not Pidgin Chinese.

The examples below illustrate this dual process in proceeding from Chinese to English. Practice the opposite procedure by making up English sentences on the same patterns and putting them into smooth Chinese.

<u>Chinese</u>	<u>Pidgin English</u>	<u>Situational Equivalent</u>
Ní-nǎr?	You where?	Who's this?
Nín-zhǎo-'shéi-shuō-huà?	You looking for who talk?	Who are you calling?
Qǐng-'Wáng-Tàitai-shuō-huà.	Invite Mrs. King talk.	I'd like to speak to Mrs. King.

<u>Chinese</u>	<u>Pidgin English</u>	<u>Situational Equivalent</u>
Wǒ-jiù-shì.	I indeed am.	Speaking.
Wǒ-xìng-Gāo.	I name Gao.	This is Gao.
'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn.	Good long-time no see.	Haven't seen you for a long time.
Ní-yǒu-'gōngfu-ma?	You have leisure time huh?	Are you free?
Nèige-rén-hěn-gāo.	That piece man very tall.	That man's very tall.
Ní-yóu-'bǐ-méi-yǒu?	You have pen not have?	Do you have a pen?

## LISTENING IN

Imagine that you are a Chinese telephone operator eavesdropping on the following conversation between Mrs. Wang and Mrs. Qian. Relate what you heard.

Wáng: Wai, wai. Ní-nǎr? Shì-Qián-jia-ma?

Qián: Shì. Nín-zhǎo-'shéi-shuō-huà?

Wáng: Wó-qǐng 'Qián-Tàitai-shuō-huà.

Qián: Wǒ-jiù-shì.

Wáng: Oh, 'nín-jiù-shi-Qián-Tàitai. Wǒ...

Qián: Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-shi-něiwèi?

Wáng: Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.

Qián: Oh, 'Wáng-Tàitai, nín-hǎo-ma? Wáng-Xiānsheng 'yé-hǎo-ma?

Wáng: Wǒmen-'dōu-hǎo. Nín-ne?

Qián: Hǎo.

Wáng: Qián-'Xiānsheng-hǎo-ma?

Qián: Hǎo, xièxie-nin.

Wáng: Nǐmen-'jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-'gōngfu-méi-you? Wǒmen-xiǎng 'qíng nǐmen-chī-fàn.

Qián: Xièxie-nin. 'Shénmo-shíhou?

Wáng: 'Qī-bādiǎn-zhōng-kéyi-ma?

Qián: 'Bādiǎn-zhōng-kéyi.

Wáng: Wǒmen-hái-qíng-lǎngwèi 'Měiguó-péngyou. Yě-shi-wǒmende-'hǎo-péngyou.

Qián: Hén-hǎo.

Wáng: Bādiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.

Qián: Bādiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.

## BRAIN-TWISTER

Find the answer to the question at the end.

Wó-yǒu liǎngzhī-'wàiguó-bǐ. Yìzhī shi-'Měiguó-bǐ, yìzhī shi-'Yīngguó-bǐ. Yīngguó-bǐ shi-hēide, Měiguó-bǐ shi-hóngde. Hēide shi-'bākuài-qiánde-bǐ, hóngde shi-'bāmáo-qiánde. 'Bākuài-qiánde-bǐ 'bù-hǎo. 'Bāmáo-qiánde hǎo. Nǐ-shuō, 'bù-hǎode-shi-'něiguó-bǐ?

## NOTES

1. A general principle of word order in Chinese is that modifiers precede what they modify. We have seen this principle in compounds like Zhōngguo-rén 'a Chinese (person)' [lit. 'China man']. The relationship of Zhōngguo to rén is here one of subordination: Zhōngguo, the modifier, is subordinate to rén, the main word of the construction.
2. Another construction of subordination is formed with the particle de. In a phrase A-de B, the A element modifies and is subordinate to the B element. The A element may be a pronoun, a noun, a time word, a stative verb, or (as we shall see later) a more complicated expression. The following are some examples of subordination with de:

wǒde-shū	'my book'
hǎode-shū	'good book'
jīntiande-fàn	'today's food'

3. The construction A-de (that is, the same construction as in Note 2 but without the modified element B) is often used when B can be understood from the context. Thus 'Zhèiběn-shū shi-wǒde 'This book is mine' is more common than 'Zhèiběn-shū shi-wǒde-shū 'This book is my book.'
4. It is important to distinguish between the constructions Noun-de Noun and Noun-Noun (both subordinate relationships), for they often have different meanings. For example, Zhōngguo-péngyou means 'Chinese friends,' but Zhōngguode-péngyou means 'friends of China.'
5. The particle de is often omitted under certain circumstances. One of these is when a pronoun is subordinated to a noun expressing personal relationship or itself closely followed by de, as:

nǐ-tàitai	'your wife'
wó-bǐde-yánse	'the color of my pen'

Less often, de is omitted after a noun in certain fixed patterns:

Qián-jia	'the Qian home'
----------	-----------------

It is regularly omitted after some frequently occurring combinations that contain certain unmodified stative verbs of one syllable, as in hǎo-rén 'a good person'—but not in an expression like hén-hǎode-rén 'a very good man,' where hǎo is itself preceded by a modifier, in this instance the adverb hěn 'very.'

6. The clock hours are expressed by the numbers one through twelve followed by the measure diǎn 'dot' and the noun zhōng 'clock':

yīdiǎn-zhōng	'one o'clock'
liǎngdiǎn-zhōng	'two o'clock'
shí'èrdiǎn-zhōng	'twelve o'clock'

The word zhōng is often omitted in these expressions:

Xiànzài jídiǎn-zhōng?	'What time is it now?'
Shíyīdiǎn.	'Eleven (o'clock)'

7. If more than one time expression is used in a phrase, the longer time precedes the shorter: jīntian-wǎnshàng shídiǎn-zhōng 'ten o'clock this evening' — lit. 'today evening, ten o'clock.'
8. We saw in Lesson 2 (Note 7, page 21) that the final particle ba after a phrase can convey the idea of a suggestion or command, as in: Wǒmen-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ba 'Let's talk Chinese.' Similarly, the following forms are also used after a phrase:

kéyi-ma	'is it possible to [do the foregoing]?'
'kéyi-bu-kéyi	'is it possible to [do the foregoing]?'
hǎo-ma	'is it all right to [do the foregoing]?'
'hǎo-bu-hǎo	'is it all right to [do the foregoing]?'

Examples:

Wǒmen-'liùdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn kéyi-ma?	Can we [ <u>or</u> Will we be able to] eat at six?
Wǒmen-'liùdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn hǎo-ma?	Is it all right to eat at six?

## Lesson 6 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

#### I. Review of the Four Tones

This exercise includes only vocabulary introduced in Unit I, so that it also serves as a vocabulary review.

Read down by columns and across by rows.

1	2	3	4
dōu	bái	hǎo	huà
gāo	nín	hěn	huì
tā	qián	nǐ	jiù
shuō	rén	qǐng	shì
zhāng	Wáng	běn	wèn
Yīng	hái	bǐ	xìng
yī	máo	wǔ	èr
sān	guó	jiǔ	sì
qī	lán	jǐ	liù
bā	méi	liǎng	kuài
shū	shí	mǎi	mài
zhī	wén	něi	nà
fēn	shéi	yǒu	nèi
hēi	hóng	zhǐ	zhè
zhōng		diǎn	zhèi
chī		nǎr	fàn
jiā		xiǎng	jiàn
		zhǎo	wèi

#### II. Review of the Neutral Tone

This exercise also includes only vocabulary introduced in Unit I. Digits indicate tone sequences.

Read down by columns and across by rows.

10	20	30	40
xiānsheng	xiáojie	běnzi	tàitai
gōngfu	shénmo?	wǒmen	xièxie
tāmèn	yánse	nǐmen	mài-ma?
sānge	yíge	liǎngge	fàn-ne?
hēide	shíhou	wǒde	
tāde	péngyou	hǎo-ma?	
shū-ne?	shéide?	nǐ-ne?	
chī-ma?	lánde	mǎi-ma?	

## ANALOGY DRILL

The teacher asks each student a pair of questions. The student answers both questions on the model of the first, but adds the word yě 'also' to his second answer. For example:

- (1) Teacher asks: Tā-yǒu-shū-ma?  
 You answer : Tā-yǒu-shū.  
 Teacher asks: Nǐ-ne?  
 You answer : Wó-yé-yǒu-shū.
- (2) Teacher asks: Nǐ-méi-yǒu-shū-ma?  
 You answer : Wǒ-méi-yǒu-shū.  
 Teacher asks: Bǐ-nè?  
 You answer : Wó-yě-méi-yóu-bǐ.

1. Tā-huì-shuō Zhōngguo-huà-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
2. Tā-yǒu-gāngbǐ-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
3. Ní-mái-běnzi-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
4. Ní-mǎi-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
5. Ní-mǎi-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
6. Nèige-xiānsheng xìng-Wáng-ma? . . . Xiáojie-ne? . . .
7. Ní-yǒu-qián-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
8. Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
9. Tā-yǒu-zìdiǎn-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
10. Ní-yǒu-'Zhōngguo-péngyou-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
11. Ní-hǎo-ma? . . . 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ne? . . .
12. Nǐ-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
13. Ní-yǒu-lán-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
14. Tā-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .

15. Tā-qǐng-Wáng-Xiānsheng chī-fàn-ma? . . . Wáng-Tàitai-ne? . . .
16. Ní-yǒu-máobǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
17. Nǐ-yào-zhǐ-ma? . . . Dìtú-ne? . . .
18. Ní-yóu-zhǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
19. Tāde-'gāngbǐ-shi 'sānkuài-qíán-ma? . . . Nǐde-ne? . . .
20. Ní-mǎi-'hóng-yánse-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
21. Ní-yóu-'Měiguó-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
22. Tā-yào-'Zhōngguó-dìtú-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
23. Ní-yǒu-'Yīngguó-bǐ-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
24. Jīntian ní-yǒu-gōngfu-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
25. Tā-yǒu-'Zhōngguó-zhǐ-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
26. Nèiwèi-xiáojie mǎi-shū-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
27. Nèiwèi-xiānsheng xīng-Gāo-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
28. Tā-yǒu-péngyou-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
29. Tā-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà-ma? . . . Nín-ne? . . .
30. Tā-mǎi-qīánbǐ-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
31. Ní-zhǎo 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
32. Tā-zhǎo 'Wáng-Tàitai-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
33. Ní-yǒu-tàitai-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
34. Ní-yǒu-shū-ma? . . . Bǐ-ne? . . .
35. Ní-yǒu-mòshuǐ-ma? . . . Zhǐ-ne? . . .
36. Tā-yǒu-gāngbǐ-ma? . . . Máobǐ-ne? . . .
37. Tā-yǒu-gōngfu-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
38. Tā-yóu-běnzi-ma? . . . Zìdiǎn-ne? . . .
39. Tā-yǒu-qíán-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
40. Tā-shi-'Zhōngguó-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
41. Ní-mǎi-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
42. Tāmen-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
43. Tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
44. Tā-yǒu-'Yīngguó-péngyou-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
45. Nǐ-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
46. Ní-yóu-běnzi-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
47. Ní-yǒu-qíán-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
48. Wáng-'Tàitai-hǎo-ma? . . . Wáng-'Xiáojie-ne? . . .
49. Nǐ-méi-yǒu-qíán-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
50. Nǐ-méi-yǒu 'Zhōngguó-péngyou-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .

51. Tā-méi-yǒu-zìdiǎn-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
52. Tā-méi-yǒu-tàitai-ma? . . . Nǐ-ne? . . .
53. Tāmen-mǎi-shū-ma? . . . Dìtú-ne? . . .
54. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-zhǐ-ma? . . . Qiānbǐ-ne? . . .
55. Nǐ-méi-yǒu 'Yīngguo-dìtú-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
56. Tā-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà-ma? . . . 'Zhōngguo-huà-ne? . . .
57. Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
58. Ní-xiǎng-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .
59. Ní-zhǎo Wáng-Xiānsheng-ma? . . . Wáng-Tàitai-ne? . . .
60. Nǐ-jǐntiān-mǎi-shū-ma? . . . Tā-ne? . . .

## SINGLE REPLACEMENT DRILL

The teacher pronounces the sentence and the student repeats it. The teacher then pronounces an expression which can replace something in the original sentence; the student pronounces the sentence again, making the replacement. For example:

Teacher says: Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén.  
 You say : Tā-shi-'Měiguó-rén.  
 Teacher says: Yīngguo  
 You say : Tā-shi-'Yīngguo-rén.

- |                                    |         |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| 1. Tā-yǒu-wǔkuài-qián.             | wǒ      |
| 2. Ní-yǒu-máobǐ-ma?                | tā      |
| 3. Tāmen-yǒu-běnzǐ-ma?             | nǐmen   |
| 4. Ní-yǒu-yìběn-zìdiǎn.            | tā      |
| 5. Wó-yǒu-gāngbǐ.                  | qiānbǐ  |
| 6. Tā-yǒu-mòshuǐ.                  | yào     |
| 7. Wó-yǒu-sānge 'Zhōngguo-péngyou. | sìge    |
| 8. Tā-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.      | Yīngguo |
| 9. Wó-mǎi-shū.                     | zìdiǎn  |
| 10. Wǒ-yào-qiānbǐ.                 | gāngbǐ  |
| 11. Tā-yǒu-zhǐ.                    | bǐ      |
| 12. Wǒ-yào-dìtú.                   | zìdiǎn  |
| 13. Nǐ-shi-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?        | Měiguó  |
| 14. Wǒ-méi-yǒu 'Zhōngguo-péngyou.  | wàiguó  |
| 15. Tāmen-dōu-shi-'Měiguó-rén.     | Yīngguo |
| 16. Zhèi-shi-'hóng-yánse.          | lán     |



- |                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| 17. Wǒ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà. | Yīngguo |
| 18. Zhèige-shi-nǐde.           | nèige   |
| 19. Hǎode-shi-tāde.            | wǒde    |
| 20. Nèige-shi-tāde?            | nèige   |

## DOUBLE REPLACEMENT DRILL

This exercise is to be conducted like the preceding one, except that the student must make whatever additional changes are required so that the replacement item can be used. For example:

Teacher says: Wó-yǒu-sānběn-shū.  
 You say : Wó-yǒu-sānběn-shū.  
 Teacher says: zhǐ  
 You say : Wó-yǒu-sānzhāng-zhǐ.

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| 1. Wó-yě-bú-yào.                        | yǒu    |
| 2. Wó-yǒu-yìběn-shū.                    | zhǐ    |
| 3. Wǒ-yào-'yíge-běnzǐ.                  | bǐ     |
| 4. Wó-yǒu-yìzhāng-zhǐ.                  | shū    |
| 5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yóu-wǔkuài-qián.     | shū    |
| 6. 'Wáng-Xiáojie yǒu-yìzhī-máobǐ.       | běnzǐ  |
| 7. 'Gāo-Tàitai mǎi-yìběn-shū.           | běnzǐ  |
| 8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie mǎi-liùzhī-qiānbǐ.      | shū    |
| 9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎi-yìzhāng-dìtú.     | zìdiǎn |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng mái-wúběn-shū.       | máobǐ  |
| 11. 'Gāo-Xiáojie mǎi-yìběn-zìdiǎn.      | bǐ     |
| 12. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiù-yǒu-'yìběn-shū. | qián   |
| 13. Tāmen-'yíòng yǒu-qīshìzhāng-zhǐ.    | shū    |
| 14. Tā-'jiù-yào-sānmáo-qián.            | bǐ     |
| 15. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián.                    | yào    |

## INSERTION DRILL

The teacher pronounces a sentence and then gives an expression which you are to insert in the sentence at some appropriate place. For example:

Teacher says: Tā-yǒu-qián.  
 You say : Tā-yǒu-qián.  
 Teacher says: duōshao  
 You say : Tā-yǒu 'duōshao-qián?

- |                                    |          |
|------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Tā-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.           | yě       |
| 2. Wǒ-jīntian-bù-chī-fàn.          | wǎnshang |
| 3. Tā-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà.           | huì      |
| 4. Nǐ-shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ma?      | jiù      |
| 5. Nǐ-chī-'shénmo-fàn?             | xiǎng    |
| 6. Zhèizhī-hén-hǎo.                | máobǐ    |
| 7. Tā-yào-qián.                    | hái      |
| 8. Xiànzài-'shénmo-shíhou?         | shì      |
| 9. Zhèi-shi-shū.                   | wǒde     |
| 10. Tāmen-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.  | dōu      |
| 11. Nǐ-xièxie-ta-ma?               | bú       |
| 12. 'Lánde-yé-hǎo.                 | mòshuǐ   |
| 13. Zhèi-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng.       | jiā      |
| 14. Sānkuài-qiánde yé-hén-hǎo.     | bǐ       |
| 15. Zhǐ, bǐ 'yí gong-duōshao-qián? | shū      |
| 16. Zhèiběn-'duōshao-qián?         | zìdiǎn   |
| 17. Wó-yǒu-'bā-jiǔshikuài-qián.    | jiù      |
| 18. Wǒ-'jiù-yǒu 'qīběn-shū.        | liù      |
| 19. Mòshuǐ-duōshao-qián?           | hóng     |
| 20. Wǒ-yào-mǎi-dìtú.               | hái      |
| 21. Wó-yóu-liǎngge-péngyou.        | hǎo      |
| 22. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà.         | huì      |
| 23. Tāmen-'bù-mǎi-zìdiǎn.          | yě       |
| 24. Nín-mǎi-shénmo?                | yào      |
| 25. Tā-yě-shi-hǎo-péngyou.         | wǒde     |

### RAISE YOU ONE

Answer the following questions using the number next larger to the one mentioned in the immediately preceding sentence.

1. Wó-yóu-jiǔshikuài-qián. Nín-ne?
2. Wó-wǎnshang bādiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn. Nín-ne?
3. Wó-yǒu liángběn-shū. Nín-ne?
4. Wó-yǒu liùkuài-qiánde-zhǐ. Nín-ne?
5. Wǒde-shū shi-sìkuài-qián. Nǐde-ne?
6. Wǒ-yào-mǎi wǔshiwǔzhāng-zhǐ. Nín-ne?

7. Wó-yǒu-sānge wàiguó-péngyou. Nín-ne?
8. Wǒde-bǐ-shi-wǔfēn-qián. Nǐde-ne?
9. Wǒ-'jiù-yǒu-yìzhāng-dìtú. Nín-ne?
10. Wǒ-péngyou yǒu-'liǎngzhī-bǐ. Nǐ-ne?
11. Wó-qǐng-'bāge-péngyou-chī-fàn. Nín-ne?
12. Wó-yǒu-jiǔshíbākuài-qián. Nín-ne?

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

If the student has difficulty in answering, the two statements before the question may be repeated after the question.

1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'Zhōngguó-rén. 'Qián-Xiānsheng shi-'wàiguó-rén. 'Zhōngguó-rén xìng-shénmo?
2. 'Bái-Xiáojie huì-shuō 'Yīngguó-huà. 'Bái-Tàitai huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà. 'Shéi-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà?
3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng shi-'Zhōngguó-rén. 'Máo-Xiānsheng shi-'Yīngguó-rén. Shéi-shi-'wàiguó-rén?
4. Gāo-Xiáojie yǒu-liùzhāng-zhǐ. Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-sìzhī-bǐ. 'Shéi-yóu-zhǐ?
5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shuō-'Zhōngguó-huà. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shuō-'Yīngguó-huà. Shéi-shuō-'Zhōngguó-huà?
6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-mǎi-shū. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-bù-mǎi-shū. Shéi-mǎi-shū?
7. 'Wáng-Xiáojie yǒu-'Měiguó-dìtú. 'Gāo-Xiáojie yǒu-'Zhōngguó-dìtú. Shéi-yóu-Měiguó-dìtú?
8. 'Sānge-Zhōngguó-rén. 'Yíge-Yīngguó-rén. 'Jíge-wàiguó-rén?
9. 'Bái-Xiáojie yǒu-'Měiguó-bǐ. 'Máo-Xiáojie yǒu-'Yīngguó-bǐ. 'Bái-Xiáojie yǒu-'něiguó-bǐ?
10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ. 'Lán-mòshuǐ-shi-shéide?
11. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-yóu-bǐ. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-shénmo?
12. 'Wáng-Tàitai-yóu-zhǐ. 'Bái-Tàitai-yǒu-shū. 'Shéi-yóu-zhǐ?
13. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-yǒu-zìdiǎn. 'Wáng-Xiáojie-méi-yǒu-zìdiǎn. Shéi-yǒu-zìdiǎn?
14. Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-liùkuài-qián. Gāo-Xiānsheng yǒu-liùshikuài-qián. Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-'duōshao-qián?

15. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-yǒu-gāngbǐ. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-qiānbǐ. 'Shéi-yǒu-gāngbǐ?
16. 'Yíge-Zhōngguo-rén. 'Liǎngge-Měiguó-rén. 'Yígòng-jǐge-rén?
17. 'Bái-Xiānsheng chī-'Měiguó-fàn. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn. Shéi-chī-'Měiguó-fàn?
18. Zhèige-'Yīngguó-rén xìng-Máo. Zhèige-'Měiguó-rén xìng-Bái. Zhèige-'Yīngguó-rén xìng-shénmo?
19. Nèiwèi-'xiáojie xìng-Gāo. Nèiwèi-'tàitai xìng-Wáng. Nèiwèi-xiáojie xìng-shénmo?
20. Tā-yǒu-'máobǐ. Wó-yǒu-'gāngbǐ. 'Máobǐ-shi-shéide?
21. Gāo-'Tàitai-mǎi-dìtú. Gāo-'Xiáojie-mái-zhǐ. Gāo-'Tàitai-mǎi-shénmo?
22. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎi-sìběn-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎi-liángběn-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎi-'jībēn-shū?
23. Wó-yǒu-'Zhōngwén-shū. Tā-yǒu-'Yīngwén-shū. Shéi-yǒu-'Zhōngwén-shū?
24. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-yóu-běnzi. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-yǒu-zìdiǎn. 'Shéi-yǒu-zìdiǎn?
25. 'Bái-Xiáojie-yǒu-zìdiǎn. 'Wáng-Xiáojie-yǒu-dìtú. 'Bái-Xiáojie-yǒu-shénmo?

### QUESTIONING ANSWERS

This exercise is the opposite of the usual type: here, you are asked to supply the questions for which the given statements would be appropriate answers. There may be several possibilities: a choice-type question, a split-choice-type question, a question with the particle ma or with a question word. Give all the questions you can think of which might elicit the given statement. For example:

Teacher says:	Tā-shi-Měiguó-rén.	'He is an American.'
You say	: Tā-shi-Měiguó-rén-ma?	'Is he an American?'
	Tā-shì-bu-shi-Měiguó-rén?	'Is he an American?'
	Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-bu-shi?	'Is he an American?'
	Tā-shi-'něiguó-rén?	'What nationality is he?'

After each question suggested by the student, the teacher should respond by repeating the initial statement.

1. Bú-shi, wǒ-shi-'Měiguó-rén.
2. Wǒ-xìng-Bái. Nín-ne?

3. Wǒ-'bú-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Yīngguo-huà.
4. Xiànzài-shi-'bādiǎn-zhōng.
5. Wǒ-jīntian-wǎnshang méi-yǒu-gōngfu.
6. Wǒmen-'bú-mài-wàiguó-shū. Jiù-mài-'Zhōngguó-shū.
7. Shū, bǐ 'yígòng-sānkuài-qián.
8. Tāmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie-ni.
9. Bù-dōu-shi-'Yīngguó-rén. Yíwèi-shi-'Měiguó-rén. Yíwèi-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.
10. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián.

## DIALOGUE I

Read aloud and translate into English.

M: Qǐng-wèn, nín-guìxìng?

W: Wǒ-xìng-Wáng. Nín-ne?

M: Wǒ-xìng-Máo.

W: Nín-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà-ma?

M: Wǒ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà.

W: Nín-shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma?

M: Shì, wǒ-'shì-Měiguó-rén.

W: Qǐng-wèn-nin, 'xiànzài-shi-shénmo-shíhou? Wó-xiáng-zhǎo-yíge-péng-you.

M: Xiànzài-'sāndiǎn-zhōng.

W: Xièxie-nin.

## DIALOGUE II

Read aloud and translate into English.

A: Qǐng-wèn-nin, 'nèige-rén shi-'Měiguó-rén-ma?

B: 'Něige-rén?

A: 'Nèige-rén.

B: Oh, 'nèige-rén. Tā-'bú-shi-Měiguó-rén. Tā-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.

A: Tā-xìng-shénmo?

B: Tā-xìng-Bái.

A: Oh! Tā-'bú-xìng-Wáng-a?

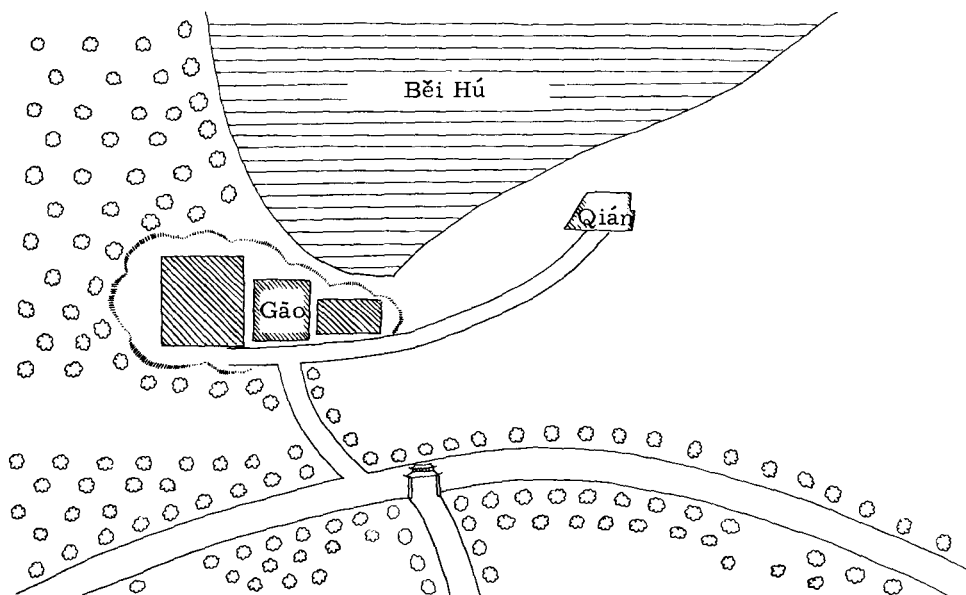
B: Tā-'bú-xìng-Wáng. Tā-xìng-Bái.

## NARRATIVE

Read aloud and translate into English.

Jīntian wó-mǎi-shū. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yé-mǎi-shū. Tā-hái-mǎi-qiānbǐ, máobǐ, zhǐ, běnzi. Wó-mǎi-yìběn-zìdiǎn, yìběn-Yīngwén-shū, yìzhāng-dìtú, yìzhī-gāngbǐ—yígòng-sìkuài-jiǔmáo-qián. Nèige-shíhou shì-liùdiǎn-zhōng. Wó-qǐng-Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn.

## Lesson 7 INQUIRING ABOUT PLACES



“Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-yíge-xiǎo-shānshang.”

Dialogue: Mr. White is given a detailed answer to his inquiry about where Mr. Gao lives.

Máo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma?  
Nín-yào-mǎi-shū-ma?

Mr. White, how are you? Do you want to buy some books?

Bái: Jīntian wǒ-bù-mǎi-shū. Wó-zhǎo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng jīntian-wǎnshang qíng-wǒ-chī-fàn. Nǐ-'zhīdao-bu-zhīdào shì-zài-zhèr-ne háishi-zài-ta-jiā-ne?\*

I'm not buying books today. I'm looking for Mr. Gao. Mr. Gao asked me to dinner this evening. Do you know whether it's here or at his home?\*

Máo: Zài-ta-'jiā-chī-fàn.

The dinner is at his home.

Bái: Ta-jiā-zài-nǎr? Shi-zài-chéng-lítou háishi-zài-chéng-wàitou?

Where is his home? Is it inside the city or outside the city?

\* It is a common practice among Chinese to entertain guests at their place of business (many business establishments have dining facilities) or at restaurants, as well as in their homes.

- Máo: Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéng-wài, jiù-zài-zhèitiáo-lùde-béibiān, yíge-xiǎo-shān-shang. 15  
Mr. Gao's home is outside the city, north of this road, on a small hill.
- Bái: Zài-nèige-shānshang yǒu-'jísuǒr-fángzi?  
How many houses are there on the hill?
- Máo: Nèr-yígòng jiù-yǒu-'sānsuǒr-fángzi. Xībiān yǒu-yìsuǒr-'dà-fángzi. Dōngbiān yǒu-yìsuǒr-'xiǎo-fángzi. Zhōng-jiārde-fángzi jiù-shi-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā. Nánbiān-shānxià shi-Zhōngshān-Lù. 20  
There are only three houses [in all] there. To the west there's a big house. To the east is a small house. The house in between is Mr. Gao's home. To the south below the hill is Sun Yatsen Road.
- Zhōngshān-Lù-qianbiān yǒu-yíge-dà-gōngyuán. Shān-hòutou yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-hú. 25  
In front of Sun Yatsen Road is a big park. Behind the hill is a small lake.
- Bái: Nèige-shi-'Běi-Hú-ma?  
Is it North Lake?
- Máo: 'Shì-'Běi-Hú. Húde-yòubiān shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā. 30  
[Yes] it's North Lake. To the right of the lake is Mr. Qian's home. To the left of the lake there is also a small park.
- Húde-zuǒbiān hái-yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-gōngyuán.
- Bái: Oh, wǒ-zhīdao, wǒ-zhīdao. 35  
Oh, I know, I know. Thank you.
- Xièxie-ni.

## VOCABULARY

běi	north (PW)
biān, biār	side (PW) (See Supplementary Lesson 7, Note 1)
chéng	city (N)
dà	big (SV)
dōng	east (PW)
Dōngběi	Manchuria (PW) [lit. east north] (Note 11 below)
fángzi	house (N)
gōngyuán	park (N) [lit. public yard]
háishi	or [lit. still is] (Note 12 below)
hòu	rear (PW)
hú	lake (N)
Húběi	Hupei province (PW) [lit. lake north] (Note 11 below)
Húnán	Hunan province (PW) [lit. lake south] (Note 11 below)
lǐ	inside (PW)
lù	road (N)



nán	south (PW)
nèr	there (PW)
qián	front (PW)
shān	hill, mountain (N)
Shāndong	Shantung province (PW) [lit. mountains east] (Note 11 below)
Shānxi	Shansi province (PW) [lit. mountains west] (Note 11 below)
shàng	top (PW)
suǒ, suǒr	(measure for buildings)
tiáo	(measure for roads)
tou	(substantive suffix) (See Supplementary Lesson 7, Note 1)
wài	outside (PW)
xī	west (PW)
xià	bottom, below (PW)
xiǎo	small (SV)
yòu	right [as opposed to left] (PW)
zài	occupy, be at (V) (Notes 1, 8, 9 below) at, in, on (CV) (Notes 3, 4, 7 below)
zhèr	here (PW)
zhīdao	know (that . . .) (V) (Note 13 below)
zhōngjiān	middle (PW) [lit. middle interval]
Zhōngshān	Sun Yatsen [lit. middle mountain] (Note 10 below)
zuǒ	left [as opposed to right] (PW)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| zài<br>zài-jiā                 | at<br>at home               |
| 1. Tā-zài-jiā-ma?              | Is he at home?              |
| zhèr<br>zài-zhèr               | here<br>here, at this place |
| 2. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng bú-zài-zhèr. | Mr. Gao isn't here.         |
| nèr<br>zài-nèr                 | there<br>(at) there         |
| 3. Tāmen dōu-zài-nèr-ma?       | Are they all there?         |
| qiántou<br>zài-qiántou         | front<br>be in front        |
| 4. Tāmen-zài-qiántou.          | They're in front.           |

- hòutou  
zài-hòutou  
5. 'Shéi-zài-hòutou?
- qiánbian  
hòubian  
6. Wǒ-zài-qiánbian, tā-zài-hòubian.
- qiánbiar  
hòubiar  
7. Tā-zài-qiánbiar, bú-zài-hòubiar.
- lǐtōu  
zài-lǐtōu  
8. Tāmen-dōu-zài-lǐtōu.
- wàibiār  
zài-wàibiār  
9. 'Gāo-Tàitai zài-wàibiār.
- shàngtōu  
xiàtōu  
10. 'Yíge-zài-shàngtōu, 'yíge-zài-xiàtōu.
- fángzi  
'shéide-fángzi?  
11. Zhèi-shi-'shéide-fángzi?
- shān  
'shénmo-shān?  
12. Nà-shi-'shénmo-shān?
- dōng  
dōngbian  
13. Wǒ-jiā zài-dōngbian.
- xī  
xībiār  
14. Xī-Shān zài-xībiār.
- nán  
nánbiār  
15. Shénmo-zài-nánbiār?
- běi  
běibiār  
16. Tā-jiā yě-zài-běibiār.
- rear, back  
in the rear  
Who's in back?
- front  
rear  
I'm in front, he's in back.
- front  
back  
He's in front, not in back.
- inside  
be inside  
They're all inside.
- outside  
be outside  
Mrs. Gao is outside.
- above  
below  
One is above, one is below.
- house  
whose house?  
Whose house is this?
- hill  
what hill?  
What hill is that?
- east  
east (side)  
My house is to the east.
- west  
west (side)  
The Western Hills are in the west.
- south  
south (side)  
What's in the south?
- north  
north (side)  
His home is also in the north.

- gōngyuán  
'shénmo-gōngyuán?  
17. Zhèi-shi-'shénmo-gōngyuán? park  
what park?  
What park is this?
- hú  
Dōng-Hú  
18. Dōng-Hú-zài-nǎr? lake  
East Lake  
Where is East Lake?
- dà  
'dà-bu-dà?  
19. Nèige-shān 'dà-bu-dà? big  
big or not?  
Is that mountain big?
- xiǎo  
xiǎo-fángzi  
20. Xiǎo-fángzi yě-shi-tāde- small  
small house  
Is the small house also his?  
ma?
- zuǒ  
zuǒbiān  
21. Dà-gōngyuán zài-zuǒbiān. left  
left (side)  
The big park is on the left.
- yòu  
yòubiān  
22. Xiǎo-gōngyuán zài-yòubiān. right  
right (side)  
The small park is on the right.
- jiā  
zài-jiālǐ  
23. Tāmen dōu-zài-jiālǐ. home  
be in the house  
They're all in the house.
- chéng  
chéng-lǐtōu  
chéng-wàitōu  
24. Wǒ-jiā-zài-chéng-lǐtōu, city  
inside the city  
outside the city  
bú-zài-chéng-wàitōu. My home is inside the city, not  
outside the city.
- zài-shānshang  
25. Tā-jiā zài-nèige-dà-shān- be on a hill  
shang. His home is on that big hill.
- zài-shānxià  
26. Shéide-fángzi-zài-shānxià? below the hill  
Whose house is below the hill?
- Shāndong  
Shānxi  
27. Tāmen-zài-Shāndong, bú- Shantung (province)  
zài-Shānxi. Shansi (province)  
They're in Shantung, not Shansi.
- Húběi  
Húběi rén  
28. Tā-shi-Húběi-rén. Hupeh (province)  
a native of Hupeh  
He's a native of Hupeh.

- Húnán  
Húnán-huà  
29. Tā -jiù -huì -shuō Húnán-huà.  
Hunan (province)  
Hunan dialect  
He can only speak Hunan dialect.
- Dōngběi  
Dōngběi-rén  
30. 'Máo-Xiānsheng shi-Dōngběi-rén.  
the Northeast, Manchuria  
a native of Manchuria  
Mr. Mao is from Manchuria.
- zhīdao  
bu-zhīdào  
31. Tā-zài-nǎr, nǐ-'zhīdao-bu-zhīdào?  
know  
not know  
Where is he, do you know?
- suǒr  
zhèisuǒr-fángzi  
32. Zhèisuor-fángzi duōshao-qián?  
(measure for houses)  
this house  
How much is this house?
- zhōngjiār  
liángsuǒr-dà-fángzide-zhōngjiār  
33. Xiǎo-fángzi zài-liángsuǒr-'dà-fángzide-zhōngjiār.  
middle  
between two big houses  
The little house is between two big houses.
- tiáo  
lù  
34. Nèitiáo-lù 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  
(measure for roads)  
road  
How's that road?
- Zhōngshān  
Zhōngshān-Lù  
35. Qǐng-wèn, Zhōngshan-Lù zài-nǎr?  
Sun Yatsen  
Sun Yatsen Avenue  
May I ask, where is Sun Yatsen Avenue?
- zài-lǐtou  
zài-lǐtou-chī-fàn  
36. Tāmen-zài-lǐtou-chī-fàn.  
be inside  
eat inside  
They're eating inside.
- fángzide-dōngbiar  
37. Xiǎo-hú zài-fángzide-dōng-biar.  
east of the house  
The little lake is east of the house.
- dōngbiarde-fángzi  
38. Dōngbiarde-fángzi shi-'Wáng-Xiānshengde.  
the house to the east  
The house to the east is Mr. Wang's.
- zài-fángzi-wàitou  
zài-fángzi-wàitoude-nèige-rén  
39. Zài-fángzi-wàitoude-nèige-rén shi-shéi?  
outside the house  
that man outside the house  
Who is that man outside the house?
- dà-gōngyuán  
big park

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>40. Dà-gōngyuán dōu-zài-chéng-wàitou.</p>  | <p>zài-chéng-wàitou<br/>outside the city<br/>The big parks are all outside the city.</p>  |
| <p>41. Zài-chéng-lǐtōu yǒu-xiǎo-gōngyuán.</p> | <p>zài-chéng-lǐtōu<br/>yǒu-xiǎo-gōngyuán<br/>inside the city<br/>there are some small parks<br/>There are some small parks inside the city.</p> |
| <p>42. Jiāli -méi-yǒu-rén.</p>                | <p>jiāli<br/>méi-yǒu-rén<br/>at home<br/>there isn't anybody<br/>There isn't anyone at home.</p>  |
| <p>43. Tāmen-zài-Húnán háishi-zài-Húběi?</p>  | <p>zài-Húnán<br/>háishi-zài-Húběi<br/>in Hunan<br/>or in Hupeh<br/>Are they in Hunan or in Hupeh?</p>   |

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 7.1. Location at a Place (Note 1 below)

S	<u>zài</u>	P
Subject	is/are (at)	Place word
Rén	zài	lǐtōu.

'The people are inside.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Qiānbǐ-zài-nèr.</p>                     | <p>The pencil is there.</p>                  |
| <p>2. Máobǐ-zài-zhèr-ma?</p>                  | <p>Is the writing brush here?</p>            |
| <p>3. Lán-mòshuǐ-zài-nǎr?</p>                 | <p>Where's the blue ink?</p>                 |
| <p>4. Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu.</p>                    | <p>They're inside.</p>                       |
| <p>5. Tāmen-zài-fángzi-lǐtōu.</p>             | <p>They're inside the house.</p>             |
| <p>6. Tāmen-zài-fángzili.</p>                 | <p>They're in the house.</p>                 |
| <p>7. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-jiā-ma?</p>         | <p>Is Mr. King at home?</p>                  |
| <p>8. Wǒ-péngyoude-jiā zài-chéng-wài.</p>     | <p>My friend's home is outside the city.</p> |
| <p>9. Tāmen-bú-zài-jiā-ma?</p>                | <p>Aren't they at home?</p>                  |
| <p>10. Tàitai-zài-jiā-ma?</p>                 | <p>Is the lady of the house at home?</p>     |
| <p>11. Qíng-nǐ-wèn tā-jiā-zài-nǎr..</p>       | <p>Please ask where his house is.</p>        |
| <p>12. Tāde-jiā zài-Shāndōng.</p>             | <p>His home is in Shantung.</p>              |
| <p>13. Tāde-fángzi zài-shānshang.</p>         | <p>His house is on the hill.</p>             |
| <p>14. Hóng-mòshuǐ-zài-nǎr, nǐ-zhīdao-ma?</p> | <p>Where's the red ink, do you know?</p>     |

15. Dà-shān dōu-zài-dōngbiān.

The big mountains are all in the east.

## Pattern 7.2. The Coverb of Location (Notes 2-3 below)

S	CV	P	MV	O
Subject	Coverb	Place word	Main Verb	Object
Rén	zài	lǐtou	chī	fàn.
'The people are eating inside.'				
1. Wǒ-jīntian bú-zài-jīa-chī-fàn.			I'm not eating at home today.	
2. Wǒmen-'kéyi-bu-kéyi zài-zhèr-chī-fàn?			Can we eat here?	
3. Wǒmen-zài-zhèr-chī-fàn kéyi-ma?			Can we eat here?	
4. Wǒ-bù-xiǎng zài-nèr-mǎi-shū.			I'm not going to buy books there.	
5. Nín-yào-zài-'nár-mǎi-zhōng?			Where do you want to buy a clock?	
6. Tā-bú-zài-zhèr mǎi-mòshuǐ-ma?			Isn't he buying the ink here?	
7. Nǐ-bú-zài-jīa chī-fàn-ma?			Aren't you eating at home?	
8. Tāmen-zài-zhèr-mài-shénmo?			What do they sell here?	
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-'nǎr-shuō-huà?			Where is Mr. King speaking?	
10. Tāmen dōu-zài-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiāli-chī-fàn.			They're all eating at Mr. Gao's home.	

## Pattern 7.3. Existence at a Place (Note 8 below)

(zài)	P	yǒu	N
(at)	Place	there is/are	Noun
(Zài)	lǐtou	yǒu	rén.
'There are people inside.'			
1. Jiāli-yǒu-rén-ma?			Is there anybody at home?
2. Zài-Húnán méi-yǒu-dà-shān.			There are no big mountains in Hunan.
3. Chéng-wàitou méi-yǒu-fángzi.			There are no houses outside the city.
4. Zài-shānshang méi-yǒu-dà-lù.			There are no big highways on the mountains.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 5. Zài-Shāndong yǒu-dà-'hú-méi-yǒu?     | Are there any big lakes in Shantung?  |
| 6. Nèisuǒr-fángzishang yǒu-shénmo?      | What's on top of that house?          |
| 7. Zài-Měiguó yé-yǒu-Zhōngguó-rén.      | There are also Chinese in America.    |
| 8. Fángzili yǒu-méi-yǒu-rén?            | Is there anyone in the house?         |
| 9. Zài-shānshang yǒu-fángzi-ma?         | Are there any houses on the mountain? |
| 10. Zài-Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-dìtú-ma? | Is there a map at Mr. King's house?   |

Pattern 7.4. Subordination of Place Words (Notes 6-7 below)

(zài)	P- <u>de</u>	N
(at)	Place- <u>de</u>	Noun
(zài)	lǐtode	rén

'the people (who are) inside'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. nèrde-rén   | the people there                                 |
| 2. wàitode-rén   | the people outside                               |
| 3. zài-wàitode-rén                                     | the people who are outside                       |
| 4. fángzi-wàitode-rén                                  | the people outside the house                     |
| 5. zài-fángzi-wàitode-rén                              | the people who are outside the house             |
| 6. zài-Dōngběide-dà-shān                               | the big mountains in Manchuria                   |
| 7. fángzi-qiántode-nèiwèi-xiānsheng                    | that gentleman in front of the house             |
| 8. zài-shānshangde-fángzi                              | the houses on the hill                           |
| 9. zài-lùshangde-rén                                   | the people on the road                           |
| 10. zài-Měiguode-dà-hú                                 | the big lakes in America                         |
| 11. Zài-dōngbiarde-fángzi yé-hén-hǎo.                  | The houses in the east are also very nice.       |
| 12. Wáng-Xiānsheng-yòubiār-de-nèiwèi-xiáojie shì-shéi? | Who is that young lady to the right of Mr. King? |
| 13. Zài-nánbiārde-nèitiáo-lù shì-Zhōngshān-Lù-ma?      | Is the road on the south Sun Yat-sen Avenue?     |
| 14. Fángzi-hòutode-shān bu-hěngāo.                     | The hill behind the house isn't very high.       |
| 15. Fángzi-qiántode-lù hěn-bu-hǎo.                     | The road in front of the house is very bad.      |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 16. Zìdiǎnshàngde-nèiběn-shū<br>shì-nǐde-ma? | Is that book on the dictionary<br>yours?         |
| 17. Běnzishàngde-nèizhī-bǐ yě-<br>shì-wǒde.  | That pen on the notebook is also<br>mine.        |
| 18. Chéng-lǐtoudeshān dōu-hén-<br>xiǎo.      | The hills inside the city are all<br>very small. |
| 19. Chéng-xībiāndenèitiáo-lù yě-<br>bùhǎo.   | That road west of the city is also<br>no good.   |
| 20. Shānhòudefángzi yě-shì-tāde-<br>ma?      | Are the houses behind the hill<br>also his?      |

Pattern 7.5. Disjunctive Questions with Transitive Verbs  
(Note 12 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub> (ne)	<u>háishi</u>	V <sub>2</sub> (ne)
Subject	Verb 1 (ne)	háishi	Verb 2 (ne)
Nǐmen	'mǎi-shū	háishi	'mài-shū?
'Do you buy books or sell books?'			

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Tāmen-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn<br>háishi-chī-'wàiguo-fàn?                        | Are they eating Chinese food or<br>foreign food?                                |
| 2. Tāmen-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà-ne<br>háishi-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà-ne?               | Are they speaking Chinese or<br>English?  |
| 3. Tāmen-'mǎi-shū háishi-'mài-<br>shū?                                       | Do they buy books or sell books?  |
| 4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguo-<br>ne háishi-zài-wàiguo-ne?                 | Is Mr. King in China or abroad?   |
| 5. Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu háishi-zài-<br>wàitōu?                                    | Are they inside or outside?   |
| 6. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén shì-'Yīng-<br>guo-rén, nǐ-zhīdao-ma?                   | Is he American or English, do<br>you know?                                      |
| 7. Nín-shì-zhǎo-Wáng-Tàitai-ne,<br>háishi-zhǎo-Wáng-Xiáojie?                 | Are you looking for Mrs. King or<br>Miss King?                                  |
| 8. Wǒmen-zài-tā-jiā-chī-fàn hái-<br>shì-zài-tā-péngyoude-jiā-chī-<br>fàn-ne? | Are we eating at his home or at<br>his friend's home?                           |
| 9. Wai, nǐ-shì-Wáng-Xiáojie hái-<br>shì-Wáng-Tàitai-ne?                      | Hello, is this Miss King or Mrs.<br>King?                                       |
| 10. Nín-shì-zài-'jiā-chī-fàn hái-shì-<br>zài-'wàitōu-chī-fàn?                | Are you eating at home or out-<br>side?   |
| 11. Nín-de-fángzi zài-shānshàng<br>háishi-zài-shānxià-ne?                    | Is your home on the mountain or<br>at the foot of [lit. below] the<br>mountain? |



12. Nín-de-jiā zài-chéng-lǐ-tou háishi-zài-chéng-wàitou-ne? Is your home inside the city or outside the city?
13. Wǒ-jīntiān-'mǎi-shū háishi-'bù-mǎi-shū-ne? Shall I or shall I not buy books today?
14. Tā-shi-tàitai háishi-xiǎojie? Is she [a] married [woman] or [an] unmarried [woman]?
15. Tā-mǎi-shū háishi-mái-bǐ? Is he buying books or pens?

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 54 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	zài	qián	-tou
nǐ		hòu	-biar
tā		lǐ	-bian
		wài	
		shàng	
		xià	

II: 60 sentences (Note 1)

fángzi	zài	dōng	-biar
shān		xī	-bian
gōngyuán		nán	
dà-shān		běi	
xiǎo-hú		zuǒ	
		yòu	

III: 72 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	—	—	zài	chéngwài
nǐ	jiā	bú		chéng-wàitou
tā				shānshang
				shānxià
				Shāndong
				Shānxi

IV: 64 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	—	—	zài	dōng	-nán
nǐ	jiā	bú		xī	-běi
tā					

V: 64 sentences (Notes 2-3)

shéi	zài	qián	-tou	chī-fàn
tā		hòu	-biar	mǎi-shū
		lǐ		shuō-huà
		wài		mái-bǐ

VI: 72 phrases (Notes 1, 5)

—	fángzi	—	dōng	-biar
zài	gōngyuán	-de	xī	
	nèitiáo-lù		nán	
			běi	
			zuǒ	
			yòu	

VII: 72 phrases

dōng	-biar	-de	fángzi
xī	-bian		shān
nán			gōngyuán
běi			lù
zuǒ			xiǎo-hú
yòu			dà-shān

VIII: 64 phrases (Note 6)

—	wǒ-jiā	qián	-tou	-de	nèiwèi	xiānsheng
zài	fángzi	hòu	-biar			tàitai
		lǐ				
		wài				

IX: 60 sentences (Notes 8, 9)

—	fángzi-wàitou	—	yǒu	—	rén
zài	jiālǐ	méi		Zhōngguo	
	shānshang			wàiguó	
	gōngyuán-lǐtou				
	lùshang				

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The i - ü Contrast

(a) nǐ	nǚ	(d) lǐ	lǚ	(g) lì	lǚ
(b) lí	lǚ	(e) jí	jú	(h) xī	xū
(c) jī	jū	(f) qī	qū	(i) xǐ	xǔ

II. The ie - üe Contrast

(a) liè	lüè	(c) jié	jué	(e) xiě	xuě
(b) niè	nüè	(d) qiē	quē	(f) xié	xué

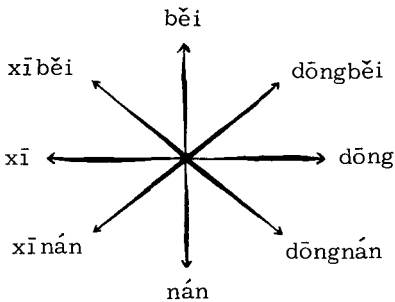
III. The in - ün Contrast

(a) yín	yún	(c) jīn	jūn	(e) qín	qún	(g) xìn	xùn
(b) yìn	yùn	(d) jìn	jùn	(f) xīn	xùn		

DEFINITE vs. INDEFINITE (Note 9)

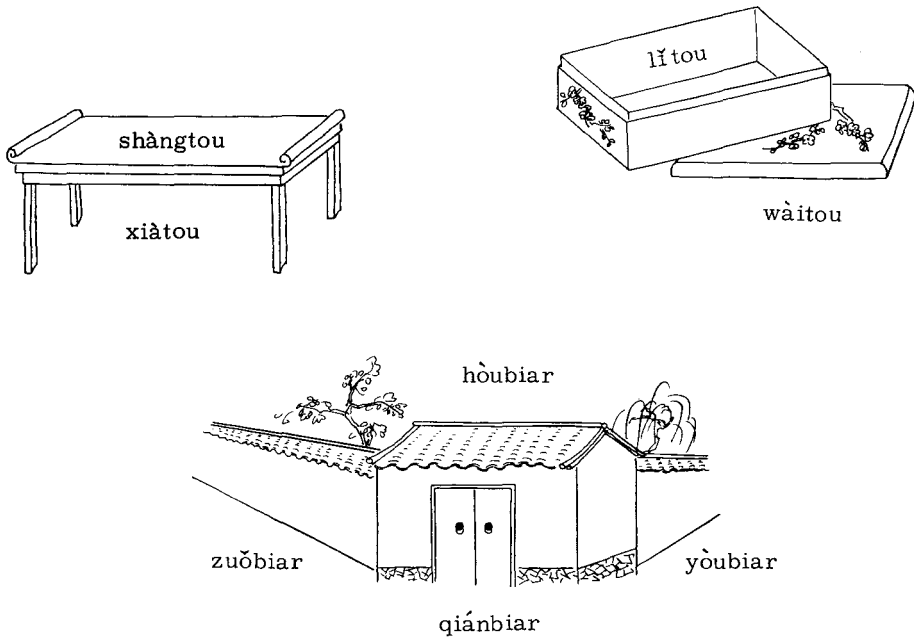
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Shān-zài-nǎr?  | Where are the mountains?                                     |
| 2. 'Nár-yǒu-shān?   | Where are there (any) mountains?                             |
| 3. Rén-zài-fángzili.  | The people are in the house.                                 |
| 4. Fángzili-yǒu-rén.  | There are (some) people in the house.                        |
| 5. Liángsuǒr-fángzi zài-shānshang.                          | The two houses are on the hill.                              |
| 6. Zài-shānshang yǒu-liángsuǒr-fángzi.                      | There are two houses on the hill.                            |
| 7. Sānge-rén-zài-lǐtou, wǔge-rén-zài-wàitou.                | Three (of the) persons are inside, five persons are outside. |
| 8. Lǐtou-yǒu-sānge-rén, wàitou-yǒu-wǔge-rén.                | There are three people inside and five people outside.       |
| 9. Rén-zài-nèr-ma?  | Are the people there?  |
| 10. Nèr-yǒu-rén-ma?   | Are there any people there?                                  |
| 11. Dà-fángzi zài-liǎngge-xiǎo-fángzide-zhōngjiār.          | The big house is between the two small houses.               |
| 12. Zài-liǎngge-xiǎo-fángzide-zhōngjiār yǒu-yíge-dà-fángzi. | Between the two small houses is a big house.                 |

SAY WHERE



On a flat surface (such as the floor or a piece of cardboard on a desk) mark out the compass points as on the drawing on the left, but without writing down the Chinese names. Improve a compass pointer and take turns spinning it and calling out the compass direction at which the pointer stops.

Copy the three figures at the top of page 82, omitting the Chinese, and practice identifying the locations without referring to the Chinese names.



## RELATIVITY PROBLEMS

The teacher makes a statement about a positional relationship and then asks you to comment on it from some other point of view. Here is an example:

Teacher says: Wǒ-zài-tā-qiántou. Tā-zài-nǎr?  
'I am in front of him. Where is he?'

You answer : Tā-zài-nǐ-hòutou.  
'He is behind you.'

1. Tā-zài-nǐ-yòubiān. Nǐ-zài-nǎr?
2. Tā-jiā zài-nǐ-jiāde-běibiān. Nǐ-jiā-zài-nǎr?
3. Tāde-běnzi zài-nǐ-běnzide-shàngtou. Nǐde-běnzi-zài-nǎr?
4. Zhèitiáo-lù zài-nèitiáo-lùde-dōngbiān. Nèitiáo-lù-zài-nǎr?
5. Wǒde-zìdiǎn zài-nǐde-zìdiǎn-xiàbiān. Nǐde-zìdiǎn-zài-nǎr?
6. Húnán zài-Húběide-nánbiān. Húběi-zài-nǎr?
7. Shānxi zài-Shāndongde-xībiān. Shāndong-zài-nǎr?
8. Dà-chéng zài-xiǎo-chéngde-dōngbiān. Xiǎo-chéng-zài-nǎr?

9. Xiǎo-zhōng zài-dà-zhōngde-hòubiār. Dà-zhōng-zài-nǎr?
10. Zhōngshān-Lù zài-Běi-Húde-nánbiār. Běi-Hú-zài-nǎr?
11. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-Bái-Xiānshengde-zuǒbiār. Bái-Xiānsheng-zài-nǎr?
12. Běnzi zài-zìdiǎnde-shàngtōu. Zìdiǎn-zài-nǎr?

## NOTES

1. Location at a place is expressed in Chinese by the construction N zài P 'N is at P':

Shū-zài-zhèr. 'The book is here.'

Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu. 'They are inside.'

2. COVERBS are transitive verbs which precede the main verb of the sentence. Some coverbs, such as zài '(be) at,' are sometimes used as full verbs; a few are never anything but coverbs. All can be translated as prepositions in English.
3. The verb zài is used as a coverb indicating where the action of the main verb takes place:

Tāmen-zài-lǐtōu chī-fàn. 'They are eating inside.'

4. If a sentence contains a coverb, then the negative adverb bu, other adverbs, and auxiliary verbs usually appear directly before the coverb, rather than before the main verb:

Tā-bú-zài-jiā chī-fàn. 'He is not eating at home.'

Tā-yě-zài-jiā chī-fàn. 'He is also eating at home.'

Tā-yào-zài-jiā chī-fàn. 'He wants to eat at home.'

5. Nouns usually precede place words without an intervening de, especially in frequently used phrases:

fángzi-lǐtōu 'inside (of) the house'

In the same type of phrase, the place word often appears in the short form:

fángzili 'in the house'

shānshang 'on the hill'

shānxià 'below the hill'

6. The verb zài is often omitted before place words which are subordinated to nouns:

zài-shānshangde-nèige-rén 'that man who is on the hill'

shānshangde-nèige-rén 'that man on the hill'

7. Place words are usually followed by de when subordinated to a following noun:

lǐtōude-rén 'the people inside'

8. We have seen that the verb yǒu means 'have' when it is preceded by a subject:

Wó-yǒu-qián. 'I have money.'

When it is not preceded by a subject, and none is to be inferred from the context, yǒu means 'there is' or 'there are':

Yǒu-qián. 'There is some money (at some understood place).'

The location of the object of yǒu is indicated by a place word before the verb—sometimes with zài, but frequently without it:

Zài-Shāndong méi-yǒu-dà-hú. or  
Shāndong méi-yǒu-dà-hú.

'There are no big lakes in Shantung.'

9. Chinese of course has no word corresponding to English 'the' for making nouns specific, but it has a grammatical device that serves a similar function—namely, the position the noun occupies in the sentence. A noun that occurs either in subject position or after a coverb usually refers to a definite person or thing (cf. English 'the'), as:

Liǎngge-rén zài-jiāli. 'The two persons (whom we were talking about) are in the house.' or 'Two of the persons (we were talking about) are in the house.'

In contrast, nouns in object position usually are indefinite, especially if a place word precedes the verb, as:

Jiāli yǒu-liǎngge-rén. 'There are two (unspecified) people in the house.'

10. Sun Yatsen, who founded the Chinese Republic in 1911, is also known as Sun Zhongshan. The latter part of his name—literally 'Middle Mountain'—is frequently used to name streets and so on, just as the name Washington is often used for this purpose in the United States.
11. Chinese place names, like those in other countries, are often based on geographical features: mountains, lakes, and so on. The provinces of Húnán 'Hunan' and Húběi 'Hupeh,' which mean 'South of the Lake' and 'North of the Lake' respectively, are named from their positions relative to Tungting Lake. Similarly, one of the names for Manchuria is Dōngběi, literally 'The Northeast.' The names of places as they appear on maps have long been standardized, unfortunately in a form which is different from the transcription used in this book.
12. The basic pattern for disjunctive questions—e.g. 'Are you eating Chinese food or (are you eating) foreign food?'—is simply to state the alternatives:

Nǐ-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn chī-'wàiguó-fàn?

The pattern can be varied by the optional insertion of hái (lit. 'still') or háishi (lit. 'still is') before the verbs and/or inserting ne at the end of one or both phrases. The most common form is the following:

Subject (shì) Verb<sub>1</sub> háishi Verb<sub>2</sub>  
Tāmen mài-shū mǎi-shū háishi mǎi-shū?

'Do they sell books or buy books?'

Note that if the verb is itself shì, the pattern usually has the following form:

Subject	<u>shì</u>	Noun <sub>1</sub>	<u>háishi</u>	Noun <sub>2</sub>
Tā	shì	'Yīngguo-rén	háishi	'Měiguó-rén?
		'Is he an Englishman or an American?'		

A useful way to drill this structure is for the teacher to present two expressions and ask the student to use them in a disjunctive question. For example:

Teacher: 'mǎi-shū... 'mài-shū

Student: Nimen-'mǎi-shū háishi-'mài-shū?

13. The verb zhīdao, which has a neutral second syllable in the affirmative form, is stressed on the second syllable in the negative: bù-zhīdào.

(See also Supplementary Lesson 7, Note 1)

14. The usual Chinese order of compass directions is dōng 'east,' xī 'west,' nán 'south,' běi 'north.' For compounds, the usual order is xīnán 'southwest,' xīběi 'northwest,' dōngnán 'southeast,' dōngběi 'northeast.'

15. Some speakers prefer to use the monosyllabic forms lǐ 'inside' and wài 'outside' after monosyllabic nouns:

Nǐ-jīā zài-chénglǐ háishi-zài-chéngwài? 'Is your home inside or outside the city?'

Wǒ-jīā-zài-chénglǐ. 'My home is in the city.'

Lesson 8 EXCHANGING INFORMATION



“Oh, 'Máo-Xiānsheng, wǒ-'hái-qǐng-wèn-ni.”

Dialogue: Mr. White asks Mr. Mao about a library, and Mr. Mao asks Mr. White about his studies.

Bái : Oh, 'Máo-Xiānsheng, wǒ-'hái-qǐng-wèn-ni.

Oh, Mr. Mao, I have something more to ask you.

Máo: Nín-'hái-qǐng-wèn-wǒ-shénmo?

What is it? [lit. What else are you asking me?]

Bái : 'Zhèr-yǒu-túshūguǎn-méi-yǒu?

Is there a library here?

5

Máo: Yǒu. Zhèrde-túshūguǎn hěndà, shū-bù-shǎo. Měitiān yǒu-hěnduō-xuésheng zài-nèr-kàn-shū. Nín-yào-jiè-shū-ma?

Yes. The library here is pretty big and has quite a few books. Every day there are a lot of students reading there. Do you want to borrow some books?

10

Bái : Wó-xiǎng-jiè-shū.

Yes. [lit. I'd like to borrow some books.]

Máo: Nín-xiǎng-jiè-'shénmo-shū?

What books are you thinking of taking out [lit. borrowing]?

Bái : Wó-xiǎng-jiè-'Zhōngwén-shū.

[I'm planning to take out] some Chinese books.

Máo: Nín-zài-dàxué xué-shénmo?

What are you studying in college?

15

86



Bái :	Wǒ-niàn-wénxué.		[I'm studying] literature.
Máo :	Nǐn-xué 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma?		[Are you studying] Chinese literature?
Bái :	'Zhōngguo-wénxué, 'Yīngguo-wénxué, wǒ-dōu-niàn.	20	[I'm studying] both Chinese and English literature.
Máo :	Nǐn-xǐhuan 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma?		Do you like Chinese literature?
Bái :	Wó-hén-xǐhuan 'Zhōngguo-wénxué.		I like Chinese literature very much.
Máo :	'Zhōngguo-wénxué-róngyi háishi-'Yīngguo-wénxué-róngyi-ne?	25	Which is easier, Chinese or English literature?
Bái :	'Dōu-hěn-nán-xué.		Both are very difficult [to study].
Máo :	Yóu-hěn-duō-'wàiguó-rén néng-kàn-'Zhōngguo-shū, yě-néng-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì. Nǐn-ne?	30	Quite a few foreigners can read Chinese books and also write characters. What about you?
Bái :	Wǒ-néng-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà, néng-kàn-'jiǎndān-Zhōngguo-shū, yě-huì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì.	35	I can speak Chinese, read simple Chinese books, and also write characters.
Máo :	Zhōngguo-zì 'tài-nán-xiě.		Chinese characters are too hard to write.
Bái :	Hěn-duì... Túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr? Lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma?		Quite right... Where is the library? Is it far from here?
Máo :	Túshūguǎn hén-yuǎn.		[The library is] quite far.
Bái :	Lí-zhèr-duō-yuǎn?	40	How far (is it) from here?
Máo :	Lí-zhèr-yǒu qīlǐ-duō-lù.		(It's) seven-odd (Chinese) miles [from here].
Bái :	Oh, qī-bālǐ-lù bú-'tài-yuǎn.		Oh, seven or eight (Chinese) miles isn't too far.
Máo :	Yě-bú-jìn.		It's not close either.
Bái :	Túshūguǎn lí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?	45	Is the library far from Mr. Gao's home?
Máo :	'Hén-yuǎn.		Quite far.

## VOCABULARY

dàxué	college, university (N) [lit. big study]
duì	correct (SV)
duō	numerous, many, much; -odd (SV) (Note 7 below)
duó(mo)	how? to what degree? (AD) (Notes 5, 7 below)
jiǎndān	simple, uncomplicated (SV) [lit. simple single]

jiè	borrow (TV)
jìn	near (SV)
kàn	look at, see, read (TV)
lí	(separated) from (CV)
lǐ	Chinese mile (= $\frac{1}{3}$ English mile) (M)
měi	each, every (M)
nán	difficult (SV)
néng	able to (AV) (Note 8 below)
niàn	study, read (aloud) (TV) (See Supplementary Lesson 8, Note 1)
róngyi	easy (SV)
shǎo	few, scarce, rare (SV) (Note 7a below)
tài	too, excessively (AD)
tiān	day (M)
túshūguǎn	library (N) [lit. chart book establishment]
wénxué	literature (N) [lit. writing study]
xiě	write (TV)
xǐhuan	like, like to (TV) [lit. joy rejoice]
xué	study (TV)
xuésheng	student (N)
yuǎn	far, a long way (off) (SV)
zì	character, word

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| yuǎn<br>'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?          | far<br>far or not?                      |
| 1. Nǐ-jīa 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?        | Is your home far away?                  |
| lí<br>lí-Měiguó                 | from<br>from America                    |
| 2. Zhōngguó-lí-Měiguó hén-yuǎn. | China is quite far from America.        |
| lǐ<br>yīlǐ-lù                   | (Chinese) mile<br>one (Chinese) mile    |
| 3. Wǒ-jīa lí-zhèr-yīlǐ-lù.      | My home is one mile from here.          |
| túshūguǎn'<br>lí-túshūguǎn      | library<br>from the library             |
| 4. Tā-jīa-lí-túshūguǎn èrlǐ-lù. | His home is two miles from the library. |
| dàxué                           | university                              |

- lí-dàxué  
5. Túshūguǎn-lí-dàxué sānlǐ-lù.  
from the university  
The library is three miles from the university.
- duō  
hěn-duō  
6. Wǒde-qián bù-hěn-duō.  
many or much  
very much  
I don't have very much money.
- duō  
sānlǐ-duō-lù  
7. Wǒ-jiā-lí-zhèr sānlǐ-duō-lù.  
and a little more  
three miles and a little more  
My home is a little over three miles from here.
- sānshí-lǐ-lù  
sānshí-duō-lǐ-lù  
8. Běi-Hú-lí-Nán-Hú sānshí-duō-lǐ-lù.  
thirty miles  
thirty-odd miles  
North Lake is thirty-odd miles from South Lake.
- duó  
'duó-yuǎn?  
lí-nèr-'duó-yuǎn?  
9. Dàxué-lí-nèr 'duó-yuǎn?  
how (much, of a quality)?  
how far?  
how far from there?  
How far is the university from there?
- 'duómo?  
'duómo-yuǎn?  
10. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr 'duómo-yuǎn?  
how (much, of a quality)?  
how far?  
How far is the library from here?
- tài  
tài-yuǎn  
11. Wǒ-jiā-lí-dàxué tài-yuǎn.  
excessively  
too far  
My home is too far from the university.
- jìn  
hěn-jìn  
12. Wǒ-jiā-lí-dàxué hěn-jìn.  
near  
very near  
My home is very near the university.
- 'jílǐ-lù?  
lí-zhèr-'jílǐ-lù?  
13. Xī-Shān-lí-zhèr 'jílǐ-lù?  
how many miles?  
how many miles from here?  
How many miles from here are the Western Hills?
- 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
lí-Měiguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
14. Zhōngguó-lí-Měiguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
how many miles?  
how many miles from America?  
How many miles from America is China?
- lí-zhèr-'duó-yuǎn?  
lí-zhèr yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?  
how far from here?  
how far from here?

15. Měiguó-lí-zhèr 'duó-yuǎn?  
or  
 Měiguó-lí-zhèr yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?  
 lí-zhèr-'jílǐ-lù?  
 lí-zhèr-yóu-'jílǐ-lù?
16. Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr 'jílǐ-lù?  
or  
 Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr yóu-'jílǐ-lù?  
 lí-Yīngguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
 lí-Yīngguó yǒu-'duōshao-lǐ-lù?
17. Zhōngguó-lí-Yīngguó 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
or  
 Zhōngguó-lí-Yīngguó yǒu-duōshao-lǐ-lù?  
 lí-nèr-bāilǐ-lù?  
 lí-nèr-yǒu-bāilǐ-lù?
18. Wǒ-jiā-lí-nèr bāilǐ-lù.  
or  
 Wǒ-jiā-lí-nèr yǒu-bāilǐ-lù.  
 xuésheng  
 nǐde-xuésheng
19. Nǐde-xuésheng 'duō-bu-duō?  
 xǐhuan  
 hén-xǐhuan
20. Wó-hén-xǐhuan-ta.  
 kàn  
 kàn-shū
21. Tā-bu-xǐhuan-kàn-shū.  
 zì  
 shénmo-zì?
22. Zhèi-shi-shénmo-zì?  
 xiě  
 xiě-zì
23. Nǐ-huì-xiě 'Zhōngguó-zì-ma?  
 měi  
 měige-rén
24. Měige-rén yǒu-yìběn-shū.  
 tiān  
 měitiān
25. Wó-měitiān chī-Zhōngguó-fàn.
- How far is America from here?  
 how many miles from here?  
 how many miles from here?  
 How far from here is your home?  
 how many miles from England?  
 how many miles from England?  
 How many miles is China from England?  
 eight miles from there  
 eight miles from there  
 My home is eight miles from there.  
 student  
 your students  
 Do you have many students?  
 like  
 like very much  
 I like him very much.  
 look at, read  
 read books  
 He doesn't like to read.  
 character  
 what character?  
 What character is this?  
 write  
 write characters  
 Do you know how to write Chinese characters?  
 each or every  
 each person  
 Each person has one book.  
 day  
 every day  
 I eat Chinese food every day.

- ní-qǐng-shéi?  
 'shéi-chī-fàn?  
 26. Ní-qǐng-'shéi-chī-fàn?  
 whom are you inviting?  
 who is eating?  
 Whom have you invited to eat?
- méi-you-xiáojie  
 xiáojie-xǐhuan-ta  
 27. Méi-you-xiáojie xǐhuan-ta.  
 there are no girls  
 girls like him  
 No girls like him.
- hǎo  
 hǎo-kàn  
 28. Nèige-xiáojie hén-hǎo-kàn.  
 good  
 good to look at, pretty  
 That young lady is very pretty.
- nán  
 nán-kàn  
 29. Nèisuǒr-fángzi hěn-nán-kàn.  
 difficult  
 ugly  
 That house is very ugly.
- róngyi  
 bu-róngyi-mǎi  
 30. Xiànzài hǎo-fángzi bu-róngyi-mǎi.  
 easy  
 not easy to buy  
 Nowadays it's not easy to buy good houses.
- niàn  
 tài-nán-niàn  
 31. Zhèiběn-shū tài-nán-niàn.  
 read, study  
 too hard to read  
 This book is too hard to read.
- niàn-shū  
 zài-dàxué-niàn-shū  
 32. Tā-zài-'shénmo-dàxué-niàn-shū?  
 study  
 study at a university  
 At what university is he studying?
- xué  
 xué-Zhōngguo-huà  
 33. Wó-hén-xǐhuan xué-Zhōngguo-huà.  
 study  
 study Chinese  
 I enjoy studying Chinese very much.
- shǎo  
 hén-shǎo  
 34. 'Zhèrde-rén hén-shǎo.  
 few  
 very few  
 There are very few people here.
- jiè  
 jiè-zhèiběn-shū  
 35. Wó-xiǎng-jiè 'zhèiběn-shū.  
 borrow  
 borrow this book  
 I'd like to borrow this book.
- néng  
 'néng-xiě Zhōngguo-zì  
 36. Wǒ-bù-néng-xiě Zhōngguo-zì.  
 able to  
 able to write Chinese characters  
 I can't write Chinese characters.
- jiǎndān  
 jiǎndānde-zì  
 37. Wǒ-'jiù-néng-xiě jiǎndānde-zì.  
 simple  
 simple characters  
 I can only write simple characters.
- wénxué  
 literature

- Yīngguo-wénxué  
38. Yīngguo-wénxué nán-niàn-  
ma?  
duì  
hěn-duì  
39. Nǐde-huà hěn-duì.  
xiě-Zhōngguo-zì  
hěn-nán  
40. Xiě-Zhōngguo-zì hěn-nán.  
shi-zhèige-hǎo  
hái-shi-nèige-hǎo  
41. Shi-'zhèige-hǎo hái-shi-'nèige  
hǎo-ne?
- English literature  
Is English literature hard to  
study?  
correct  
quite correct  
Your statement is quite correct.  
write Chinese characters  
very hard  
Writing Chinese characters is  
very hard.  
is this good?  
or is that good?  
Which is better, this or that?

## PATTERN DRILLS

## Pattern 8.1. Distance between Places (Notes 3-5 below)

## Pattern 8.1 a.

S	<u>lí</u>	P	<u>yuǎn/jìn</u>
Subject	'from'	Place	'far'/'close'
Túshūguǎn	lí	zhèr	yuǎn.
'The library is far from here.'			

## Pattern 8.1 b.

S	<u>lí</u>	P	( <u>yǒu</u> )	D
Subject	'from'	Place		Distance
Túshūguǎn	lí	zhèr	yǒu	sānlǐ lù.
'The library is three (Chinese) miles from here.'				

- 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jīā lí-zhèr-jìn. Mr. Johnson's home is near here.
- Húběi-lí-zhèr 'hén-yuǎn. Hupeh is far from here.
- Tā-jīā-lí-zhèr hěn-jìn. His home is very near here.
- Gōngyuán-lí-wǒ-jīā 'tài-yuǎn. The park is too far from my home.
- Dàxué-lí-zhèr hěn-jìn-ma? Is the college very near here?
- Zhōngshān-Lù-lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn-ma? Is Sun Yatsen Avenue very far from here?
- 'Zuǒbiarde-fángzi lí-'yòubiarde-fángzi 'duómo-yuǎn? How far is the house on the left from the house on the right?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 8. Měiguó-lí-Yīngguó yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?                              | How far is America from England?  |
| 9. Wǒ-bu-zhīdào tā-jiā-lí-zhèr-'duó-yuǎn.                        | I don't know how far his home is from here.                                     |
| 10. Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr 'jǐlǐ-lù?                                     | How many miles from here is his home?   |
| 11. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-zhèr-yóu-'jǐlǐ-lù?                     | How many miles from here is Mr. Gao's home?                                     |
| 12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-zhèr-'duōshao-lǐ-lù?                   | How many miles from here is Mr. White's home?                                   |
| 13. Túshūguǎn-lí-gōngyuán yǒu-qīlǐ-lù.                           | The library is seven miles from the park.                                       |
| 14. Shān-'qiántoude-fángzi lí-shān-'hòutoude-fángzi yǒu-èrlǐ-lù. | The house in front of the hill is two miles from the house behind the hill.     |
| 15. Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-lí-zhèr shí-liùlǐ-lù.                      | Mr. Gao's house is sixteen miles from here.                                     |
| 16. Xī-Shān-lí-zhèr bālǐ-duō-lù.                                 | The Western Hills are eight or so miles from here.                              |
| 17. Túshūguǎn-lí-gōngyuán bu-yuǎn-ma?                            | Isn't the library far from the park?  |
| 18. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-yuǎn-ma?                    | Is Mr. King's home far from the library?  |
| 19. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Máo-Xiānsheng-jiā jìn-ma?             | Is Mr. White's home close to Mr. Mao's home?                                    |
| 20. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-nèr-'duōshao-lǐ-lù?                    | How far is Mr. White's home from there?   |
| 21. 'Dàxué-lí-túshūguǎn 'jǐlǐ-lù?                                | How many miles is the college from the library?                                 |
| 22. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā hén-yuǎn-ma?       | Is Mr. Mao's home very far from Mr. King's home?                                |
| 23. Yīngguó-lí-Měiguó bù-hén-yuǎn-ma?                            | Isn't England a long way from America?  |
| 24. Nín-jiā-lí-túshūguǎn 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?                          | Is your home far from the library?  |
| 25. 'Nánbiarde-shān lí-'běibiarde-shān yóu-wǔshi-duō-lǐ-lù.      | The mountains on the south are fifty-odd miles from the mountains on the north. |

## Pattern 8.2. Nouns Shared as Objects and Subjects (Note 2)

	<u>yǒu</u>	N	V
	there is/are	Noun	Verb
	Yǒu	rén	kàn-shū.
	'There are people reading.'		
1.	'Bú-yào-shuō-huà. Yǒu-rén-kàn-shū.		Don't talk. There are people reading.
2.	Měitiān-yǒu-xuésheng zài-zhèr-kàn-shū.		Every day there are students reading here.
3.	Túshūguǎn jīntian-méi-yǒu-rén-kàn-shū.		There isn't anyone reading in the library today.
4.	Méi-yǒu-xiáojie-xǐhuan-ta.		No girls like him.
5.	Jīntian méi-yǒu-rén-mǎi-shū-ma?		Isn't anyone buying books today?
6.	Xiànzài yǒu-hěn-duō-'wàiguó-rén yào-xué-'Zhōngguó-huà.		Now there are a lot of foreigners who want to study Chinese.
7.	Yǒu-hěn-duō-xuésheng zài-nèr-kàn-shū.		There are a lot of students reading there.
8.	Yǒu-rén-zhǎo 'Wáng-Xiānsheng.		There's someone looking for Mr. King.
9.	Méi-yǒu-xiānsheng xǐhuan-nèige-xuésheng.		There are no teachers who like that student.
10.	Méi-yǒu-rén bù-xǐhuan-chī-Zhōngguó-fàn.		Everyone likes to eat Chinese food.
11.	Fángzili yǒu-rén-chī-fàn.		There are some people eating in the house.
12.	Yǒu-hěn-duō-'Zhōngguó-rén huì-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà.		There are lots of Chinese who can speak English.
13.	Měitiān-yǒu-rén zài-zhèr-chī-fàn.		Every day there are people eating here.
14.	Xiànzài méi-yǒu-'wàiguó-rén zài-nèige-dàxuéli-niàn-shū.		There aren't any foreigners studying in that college now.
15.	Méi-yǒu-rén bù-xǐhuan-'Gāo-Xiānsheng.		There isn't anyone who doesn't like Mr. Gao.
16.	Tā-kàn-wǒ-chī-fàn.		He is watching me eat.
17.	Nǐ-bu-qǐng 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn-ma? . . . Wǒ-bù-qǐng-Wáng-Xiānsheng. Wó-qǐng-Wáng-Xiáojie.		Aren't you inviting Mr. Wang to dinner? . . . I'm not inviting Mr. Wang, I'm inviting Miss Wang.
18.	Wó-hén-xǐhuan kàn-ta-xiě-Zhōngguó-zì.		I like very much to watch him write Chinese.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 19. Qíng-nǐ-kàn wó-xiě-'zhèige-zì.                     | Please watch me write this character.             |
| 20. Tā-zài-'nǎr-chī-fàn? Wó-qǐng-ta zài-'zhèr-chī-fàn. | Where is he eating? I've invited him to eat here. |

Pattern 8.3. Compound Descriptive Phrases (Note 1 below)

S	SV	TV
Subject	Stative Verb	Transitive Verb
Zhōngguo zì	nán	xiě.
'Chinese characters are hard to write.'		

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Zhōngguo-fàn-hǎo-chī.                          | Chinese food is delicious.   |
| 2. Zhōngguo-shū hěn-nán-niàn.                     | Chinese books are very hard to read.   |
| 3. Zhōngguo-huà-nán-shuō.                         | Chinese is hard to speak.  |
| 4. Zhōngguo-zì tài-nán-xiě.                       | Chinese characters are too hard to write.  |
| 5. Zhèiběn-shū róngyi-niàn.                       | This book is easy to read.   |
| 6. Zhōngguo-huà bù-róngyi-xué.                    | Chinese isn't easy to study.   |
| 7. Fángzi-shǎo róngyi-mài, fángzi-duō róngyi-mǎi. | (If) houses are scarce (they) are easy to sell; (if) houses are plentiful they're easy to buy. |
| 8. Zhèiběn-shū hén-shǎo, bù-róngyi-mǎi.           | This book is quite rare; it's not easy to buy.   |
| 9. Nèige-gōngyuán-hěn-dà, hěn-róngyi-zhǎo.        | That park is very large; it's very easy to find.   |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie hén-hǎo-kàn.                     | Miss Gao is very pretty.   |
| 11. Wó-yǒu 'hén-hǎo-kànde-bǐ.                     | I have a very pretty pen.  |
| 12. Zhèige-fàn bù-hǎo-chī.                        | This food is unpalatable.  |
| 13. Nèige-zì bù-róngyi-xiě.                       | That character isn't easy to write.  |
| 14. Zhèiběn-shū bù-róngyi-niàn.                   | This book isn't easy to read.  |
| 15. Hǎo-kànde shi-wǒde, bù-hǎo-kànde shi-tāde.    | The pretty one is mine, the ugly one is his.   |

## Pattern 8.4. Disjunctive Questions with Stative Verbs (Note 6 below)

<u>shi</u>	N <sub>1</sub>	SV (ne)	<u>háishi</u>	N <sub>2</sub>	SV (ne)
(is)	Noun <sub>1</sub>	Stative Verb	or is	Noun <sub>2</sub>	Stative Verb
Shi	gāngbǐ	hǎo	háishi	máobǐ	hǎo?

'Which is better, a fountain pen or a writing brush?'

<u>shi</u>	V <sub>1</sub>	SV (ne)	<u>háishi</u>	V <sub>2</sub>	SV (ne)
(is)	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Stative Verb	or is	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Stative Verb
Shi	shuō Zhōngguo huà	hǎo	háishi	shuō Yīngguo huà	hǎo?

'Is it better to speak Chinese or to speak English?'

- 'Wáng-Xiáojie-gāo háishi-'Bái-Xiáojie-gāo? Who is taller, Miss Wang or Miss Bai?
- Shi-'zhèr-hǎo háishi-'nèr-hǎo? Which is better, here or there?
- 'Zhōngwén-nán shi-'Yīngwén-nán? Which is harder, Chinese or English?
- 'Zhōngwén-róngyi háishi-'Yīngwén-róngyi? . . . 'Yīngwén-róngyi. Which is easier, Chinese or English? . . . English is easier.
- 'Dōngbiarde-shān-yuǎn háishi-'xībiarde-shān-yuǎn? Which are farther away, the mountains to the east or those to the west?
- Zhōngshān-Lù-jìn háishi-túshūguǎn-jìn? Which is closer, Sun Yatsen Avenue or the library?
- 'Měiguó-rén-duō háishi-'Yīngguó-rén-duō? Which are more numerous, Americans or Englishmen?
- Shānshàngde-fángzi-hǎo háishi-shānxiàde-fángzi-hǎo? Which is better, a house on a hill or a house at the foot of [lit. below] a hill?
- Zhè-'xiānsheng-duō háishi-'tàitai-duō? Which are there more of here, gentlemen or ladies?
- Shi-'zhèige-zìdián-hǎo-ne, shi-'nèige-zìdián-hǎo-ne? Is this or that dictionary better?
- Shi-'hóng-mòshuǐ-hǎo háishi-'lán-mòshuǐ-hǎo? Which is better, red ink or blue ink?
- 'Zhèige-túshūguǎn-hǎo háishi-'nèige-túshūguǎn-hǎo? Which is better, this library or that library?
- Chéng-'lǐtode-rén-duō háishi-chéng-'wàitode-rén-duō? Are there more people inside the city or outside the city?
- Shi-'zhèitiáo-lù-hǎo shi-'nèitiáo-lù-hǎo? . . . Shi-'nèitiáo-lù-hǎo. Which is better, this road or that road? . . . That road is better.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 15. Yǒu-péngyou-hǎo háishi-'méi-yǒu-péngyou-hǎo?  | Which is better, to have friends or not to have friends?  |
| 16. Yǒu-qián-hǎo háishi-'méi-yǒu-qián-hǎo?  | Which is better, to have money or not to have money?  |
| 17. Niàn-shū-hǎo háishi-'bù-niàn-shū-hǎo?   | Which is better, to study or not to study?  |
| 18. Shi-'jiè-shū-hǎo-ne, háishi-'mǎi-shū-hǎo-ne?  | Which is better, to borrow books or to buy books?   |
| 19. 'Qīdiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn-hǎo háishi-'bādiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn-hǎo?   | Is it better to eat at seven o'clock or at eight o'clock?   |
| 20. Xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì-róngyì háishi-xiě-'Yīngguo-zì-róngyì?  | Is it easier to write Chinese or English?   |
| 21. Shi-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn-jiǎndān háishi-chī-'wàiguó-fàn-jiǎndān?   | Is it simpler to eat Chinese food or to eat foreign food?   |
| 22. 'Zhèrde-fángzi-shǎo háishi-'nèrde-fángzi-shǎo?  | Are houses here scarcer than houses there?  |
| 23. Shi-'Yīngguo-rén-shǎo háishi-'Měiguó-rén-shǎo?  | Which are there fewer of, Englishmen or Americans?  |
| 24. Shi-kàn-'péngyou-hǎo háishi-niàn-'shū-hǎo? . . . Wó-xiǎng háishi-niàn-shū-hǎo.  | Which is better, to see friends or to study? . . . I think it's better to study.                                |
| 25. Wǒ-bù-zhīdào shi-zài-'jiā-niàn-shū-hǎo háishi-zài-'túshūguǎn-niàn-shū-hǎo-ne? . . . Háishi-zài-'túshūguǎn-niàn-shū-hǎo. | I don't know whether it's better to study at home or at the library. . . . It's better to study at the library. |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 20 phrases (Notes 4, 7 b)

yì	-lǐ	—	lù
èr		duō	
sān			
.			
.			
shí			

II: 18 phrases (Notes 4, 7 b)

—	shi	—	lǐ	lù
èr		duō		
sān				
.				
.				
jiǔ				

III: 72 sentences (Notes 4, 7 b)

dà-fángzi	lí	Zhōngshān-Lù	—	yì	-lǐ	—	lù
wō-jiā		gōngyuán	yǒu	èr		duō	
dàxué		túshūguǎn					

IV: 80 sentences (Notes 3, 5)

Húnán	lí	zhèr	duó	yuǎn
Húběi		nèr	duómó	jìn
Shāndong			hěn	
Shānxi			bu	
			tài	

V: 36 sentences (Note 2)

—	yǒu	xiānsheng	kàn-shū	—
méi		xuésheng	chī-fàn	ma
		rén	mǎi-shū	

VI: 72 sentences (Note 6)

—	wǒ	*	shì	xiānsheng	*
shì	nǐ	hǎo	háishi	tàitai	hǎo
		gāo		tā	gāo
		dà			dà

(The asterisk \* indicates that the same word must be chosen from both columns.)

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The u - ü Contrast

(See The Sounds of Chinese, 19)

(a) wū yū	(e) nǔ nǚ	(i) zhū jū
(b) wú yú	(f) lú lǔ	(j) zhú jú
(c) wǔ yǔ	(g) lǔ lǚ	(k) zhǔ jǔ
(d) wù yù	(h) lù lǜ	(l) zhù jù
(m) chū qū	(q) shū xū	
(n) chú qú	(r) shú xú	
(o) chǔ qǔ	(s) shǔ xǔ	
(p) chù qù	(t) shù xù	

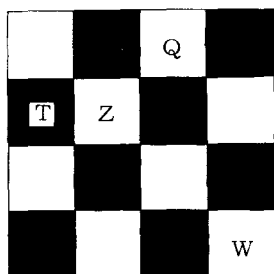
II. The un - ün Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 19)

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| (a) wén yún | (d) zhūn jūn |
| (b) wěn yǔn | (e) chún qún |
| (c) wèn yùn | (f) shùn xùn |

III. The uan - üan Contrast  
(See The Sounds of Chinese, 19)

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) wán yuán   | (f) chuān quān |
| (b) luǎn lǔǎn  | (g) chuǎn quǎn |
| (c) zhuān juǎn | (h) chuàn quàn |
| (d) zhuǎn juǎn | (i) shuān xuān |
| (e) zhuàn juàn |                |

CHECKERBOARD PROBLEM



Suppose the accompanying figure represents a city laid out in a checkerboard pattern, in squares measuring one Chinese mile on each side. The white squares are residential blocks, while the black squares contain business establishments and public institutions, such as the library (T). In the blocks indicated by initials are residences occupied by Mr. Zhang, Mr. Wang, and Mr. Qian.

Answer the following questions based on straight-line distances (not diagonals) between the library and the residences, and between pairs of residences.

1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn 'jílǐ-lù?
2. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn 'duó-yuǎn?
3. Qián-jia-lí-Wáng-jia yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
4. Túshūguǎn-lí-Qián-jia èrlǐ-lù. 'Duì-bu-duì?
5. 'Shéide-jiā lí-túshūguǎn yǒu-'sānlǐ-lù?
6. Qíng-nǐ-shuō, 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?
7. Túshūguǎn lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
8. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā yǒu-'duó-yuǎn?

10. Nǐ -shuō, túshūguǎn lí-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā 'jǐlǐ-lù?
11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā yóu-'jǐlǐ-lù?
12. Túshūguǎn lí-'shéi-jiā-jìn, lí-'shéi-jiā-yuǎn?
13. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā-jìn-ne, háishi-lí-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā-jìn?
14. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-yuǎn háishi-lí-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā-yuǎn?
15. Túshūguǎn lí-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā 'duōshao-lǐ-lù?

## NOTES

1. Compound descriptive phrases are formed by using a stative verb before a transitive verb:

hǎo-chī 'good to eat, tasty'  
róngyi-xiě 'easy to write'

2. Note the following types of sentences which we have already encountered:

- (a) A full sentence used as the object of the verb shuō 'say,' as:

Tā-shuō 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-zài-jiā. 'He says (that) Mr. King is at home.'

Here shuō introduces the full sentence 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-zài-jiā 'Mr. Wang is at home.' Tā is the subject of shuō and 'Wáng-Xiānsheng is the subject of zài.

- (b) A sentence with a noun in the middle serving a double function, as:

Tā-qǐng-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn. 'He is inviting Mr. King to dinner.'

This can be split into two sentences: Tā-qǐng-'Wáng-Xiānsheng' 'He is inviting Mr. King' and 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn 'Mr. King eats.' The noun phrase 'Wáng-Xiānsheng serves double duty as the object of qǐng 'invite' and as the subject of chī-fàn 'eat.' A very frequent occurrence of this type of sharing is with the verb yǒu 'there is' or 'there are': Yǒu-rén-zhāo-ni 'There's someone looking for you'—with rén 'person' as the pivotal noun.

3. Separation of one place from another is expressed with the coverb lí '(separated) from' in sentences on this pattern: S lí P yuǎn 'S is separated from P far'—that is, 'S is far from P.' Qualifying adverbs, if any, are placed before the stative verb:

Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn hěn-jìn. 'My home is very close to the library.'

4. Expressing the distance separating one place from another involves the use of three elements: (1) the coverb lí 'from'; (2) a measure of distance (e.g. lǐ '[Chinese] mile'); and (3) the noun lù 'road':

Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn sānlǐ-lù. 'My home is three miles from the library.'

The verb yǒu may be inserted before the expression for distance:

Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn yǒu-sānlǐ-lù.

5. Questions about distance are asked in the following ways:

S lí P yuǎn-ma? 'Is S far from P?'

S lí P 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn? 'Is S far from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'duó-yuǎn? 'How far is S from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'duómo-yuǎn? 'How far is S from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'jǐlǐ-lù? 'How many miles is S from P?'

S lí P (yǒu) 'duōshao-lǐ-lù? 'How many miles is S from P?'

6. Disjunctive questions with stative verbs (e.g. 'Which is better, A or B?') are usually expressed by stating the alternatives, often with shì before the first alternative and shì or háishi before the second. A and B are either noun expressions or verb expressions. Examples:

Shì-'zhèige-hǎo shì-'nèige-hǎo?	} 'Which is better, this or that?'
Shì-'zhèige-hǎo háishi-'nèige-hǎo?	
	[lit. Is this good (or) is that good?]

Shì-'qǐng-ta-hǎo háishi-'bù-qǐng-ta-hǎo? 'Is it better to invite him or not to invite him?'

In the answer, one alternative or the other is selected, with or without shì or (for greater emphasis) háishi. For example:

Zhèige-hǎo. 'This is better.'

Shì-'nèige-hǎo. 'That is better.'

Háishi-'zhèige-hǎo. 'This is better.'

Háishi-qǐng-ta-hǎo. 'It would be better to invite him.'

Note that Zhèige-hǎo out of context might be ambiguous. Context will determine whether it is to be interpreted as 'This is good' or 'This is better.'

7. Note the distinctions in tone and in usage between duō and duó:

- (a) duō is a stative verb which is used as a predicate:

Wǒde-qián-bù-duō. 'My money isn't much'—that is, 'I don't have very much money.'

This construction is much more common than the word-for-word equivalent with the natural English corresponding to it (that is, 'I don't have very much money'). Similarly with shǎo 'few, little':

Wǒde-qián hén-shǎo. 'I have very little money.'

- (b) duó is used in the sense of '-odd' or 'and a little more.' With the numbers from one to ten, it comes right after the measure:

yíkuài-duó-qián 'one dollar and a little more'

shíkuài-duó-qián 'ten-odd dollars'

With ten and multiples of ten (twenty, thirty, etc., to ninety), duō is placed just before the measure:

shí-duō-kuài-qián 'ten-odd dollars'

èrshí-duō-kuài-qián 'twenty-odd dollars'

jiǔshí-duō-kuài-qián 'ninety-odd dollars'

With shí 'ten,' thus, there is a choice of two positions.

- (c) duó (or duómo) is an adverb used before a stative verb to ask a question involving degree:

Nèige-běnzǐ-'duó-dà? 'How big is that notebook?'

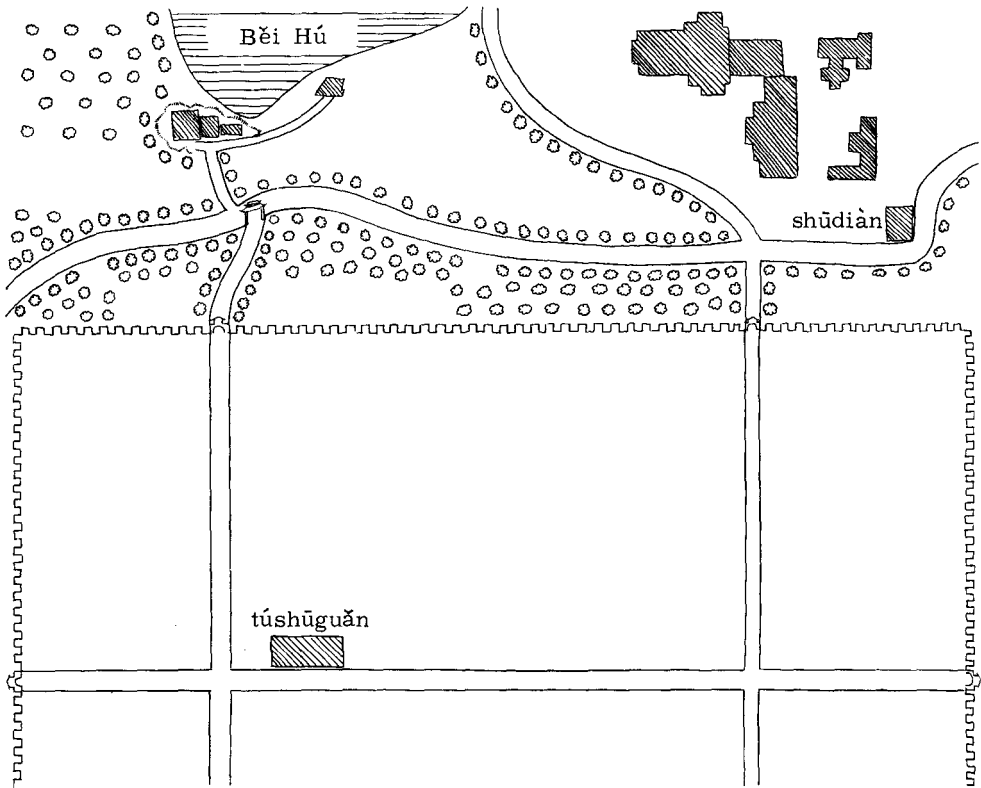
8. The words néng, huì, and kéyi all mean 'can,' though sometimes in various senses, as follows:

- (a) néng refers to a physical ability and might therefore be used in the sense of 'be able to' or 'strong enough to';  
 (b) huì refers to an acquired ability and might therefore be translated as 'know how to';  
 (c) kéyi asks for or grants permission, like 'may.'

These distinctions are by no means rigidly adhered to, however, just as 'can' and 'may' are often used interchangeably in English; néng and huì in particular are apt to fall together.



Lesson 9 ASKING DIRECTIONS



"Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmó-zǒu?"

Dialogue: Mr. White asks how to get to the library and to Mr. Gao's home.

'Bái-Xiānsheng-xiǎng 'xiān-dào-túshūguǎn, 'hòu-dào-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jia-qu. Tā-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng túshūguǎn-zài nǎr, 'zěnmó-zǒu, cóng-túshūguǎn dào-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jia 'zěnmó-zǒu.

5

Mr. White plans to go to the library first and then to Mr. Gao's home. He asks Mr. Mao where the library is, how to get there, and how to go from the library to Mr. Gao's home.

Bái : Wǒ-hái-yào-wèn-ni, cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmó-zǒu?

I'd also like to ask you, how do I get from the bookstore to the library?

Máo: Nín-cóng-zhè wàng-nán-yì-zhíde-zǒu, wàng-xī-guāi, guò-báge-lù-kǒur, jiù-shi-túshūguǎn.

10

You go straight south from here, turn west, pass eight intersections, and there's the library.

- Bái : Cóng-zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn-nèr  
yǒu-'shénmo-chē-kéyi-zuò-ne?
- Máo : Gōnggòng-qìchē diànchē 'dōu- 15  
yǒu. Nín-xiǎng-zuò 'shénmo-  
chē-ne?
- Bái : Wó-xiǎng-zuò gōnggòng-qì-  
chē-qu. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn  
zài-nǎr? 20
- Máo : Lí-shūdiàn-bù-yuǎn. Nín-  
cóng-zhèr wàng-xī-zǒu, guò-  
yíge-lù-kǒur, jiù-shi-gōng-  
gòng-qìchē-zhàn.
- Bái : Zuò-'jǐhào-chē-ne? 25
- Máo : Zuò-'sānhào-chē. Yìzhí-  
jiù-dào-túshūguǎn.
- Bái : Cóng-túshūguǎn dào-'Gāo-  
Xiānsheng-jiā 'zěnmó-zǒu?  
Yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-ma? 30
- Máo : Yǒu. Nín-cóng-túshūguǎn  
wàng-xī-zǒu, guò-liǎngge-  
lù-kǒur, jiù-shi-gōnggòng-  
qìchē-zhàn. Nín-shàng-chē  
dào-Zhōngshān-Lù. Zài-  
gōngyuán-mén-kǒur-xià-chē,  
zài-shàng-xiǎo-shān, jiù-shi-  
'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā. 35
- Bái : Zuò-'jǐhào-chē-ne?
- Máo : Nín-zuò-'jiǔhào-chē, 'liù-  
hào-chē 'dōu-kéyi. 40
- Bái : Xièxie-ni.
- Máo : Nín-míngtian 'lái-bu-lái?
- Bái : Huòzhě wǒ-míngtian 'hái-  
lái-mǎi-shū. 45
- Máo : Míngtian-jiàn.
- From here to the library what  
car can I take?
- There are both busses and  
streetcars. What would you like  
to take?
- I'd like to go by bus. Where's  
the bus stop?
- Not far from the bookstore. You  
go west from here, pass one in-  
tersection, and you're at the bus  
stop.
- What number bus do I take?
- Take a No. 3 bus. It goes di-  
rectly to the library.
- How do I go from the library to  
Mr. Gao's home? Is there a  
bus?
- There is. You go west from the  
library, pass two intersections,  
and there's the bus stop. You  
get on the bus and go to Sun Yat-  
sen Avenue. Get off the bus at  
the park gate, go up the little  
hill, and you come to Mr. Gao's  
home.
- What number bus do I take?
- You can take either a No. 9 or a  
No. 6 bus.
- Thanks.
- Are you coming tomorrow?
- Perhaps I'll come again tomor-  
row to buy some books.
- See you tomorrow.

## VOCABULARY

chē	vehicle (N)
cóng	from (CV)
dào	go to (TV) arrive (at) (IV) to (CV)
diànchē	streetcar (N)

guò	pass (TV)
guǎi	turn (IV)
gōnggòng	public
hào	number (M)
hòu	afterwards (AD)
huòzhě	perhaps (MA)
kǒu, kǒur	mouth, opening (N)
lái	come (IV)
mén	door, gate (N)
míngtiān	tomorrow (TW)
qìchē	motor vehicle (N)
qù	go (IV)
shàng	ascend; go to (TV) to (CV)
shūdiàn	bookstore (N)
wàng, wǎng	toward (CV)
xià	descend (TV)
xiān	first (AD)
yìzhí(de)	straight (AD)
zài	again (AD)
zěnmó, zěnmé	how? how come (that...)? (AD)
zhàn	stop, station (N)
zǒu	walk, travel, depart, go (V)
zuò	ride (on a vehicle) (TV) by means of (a vehicle) (CV)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| lái<br>'lái-bu-lái?                   | come<br>come or not?                        |
| 1. Tā-jīntiān 'lái-bu-lái?            | Is he coming today?                         |
| qù<br>'shídiǎn-zhōng-qù               | go<br>go at ten o'clock                     |
| 2. Wó-xiǎng 'shídiǎn-zhōng-qù.        | I plan to go at ten o'clock.                |
| dào<br>'shénmo-shíhou-dào?            | arrive (at a place)<br>arrive at what time? |
| 3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-dào? | When will Mr. White arrive?                 |

- dào  
dào-túshūguǎn  
4. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-túshūguǎn?
- shūdiàn  
dào-shūdiàn  
5. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-shūdiàn?
- dào  
dào-shūdiàn-lái  
6. Qǐng-nín 'sidiàn-zhōng-dào-shūdiàn-lái.
- dào  
dào-shūdiàn-qu  
7. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-shūdiàn-qu?
- míngtiān  
míngtiān-wǎnshàng  
8. Tā-míngtiān-wǎnshàng dào-nèr-qu.
- wǒ-míngtiān-lái  
mǎi-shū  
9. Wǒ-míngtiān-lái-mǎi-shū.
- wǒ-míngtiān-mǎi-shū  
10. Wǒ-míngtiān-mǎi-shū-lai.
- dào-shūdiàn-qu  
mǎi-shū  
11. Wǒ-dào-shūdiàn-qu mǎi-shū.
- cóng-Yīngguo-lái  
12. Tā-míngtiān cóng-Yīngguo-lái.
- cóng-Yīngguo  
dào-Zhōngguo  
13. Cóng-Yīngguo-dào-Zhōngguo 'duó-yuǎn?
- zěnmō?  
'zěnmō-shuō?  
14. Zhèige 'Zhōngguo-huà-zěnmō-shuō?
- go to a place  
go to the library  
When are you going to the library?
- bookstore  
go to the bookstore  
When are you going to the bookstore?
- to (a place)  
come to the bookstore  
Please come to the bookstore at four o'clock.
- to (a place)  
go to the bookstore  
When are you going to the bookstore?
- tomorrow  
tomorrow evening  
He will go there tomorrow.
- I'll come tomorrow  
buy books  
I'll come tomorrow to buy some books.
- I'll buy some books tomorrow  
I'll come tomorrow to buy some books.
- go to the bookstore  
buy books  
I'm going to the bookstore to buy some books.
- come from England  
He will come from England tomorrow.
- from England  
to China  
How far is it from England to China?
- how?  
say how?  
How does one say this in Chinese?

- zǒu  
'zěnmǒ-zǒu  
15. Dào-shūdiàn 'zěnmǒ-zǒu? walk, travel, depart  
how does one go?  
How do you get to the bookstore?
- zǒu  
zǒu-lù  
16. Wó-hén-xǐhuan-zǒu-lù. travel  
walk (along a road)  
I like walking very much.
- sānlǐ -lù  
zǒu-sānlǐ -lù  
17. Wó-měitiān zǒu-sānlǐ -lù. three miles  
walk three miles  
I walk three miles every day.
- wàng  
wàng-xī  
18. Wàng-xī -zǒu-ba! toward  
toward the west  
Go west!
- wàng-dōng-zǒu  
bālǐ -lù  
19. Wàng-dōng-zǒu bālǐ -lù. go east  
eight miles  
Go east for eight miles.
- guǎi  
wàng-nán-guǎi  
20. Bú-yào-wàng-nán-guǎi. turn  
turn toward the south  
Don't turn south.
- chē  
'shénmǒ-chē  
21. Zhèi-shi-'shénmǒ-chē? vehicle  
what vehicle?  
What vehicle is this?
- chē  
qì chē  
22. Zhèi-bú-shi-'Zhōngguó-qì -  
chē. vehicle  
motor vehicle  
This is not a Chinese car.
- diànchē  
23. Zhèr-yǒu-diànchē-ma? streetcar  
Are there streetcars here?
- gōnggòng  
gōnggòng-qì chē  
24. Zhèr-'méi-yǒu-gōnggòng-  
qì chē. public  
bus  
There are no busses here.
- zuò  
zuò-diànchē  
25. Wǒ-'bù-xǐhuan zuò-diànchē. ride (on a vehicle)  
ride a streetcar  
I don't like to ride streetcars.
- zuò-diànchē  
zuò-'diànchē-lái  
26. Qǐng-nín-zuò-'diànchē-lái. ride a streetcar  
come by streetcar  
Please come by streetcar.
- shàng  
shàng-chē  
27. Wǒ-zài-'nǎr-shàng-chē? ascend, get on  
board a car  
Where do I board the car?

- xià  
xià-shān  
28. Tāmen-jīntian xià-shān-ma?  
descend, get off  
descend the mountain  
Are they descending the mountain today?
- xiān  
'xiān-niàn-shū  
29. Wó-xiǎng 'xiān-niàn-shū.  
first  
first study  
I plan to study first.
- hòu  
hòu-kàn-péngyou  
30. Wǒ-'xiān-niàn-shū, 'hòu-kàn-péngyou.  
afterwards  
afterwards see friends  
I'll study first, and see friends afterwards.
- zài  
'zài-shuō  
31. Qǐng-nín-'zài-shuō.  
again  
say again  
Please repeat.
- mén  
chéng-mén  
32. Wǒ-jiā lí-chéng-mén-hěn-jìn.  
door, gate  
city gate  
My home is very close to the city gate.
- kǒu  
mén-kǒu  
33. Mén-kǒu bù-róngyi-zhǎo.  
opening  
doorway, gateway  
The doorway isn't easy to find.
- lù-kǒu  
lí-lù-kǒu-bù-yuǎn  
34. Shūdiàn lí-lù-kǒu-bù-yuǎn.  
street intersection  
not far from the intersection  
The bookstore is not far from the intersection.
- guò  
guò-lù-kǒu  
35. Nǐ-xiān-guò sānge-lù-kǒu.  
pass  
pass an intersection  
First you pass three intersections.
- zhàn  
diànchē-zhàn  
36. Qǐng-wèn, diànchē-'zhàn-zài-nǎr?  
stop, station  
streetcar stop  
May I ask, where is the streetcar stop?
- yìzhí  
yìzhí-wàng-běi  
37. Nǐ-yìzhí wàng-béi-zǒu.  
straight  
straight toward the north  
Go straight north.
- hào  
bāhào-chē  
38. Xiān-zuò-'bāhào-chē.  
number  
Number Eight car  
First take car No. 8.
- huòzhě  
huòzhě-'bù-néng-qù  
39. Tā-míngtian huòzhě-'bù-néng-qù.  
perhaps  
perhaps can't go  
Perhaps he can't go tomorrow.

- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
|     | yǒu-'shénmo-xuésheng?<br>kéyi-zài-zhèr-niàn-shū   | what students are there?<br>can study here       |
| 40. | Yǒu-'shénmo-xuésheng kéyi-<br>zài-'zhèr-niàn-shū? | What students [are there who]<br>can study here? |
|     | yǒu-'shénmo-fàn?<br>kéyi-chī                      | what food is there?<br>can eat                   |
| 41. | Yǒu-'shénmo-fàn kéyi-chī?                         | What food is there to eat?                       |
|     | yǒu-'shénmo-chē?<br>kéyi-zuò                      | what car is there?<br>it is possible to ride     |
| 42. | Yǒu-'shénmo-chē kéyi-zuò?                         | What car can you take?                           |

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 9.1. Motion to a Place (Note 1 below)

S	<u>dào</u>	P	<u>lái/qu</u>
Subject	to	Place	come/go
Wǒ	dào	shūdiàn	qu.

'I'm going to the bookstore.'

- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| 1.  | Tā-dào-'Měiguó-lái.   | He is coming to America.                                   |
| 2.  | Tā-dào-'Měiguó-qu.  | He is going to America.                                    |
| 3.  | Tā-dào-nǎr-qu?  | Where is he going?   |
| 4.  | 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'bú-dào-<br>Měiguó-lái.                             | Mr. Qian isn't coming to Amer-<br>ica.                     |
| 5.  | 'Wáng-Xiānsheng dào-shū-<br>diàn-qu-ma?                             | Is Mr. King going to the book-<br>store?                   |
| 6.  | Jīntian-wǎnshang 'Máo-Xiān-<br>sheng dào-túshūguǎn-qu.              | This evening Mr. Mao is going to<br>the library.           |
| 7.  | Tā-dào-wǒ-jiā-lái.  | He's coming to my home.                                    |
| 8.  | 'Gāo-Xiáojie dào-Wáng-jia-<br>qu.                                   | Miss Gao is going to the King<br>home.                     |
| 9.  | Wǒ-míngtian bú-dào-'Bái-<br>Xiānsheng-jiā-qu.                       | I'm not going to Mr. White's<br>home tomorrow.             |
| 10. | Wǒ-dào-'wàitou-qu, tā-dào-<br>'lǐtou-lái.                           | I'm going outside, he's coming<br>inside.                  |
| 11. | Tā-xǐhuan dào-'shūdiàn-lái-<br>ma?                                  | Does he like to come to the<br>bookstore?                  |
| 12. | 'Qián-Xiānsheng dào-Húběi-<br>qu, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng dào-<br>Húnán-lái. | Mr. Qian is going to Hupeh, Mr.<br>Gao is coming to Hunan. |

13. Jīntian-wǎnshang nǐ-dào-  
'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu-ma?  
Are you going to Mr. Gao's home  
this evening?
14. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'hén-xǐhuan-  
dào-zhèr-lái.  
Mr. Gao likes coming here very  
much.
15. Wǒ-míngtiān dào-chéng-lǐtou-  
qu.  
I'm going into town tomorrow.

Pattern 9.2. Purpose with lái and qù (Note 6 below)

Pattern 9.2 a.

S	<u>qù</u>	V	O
Subject	go	Verb	Object
Wǒ	qù	kàn	péngyou.
'I'm going (in order) to see some friends.'			

Pattern 9.2 b.

S	V	O	<u>qu</u>
Subject	Verb	Object	go
Wǒ	kàn	péngyou	qu.
'I'm going (in order) to see some friends.'			

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Wǒ-lái-zhǎo-'Wáng-Xiānsheng.         | I've come to find Mr. King.                                |
| 2. Wǒ-jīntian 'bù-qù-mǎi-shū.           | I'm not going (to some place or other) to buy books today. |
| 3. Tā-qù-niàn-shū.                      | He's going (somewhere) to study.                           |
| 4. Wǒ-'bù-qù-mǎi-qīānbǐ.                | I'm not going (there) to buy pencils.                      |
| 5. Tā-lái-mǎi-shénmo?                   | What's he come to buy?                                     |
| 6. Tā-jīntian 'bù-kàn-shū-qu.           | He's not going (there) today to read.                      |
| 7. Wǒ-míngtiān jiè-shū-lái.             | I'll come tomorrow to take out some books.                 |
| 8. Wó-xiáng-mǎi-shū-qu.                 | I plan to go and buy some books.                           |
| 9. Tā-jīntian lái-jiè-shū-ma?           | Is he coming today to borrow the books?                    |
| 10. Wó-xǐhuan dào-túshūguǎn kàn-shū-qu. | I like going to the library to read.                       |
| 11. Wǒ-míngtiān 'hái-lái-mǎi-shū.       | I'll come again tomorrow to buy some books.                |
| 12. Tā-'bù-dào-shūdiàn mǎi-zìdiǎn-qu.   | He's not going to the bookstore to buy a dictionary.       |



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 13. Ní-'yé-xǐhuan dào-túshūguǎn-qu kàn-shū-ma?               | Do you also like going to the library to read?                                |
| 14. 'Gāo-Xiáojie méi-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ.                        | Miss Gao doesn't have any blue ink.   |
| 15. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-bēnzi. Tā-jīntian-bú-qu-mǎi-ma?  | Mr. King doesn't have a notebook. Isn't he going to buy one today?            |
| 16. 'Bái-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-Zhōngwén-shū. Tā-jīntian-lái-jie. | Mr. White doesn't have any Chinese books. He's coming today to borrow (some). |
| 17. Wǒ-qù-chéng-wàitou kàn-péngyou.                          | I'm going outside the city to see some friends.                               |
| 18. Tā-bú-dào-Yīngguo-qu niàn-shū.                           | He's not going to England to study.   |
| 19. Tā-dào-'Měiguó-lái niàn-shū-ma?                          | Is he coming to America to study?   |
| 20. Xiànzài 'jídìǎn-zhōng? Wǒ-qu-kàn-péngyou.                | What time is it now? I'm going to see some friends.                           |

Pattern 9.3. Motion To and From Places (Notes 2-3 below)

Pattern 9.3 a.

S	<u>cóng</u>	P	<u>lái</u>
Subject	from	Place	come
Tā	cóng	Měiguó	lái.
'He is coming from America.'			

Pattern 9.3 b.

S	<u>cóng</u>	P <sub>1</sub>	<u>dào</u>	P <sub>2</sub>	<u>lái</u>
Subject	from	P <sub>1</sub>	to	P <sub>2</sub>	come
Tā	cóng	Měiguó	dào	Zhōngguó	lái.
'He is coming to China from America.'					

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐ-cóng-'nǎr-lái?   | Where are you coming from?                        |
| 2. Nǐ-cóng-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jīa-lái-ma?                        | Are you coming from Mr. Gao's house?              |
| 3. Tā-cóng-'Yīngguó-lái-ma?                                  | Is he coming from England?                        |
| 4. Wǒ-cóng-'dàxué-lái.                                       | I'm coming from the university.                   |
| 5. 'Qián-Xiānsheng míngtiān-'wú-diǎn-zhōng cóng-'Měiguó-lái. | Mr. Qian will come from America tomorrow at 5:00. |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. Wǒ-cóng-nèr dào-túshūguǎn-qu.                                     | I'm going to the library from there.                     |
| 7. 'Máo-Tàitai cóng-túshūguǎn dào-gōngyuán-qu.                       | Mrs. Mao is going from the library to the park.          |
| 8. 'Máo-Xiānsheng jīntian-sìdiǎn-zhōng cóng-túshūguǎn dào-'zhèr-lái. | Mr. Mao will come here from the library today at 4:00.   |
| 9. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng cóng-Měiguó-dào-Yīngguó-qu.                      | Mr. Johnson is going from America to England.            |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng cóng-'Máo-Xiānsheng-jiā dào-túshūguǎn-qu.         | Mr. Gao is going from Mr. Mao's home to the library.     |
| 11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng cóng-'nǎr-lái? Dào-'nǎr-qù?                      | Where is Mr. Qian coming from? Where is he going?        |
| 12. Cóng-zhèr-dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā 'zěnmo-qù?                      | How does one go from here to Mr. Gao's home?             |
| 13. Nǐ-cóng-zhèr-dào-tā-jiā 'zěnmo-qù?                               | How are you going from here to his home?                 |
| 14. Tāmen-bù-cóng-tā-ner dào-'zhèr-lái-ma?                           | Aren't they coming here from his place there?            |
| 15. 'Gāo-Tàitai-yǒu-péngyou cóng-Měiguó-dào-'Zhōngguó-lái-ma?        | Does Mrs. Gao have friends coming from America to China? |
| 16. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-bù-cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn-qu.                 | Mr. Mao isn't going to the library from the bookstore.   |
| 17. Cóng-zhèr-dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā 'zěnmo-zǒu?                     | How do you get from here to Mr. Gao's home?              |
| 18. Cóng-nǐ-nèr dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmo-zǒu?                            | How does one get from your place there to the library?   |
| 19. Tāmen-dōu-cóng-zhèr dào-gōngyuán-qu-ma?                          | Are they all going from here to the park?                |
| 20. Cóng-chéng-lǐtōu dào-chéng-wàitōu 'zěnmo-qù?                     | How do you get from inside the city to outside the city? |

Pattern 9.4. Motion Toward a Place (Note 4 below)

<u>wàng</u>	P	<u>zǒu</u>
toward	Place	go
Wàng	nán	zǒu.
'Go south!'		

- |                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Cóng-shūdiàn wàng-zuó-guǎi.   | From the bookstore turn left. |
| 2. Cóng-túshūguǎn wàng-yòu-guǎi. | Turn right at the library.    |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. Cóng-Zhōngshān-Lù wàng-xī-guǎi.             | From Sun Yatsen Avenue turn west.           |
| 4. Cóng-zhèr wàng-xī-zǒu.                      | Go west from here.                          |
| 5. Cóng-'Máo-Xiānsheng-jiā wàng-béi-zǒu.       | Go north from Mr. Mao's home.               |
| 6. Wàng-'dōng-guǎi háishi-wàng-'xī-guǎi?       | Does one turn east or west?                 |
| 7. Cóng-nǎr wàng-dōng-zǒu?                     | From where do you go east?                  |
| 8. Cóng-zhèr wàng-dōng-zǒu.                    | Go east from here.                          |
| 9. Cóng-zhèr-dào-shūdiàn wàng-béi-zǒu.         | Go north from here to the bookstore.        |
| 10. Cóng-zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn-qu, wàng-béi-guǎi. | To go from here to the library, turn north. |

Pattern 9.5. Coverb of Conveyance (Note 5 below)

(S)	<u>zuò</u>	N	<u>qù</u>
(Subject)	by	Noun	go
Wǒ	zuò	chē	qù.

'I go by car.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Zuò-'diànchē-lái.                                    | Come by streetcar.                                       |
| 2. Tā-jīntian zuò-'gōnggòng-qìchē-lái.                  | He's coming by bus today.                                |
| 3. Nǐ-míngtian zuò-'shénmo-chē-qù?                      | What sort of vehicle are you taking tomorrow?            |
| 4. 'Bái-Xiáojie bú-zuò-'qìchē-lái-ma?                   | Isn't Miss Bai coming by automobile?                     |
| 5. Nǐmen dōu-zuò-'gōnggòng-qìchē-qù.                    | All of you go by bus.                                    |
| 6. Wǒ-cóng-gōngyuán zuò-qìchē-qu.                       | I'm taking a car from the park.                          |
| 7. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē dào-túshūguǎn-lái. | Mr. Gao is coming to the library by bus.                 |
| 8. Wó-xiǎng-cóng-zhèr zuò-diànchē dào-Gāo-jia-qu.       | I plan to go by streetcar to the Gao home from here.     |
| 9. Nǐmen-cóng-zhèr dōu-zuò-qìchē dào-gōngyuán-qu-ma?    | Are you all going from here to the park by car?          |
| 10. Wǒ-cóng-Gāo-jia zuò-diànchē dào-túshūguǎn-qu.       | I'm going from the Gao home to the library by streetcar. |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 72 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	dào	túshūguǎn	lái
nǐ		gōngyuán	qù
tā		dàxué	
shéi		shūdiàn	

II: 64 sentences (Note 1)

tā	shénmo-shíhou	dào	túshūguǎn	lai
tāmen	míngtian		gōngyuán	qu
	wǎnshang		dàxué	
	sāndiǎn-zhōng		shūdiàn	

III: 72 sentences (Note 6)

(The asterisk \* indicates positions in either of which lái or qù may be used.)

wǒ	—	*	kàn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng	*
nǐ	men	qù	zhǎo-péngyou	qù
tā			mǎi-dìtú	

IV: 72 sentences (Note 6)

(The asterisk \* indicates that only words on the same line may be selected from these two columns.)

		*		*
wǒ	dào	túshūguǎn	lái	jiè-shū
nǐ		shūdiàn	qù	mǎi-dìtú
tā		Gāo-jia		kàn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng
wǒmen		gōngyuán		zhǎo-péngyou
nǐmen		dàxué		niàn-shū
tāmen		túshūguǎn		kàn-shū

V: 72 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	cóng	túshūguǎn	lái	—
nǐ		gōngyuán	zōu	ma?
tā		dàxué		
		shūdiàn		
		nèr		
		Dōngběi		

VI: 64 sentences (Note 3)

cóng	zhèr	dào	túshūguǎn	'zěnmo-zōu?
	nèr		gōngyuán	yǒu-sānlǐ-lù
	tā-jiā		dàxué	'duó-yuǎn?
	Wáng-jia		shūdiàn	yóu-'jílǐ-lù?

VII: 70 sentences (Note 4)

cóng	túshūguǎn	wàng	dōng	zǒu
	gōngyuán		xī	guǎi
	dàxué		nán	
	shūdiàn		béi	
	Wáng-jia		yòu	
			zuó	
			nár	

VIII: 72 sentences (Note 5)

wǒ	zuò	chē	_____
nǐ		qìchē	lái
tā		diànchē	qù
		gōnggòng-qìchē	dào-shūdiàn
		shénmo-chē	
		tāde-chē	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Contrast of "i" after Retroflexes and "i" after Sibilants

(a) zhī zī	(d) zhì zì
(b) chí cí	(e) chì cì
(c) shǐ sǐ	(f) shì sì

II. Contrast of "i" and i

(a) zhī jī	(d) zī jī
(b) chí qí	(e) cí qí
(c) shī xī	(f) sī xī

## JUST THE OPPOSITE

Change each of the following sentences to a sentence of opposite meaning by substituting one new word. For example, change Wàng-zuǒbiar-zǒu 'Go toward the left' to Wàng-yòubiari-zǒu 'Go toward the right.'

1. Cóng-zhè wàng-běibiari-guǎi.
2. Tā-míngtian dào-shūdiàn-lái.
3. Wǒ-zài-'nǎr-shàng-chē?
4. Wó-xiǎng-'xiān-kàn-shū.
5. Wǒmen-túshūguǎnde-shū hěn-duō.

6. Dàxué-lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn.
7. Tāmen-dōu-zài-lǐtou chī-fàn.
8. Zhèige-běnzǐ bú-tài-xiǎo-ma?
9. 'Yīngguo-huà hěn-róngyì-xué.
10. Fǎngzi-qiántou méi-yǒu-rén.

### TAKE YOUR PICK

Answer each of the following questions by choosing one of the two alternatives. For example: Tā-zài-zhèr-'shàng-chē háishi-'xià-chē? 'Does he get on or off the car here?' can be answered by either Tā-zài-zhèr-'shàng-chē 'He gets on the car here' or Tā-zài-zhèr-'xià-chē 'He gets off the car here.'

1. Gōngyuán-mén-kǒur zài-běibiar háishi-zài-nánbiar?
2. Guò-'liǎngge-lù-kǒur háishi-guò-'sāngge-lù-kǒur?
3. Tā-'jīntian-lái háishi-'míngtian-lái?
4. Nǐ-zuò-'qìchē-qù háishi-zuò-'diànchē-qù?
5. Wàng-'dōng-guǎi háishi-wàng-'xī-guǎi?
6. Zuò-'sānhao-chē háishi-zuò-'sìhao-chē-ne?
7. Shi-zuò-'diànchē-hǎo háishi-zuò-'gōnggòng-qìchē-hǎo?
8. Shi-'zhèrde-rén-duō háishi-'nèrde-rén-duō?
9. Shi-zǒu-'lù-hǎo háishi-zuò-'chē-hǎo?
10. Tāmen-'yìzhí-zǒu háishi-xiǎn-wàng-'bèi-guǎi?

### CHECKING UP

Answer the following questions based on the Dialogue.

1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiǎn-dào-nǎr-qu?
2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiǎng-cóng-shūdiàn dào-nǎr-qu?
3. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn lí-shūdiàn-yuǎn-ma?
4. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn yǒu-méi-yǒu-diànchē-kéyì-zuò?
5. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn-qu dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-chē?
6. Cóng-shūdiàn guò-'jǐge-lù-kǒur jiù-shì-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn-ne?
7. Cóng-shūdiàn dào-túshūguǎn shì-wàng-bèi-zǒu háishi-wàng-nán-zǒu?
8. Zuò-'jǐhào-chē 'yìzhí-jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-ne?
9. Cóng-shūdiàn-dào-túshūguǎn yào-zuò-'jǐhào-chē?
10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-'nǎr-xià-chē?

11. Dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā 'shàng-shān hái-shì-'xià-shān?  
 12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-míngtiān 'zài-dào-shūdiàn-lái-ma?

## NOTES

1. Motion to an intended destination is expressed by the coverb dào 'to' with the verbs lái 'come' and qù 'go':

Tā-dào-zhèr-lai. 'He is coming here.'

Tā-dào-nèr-qu. 'He is going there.'

Note that lái and qù are here written without a tone, as they often become neutral when used after other verbs.

2. Motion from a place is expressed by the coverb cóng 'from' with the verbs lái 'come' and zǒu 'walk, travel, depart':

Tā-cóng-nèr-lai. 'He is coming from there.'

Tā-cóng-nèr-zǒu. 'He is leaving from there.'

3. Motion from one place to another is expressed by the coverbs cóng 'from' and dào 'to'—always in this order—followed by a verbal phrase.

Cóng-zhèr-dào-nèr 'zěnmó-zǒu? 'How does one go from here to there?'

4. Motion in the direction of a place which is not one's final destination is expressed by the coverb wàng 'toward' with the verbs zǒu 'travel' and guǎi 'turn':

Wàng-dōng-zǒu. 'Go east.'

Wàng-yòu-guǎi. 'Turn right.' or 'Make a right turn.'

To indicate the place where (or from where) this direction is to take effect, use a cóng ('from') phrase followed by a wàng ('toward') phrase:

Cóng-shūdiàn wàng-yòu-guǎi. 'Turn right from the bookstore.' or  
 'Turn right at the bookstore.'

5. The verb zuò 'sit' as a main verb also means 'ride in a conveyance':

Wǒ-bu-xǐhuan zuò-diànchē. 'I don't like to ride streetcars.'

As coverb it introduces the means of conveyance:

Tā-zuò-diànchē-qu. 'He's going by streetcar.'

Occasionally zuò is used between the coverbs cóng 'from' and dào 'to':

Wǒ-cóng-zhèr zuò-chē-dào-tā-jiā-qu. 'I'm going from here to his home by car.'

6. Lái and qù express purpose when followed immediately by another verb:

Wǒ-lái-jiè-shū. 'I've come to borrow some books.'

Wǒ-qù-jiè-shū. 'I'm going (in order) to borrow some books.'

Less commonly they are used in this meaning at the end of a sentence:

Wǒ-jiè-shū-lai. 'I've come to borrow some books.'

7. The noun-sharing construction shown in Pattern 8.2 (above, p. 94) demonstrated the use of a noun as the object of the preceding verb and the subject of the following one:

Wǒ-qǐng-ta chī-fàn. 'I'm inviting him to dinner.'

Another type of noun-sharing is illustrated in this sentence:

Wǒ-méi-yǒu-shū kéyì-kàn. 'I don't have any books (which I) can read.'

Here, the noun shū 'book' is simultaneously the object of the two verbs kàn 'read' and yǒu 'have.'

8. The particle ne is often used at the end of a sentence containing a question word, particularly when the question is emphatic:

Nǐ-bú-dào-nèr-qu-ma? Dào-nǎr-qu-ne? 'You're not going there? Where are you going?'

9. Movable adverbs, like other adverbs, must come before the verb. Unlike other adverbs, which must be placed immediately before the verb, movable adverbs can occur before or after the subject:

Wǒ huòzhě míngtīan qù. or Huòzhě wǒ míngtīan qù. 'Perhaps I'll go tomorrow.'

10. The expression huòzhě is used singly in the meaning 'or.' It occurs singly or doubly in the meaning 'either . . . or':

Tā-(huòzhě)-jīntīan huòzhě-míngtīan-qù. 'He'll go (either) today or tomorrow.'

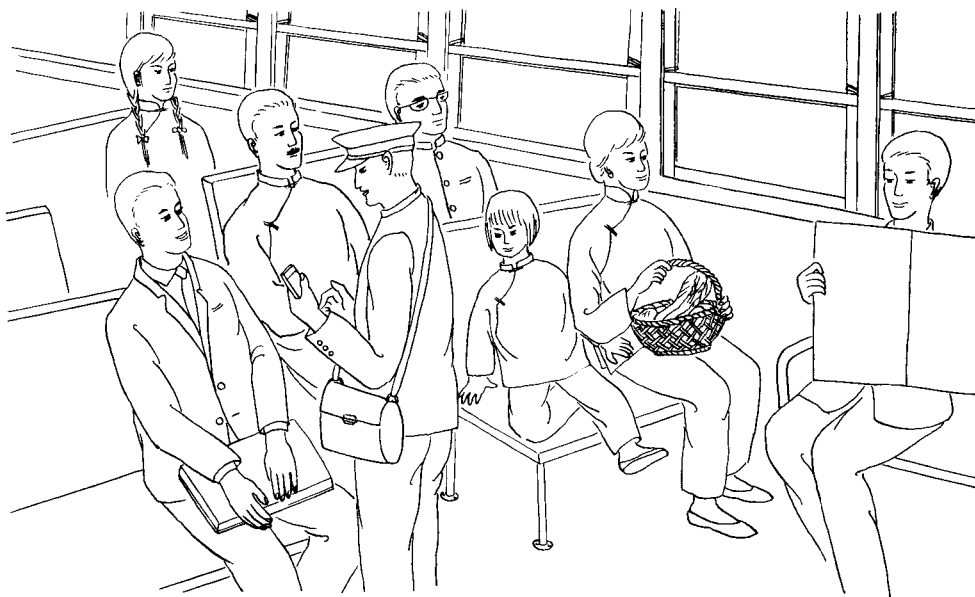
It is also used singly in the meaning 'perhaps':

Tā-huòzhě-míngtīan-lái. 'Perhaps he'll come tomorrow.'

(See also Supplementary Lesson 9, Note 1)



Lesson 10 CONVERSING WITH A TICKET SELLER



“Xiānsheng, qíng-mǎi-piào.”

Dialogue: Mr. White boards a bus and gets to talking with the ticket seller.

'Bái-Xiānsheng, mǎipiàoyuán liǎnggè-rén zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshàng tán-huà.

MPY: Xiānsheng, qíng-mǎi-piào.

Bái : 'Duōshao-qián?

MPY: Nín-dào-nǎr-qu?

Bái : Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.

MPY: Dào-túshūguǎn 'liǎngmáo-qián. Nín-Zhōngwén shuōde-'zhēn-hǎo.

Bái : Wǒ-shuōde-'bù-hǎo. Shuōde-tài-màn. Yóu-hěnduō-wàiguó-rén shuōde-bí-wó-hǎode-duō. 10

MPY: Nín-shi-'něiguó-rén-ne?

Bái : Wǒ-shi-'Měiguó-rén. 15

Mr. White and the ticket seller converse on the bus.

Sir, get your ticket here. [lit. Please buy a ticket.]

How much?

Where are you going?

To the library.

To the library (is) twenty cents. You speak Chinese very well.

I don't speak (it) well. I speak too slowly. There are lots of foreigners who speak much better than I do.

What country are you from?

I'm an American.

- MPY: Nín-zài-zhèr niàn-shū háishi-zuò-shì-ne? Are you studying or working here?
- Bái : Wǒ-niàn-shū-ne. I'm studying.
- MPY: Nín-zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué niàn-shū-ma? 20 Are you studying at Far Eastern University?
- Bái : Shì. Wǒ-zài-Yuǎn-Dà-niàn-shū. Yes. I'm studying at Far Eastern.
- MPY: Yuǎndōng-Dàxué wàiguoxuésheng-duō-ma? Are there many foreign students at Far Eastern University?
- Bái : Hěn-duō. 25 Quite a few.
- MPY: Zài-Měiguode-dàxué yé-yǒu-'wàiguoxuésheng-ma? Are there also foreign students at American universities?
- Bái : Měiguode-dàxué-lǐtōu wàiguoxuésheng-'gèng-duō... Zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn yào-'duōshao-shíhou? 30 There are even more foreign students in American universities... How long does it take from here to the library?
- MPY: Gōnggòng-qìchē bǐ-diànchē zǒude-'kuài-yìdiǎr. Chàbuduō-'èrshífēn-zhōng jiù-kéyì-dào. 35 The bus is a little faster than the streetcar. We can get there in about twenty minutes.
- Bái : Xiànzài-'jídìǎn-zhōng? What time is it now?
- MPY: Chà-yíqè-wúdiǎn. Bù. Chà-shífēn-wúdiǎn. Nín-dào-túshūguǎn qu-kàn-shū-ma? 40 A quarter of five. No, it's ten of five. Are you going to the library to read?
- Bái : Wǒ-qù-'jiè-shū. I'm going to check out some books.
- MPY: Nín-jiā-zài-zhèr-ma? Is your home here?
- Bái : Bú-zài-zhèr. Wǒ-jiā-zài-Měiguó. No. My home is in America.
- MPY: Nín-jiāli dōu-yǒu-'shénmó-rén? 45 What family do you have?
- Bái : Wǒ-jiāli yǒu-fùqīn-mǔqīn, hái-yǒu-yíge-dìdì, yíge-mèimei. In my family there's my father and mother, and also a younger brother and a younger sister.
- MPY: Dìdì-dà háishi-mèimei-dà-ne? 50 Which is older, (your) younger brother or (your) younger sister?
- Bái : Dìdì-bǐ-mèimei-dà. My [younger] brother is older than my [younger] sister.
- MPY: Tāmen-dōu-niàn-shū-ma? Are they both studying?
- Bái : Tāmen-dōu-niàn-shū. Dìdì-zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū. Mèimei-zài-'xiǎoxué-niàn-shū. 55 They both are. My brother is studying in high school, and my sister is studying in elementary school.

MPY: Nín-fùqin-zuò-'shénmo-shì?		What does your father do?
Bái : Wǒ-fùqin shi-'zhōngxué-jiàoyuán. Mǔqin shi-'xiǎoxué-jiàoyuán. 'Nǐ-jiāli dōu-yǒu-'shénmó-rén?	60	My father's a high-school teacher. (My) mother is a grade-school teacher. Who's in <u>your</u> family?
MPY: Wó-yǒu-tàitai, hái-yóu-liǎngge-háizi.	65	I have a wife and two children.
Bái : Nán-háizi háishi-nǚ-háizi-ne?		Boys or girls?
MPY: Yíge-'nán-háizi, yíge-'nǚ-háizi.	70	One boy, one girl.
Bái : Tāmen-duó-dà?		How old are they?
MPY: Nán-háizi-qīsuì, nǚ-háizi-liǎngsuì. Zhēn-qíguài. Zhèige-nǚ-háizi 'yīsuì-jiù-huì-zǒu-lù. Tā-xiànzài-huì-pǎo, yé-pǎode-hěnkuaì.	75	The boy is seven, the girl two. It's really amazing. This girl could walk at one year of age. Now she can run, and runs very fast, too.
Bái : Tāmen-míngzi dōu-jiào-shénmo?		What are their names?
MPY: Nán-háizi-jiào-Láohu. Nǚ-háizi-jiào-Xiǎomèi.	80	The boy is called Tiger. The girl is called Little Sister.
Bái : Nán-háizi-niàn-shū-ma?		Does the boy go to school?
MPY: Niàn-shū. Zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū.		Yes. He goes to grade school.
Bái : Nǐ-tàitai-yě-zuò-shì-ma?	85	Does your wife work too?
MPY: Tā-bú-zuò-shì . . . . Xiānsheng, nín-kàn, qiántou jiù-shi-túshūguǎn.		No, she doesn't . . . . Sir, see, up ahead is the library.
Bái : Hǎo, wǒ-xià-chē. Zàijiàn.		Fine. I'll get off. Good-bye.
MPY: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.	90	Good-bye.

## VOCABULARY

bǐ	compared to (CV)
chà	differ, fall short, lack (V)
chàbuduō	almost [lit. differ not much]
dìdi	younger brother (N)
fēn	(measure for minutes)
fùqin	father (N) [lit. father relative]

gèng	(still) more (AD)
háizi	child (N)
jiào	be called (EV) name, call; call, summon (TV)
jiàoyuán	teacher (N) [lit. teach person]
jiù	immediately, then (AD)
kè	quarter (of an hour) (M)
kuài	fast (SV)
láo hu	tiger (N) [lit. old tiger]
màipiàoyuán	ticket seller (N) [lit. sell-ticket person] (See Supplementary Lesson 10, Note 1)
màn	slow (SV)
mèimei	younger sister (N)
míngzi	name (N)
mǔqin	mother (N) [lit. mother relative]
nán	male
nǚ	female
pǎo	run (IV)
piào	ticket (N)
qíguài	amazing; amazed (SV) [lit. strange queer]
shì	affair, matter, work (N) (See Supplementary Lesson 10, Note 2)
suì	year (of age) (M)
tán	converse, talk (IV)
xiǎoxué	elementary school (N) [lit. small school]
yìdiǎr	a little [lit. one dot]
Yuǎndōng	Far East (PW)
zhēn	really (AD)
zhōngxué	middle school (in China), high school (in U. S.) (N)
zuò	do, make (TV)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| bǐ                       | compared to                          |
| bǐ-hóngde                | compared to a red one                |
| 1. Lán-de-bǐ-hóngde-hǎo. | A blue one is better than a red one. |
| bǐ-nèige-hǎo             | better than that                     |
| bǐ-nèige-hǎo-yìdiǎr      | a little better than that            |

2. Zhèige-bǐ-nèige hǎo-yìdiǎr.  
     bǐ-diànchē-hǎo  
     bǐ-diànchē-háo-diar  
 This is a little better than that.  
     better than streetcars  
     somewhat better than streetcars
3. Qìchē-bǐ-diànchē háo-diar.  
     bǐ-nèige-hǎo  
     bǐ-nèige-hǎode-duō  
 Autos are somewhat better than streetcars.  
     better than that  
     a lot better than that
4. Zhèige-bǐ-nèige hǎode-duō.  
     bǐ-nèige-hǎo  
     bǐ-nèige-'gèng-hǎo  
 This is a lot better than that.  
     better than that  
     even better than that
5. Zhèige-bǐ-nèige 'gèng-hǎo.  
     jiàoyuán  
     bǐ-jiàoyuán-duō  
 This is even better than that.  
     teacher  
     more numerous than teachers
6. Xuésheng-bǐ-jiàoyuán-duō.  
     láo hu  
     bǐ-nèige-láo hu-dà  
 There are more students than teachers.  
     tiger  
     bigger than that tiger
7. 'Zhèige-láo hu bǐ-'nèige-dà.  
     bǐ-Máo-Tàitai-dà  
     bǐ-Máo-Tàitai-dà-yìdiǎr  
 This tiger is bigger than that one.  
     older than Mrs. Mao  
     a little older than Mrs. Mao
8. 'Gāo-Tàitai bǐ-'Máo-Tàitai-dà-yìdiǎr.  
     bǐ-xiě-zì  
     bǐ-xiě-zì-róngyi  
 Mrs. Gao is a little older than Mrs. Mao.  
     compared to writing  
     easier than writing
9. Shuō-huà bǐ-xiě-zì-róngyi.  
     kuài  
     zǒude-kuài  
 Speaking is easier than writing.  
     fast  
     walk fast
10. Tā-yé-zǒude-kuài.  
     zǒude-kuài  
     zǒude-'kuài-bu-kuài?  
 He also walks fast.  
     walk fast  
     walk fast or not?
11. Tāmen-dōu-zǒude 'kuài-bu-kuài?  
     chīde-duō  
     chīde-tài-duō  
 Are they all walking fast?  
     eat a lot  
     eat too much
12. Nèige-xuésheng chīde-tài-duō.  
     chīde-shǎo  
     chīde-tài-shǎo  
 That student eats too much.  
     eat little  
     eat too little
13. Nèiwèi-xiáojie chīde-tài-shǎo.  
 That young lady eats too little.

- pǎo  
 pǎode-kuài  
 14. Láohu yé-pǎode-hěn-kuài.
- mǎn  
 zǒude-hěn-mǎn  
 15. Diànchē-zǒude-hěn-mǎn.
- fùqin  
 bǐ-wǒ-fùqin  
 16. Wó-bǐ-wǒ-fùqin gāo-yìdiǎr.
- mǔqin  
 Zhāng-Xiānshengde-mǔqin  
 17. Zhāng-Xiānshengde-mǔqin shì Zhōngguo-rén.
- bǐ-tā  
 shuōde-hǎo  
 18. Nǐ-bǐ-tā-shuōde-hǎo.
- bǐ-tā-hǎo  
 19. Nǐ-shuōde-bǐ-tā-hǎo.
- bǐ-tā-hǎo  
 bǐ-tā-hǎode-duō  
 20. Nǐ-shuōde bǐ-tā-hǎode-duō.
- mài-Zhōngwén-shū  
 mài-de-hěn-duō  
 21. Tāmen-mài-Zhōngwén-shū mài-de-hěn-duō.
- zuò  
 zuò-shénmo?  
 22. Tā-zuò-shénmo?
- shì  
 zuò-shì  
 23. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zuò-'shénmo-shì?
- nán  
 nán-de  
 24. Nǐmende-jiàoyuán dōu-shì-nán-de-ma?
- nǚ  
 nǚ-péngyou  
 25. Tāde-nǚ-péngyou-bù-shǎo.
- run  
 run fast  
 Tigers also run fast.
- slow  
 travel very slowly  
 Streetcars go very slowly.
- father  
 compared to my father  
 I'm a little taller than my father.
- mother  
 Mr. Johnson's mother  
 Mr. Johnson's mother is Chinese.
- compared to him  
 speak well  
 You speak better than he does.
- better than he  
 You speak better than he does.
- better than he  
 a lot better than he  
 You speak a lot better than he does.
- sell Chinese books  
 sell a lot  
 They sell a lot of Chinese books.
- do  
 do what?  
 What's he doing?
- task or job  
 work at something  
 What sort of work does Mr. King do?
- male  
 man or men  
 Are all your teachers men?
- female  
 girl friend  
 He has quite a few girl friends.
- háizi  
 xuéde-tài-màn  
 child  
 learn too slowly

26. Nèige-háizi xué-Yīngguo-huà  
xuède-tài-màn.  
xiě-Zhōngguo-zì  
xiěde-bí-wó-hǎo  
That child is learning English  
too slowly.  
write Chinese characters  
write better than I do
27. Tā-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì xiěde-bí-  
wó-hǎo.  
xiěde-bí-wó-hǎo  
bí-wó-xiěde-hǎo  
He writes Chinese characters  
better than I do.  
write better than I do  
write better than I do
28. Tā-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì bí-wó-  
xiěde-hǎo.  
zhēn  
xiěde-zhēn-hǎo  
He writes Chinese characters  
better than I do.  
real or really  
write really well
29. Nǐde-háizi-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì  
xiěde-zhēn-hǎo.  
dìdi  
chīde-duō  
Your child writes Chinese char-  
acters really well.  
younger brother  
eat a lot
30. Dìdi-chīde-bí-wǒ-duō.  
mèimei  
mèimei-xuède-hǎo  
(My) younger brother eats more  
than I do.  
younger sister  
younger sister learns well
31. Shi-'dìdi-xuède-hǎo háishi-  
'mèimei-xuède-hǎo?  
jiào  
jiào-tā-lái.  
Who learns better, younger  
brother or younger sister?  
call or summon  
Tell him to come.
32. Jiào-tā-lái.  
jiào  
jiào-shénmo?  
be called  
called what?
33. Zhèige-jiào-shénmo?  
míngzi  
jiào-'shénmo-míngzi?  
What's this called?  
name  
called by what name?
34. Zhèige-jiào-'shénmo-míngzi?  
míngzi  
míngzi-jiào-shénmo?  
What's the name of this?  
name  
called by what name?
35. Mèimei míngzi-jiào-shénmo?  
fēn  
shísānfēn  
What's (your) younger sister's  
name?  
(measure for minutes)  
thirteen minutes
36. Liùdiǎn-shísānfēn.  
chà  
chà-sānkuài-qian  
Six thirteen.  
lack, be short  
be short three dollars
37. Bù-néng-mǎi, wǒ-chà-sānkuài-  
qián.  
chà-sānfēn  
I can't buy it; I'm short three  
dollars.  
lacking three minutes  
It's now three of eight.
38. Xiànzài bādiǎn-chà-sānfēn.  
chà-sānfēn  
It's now three of eight.  
lacking three minutes  
It's now three of eight.
39. Xiànzài chà-sānfēn-bādiǎn.

- guò  
guò-sānfēn  
40. Xiànzài bādiǎn-guò-sānfēn. pass  
three minutes after  
It's now three after eight.
- kè  
yíkè  
41. Tā-qīdiǎn-yíkè-lái. quarter hour  
one quarter hour  
He's coming at quarter after seven.
- chàbuduō  
42. Xiànzài-chàbuduō liùdiǎn-sānkè. almost  
It's now almost 6:45.
- suì  
shíliùsuì  
43. Nèige-nǚ-xuésheng shíliùsuì. year of age  
sixteen years of age  
That girl student is sixteen years old.
- Yuǎndōng  
44. Zhōngguo-zài-Yuǎndōng. Far East  
China is in the Far East.
- piào  
mǎi-piào  
45. Wǒ-zài-'nár-mǎi-piào? ticket  
buy a ticket  
Where do I buy a ticket?
- mài-piào  
màipiàoyuán  
46. Màiipiàoyuán shi-'sānshí-duō-suì de-rén. sell tickets  
ticket seller  
The ticket seller is a little over thirty years old.
- xiǎoxué  
zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū  
47. Wǒ-dìdi zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū. elementary school  
study in elementary school  
My younger brother goes to elementary school.
- zhōngxué  
'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng  
48. Wǒmen-dōu-shì 'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng. middle school  
middle-school student  
We are all middle-school students.
- tán  
tán-huà  
49. Tāmen-zài-jiāli-tán-huà. converse  
converse  
They're having a chat in the house.
- qíguài  
qíguàide-shì  
50. Zhèi-shi-hěn-qíguàide-shì. amazing, strange  
amazing matter  
This is quite a strange affair.
- qíguài  
wó-hěn-qíguài  
51. Wó-hěn-qíguài. Sānsuìde-háizi néng-kàn-shū! amazed  
I'm amazed!  
I'm amazed! A three-year-old child can read!



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>jiù<br/>52. Wǒ-'jiù-zǒu.</p>                       | <p>immediately<br/>I'm leaving immediately.</p>   |
| <p>shì<br/>yǒu-shì<br/>53. Nǐ-xiànzài-yǒu-shì-ma?</p> | <p>task, job<br/>have something to do<br/>Are you busy now?</p>                         |
| <p>duì<br/>shuōde-duì<br/>54. Nǐ-shuōde-hěn-duì.</p>  | <p>correct, true, right<br/>speak correctly<br/>You're quite right in what you say.</p> |

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 10.1. Comparison (Note 1 below)

A	<u>bǐ</u>	B	SV
A	compared to	B	is/are more SV
Zhèige	bǐ	nèige	hǎo.
'This is better than that.'			

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo.                                      | You are taller than I.  |
| 2. Ní-bí-wǒ-gāo-diar.                                  | You are a bit taller than I.                                    |
| 3. Ní-bí-wǒ-'gāo-yìdiǎr.                               | You're a little taller than I.                                  |
| 4. Ní-bí-wǒ-gāode-duō.                                 | You're a lot taller than I.                                     |
| 5. Nèige-xuésheng bǐ-xiānsheng<br>'gāo-yìdiǎr.         | That student is a little taller<br>than the teacher.            |
| 6. Nèige-fángzi bǐ-zhèige-fángzi<br>'dà-yìdiǎr.        | That house is a little bigger than<br>this house.               |
| 7. Tā-bí-wǒ-dàde-duō.                                  | He is a lot older than I.                                       |
| 8. Nèige-láohu bǐ-zhèige 'dà-<br>yìdiǎr.               | That tiger is a little bigger than<br>this one.                 |
| 9. Gōngyuán bǐ-túshūguán-yuǎn.                         | The park is farther away than<br>the library.                   |
| 10. Wǒ-jiā bí-nǐ-jiā-jìn.                              | My home is closer than your<br>home.                            |
| 11. Gāngbǐ bǐ-qiānbǐ-hǎo.                              | A pen is better than a pencil.                                  |
| 12. Tāde-dìtú bí-wǒde-hǎo. Nǐde-<br>bǐ-tāde 'gèng-hǎo. | His map is better than mine.<br>Yours is still better than his. |
| 13. 'Qián-Xiǎojie bǐ-'Máo-Xiǎojie<br>'dà-yìdiǎr.       | Miss Qian is a little older than<br>Miss Mao.                   |
| 14. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie bǐ-'Máo-Xiǎojie<br>'xiǎo-yìdiǎr.      | Miss Gao is a little younger than<br>Miss Mao.                  |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 15. Nǐde-qián bǐ-wǒde-qián 'duō-yìdiǎr. Tāde-qián bǐ-nǐde-qián 'gèng-duō-yìdiǎr. | You have a little more money than I. He has a little more even than you. |
| 16. 'Wàitoude-rén bǐ-'lǐtoude-rén duō-yìdiǎr.                                    | There are a few more people outside than inside.                         |
| 17. Zhèige-jiàoyuán bǐ-nèige-hǎo.  | This teacher is better than that one.                                    |
| 18. Niàn-shū bǐ-xiě-zì-róngyi.   | Reading is easier than writing.  |
| 19. Shuō-huà bǐ-niàn-shū-nán.  | Speaking is harder than reading.   |
| 20. Mǎi-shū bǐ-jiè-shū-hǎo.  | It's better to buy books than to borrow books.                           |

## Pattern 10.2. Adverbs of Manner (Note 2 below)

S	V	-de	SV
Subject	Verb	-de	Stative Verb
Tā	chī	-de	kuài.
'He eats fast.'			

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Tā-shuōde-kuài-ma?  | Does he talk fast?  |
| 2. Tā-chīde-tài-màn.   | He eats too slowly.   |
| 3. Tā-xuéde-bù-kuài.   | He learns slowly.   |
| 4. Láo-hu pǎode-'kuài-bu-kuài?                                 | Do tigers run fast?   |
| 5. Tā-mǔqīn xiěde-hǎo. Tā-fùqīn xiěde-'gèng-hǎo.               | His mother writes well. His father writes even better.            |
| 6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-zǒude-màn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-zǒude-hěn-kuài.   | Mr. Wang walks slowly. Mr. Bai walks very fast.                   |
| 7. Nèige-xuésheng niànde-hén-hǎo. 'Wáng-Xiáojie niànde-bù-hǎo. | <b>That student reads aloud very well. Miss Wang reads badly.</b> |
| 8. Tāmen-màide-hěn-duō.  | They sell a lot.  |
| 9. Tāmen dōu-chīde-tài-shǎo.                                   | They all eat too little.  |
| 10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shuōde-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?                        | Does Mr. Wang speak well?   |

## Pattern 10.3. Comparison with Adverbs of Manner (Note 3 below)

## Pattern 10.3 a.

S	<u>bǐ</u>	O	V	-de	SV
Subject	compared to	Object	Verb	-de	Stative Verb
Tā	bǐ	wǒ	shuō	-de	hǎo.
'He speaks better than I do.'					

Pattern 10.3 b.

S	V	-de	<u>bǐ</u>	O	SV
Subject	Verb	-de	compared to	Object	Stative Verb
Tā	shuō	-de	bǐ	wó	hǎo.

'He speaks better than I do.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā-bí-wó-xiěde-hǎo.                            | He writes better than I do.  |
| 2. Nǐ-fùqin bí-wǒ-fùqin shuōde-hǎo.               | Your father speaks better than my father does.                       |
| 3. 'Xiáo-láohu bǐ-'dà-láohu-chī-de-gèng-duō.      | Young tigers eat even more than old tigers.                          |
| 4. Ní-bǐ-tā niànde-'gèng-hǎo.                     | You read aloud even better than he does.                             |
| 5. Zhèiwèi-jiàoyuán bǐ-nèiwèi-jiàoyuán xiěde-hǎo. | This teacher writes better than that teacher.                        |
| 6. Tā-bí-wó-zǒude-màn.                            | He walks more slowly than I do.                                      |
| 7. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng xiěde-bí-wó-hǎode-duō.          | Mr. Gao writes a lot better than I do.                               |
| 8. Tā-bí-wǒ-chīde-duō.                            | He eats more than I do.  |
| 9. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng shuōde-bí-wǒ-'kuài-yìdiǎr.    | Mr. Johnson talks a little faster than I do.                         |
| 10. Dìdi-bǐ-mèimei zǒude-kuài-diār.               | My (younger) brother walks a little faster than my (younger) sister. |

Pattern 10.4. Objects with Adverbs of Manner (Note 4 below)

S	(V)	O	V	-de	SV
Subject	(Verb)	Object	Verb	-de	Stative Verb
Tā	(shuō)	Zhōngwén	shuō	-de	hǎo.

'He speaks Chinese well.'

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Nǐ-Zhōngwén shuōde-hén-hǎo.       | You speak Chinese very well.            |
| 2. Ní-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo. | You write Chinese characters very well. |
| 3. Tā-chī-fàn chīde-'duō-bu-duō?     | Does he eat a lot?                      |
| 4. Tā-niàn-shū niànde-tài-shǎo.      | He studies too little.                  |
| 5. Bái-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū kànde-duō.  | Mr. Bai reads a lot.                    |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. Tā-kàn-shū kànde-tài-duō.                    | He reads too much.                          |
| 7. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-mǎi-shū mǎide-hěn-duō.          | Miss Gao buys a lot of books.               |
| 8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn chīde-tài-kuài.       | Mr. White eats too fast.                    |
| 9. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō-Yīngwén shuōde-bú-kuài. | Mr. Qian speaks English slowly.             |
| 10. 'Zhège-shūdiàn 'Zhōngwén-shū mǎide-duō.     | This bookstore sells lots of Chinese books. |
| 11. Shūdiàn gāngbǐ-mǎide-shǎo.                  | The bookstore sells few fountain pens.      |
| 12. Xuésheng-mái-běnzǐ mǎide-tài-duō.           | Students buy too many notebooks.            |
| 13. Tāmen-qǐng-péngyou qǐngde-hěn-duō.          | They invite lots of friends.                |
| 14. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng Zhōngwén-shū kànde-hěn-duō. | Mr. King reads lots of Chinese books.       |
| 15. Wǒ-fùqīn-zǒu-lù zǒude-hěn-duō.              | My father walks quite a bit.                |

Pattern 10.5. Objects with Comparisons and Stative Verbs (Note 4 below)

Pattern 10.5 a.

S	(V <sub>1</sub> )	O <sub>1</sub>	<u>bǐ</u>	O <sub>2</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>-de</u>	SV
Subject	(Verb)	Object	compared to	Object	Verb	<u>-de</u>	Stative Verb
Tā	mǎi	shū	bǐ	wó	mǎi	-de	duō.
'He buys more books than I do.'							

Pattern 10.5 b.

S	(V <sub>1</sub> )	O <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>-de</u>	<u>bǐ</u>	O <sub>2</sub>	SV
Subject	(Verb)	Object	Verb	<u>-de</u>	compared to	Object	Stative Verb
Tā	mǎi	shū	mǎi	-de	bǐ	wǒ	duō.
'He buys more books than I do.'							

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. Ní-mǎi-shū bǐ-wó-mǎide-duō.             | You buy more books than I do. |
| 2. Ní-mǎi-shū mǎide-bí-wǒ-duō.             | You buy more books than I do. |
| 3. Tā-zuò-chē zuòde-bí-wǒ-duō.             | He rides more than I do.      |
| 4. Tā-zuò-chē bǐ-wǒ-zuòde-duō.             | He rides more than I do.      |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū bǐ-wǒ-kànde-duō. | Mr. Gao reads more than I do. |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū kànde-bí-wǒ-duō.                  | Mr. King reads more than I do.                                    |
| 7. 'Bái-Xiáojie-shuō-huà bǐ-'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuōde-shǎo.        | Miss Bai speaks less than Miss Gao does.                          |
| 8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà shuōde-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng-duō.    | Mr. King talks more than Mr. White does.                          |
| 9. Nǐ-Zhōngwén shuōde-bǐ-tā-hǎo.                             | You speak Chinese better than he does.                            |
| 10. Tā-Zhōngguo-huà bí-wǒ-shuōde-hǎo.                        | He speaks Chinese better than I do.                               |
| 11. Gāo-'Xiānsheng-chī-fàn bǐ-'Gāo-'Tàitai-chīde-kuài.       | Mr. Gao eats faster than Mrs. Gao does.                           |
| 12. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-xiě-zì xiěde-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng-hǎo.       | Mr. Mao writes better than Mr. Bai does.                          |
| 13. Tā-kàn-shū kànde-bí-wǒ-duō.                              | He reads more than I do.  |
| 14. Tā-zǒu-lù bí-wó-zǒude-duō.                               | He walks more than I do.  |
| 15. 'Zhège-shūdiàn Zhōngwén-shū mǎide-bǐ-'nèige-shūdiàn-duō. | This bookstore sells more Chinese books than that bookstore does. |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 96 sentences (Note 1)

nèiwèi-xiānsheng	bǐ	wǒ	hǎo	—
wǒde-péngyou		tā	gāo	diar
nèige-xuësheng			dà	yìdiǎr
nèiwèi-jiàoyuán				-de-duō

II: 80 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	shuō	-de	—	kuài
nǐ	zǒu		hěn	màn
	xué		bú	
	pǎo		tài	
			gèng	

III: 96 sentences (Note 3)

(The asterisk \* indicates columns either one of which may be chosen.)

wó	*			*		
	bí-nǐ	shuō	-de	bí-nǐ	kuài	—
	bǐ-tā	chī		bǐ-tā	màn	yìdiǎr
		zǒu				-de-duō
		xué				

IV: 80 sentences (Notes 2, 4)

In columns A, B, and C, only items in the same row may be taken together. Column A may be omitted altogether.

	A	B	C			
tā	shuō	Yīngguo-huà	shuō	-de	——	kuài
	chī	Zhōngguo-fàn	chī		hěn	màn
	zuò	shì	zuò		bú	
	xiě	Zhōngguo-zì	xiě		tài	
					gèng	

V: 96 sentences (Notes 2-4)

In columns A, B, and C, only items in the same row may be taken together. Column A may be omitted altogether. Either (but not both) of the asterisked columns may be used.

	A	B	*	C		*	
tā	shuō	Yīngguo-huà	bí-wǒ	shuō	-de	bí-wǒ	kuài
tāmen	xiě	Zhōngguo-zì	bí-nǐ	xiě		bí-nǐ	màn
	chī	Zhōngguo-fàn		chī			

VI: 54 sentences (Note 5)

yì	-diǎn	——	shíyīfēn
liǎng		chà	èrshíjiǔfēn
sān		guò	yí kè
sì			
shí			
shí'èr			

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. Contrast of "i" and e after Retroflexes

- |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| (a) zhī zhē | (d) zhǐ zhě | (h) zhì zhè |
| (b) chī chē | (e) chǐ chě | (i) chì chè |
| (c) shí shé | (f) shǐ shě | (j) shì shè |
|             | (g) rì rè   |             |

II. Contrast of "i" and e after Sibilants

- |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (a) zì zè | (b) cì cè | (c) sì sè |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|

## WHAT'S IN A NAME?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nín-guìxìng?<br>Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.<br>Nín-míngzi-jiào-shénmo?<br>Wǒ-míngzi-jiào-Dōngshēng.       | What is your [sur-]name?<br>My [sur-] name is Wang.<br>What is your given name?<br>My given name is Dongsheng. |
| 2. Tā-xìng-shénmo?<br>Tā-xìng-Wáng.<br>Míngzi-jiào-shénmo?<br>Míngzi-jiào-Dōngshēng.           | What is his surname?<br>His surname is Wang.<br>What is his given name?<br>His given name is Dongsheng.        |
| 3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn,<br>nín-de-míngzi-jiào-shénmo?                                    | Mr. Wang, may I ask, what is<br>your given name?   |
| 4. Wó-xiǎng-zhīdao tāmen-jiào-<br>shénmo.<br>Wǒ-bù-zhīdào tāmen-jiào-<br>shénmo.               | I'd like to know what their names<br>are.<br>I don't know what their names<br>are.                             |
| 5. Nín-yǒu-'Zhōngguo-míngzi-<br>méi-yǒu?<br>Yǒu. Wǒde-'Zhōngguo-míngzi<br>jiào-Wáng-Dōngshēng. | Do you have a Chinese name?<br>Yes. My Chinese name is Wang<br>Dongsheng.                                      |
| 6. Zhèige-jiào-shénmo?<br>Zhèige-jiào-máobǐ.   | What's this called?<br>This is called a writing brush.   |
| 7. Zhèige-jiào-shénmo-míngzi?<br>Zhèige-jiào-máobǐ.  | What's the name of this?<br>This is called a writing brush.  |
| 8. Nèige-jiào-shénmo?<br>Nèige-méi-yǒu-míngzi.   | What's that called?<br>That doesn't have a name.   |
| 9. Zhèiběn-shū jiào-shénmo-<br>míngzi?<br>Nèiběn-shū jiào- <u>Zhōngguo-<br/>Wénxué.</u>        | What's the title of this book?<br>That book is entitled <u>Chinese<br/>Literature.</u>                         |
| 10. Zhèige Zhōngguo-huà-jiào-<br>shénmo?   | What's this called in Chinese?   |
| 11. <u>Láohu</u> Yīngguo-huà-jiào-<br>shénmo-míngzi?   | What's the English word for<br><u>láohu</u> ?  |
| 12. 'Tiger' Zhōngguo-huà-zěn-<br>mo-shuō?  | How do you say 'tiger' in Chi-<br>nese?  |
| 13. 'Tiger' Zhōngguo-huà-shi-<br><u>láohu</u> -ma?   | Is 'tiger' <u>láohu</u> in Chinese?  |

## FRÈRE TIGER

This round can be sung to the tune of Frère Jacques.

Sānge-láohu,  
Sānge-láohu,  
Pǎode-kuài,  
Pǎode-kuài.

Yíge-méi-you-wěiba,\*  
Yíge-méi-you-wěiba,  
Zhēn-qíguài,  
Zhēn-qíguài.



"Yíge-méi-you-wěiba"

## MATCH AND FINISH

Below are ten Chinese sentences. For each, an incomplete English translation appears, but not opposite the corresponding Chinese sentence. First, match the Chinese and the English by inserting the letters of the appropriate Chinese sentence after the numbers of the English sentences; then complete the translations.

a. Xiànzài-chàbuduō shíyīdiǎn-  
sānkè.

b. Xiǎomèi zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-  
shū-ma?

c. Zhōngxuéde-xuésheng bǐ-  
dàxuéde-duō. Xiǎoxuéde-  
xuésheng bǐ-zhōngxuéde  
'hái-duō.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Is his father in the Far East  
or \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Who learns faster, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_ It's now almost \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\* Wěiba 'tail.'



- d. Piào-'duōshao-qíán-yìzhāng,  
nǐ-zhīdao-ma? 4. \_\_\_\_\_ What's the English word for  
\_\_\_\_\_
- e. Xiànzài-chà-shífēn-yì-  
diǎn. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ Does Little Sister study \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- f. Shi-nán-háizi-xuéde-kuài  
háishi-nǚ-háizi-xuéde-  
kuài? 6. \_\_\_\_\_ Are they carrying on a con-  
versation or \_\_\_\_\_
- g. Diànchē, gōnggòng-qìchē  
dōu-yǒu-màipiàoyuán-  
ma? 7. \_\_\_\_\_ There are more middle-  
school students than \_\_\_\_\_
- h. Tāmen-zài-nèr-tán-huà  
háishi-niàn-shū? 8. \_\_\_\_\_ How much is one \_\_\_\_\_
- i. Tā-fùqīn zài-Yuǎndōng-ne  
háishi-zài-Měiguó-ne? 9. \_\_\_\_\_ Do both streetcars and \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- j. Láohu Yīngwén-jiào-shén-  
mo-míngzi? 10. \_\_\_\_\_ It's now ten \_\_\_\_\_

## NOTES

1. The coverb bǐ 'compared to' is used in comparing two things:

Nǐ-bǐ-wǒ-gāo. 'You're taller than I am.'

Often yìdiǎr 'a bit' (or its shortened form diǎr) is added after the verb; if yìdiǎr is stressed, it means 'just a little.' The verb is sometimes preceded by háí 'still,' yào lit. 'want,' or háí yào lit. 'still want.'

Nǐ-bǐ-wǒ-'gāo-yìdiǎr. 'You're somewhat taller than I am.'

Nǐ-bǐ-wǒ gāo-'yìdiǎr. 'You're just a little taller than I am.'

Nǐ-bǐ-wǒ háí-yào-gāo. 'You're taller than I am.'

The idea 'much' or 'much more' is expressed by adding de-duō to the verb:

Nǐ-bǐ-wǒ-gāode-duō. 'You're much taller than I am.'

If three things are compared, háí, háí yào, or— for even greater emphasis—gèng 'still more' are used before the verb:

Nǐ-bǐ-wǒ-gāo, tā-bǐ-nǐ-'gèng-gāo. 'You're taller than I, and he is even taller than you.'

2. To express the manner in which the action of a verb takes place, Chinese attaches the particle de to the action verb:

chīde-màn 'eat slowly'  
Tā-zōude-kuài. 'He walks fast.'

Adverbs may be placed before either the action verb or the stative verb, according to which one they modify:

Tāmen-dōu-chīde-duō. 'They all eat a lot.'  
Tāmen-chīde-bu-shǎo. 'They eat not a little.' (Euphemism for  
'They eat quite a lot.')

3. Comparison of the manner in which two actors perform an action combines the patterns of the preceding notes, as follows:

Tā-bí-wǒ-chīde-màn. 'He eats more slowly than I do.' [lit. 'He, compared to me, eats slowly.']

The phrase expressing comparison (here bí-wǒ) may follow rather than precede the action verb:

Tā-chīde-bí-wǒ-màn. 'He eats more slowly than I do.' [lit. 'He eats, compared to me, slowly.']

4. When an action verb followed by an expression of manner has an object, the object is mentioned before the verb:

Nǐ-Yīngwén shuōde-hén-hǎo. 'You speak English very well.' [lit.  
'You English speak very well.']

Alternatively, the verb is said twice, first with its object and then with de:

Nǐ-shuō-Yīngwén shuōde-hén-hǎo. 'You speak English very well.'  
[lit. 'You speak English speak very well.']

The object cannot intervene between the verb and the particle de.

5. Time before and after the even hours is expressed with the verbs chà 'lack' and guò 'pass':

yìdiǎn-chà-wǔfēn 'five minutes of one' [lit. 'one o'clock lacking five minutes']  
yìdiǎn-guò-wǔfēn 'five minutes after one'  
yìdiǎn-guò-yíkè '1:15'  
yìdiǎn-chà-yíkè '12:45'  
yìdiǎn-guò-sānkè '1:45'

Guò may be omitted before the quarter hours and before minute expressions of more than two syllables:

yìdiǎn-yíkè '1:15'  
yìdiǎn-èrshífēn '1:20'

Minute expressions with chà may be placed before the hour expressions rather than after them:

yìdiǎn-chà-wǔfēn }  
                  or } 'five minutes of one'  
chà-wǔfēn-yìdiǎn }

6. In comparisons involving people, the stative verbs dà 'big' and xiǎo 'little' most often have the meanings 'older' and 'younger' respectively:

Tā-bí-wǒ-dà. 'He is older than I am.'

7. A series of nouns is often followed by a summarizing expression like tāmen 'they' and/or some appropriate numerical expression:

Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiǎojie tāmen-dōu-zài-zhèr. or  
 Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiǎojie sānge-rén-dōu-zài-zhèr. or  
 Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiǎojie tāmen-sānge-rén dōu-zài-zhèr.  
 'The gentleman, the lady, and the girl are all here.'

Note that dōu 'all' is also frequently used to summarize a series or to express totality.

8. The Chinese educational system consists of six years of elementary school (xiǎoxué), six years of middle school (zhōngxué), and four years of college (dàxué). Elementary and secondary schools are divided into lower and higher schools, each three years in length.
9. Chinese expressions composed of two or more two-syllable words are often abbreviated, usually by selecting key syllables and dropping the rest:

Yuǎndōng-Dàxué 'Far Eastern University' is abbreviated to  
 Yuǎn-Dà

Běijīng-Dàxué 'Peking University' is abbreviated to  
 Běi-Dà

(The name Yuǎndōng-Dàxué was intended as fictitious. Since this book was written I find that a university with this name has indeed come into existence on Taiwan.)

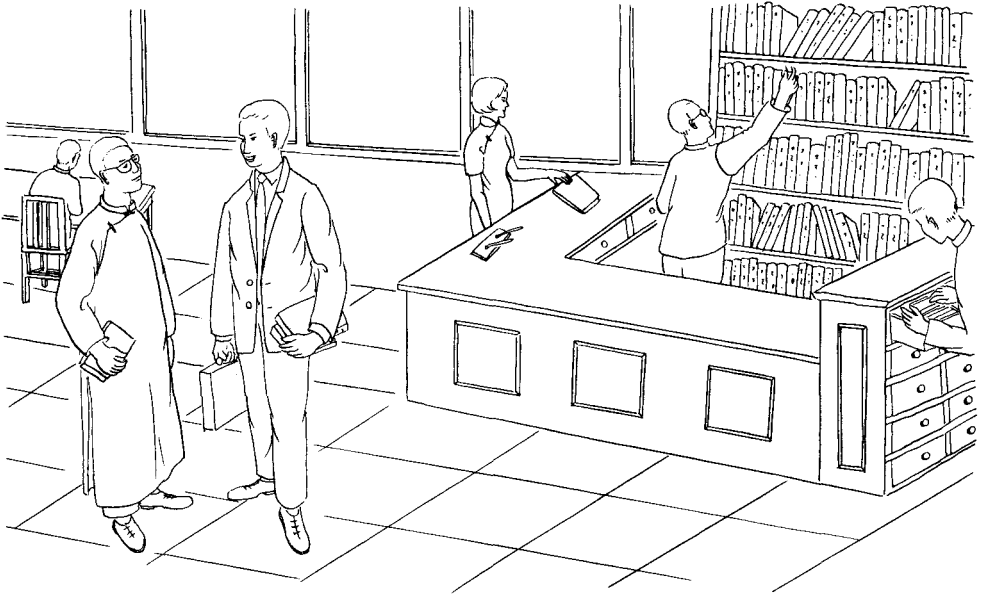
10. There are two words for 'name.' Xìng means 'surname' and míngzi means either 'whole name' or 'given name,' depending on the context. Chinese often have more than one given name, one used during infancy, another used while they are growing up, and perhaps still others assumed while they are attending school or engaging in more advanced scholarly pursuits. In the Dialogue, the names 'Little Sister' and 'Tiger' are of course childhood names. A given name like Dōngshēng 'East Born,' which might be given to a child born in the eastern part of the country, could be either a childhood name or a permanent one. Parents with scholarly aspirations for their children are particularly fond of selecting names with literary connotations, such as Wénshān 'Literature Mountain.' Wénshān is a typical name for a man, suggesting two desirable qualities, learning and strength. A foreigner with the name Vincent might well be called Wénshān in Chinese, first because of its meaning connotation, and second as an approximation of the sound.
11. In asking for the name of a person, a commonly used pattern is:

N(de) míngzi-jiào-shénmo? 'What is N's name?'

For the names of things, the most usual pattern is:

N jiào-shénmo(-míngzi)? 'What is the name of N?'

Lesson 11 DISCUSSING TRAVEL



"Oh, 'Qián-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn."

Dialogue: Mr. White encounters Mr. Qian and is asked about his travels.

Qián: 'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Hǎo-ma?

Haven't seen you for a long time.  
How are you?

Bái : Oh, 'Qián-Xiānsheng, 'háo-  
jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Nín-hǎo-ma?

Oh, Mr. Qian, I haven't seen you  
for a long time. How are you?

Qián: Hén-hǎo. Nín-shi-lái-kàn-  
shū-ma?

5

Very well. Have you come  
(here) to read?

Bái : Wǒ-bú-shi-lái-'kàn-shū.  
Wǒ-lái-'jiè-shū.

No, not to read. I've come to  
take out some books.

Qián: Nín-shi-cóng-'nǎr-lái-de?

Where have you come from?

Bái : Wǒ-cóng-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn\*-  
lái-de.

10

[I've come] from the Three  
Friends Bookstore.

\* In Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn 'Three Friends Bookstore,' the syllable yǒu is short for péngyou 'friend.' The expression Sān Yǒu 'Three Friends' appears in a number of literary works which have come into existence in the past 2,500 years. In one of these works—the Chinese historical novel Romance of the Three Kingdoms—the Sān Yǒu are three heroes.

- Qián : Nín-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de-ma? Did you come by car?
- Bái : Shì. Wǒ-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de. Yes. [I came by car.]
- Qián : Nín-zuò-'shénmo-chē-lái-de? Zuò-gōnggòng-'qìchē-lái-de hái-shi-zuò-'diànchē-lái-de-ne? 15 What (sort of) car did you take? Did you come by bus or by streetcar?
- Bái : Wǒ-zuò-gōnggòng-'qìchē-lái-de. 20 I came by bus.
- Qián : Nín-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-ma? Do you come to the library often?
- Bái : Bù. Wǒ-jīntian shi-dì-yí-cì-lái. Nín-ne? No. Today is the first time [I've come]. How about you?
- Qián : 'Wó-yě-bù-cháng-lái... 25 I don't come often either...  
Oh, 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-shi-'shénmo-shíhou dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de? Nín-shi-'qùnian-lái-de-ma? Oh, Mr. White, when was it that you came to China? Did you come last year?
- Bái : Shì. Wǒ-shi-qùnian-báyue-qīhào-lái-de. 30 Yes. I came on August seventh of last year.
- Qián : Nín-yízhí jiù-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de-ma? Did you come straight to China?
- Bái : Bú-shi. Wǒ-shi-qùnian líkai-Měiguó, xiān-dào-Rìběn, hòucóng-Rìběn dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. 35 No. I left the United States last year, went first to Japan, and then came to China from Japan.
- Qián : Nín-zuò-'chuán-lái-de hái-shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de? Did you come by boat or by plane?
- Bái : Wǒ-dào-Rìběn shi-zuò-chuán, cóng-Rìběn-dào-Zhōngguo shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de. 40 I came by boat to Japan, and by plane from Japan to China.
- Qián : 'Chuán-zǒude-hěn-màn-ba. 45 I suppose the boat traveled very slowly.
- Bái : Suírán-hěn-màn, kěshi-zuò-chuán hén-yǒu-yìsi. Kéyì-rènshi hěn-duō-péng-you. [Although] it was very slow, but traveling by boat is quite interesting. One can make a lot of friends.
- Qián : Wó-yé-hén-xǐhuan zuò-chuán. Wó-xiǎng jīnnian-zuò-chuán dào-Rìběn-qu. 50 I also like to travel by boat. I plan to take a boat trip to Japan this year.
- Bái : Rìběn hén-yǒu-yìsi... Nín-shénmo-shíhou líkai-túshūguǎn? 55 Japan is very interesting... When are you leaving the library?
- Qián : Xiànzài-'shénmo-shíhou? What time is it now?

- Bái : Xiànzài-wúdiǎn-bàn.  
 Qián: Wó-yǒu-yìdiǎr-shì. Zuó-  
 tian yǒu-yíge-péngyou-shuō  
 jīntian-wǎnshang-liùdiǎn-  
 zhōng tā-dào-wǒ-jiā-lǐtou-  
 lái. Wó-xiǎng xiànzài-jiù-  
 zǒu. 60  
 Bái : Wǒmen-zài-jiàn.  
 Qián: Oh, wǒ-zài-lùshang-yùjian-  
 'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Tā-gāosù-  
 wǒ jīntian-wǎnshang tā-  
 qǐng-nín-dào-tāmen-jiā  
 chī-wǎnfàn. 65  
 Bái : Shì. 70  
 Qián: Wǒ-nèr lí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-  
 jiā-hěn-jìn. Rúguǒ-nín-jīn-  
 tian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu,  
 yé-qǐng-dào-wǒ-jiā-lái  
 zuòyizuò-tántan. 75  
 Bái : Hǎo. Xièxie-nín. Rúguó-  
 wǎnshang-yǒu-gōngfu, wǒ-  
 'yídìng-dào-fúshang-bài-  
 fang.  
 Qián: Xīwang-nín-wǎnshang 'yí-  
 dìng-néng-lái. 80  
 Bái : Hǎo, 'xièxie-nín. Yǒu-  
 gōngfu wǒ-'yídìng-lái.  
 Qián: Wǒmen-zài-tán.  
 Bái : Zài-tán, zài-tán.\* 85

It's [now] 5:30.

I have a little matter (to attend to). Yesterday a friend told me he was coming to my home this evening at six. I think I'll leave right now.

We'll be seeing each other again.

Oh, I ran into Mr. Gao on the way here. He mentioned to me that he had invited you to their home for dinner tonight.

Yes.

My place is very close to Mr. Gao's home. If you have time this evening I'd like to invite you to drop in at my home too [to sit a while and chat].

How nice. Thank you. If I have time [this evening] I'll [certainly] stop in [at your home to visit].

I hope you really will [come this evening].

Fine, thanks. (If) there's time I'll certainly come.

Good-bye. [lit. We'll talk further.]

Good-bye.\*

#### VOCABULARY

bàn	half (M)
bàifang	make a formal call on (someone) (TV) [lit. salute visit]
cháng	often (AD)
chuán	boat, ship (N)

\* The final exchange between Mr. Qian and Mr. White (lines 71-84) illustrates an aspect of Chinese etiquette. Since Mr. Qian lives close to Mr. Gao, social convention requires that he should invite Mr. White to drop in, and that Mr. White should express eagerness to do so, even though it is unlikely that he will.

cì	time, occasion (M)
dì	(ordinalizing prefix)
fēijī	airplane (N) [lit. flying machine]
fūshang	(your) residence (N) (See Supplementary Lesson 11, Note 1)
gàosu	inform (TV) [lit. tell inform]
hào	day of the month (M)
jīnnian	this year (TW) [lit. now year]
kànjian	see (TV) [lit. look see]
kěshi	however, but (MA) [lit. may be]
líkai	leave, depart from (TV) [lit. leave open]
nián	year (M)
qùnian	last year (TW) [lit. go year]
rènshi	recognize, be acquainted with (TV) [lit. recognize know]
Rìběn	Japan (PW) [lit. sun source]
rúguǒ	if (MA) [lit. if result]
suírán	although (MA) [lit. even is]
wǎnfàn	dinner (N) [lit. late food]
xīwang	hope (TV) [lit. hope expect] hope (N)
yídìng	be certain (SV) [lit. one settled]
yìsi	meaning (N) [lit. thought think]
-yue	month of the year (M)
yùjian	encounter, meet (TV) [lit. meet see]
zuótiān	yesterday (TW) [lit. yesterday day]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| hào                         | day of the month                 |
| yíhào                       | first day of the month           |
| 1. Jīntian-yíhào.           | Today is the first of the month. |
| yíyue                       | first month of the year,         |
|                             | January                          |
| yíyue-yíhào                 | January first                    |
| 2. Jīntian-shi-yíyue-yíhào. | Today is January first.          |
| jǐyue                       | which month of the year?         |
| 3. Xiànzài-shi-jǐyue?       | What month is it now?            |

- zuótian  
jǐhào?  
4. Zuótian-shi-jǐhào?
- nián  
yī-jǐu-liù-yī-nián  
5. Yī-jǐu-liù-yī-nián nǐ-zài-nǎr?
- nián  
jīnnian  
6. Jīnnian tā-xiǎng dào-Měiguó-lái.
- qùnian  
něinián?  
7. Qùnian-shi-něinián?
- jīnnian  
shíyue  
èrshiwǔhào  
8. Wǒ-jīnnian shíyue-èrshiwǔhào-zǒu.
- Rìběn  
dào-Rìběn-qu  
9. Tā-xiǎng jīnnian-qīyue dào-Rìběn-qu.
- kànjian  
kànjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng  
10. Wǒ-huòzhě-èryue kànjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng.
- yùjian  
yùjian-nèiwèi-xiānsheng  
11. Wǒ-chàbuduō-měitiān yùjian-nèiwèi-xiānsheng.
- wǎnfàn  
qíng-wǒ-chī-wǎnfàn  
12. Tā-jǐuyue-qīhào qíng-wǒ-chī-wǎnfàn.
- zuótian  
shi-'zuótian-lái-de  
13. Tā-shi-'zuótian-lái-de.
- shi-'zuótian-lái-de  
'zuótian-lái-de  
14. Tā-'zuótian-lái-de.
- fēijī  
zuò-fēijī
- yesterday  
what day of the month?  
What day of the month was yesterday?
- year  
1961  
Where were you in 1961?
- year  
this year  
This year he plans to come to America.
- last year  
what year?  
What year was last year?
- this year  
October  
25th day of the month  
I'm leaving this year on the 25th of October.
- Japan  
go to Japan  
He plans to go to Japan in July of this year.
- see, visit  
see Mr. Gao  
Perhaps I'll see Mr. Gao in February.
- encounter  
encounter that gentleman  
I meet that gentleman almost every day.
- dinner  
ask me to dinner  
He asked me to dinner on the 7th of September.
- yesterday  
came yesterday  
He came yesterday.
- came yesterday  
came yesterday  
He came yesterday.
- airplane  
ride in an airplane



15. Tā-shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de.  
     chuán  
     zuò-chuán  
 He came by plane.  
     boat  
     take a boat
16. Tā-shi-zuò-'chuán-qù-de.  
     cháng  
     cháng-lái  
 He went by boat.  
     often, frequently  
     come frequently
17. Tā-shi-'cháng-lái-de.  
     yídìng  
     bù-yídìng  
 He came frequently.  
     be certain  
     not be certain
18. Wǒ-'bù-yídìng-qù.  
     yìsi  
     'shénmo-yìsi?  
 I'm not sure of going.  
     meaning  
     what meaning?
19. Zhèige-zì shi-'shénmo-yìsi?  
     qián  
     hén-yǒu-qián  
 What does this word mean?  
     money  
     be very wealthy
20. Nèige-rén 'hén-yǒu-qián.  
     yìsi  
     yǒu-yìsi  
 That man is very wealthy.  
     meaning  
     be interesting
21. Zhèiběn-shū 'hén-yǒu-yìsi.  
     xīwang  
     wó-hěn-xīwang  
 This book is very interesting.  
     hope  
     I hope very much
22. Wó-hěn-xīwang nín-néng-lái.  
     xīwang  
     méi-yǒu-xīwang  
 I hope very much that you can come.  
     hope  
     have no hope
23. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-xīwang dào-nèr-qù.  
     gàosu  
     gàosu-ta  
 I have no hope of going there.  
     inform  
     inform him
24. Gàosu-ta wǒ-bù-néng-qù.  
     líkai  
     líkai-Yīngguo  
 Tell him I can't go.  
     depart from, leave  
     leave England
25. Tā-shénmo-shíhou líkai-Yīngguo?  
     dì  
     dì-yī  
     dì-yítian  
 When will he leave England?  
     (ordinalizing prefix)  
     the first  
     the first day
26. Dì-yítian wó-xiǎng-bú-zuò-shì.  
     cì  
     dì-yícì  
     zhèi-shi-dì-yícì  
 I plan to do nothing the first day.  
     occasion, time  
     the first time  
     this is the first time

27. Zhèi-shì-dì-yí-cì wǒ-chī-  
Zhōngguó-fàn.  
rúguǒ  
rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián  
wǒ-'yídìng-mǎi-zhèiběn-  
shū  
28. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián wǒ-'yídìng-  
mǎi-zhèiběn-shū.  
kěshi  
kěshi-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián  
29. Wó-xiāng-mǎi, kěshi-wǒ-méi-  
yǒu-qián.  
suírán  
suírán-tā-shì-wàiguó-  
rén  
30. Suírán-tā-shì-wàiguó-rén,  
kěshi-Zhōngwén shuōde-hén-  
hǎo.  
rènshi  
rènshi-zhèige-zì  
31. Nǐ-rènshi-zhèige-zì-ma?  
fǔshang  
32. Qǐng-wèn, fǔshang-zài-nǎr?  
bàifang  
bàifang-péngyou  
33. Wó-xiǎng míngtiān-qu-bàifang-  
péngyou.  
bàn  
sìdiǎn-bàn  
34. Wó-xiǎng 'sìdiǎn-bàn-jiù  
zǒu.  
yíban  
yíban-shi-nǐde  
35. Yíban-shi-wǒde, yíban-shi-  
nǐde.
- This is the first time I've had  
Chinese food.  
if  
if I had money  
I'll surely buy this book  
If I had money I would certainly  
buy this book.  
however  
but I don't have any money  
I'd like to buy (it), but I don't  
have any money.  
although  
although he's a foreigner  
Although he's a foreigner, (he)  
speaks Chinese very well.  
recognize, know  
know this character  
Do you know this character?  
(your) home  
May I ask, where is your home?  
make a call on  
call on a friend  
I plan to call on a friend tomor-  
row.  
half  
four-thirty  
I plan to leave immediately at  
four-thirty.  
one half  
half is yours  
Half is mine, half is yours.

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 11.1. Time Expressions with Year, Month, Day (Note 1 below)

(Year)	(Month)	(Day)
jīnnián	shíyue	bāhào
'October 8 of this year'		

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Tā-'qīhào-lái.  | He will come on the seventh.                             |
| 2. Tā-qīyue-'sìhào-lái.  | He will come on July 4th.                                |
| 3. Tā-jīnnian-qīyue-'sìhào-lái.                                | He will come on July 4th of this year.                   |
| 4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng báyue-jiǔhào-lái.                            | Mr. Mao is coming on August 9th.                         |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng jīnnian-wǔyue-bāhào-zǒu.                     | Mr. Gao is leaving on May 8th of this year.              |
| 6. Yī-jiǔ-sì-jiǔ-nián nǐ-hái-zài-Zhōngguo-ma?                  | Were you still in China in 1949?                         |
| 7. Jīnnian-qīyue wó-xiǎng-dào-Yīngguo-qu.                      | In July of this year I plan to go to England.            |
| 8. Wó-mǔqin jīnnian-shíyīyue zuò-chuán-lái.                    | My mother is coming by boat this November.               |
| 9. Wǒ-dìdi jīnnian-jiǔyue-niàn-shū.                            | My younger brother will (start to) study this September. |
| 10. Wǒ-fùqin jīnnian-báyue-sānhào zuò-fēijī-lái.               | My father is coming by plane on August 3 of this year.   |
| 11. Huòzhě-wǒ-jīnnian néng-dào-'Zhōngguo-qù.                   | Perhaps I can go to China this year.                     |
| 12. Tā-tàitai-jīnnian-liùyue xiǎng-dào-zhèr-lái.               | His wife is planning to come here this June.             |
| 13. Tā-xiǎng-jīnnian-qīyue-'èrshìhào dào-Zhōngguo-lái.         | He plans to come to China on July 20th of this year.     |
| 14. Tāmen-liùyue-'sānshìhào dào-Húnán-qu.                      | They are going to Hunan on June 30th.                    |
| 15. 'Máo-Xiānsheng yī-jiǔ-wǔ-qī-nián-wǔyue zài-dàxué-niàn-shū. | Mr. Mao was studying at the university in May of 1957.   |

Pattern 11.2. The (shi) . . . V de Construction (Note 2 below)

S	( <u>shi</u> )	A	V	- <u>de</u>
Subject	( <u>shi</u> )	A	Verb	- <u>de</u>
Wǒ	(shi)	zuótiān	lái	-de.

'I came yesterday.'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'zuótiān-dào-de.            | It was yesterday that Mr. King arrived.           |
| 2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-lái-de?           | When was it that Mr. White came?                  |
| 3. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīnnian-èryue cóng-zhèr-zǒu-de. | Mr. Qian left from here in February of this year. |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. Wǒ-qùnián-shí'èryue-bāhào zuò-fēijī-lái-de.                  | I came by plane on December 8th of last year.       |
| 5. Wǒ-fùqin shi-jīnnián-èryue èrshiwǔhào-zǒu-de.                | My father left on February 25th of this year.       |
| 6. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō zuótian-wǎnshàng tā-cóng-Rìběn-lái-de.   | Mr. Gao says he came from Japan yesterday evening.  |
| 7. Tā-shi-'xiān-dào-gōngyuán 'hòu-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-de.          | He went first to the park and then to the library.  |
| 8. Tā-jīntián-'jiúdiǎn-zhōng dào-túshūguǎn-lái-de.              | He came to the library at nine today.               |
| 9. 'Wáng-Xiáojie bú-shi-zuótian zuò-'fēijī-lái-de-ma?           | Didn't Miss King come by plane yesterday?           |
| 10. 'Gāo-Tàitai yī-jiǔ-sì-wǔnián jiǔyue-bāhào-lái-de.           | Mrs. Gao arrived on September 8, 1945.              |
| 11. Nǐ-dìdi qùnián-cóng-zhèr-zǒu-de-ma?                         | Did your younger brother leave from here last year? |
| 12. Nǐ-shi-'jīntián-mǎi-de hái-shi-'zuótian-mǎi-de?             | Did you buy it today or yesterday?                  |
| 13. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-'sānhào-zǒu-de hái-shi-'sìhào-zǒu-de?    | Did Mr. White leave on the 3d or the 4th?           |
| 14. Tā-shi-'yìzhíde-lái-de-ma?                                  | Did he come directly?                               |
| 15. Tā-bú-shi-'yìdiǎn-bàn-lái-de. Tā-shi-'liángdiǎn-bàn-lái-de. | It wasn't at 1:30 that he came. It was at 2:30.     |

Pattern 11.3. The (shi) . . . V de Construction with Object (Note 3 below)

Pattern 11.3a.

S	(shi)	A	V	O	<u>de</u>
Subject	(shi)	A	Verb	Object	<u>de</u>
Wǒ	shi	jīnnián	líkai	Měiguó	de.
'I left America <u>this year.</u> ' (i.e. 'It was this year that I left America.')					

Pattern 11.3b.

S	(shi)	A	V	<u>de</u>	O
Subject	(shi)	A	Verb	<u>de</u>	Object
Wǒ	shi	jīnnián	líkai	de	Měiguó.
'I left America <u>this year.</u> ' (i.e. 'It was this year that I left America.')					

1. Wǒ-shi-zuótian dào-Měiguó-de. I arrived in America yesterday.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. Tā-'jīntian-mǎi-de-shū.                                  | He bought the books <u>today</u> .                                 |
| 3. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-wǒ, tā-'jīntian-qù-mǎi-de-shū.        | Miss Gao informed me that she went to buy the books <u>today</u> . |
| 4. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-shì-qùnián mǎi-de-nèisuǒr-fángzi. | Mr. Gao says it was last year that he bought that house.           |
| 5. Nǐ-shì-dì-yí cì líkai-Měiguó-de-ma?                      | Is this the first time you've left America?                        |
| 6. Wǒ-shì-dì-yí cì líkai-Měiguó-de.                         | This is the first time I've left America.                          |
| 7. Tā-zài-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn mǎi-de-shū.                       | He bought the books at the Three Friends Bookstore.                |
| 8. Gāo-Xiáojie-zài-nǎr xià-fēijī-de?                        | Where did Miss Gao get off the plane?                              |
| 9. 'Wáng-Xiáojie cóng-Yīngguó-dào-de-Zhōngguó.              | Miss King came to China from England.                              |
| 10. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shì-zuótiān-mài-de-fángzi.              | Mr. King sold the house yesterday.                                 |
| 11. Nǐ-péngyou shì-shénmo-shíhou-yùjian-ta-de?              | When did your friend meet him?                                     |
| 12. Tā-shì-'shénmo-shíhou-gàosu-nǐ-de?                      | When was it that he told you?                                      |
| 13. Nǐ-shì-'jídiǎn-zhōng chī-de wǎnfàn?                     | When did you eat dinner?   |
| 14. Nǐ-shì-'shénmo-shíhou kànjian-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-de?       | When did you see Mr. King?   |
| 15. Tāmen-shì-zuótiān xià-de-shān.                          | They went down the mountain yesterday.                             |
| 16. Wǒmen-shì-zuótiān guò-de-hú.                            | We crossed the lake yesterday.                                     |
| 17. Wǒ-shì-qùnián mǎi-de-zhèiběnzìdiǎn.                     | I bought this dictionary last year.                                |
| 18. Tā-mèimei-shì-sānyue-'èrhào shàng-de-chuán.             | His younger sister boarded the boat on March 2d.                   |
| 19. Wǒ-dìdi-èryue-sānhào shàng-chuán-de.                    | My younger brother boarded the boat on February 3d.                |
| 20. Tā-shì-zài-diànchēshàng mǎi-de-piào.                    | He bought the ticket on the streetcar.                             |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

## I: 64 phrases (Note 1)

—	yí	-yue	yí	-hào
jīnnian	wǔ		èr	
qùnian	shí		èrshiwǔ	
1962 nián	shí'èr		sānshiyī	

II: 96 sentences (Note 2)

tā	—	qùnián	èr	-yue	wǔ	-hào	lái	de
	shi	1962 nián	sān		liù		qù	
			sì		qī			

III: 48 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	—	zuò	diànchē	lái	de
nǐ	shi		chuán	qù	
tā			fēijī		
			shénmo		

IV: 72 sentences (Note 2)

wǒ	—	yìzhí(de)	lái	de
nǐ	shi	shénmo-shíhou	qù	
tā		cóng-nèr		

V: 64 sentences (Note 3)

(The asterisks \* indicate positions either of which may be occupied by de. From columns A and B, only items in the same row may be taken together.)

			A	*	B	*
tā	—	zuótian	shàng	-de	chuán	-de
	shi	qùnián	líkai		Měiguó	
		sānyue	dào		Zhōngguó	
		jīntian	xià		shān	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. The Tone-Toneless Contrast

The following pairs of syllables are distinguished in meaning by the presence or absence of tones on the second syllable.

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| (a) dōng-xī, dōngxī | (e) tā-dà, tāde    |
| (b) xíng-lǐ, xínglǐ | (f) mái-mǎ, mái-ma |
| (c) lǎo-mā, lǎo-ma  | (g) mǎi-má, mǎi-ma |
| (d) kuàilè, kuàile  | (h) dào-dé, dào-de |

II. Tonal Shifts in Stressed bù and yī

- |            |              |             |
|------------|--------------|-------------|
| (a) 'bù-dā | (e) 'bù-gāo  | (i) 'yìzhī  |
| (b) 'bù-dá | (f) 'bù-máng | (j) 'yìmáo  |
| (c) 'bù-dǎ | (g) 'bù-hǎo  | (k) 'yìběn  |
| (d) 'bú-dà | (h) 'bú-lèi  | (l) 'yíkuài |
|            |              | (m) 'yíge   |

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐ-rúguó-yǒu-qián nǐ-zuò-shénmo?<br>Rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián wǒ-jiu-mǎi-fángzi.                  | What would you do if you had money?<br>If I had money, I'd buy a house.                         |
| 2. Nǐ-shi-něinián líkai-Měiguode?<br>Wǒ-shi-qùnián líkai-Měiguode.                           | What year did you leave America?<br>I left America last year.                                   |
| 3. Wǒmen-zài-zhèr-'zuòyizuò, 'hǎo-bù-hǎo?<br>Kéyi, kéyi.                                     | Let's sit here a while, O.K.?<br>All right.   |
| 4. Nǐ-dì-yí cì -kànjian-ta shi-'shénmo-shíhou?<br>Wǒ-dì-yí cì -kànjian-ta shi-jiǔ-yue-wúhào. | When was the first time you saw him?<br>The first time I saw him was September 5th.             |
| 5. Suírán-nèitiáo-lù bù-háo-zǒu, kěshi-nǐ-'yídìng-yào-qù-ma?<br>Shì, wǒ-'yídìng-yào-qù.      | Although that road is not good to travel on, do you insist on going?<br>Yes, I insist on going. |
| 6. Xiànzài-wǒmen kéyi-'tányitán-'ma?<br>Wǎnshang 'liùdiǎn-yí kè-kéyi-'ma?                    | May we chat a while now?<br>Will this evening at 6:15 be all right?                             |
| 7. Nín-zhè-shi-dì-yí cì dào-Zhōngguo-lái-ma?<br>Bú-shì, wǒ-shi-dì-'èrcì dào-Zhōngguo-lái.    | Is this the first time you've come to China?<br>No, this is my second trip to China.            |
| 8. Nín-'cháng-dào-'wàiguo-qù-ma?<br>Shì. Wó-hén-xǐhuan dào-wàiguo-qu. Hén-yǒu-yì si.         | Do you often go abroad?<br>Yes, I like going abroad very much. It's very interesting.           |

9. Nǐ-shì-zài-'fēijīshang-yùjian-ta-de háishi-zài-'chuánshang-yùjian-ta-de?  
Wǒ-shì-zài-'chuánshang-yùjian-ta-de.  
Did you run into him on the plane or on the boat?  
I met him on the boat.
10. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou rènshi-ta-de?  
Wǒ-'qùnián-jiù-rènshi-ta-de.  
When did you get to know him?  
I became acquainted with him just last year.
11. Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou qù-zhǎo-ta?  
Wǒ-xiǎng-míngtiān bàifang-ta.  
When are you going to look him up?  
I'm thinking of calling on him tomorrow.
12. Nín-jiā-zài-nǎr?  
Wǒ-jiā-zài-chéngwài, lí-Zhōngshān-Lù-bù-yuǎn.  
Where is your home?  
My home is outside the city, not far from Sun Yatsen Avenue.
13. Nǐ-huì-shuō 'Zhōngwén-ma? ma?  
Wǒ-huì-shuō, kěshì-shuōde-bú-tài-hǎo.  
Can you speak Chinese?  
I can, but I don't speak very well.
14. Tā-shì-sìdiǎn-'yíkè-láide-ma?  
Bú-shì. Tā-shì-sìdiǎn-'sānkè-láide.  
Did he come at 4:15?  
No. He came at 4:45.
15. Tā-shì-cóng-'Zhōngguo-lái-de háishi-cóng-'Rìběn-lái-de?  
Tā-shì-cóng-'Zhōngguo-lái-de.  
Did he come from China or Japan?  
He came from China.
16. Fēijī shì-shénmo-yìsi?  
Fēijī-shì-'airplane'-de-yìsi.  
What does fēijī mean?  
Fēijī means 'airplane.'
17. Nǐ-cháng-dào-tā-jiā-qù-ma?  
Wǒ-chàbuduō měitiān-dōu-qù.  
Do you go to his home frequently?  
I go almost every day.
18. Nín-jīntiān-wǎnshang qīdiǎn-bàn dào-wǒmen-zhèr-lái tányítán-kéyi-ma?  
Jīntiān-wǎnshang wó-yǒu-yìdiǎr-shì.  
Would it be possible for you to come to our (place) here this evening at 7:30 [to chat a while]?  
This evening I have a little matter to attend to.
19. Wǒ-zhèige-zì xiěde-'duì-bu-duì?  
Nǐ-nèige-zì xiěde-bú-duì.  
Have I written this character correctly?  
You've written that character incorrectly.
20. Tā-'zěnmò-bù-lái?  
Tā-shuō tā-méi-yǒu-gōngfu.  
How is it that he's not coming?  
He says he doesn't have time.



## LET'S BE REASONABLE

Each of the following sentences contains an expression which makes the meaning absurd or unlikely. Make whatever changes are necessary to turn the sentence into a reasonable statement. For example, Wó-wǎnshang-yìdiǎn-zhōng chī-wǎnfàn 'I eat dinner at 1:00 in the evening' might be changed to Wó-wǎnshang-liùdiǎn-zhōng chī-wǎnfàn 'I eat dinner at 6:00 in the evening.'

1. Tā-gàosu-wo zhèi-liǎngge-běnzi yígòng-'yìfēn-qián.
2. Tā-shi-qùnian èryuè-sānshiyíhào dào-Zhōngguo-láide.
3. Wǒ-dìdi-bāsui; tā-jīnnian-zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū.
4. Tā-shi-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē cóng-Měiguó dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de.
5. Tāmen-zài-fángzishang chī-fàn.
6. Láohu yídìng-pǎode-hěn-màn.
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-chēshang mǎi-qiānbǐ.
8. Nèige-xuésheng cháng-dào-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-qù-mài-shū.
9. Shāndong-zài-Rìběn.
10. Tā-shuō ta-zuótian dào-gōngyuán-qu-jiè-shū.

## DOUBLE JEOPARDY

Use the word on the right to replace something in the sentence to the left; doing this will require you to make one or more additional changes. Watch out! Your chances of making a mistake are doubled.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Ní-fǔshang lí-zhèr-hěn-jìn.           | wǒ          |
| 2. Dìdi-shi-nán-háizi.                   | mèimeì      |
| 3. Rìběn-lí-Zhōngguo-bù-yuǎn.            | Měiguó      |
| 4. 'Zhōngguo-rén dōu-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà. | Měiguó-rén  |
| 5. Wǒ-zài-chēshang-mǎi-piào.             | màipiàoyuán |
| 6. Tā-zài-xiǎoxué-niàn-shū.              | wénxué      |
| 7. Xià-shān hěn-róngyi.                  | shàng       |
| 8. Zhōngguo-huà hěn-nán-shuō.            | xiě         |
| 9. Fùqin shi-nán-rén.                    | mǔqin       |
| 10. Zhèiběn-shū 'jǐkuài-qián?            | fángzi      |

## NOTES

1. In time expressions, larger units precede smaller units: jīnnian-yíyue-sānhào wǎnshang-bādiǎn-èrshífēn 'this year, January third, evening, eight-twenty.'

2. When a sentence emphasizes the time, place, purpose or some other aspect of a past occurrence, rather than the occurrence itself, the following pattern is used:

S (shi) A V de. 'S did V under A time or place conditions.' or 'It was under A time or place conditions that S did V.'

For example:

Tā-shi-'zuótian-lái-de. 'He came yesterday.' or 'It was yesterday that he came.'

Tā-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de. 'He came by car (i.e. not on foot).'

In this pattern, shi may be omitted if it is not modified by bu or some other adverb:

Tā-'jīntian-lái-de. 'He came yesterday.'

but:

Tā-bú-shi-'jīntian-lái-de. 'It wasn't today that he came.' or 'He didn't come today.'

Note that this is not a general past tense. Other ways of expressing the Chinese equivalent of English past tense are presented in lessons 13 and 14.

3. If the verb of the construction described in Note 2 has a pronoun object, this must come directly after the verb:

Wǒ-shi-'jīntian-kànjian-ta-de. 'It was today that I saw him.'

With the verbs mǎi 'buy,' mài 'sell,' and chī 'eat,' the preferred position for the object is at the end:

Wǒ-shi-'jīntian-mǎi-de-shū. 'I bought the book today.'

In other cases, the object is either placed right after the verb or is separated from the verb by the particle de:

Wǒ-shi-yíyue-dào-Měiguó-de. or Wǒ-shi-yíyue-dào-de-Měiguó. 'I arrived in America in January.'

See Substitution Table V, p. 148, for further examples.

4. Note the following sentences stating the ordinal occurrence of an action:

Jīntian-shi-dì-yí cì kànjian-ta. '[lit.] Today is the first time seeing him.'

Zhè-shi-dì-èrcì chī-Zhōngguó-fàn. '[lit.] This is the second time eating Chinese food.'

When a sentence on this pattern has a subject, it is normally placed at the very beginning of the sentence:

Wǒ-jīntian-shi-dì-yí cì kànjian-tā. 'Today is the first time I've seen him.' [lit. '(As for) me, today is the first time seeing him.']

Wǒ-zhè-shi-dì-èrcì chī-Zhōngguó-fàn. 'This is the second time I've eaten Chinese food.'

- 5. It is a common device to pair introductory words of similar or complementary meanings in consecutive clauses in a sentence:

suírán 'although' . . . . . kěshi 'nevertheless'  
 rúguǒ 'if' . . . . . jiù 'then'

For example:

Suírán-tā-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén kěshi-tā-bu-huì shuō-Zhōngwén. 'Although he's Chinese, he can't speak Chinese.'

Rúguó-wó-yǒu-gōngfu, wǒ-jiù-qu-kàn-'Wáng-Xiānsheng. 'If I had the time, (then) I'd go see Mr. King.'

Jiù 'then' is a fixed adverb and hence comes directly before the verb; the other words in the list are movable adverbs, and can be placed either before or after the subject.

- 6. The doubling of a verb, with or without yi between the two forms, gives a touch of informality to the verb and suggests the idea 'for a while':

Nǐ-kànkàn. or Nǐ-'kànyikàn. 'Take a look.'

Wǒmen-tántan. or Wǒmen-'tányítán. 'Let's talk for a while.'

- 7. Calendar years are expressed by putting numbers in telephone style (that is, simply listing them) in front of nián 'year':

yī-jiǔ-sì-yī-nián '1941'

## Lesson 12 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

#### I. Review of Two-Syllable Tonal Combinations

The lists in this and the following exercise use vocabulary from Units I and II. Digits indicate tone sequences: e.g. '10' means first tone followed by neutral tone. Asterisks indicate expressions in which the first syllable changes from third tone to second tone.

10 sānyue shānshang zhīdao jīntian jiāli gōngfu	11 shān-dōng Zhōngshān sānfēn tā-shuō gāo-shān fēiji	12 sānmáo Zhōngwén gōngyuán zhōngxué dōu-lái sāntiáo	13 dōu-hǎo sānběn qiānbǐ tā-yǒu Dōngběi gāngbǐ	14 sānkuài shuō-huà shūdiàn gōnggòng chī-fàn sāncì
20 xuésheng háizi zuótian chuánshang yánse míngzi	21 shéi-shuō nín-chī shíyī nín-shuō néng-chī nán-shuō	22 wénxué suírán néng-xué shéi-lái nán-xué Húnán	23 nín-hǎo máobǐ bái-zhǐ Húběi hái-yǒu shéi-mǎi	24 duó-dà yíding shíhào lí-zhèr chéngwài shéi-mài
30 mǔqin nēige kěshi wǔyue fǔshang zǒude	31 hěn-gāo wǔfēn mǎi-shū hěn-duō nēizhī Yuǎndōng	32 liǎngmáo zhǎo-shéi wǒ-lái nēiguó yǒu-qián xiǎoxué	33 wúlǐ * hén-shǎo * jiúsuǒr * wó-zǒu * yé-xiǎo * hén-yuǎn *	34 wǒ-qù hěn-dà wǎnfàn xiě-zì zǒu-lù wǔhào
40 dìdi mèimei fùqin gàosu rènshi yìsi	41 xìng-Gāo diànchē kàn-shū xià-shān tài-duō qìchē	42 dìtú jiàoyuán xìng-Bái yìzhí dàxué zài-lái	43 mòshuǐ tài-shǎo zìdiǎn Rìběn mài-bǐ wàng-nǎr	44 liùkuài sìhào guìxìng jiù-huì zài-zhèr dào-nèr

II. Review of i and “i”

sìcì	dìdi	jǐzhī	yíci	shíyī
yìsi	sìshí	yìlǐ	shísì	sìzhī
dì-yī	yìzhí	nǐ-chī	dì-shí	dì-qī
qīzhī	dì-sì	shízhī	shícì	yìshí

ANALOGY DRILL

Answer both questions affirmatively. Add yě ‘also’ in the answer to the second question.

1. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéngwài-ma? 'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā-ne?
2. Shānshang yǒu-yì suǒ-dà-fángzi-ma? 'Xiǎo-fángzi-ne?
3. Ní-qǐng-péngyou chī-wǎnfàn-ma? Tā-ne?
4. Nǐ-jiā zài-shānshang-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
5. Nǐ-jīntian mái-běnzǐ-ma? Tā-ne?
6. Nǐ-jiā-zài-Húběi-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
7. 'Qiánbiar-shi-dà-shān-ma? Hòubiār-ne?
8. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn-ma? Tā-ne?
9. Nǐ-jiā zài-chéng-lǐtōu-ma? Nǐ-'péngyou-jiā-ne?
10. Nǐ-jiā zài-Zhōngshān-Lù-zuǒbiār-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
11. Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'Shāndong-rén-ma? Wáng-Tàitai-ne?
12. Nǐ-jiā-hòutou yǒu-xiǎo-hú-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
13. Nǐde-fángzi shi-'lán-yánse-de-ma? 'Tāde-fángzi-ne?
14. Nǐ-yào-jiè-shū-ma? Nǐ-péngyou-ne?
15. Ní-xǐhuan-kàn-shū-ma? Nǐ-péngyou-ne?
16. Nǐ-huì-xiě 'Zhōngguo-zì-ma? Nǐ-péngyou-ne?
17. Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
18. Tāmen-dōu-shi-xuésheng-ma? Nǐmen-ne?
19. Gōngyuán-lí-zhèr yuǎn-ma? Túshūguǎn-ne?
20. Nǐ-xué 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma? Tā-ne?
21. 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-róngyì-ma? 'Yīngguo-wénxué-ne?
22. Nǐ-néng-shuō Zhōngwén-ma? Tāmen-ne?
23. Túshūguǎn lí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā yuǎn-ma? Gōngyuán-ne?
24. Nǐ-néng-kàn jiǎndānde-Zhōngguo-shū-ma? Tāmen-ne?
25. Nǐ-zài-dàxué niàn-shū-ma? 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ne?

26. Nǐ-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē-qù-ma? Tāmen-ne?
27. Cóng-zhèr-yìzhíde jiù-dào-nǐ-jiā-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
28. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn zài-nǐ-jiā-mén-kǒu-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
29. Cóng-zhèr-yìzhíde-wàng-xī shì-nǐ-jiā-ma? 'Tā-jiā-ne?
30. Cóng-zhèr-dào-nǐ-jiā wàng-'dōngbiar-guǎi-ma? Nǐ-'péngyou-jiā-ne?
31. Nǐ-jiā-lí-zhèr yǒu-'bāilǐ-lù-ma? Tā-jiā-ne?
32. Nǐ-jīntian dào-shūdiàn-qu-ma? 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ne?
33. Tā-mǔqīn-shì-jiàoyuán-ma? Tā-'fùqīn-ne?
34. Tā-dìdi zài-'xiǎoxué-niàn-shū-ma? 'Nǐ-dìdi-ne?
35. Tā-shuō-huà shuōde-hěn-kuài-ma? Nǐ-ne?
36. 'Zhèige-màipiàoyuán hén-hǎo-ma? Nèige-ne?
37. Nǐ-zài-chēshang mǎi-piào-ma? Tāmen-ne?
38. Nǐ-mèimei-shísānsuì-ma? 'Tā-mèimei-ne?
39. Nǐ-yǒu-piào-ma? Tā-ne?
40. Tā-yǒu-háizi-ma? Nǐ-ne?
41. Tā-shì-'Měiguó-rén-ma? Nǐ-ne?
42. Nǐ-fùqīn-zuò-shì-ma? 'Tā-fùqīn-ne?
43. Tā-dìdi-zuò-shì-ma? 'Nǐ-dìdi-ne?
44. Tā-shì-zuò-'chē-láide-ma? Nǐ-ne?
45. Nǐ-míngtian bàifāng-péngyou-ma? Tā-ne?
46. Nǐ-shì-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
47. Nǐ-shì-'qùnian-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
48. Zhèiběn-shū yǒu-yìsi-ma? 'Nèiběn-ne?
49. Nǐ-rènshi 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ma? Tā-ne?
50. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiǎng-dào-Rìběn-qu-ma? Nǐ-ne?
51. Nǐ-shì-zuò-'chuán-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
52. Tā-shì-'zuótian-lái-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
53. Nǐ-shì-cóng-'Zhōngguó-lái-de-ma? Tāmen-ne?
54. Nǐ-rènshi-nèige-rén-ma? Tā-ne?
55. Tā-shì-sānyue-'wǔhào-lái-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
56. Nǐ-shì-jīntian yùjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-de-ma? 'Bái-Xiānsheng-ne?
57. Tā-shì-zuò gōnggòng-qìchē-lái-de-ma? Nǐmen-ne?
58. Nǐ-shì-xiān-dào-Rìběn hòu-dào-'Zhōngguó-qù-de-ma? Tā-ne?
59. Tā-jiā zài-Měiguó-ma? 'Nǐ-jiā-ne?
60. Tā-shì-'qùnian-lái-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
61. Nǐ-xīwang dào-'Zhōngguó-qù-ma? Tā-ne?

62. 'Qiānbǐ-zài-zhèr-ma? 'Gāngbǐ-ne?
63. Tāmen-zài-diànchēshang mǎi-piào-ma? Chuánshang-ne?
64. Zhèige-dàxué yǒu-'Yīngguo-xuésheng-ma? 'Měiguó-xuésheng-ne?
65. 'Chuánshangde-rén dōu-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén-ma? Fēijīshang-ne?
66. Túshūguǎn lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma? Shūdiàn-ne?
67. 'Zhōngguo-wénxué nán-xué-ma? 'Yīngguo-wénxué-ne?
68. Běi-Hú-lí-nèr yǒu-'bāilǐ-lù-ma? Xī-Shān-ne?
69. Ní-xǐhuan-zuò-chuán-ma? Fēijī-ne?
70. Zài-'nèige-túshūguǎn yǒu-hěn-duō-'Zhōngguo-rén-kàn-shū-ma? 'Wàiguó-rén-ne?
71. Tā-shi-qùnian-'bāyue-lái-de-ma? Nín-ne?
72. Tā-shi-zuótian mǎi-de-shū-ma? Nǐ-ne?
73. Ní-xiǎng qīyue-sìhào-qù-ma? Tā-ne?
74. Tā-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng-gāo-ma? Nǐ-ne?
75. Tā-shi-qùnian líkai-jiā-de-ma? Nǐ-ne?
76. Tā-niànde-hǎo-ma? Nǐ-ne?
77. Nǐ-lái-jiè-shū-ma? Tā-ne?
78. Tā-bǐ-'Bái-Xiānsheng xuéde-hǎo-ma? Nǐ-ne?
79. Nǐ-shi-cóng-Měiguó dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-de-ma? Tā-ne?
80. Tā-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hǎo-ma? Rìběn-huà-ne?

## REPLACEMENT DRILL

Replace some element in the sentence to the left with the word to the right.

- |                                      |          |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Tā-shi-'Rìběn-rén.                | Zhōngguo |
| 2. Tā-xǐhuan-niàn-shū.               | xiě-zì   |
| 3. Tā-yǒu-mèimei.                    | dìdi     |
| 4. Tā-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hěn-kuài. | màn      |
| 5. Tā-fùqin shi-jiàoyuán.            | mǔqin    |
| 6. Tā-míngzi jiào-Láohu.             | Xiǎomèi  |
| 7. Tā-bu-mǎi-zìdiǎn.                 | běnzi    |
| 8. Tā-jiā-zài-shānshang.             | shānxià  |
| 9. Dōngbian-shi-túshūguǎn.           | shūdiàn  |
| 10. Wǒ-jiā-zài-Húnán.                | Shāndong |
| 11. Fángzi-'lǐtou-yǒu-rén.           | wàitou   |
| 12. Wǒde-fángzi zài-zhōngjiār.       | zuōbiar  |

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| 13. Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué niàn-shū.                 | dàxué    |
| 14. 'Zhōngguo-zì róngyì-xiě.                  | nán      |
| 15. Wǒ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-tài-yuǎn.             | jìn      |
| 16. Wǒ-néng-shuō Zhōngguo-huà.                | huì      |
| 17. Wǒ-qu-'jiè-shū.                           | mǎi      |
| 18. Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn.                         | gōngyuán |
| 19. Wǒ-huì-xiě 'Zhōngguo-zì.                  | néng     |
| 20. Dào-tā-jiā cóng-zhèr-wàng-dōng-guǎi.      | xī       |
| 21. Tā-shì-zuò-'diànchē-lái-de.               | qì chē   |
| 22. Zhōngshān-Lù-hòutou yǒu-gōngyuán.         | qiántou  |
| 23. Nèige-hú shì-Běi-Hú.                      | Nán-Hú   |
| 24. Húde-yòubiān shì-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā.     | hòubiān  |
| 25. Shānshang yǒu-yìsuǒ-fángzi.               | sānsuǒ   |
| 26. Rén-zài-fángzi-lǐtou.                     | wàitou   |
| 27. Túshūguǎn yǒu-rén-kàn-shū.                | jiè      |
| 28. Mèimei-bǐ-dìdi-dà.                        | xiǎo     |
| 29. Cóng-zhèr wàng-'bèi-guǎi shì-wǒ-jiā.      | dōng     |
| 30. Zhèiběn-shū-bù-hǎo.                       | zhēn     |
| 31. Tā-dìdi-mǎi-shū.                          | zuò-shì  |
| 32. Xiànzài chàbuduō-yìdiǎn-zhōng.            | sān      |
| 33. Xiànzài chà-yíkè-sāndiǎn.                 | wǔfēn    |
| 34. Fēiji-ǐ-bǐ-qìchē-kuài.                    | chuán    |
| 35. Tāde-míngzi hěn-qíguài.                   | bù       |
| 36. Tā-cháng-qu bàifang-péngyou.              | lái      |
| 37. Tā-rènshi 'Wáng-Xiānsheng.                | yùjian   |
| 38. Nèiběn-shū méi-yǒu-yìsì.                  | hén      |
| 39. Tā-yídìng-lái.                            | xǐhuan   |
| 40. Tā-xīwang-kànjian 'Gāo-Xiānsheng.         | yídìng   |
| 41. Wǒ-zhèi-shì-dì-yìcì lái-Měiguó.           | sān      |
| 42. Shì-zuò-'chuán-hǎo háishi-zuò-'fēiji-hǎo? | kuài     |
| 43. Tāmen-cóng-zhèr wàng-nán-zǒu.             | běi      |
| 44. Tāmen-dōu-xuéde-hěn-kuài.                 | zhēn     |
| 45. Nǐ-shì-jiè-'shū-lái-de-ma?                | dì tú    |



## INSERTION DRILL

At an appropriate place in each of the following sentences, insert the word to the right of the sentence.

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Wó-'měitián dào-túshūguǎn-qu.            | dōu       |
| 2. Wǒ-yì diǎn-bàn-zhōng-lái.                | zài       |
| 3. Wǒ-shi-dì-yí cì lái-Zhōngguo.            | yě        |
| 4. Wó-zǒu-lù bǐ-tā-kuài.                    | gèng      |
| 5. Tā-dìdì zài-zhōngxué-niàn-shū.           | bú        |
| 6. Jīntian wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.             | wǎnshang  |
| 7. Gōngyuán-qiántou yǒu-yìtiáo-lù.          | dà        |
| 8. Zhōngjiārde-fángzi-shi-shéide?           | zài       |
| 9. Rúguǒ-bú-dào-gōngyuán, dào-túshūguǎn-qu. | jiù       |
| 10. Zhèizhī-bí-hǎo.                         | zhēn      |
| 11. Zhèige-zì-jiǎndān.                      | bù        |
| 12. 'Wáng-Xiáojie-shuōde-kuài.              | yìdiǎr    |
| 13. Xiànzài-'sìdiǎn-yí kè.                  | chà       |
| 14. Wǒ-jīnnian-shí bā suì.                  | chàbuduō  |
| 15. Nǐmen-rènshi nèiwèi-xiānsheng-ma?       | dōu       |
| 16. Míngtian-wǒ-lái.                        | zài       |
| 17. Nèiběn-shū hén-yǒu-yì si.               | méi       |
| 18. Tā-bù-chī-fàn.                          | zěnmo     |
| 19. Nèige-rén bù-chī-fàn.                   | xǐhuan    |
| 20. 'Shísuìde-háizi yě-jiè-shū-ma?          | néng      |
| 21. Wǒ-sānyue-yíhào líkai-zhèr.             | xiǎng     |
| 22. Tā-rúguǒ-sìdiǎn-bù-lái, wǒ-jiù-zǒu.     | bàn       |
| 23. Nèige-háizi-jiào-shénmo?                | míngzi    |
| 24. Wǒ-zhèige-zì xiěde-'duì-bú-duì?         | qǐng-wèn  |
| 25. Cóng-zhèr wàng-dōng-zǒu.                | yìzhí(de) |

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

Read aloud and answer in Chinese.

- Gāo-Tàitai-qu-'mǎi-shū. Gāo-Xiānsheng-qu-'jiè-shū. 'Shéi-qu-mǎi-shū?
- 'Wáng-Xiānshengde-jiā zài-chénglǐ. 'Gāo-Xiānshengde-jiā zài-chéngwài. 'Shéide-jiā zài-chénglǐ?

3. 'Qiántou-yǒu-gōngyuán. 'Hòutou-yǒu-hú. 'Qiántou-yǒu-shénmo?
4. Húde-zuǒbiar shi-xiǎo-gōngyuán. Yòubiār shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-nǎr?
5. Zhōngshan-Lù-zuǒbiar yǒu-dà-gōngyuán. Yòubiār yóu-xiǎo-hú. Dà-gōngyuán-zài-nǎr?
6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng mài-shū. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-dàxué-niàn-shū. 'Shéi-niàn-shū?
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-túshūguǎn-qu-jiè-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng qu-kàn-shū. 'Shéi-qu-jiè-shū?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-kàn-Zhōngguo-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng néng-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. Shéi-néng-kàn-Zhōngguo-shū?
9. Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-hěn-jìn. 'Qián-Xiáojie-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-hén-yuǎn. Shéi-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-hěn-jìn?
10. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō Zhōngguo-zì-róngyi-xiě. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō 'bù-róngyi-xiě. Shéi-shuō-Zhōngguo-zì 'bù-róngyi-xiě?
11. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr 'sānlǐ-lù. Gōngyuán-lí-zhèr 'bānlǐ-lù. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr 'jǐlǐ-lù?
12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-xuésheng. 'Qián-Xiānsheng shi-jiàoyuán. Shéi-niàn-shū?
13. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xiān-dào-túshūguǎn 'hòu-dào-Gāo-jia-qu. Tā-'xiān-dào-nǎr?
14. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué niàn-shū. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zài-Měiguó-dàxué niàn-shū. 'Shéi-zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué niàn-shū?
15. 'Wáng-Tàitai yǒu-ge-'nǚ-háizi. 'Gāo-Tàitai yǒu-ge-'nán-háizi. 'Shéi-yóu-nǚ-háizi?
16. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng cóng-shūdiàn-lái. Máo-Xiānsheng cóng-gōngyuán-lái. Shéi-cóng-gōngyuán-lái?
17. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zuò-'qìchē. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuò-'diànchē. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zuò-'shénmo-chē?
18. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dì-'yíci-lái. 'Qián-Xiáojie dì-'sāncì-lái. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dì-'jǐcì-lái?
19. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zuò-'chuán-lái-de. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuò-'fēijī-lái-de. 'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-zuò-'shénmo-lái-de?
20. Fēijī-kuài. Chē-màn. 'Shénmo-kuài?
21. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'qùnian-líkai-Měiguó. 'Máo-Xiānsheng 'jīnnian-líkai-Měiguó. 'Shéi-qùnian-líkai-Měiguó?
22. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yùjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. 'Máo-Xiáojie yùjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng. 'Shéi-yùjian-Qián-Xiānsheng?
23. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jiè-'Yīngwén-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng jiè-'Zhōngwén-shū. 'Shéi-jiè-'Yīngwén-shū?
24. Dìdi zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū. Mèimei zài-'xiǎoxué-niàn-shū. Dìdi zài-'nǎr-niàn-shū?

25. 'Wáng-Xiáojie xǐhuan-niàn-'Yīngwén. 'Máo-Xiáojie xǐhuan-niàn-'Zhōngwén. 'Shéi-xǐhuan-niàn-'Yīngwén?
26. 'Wáng-Xiáojie cháng-dào-túshūguǎn. 'Máo-Xiáojie bù-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn. 'Shéi-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn?
27. Gāo-Xiānsheng-yǒu-tàitai. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-tàitai. 'Shéi-yǒu-tàitai?
28. Màiipiàoyuán rènshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Wǒ-'bù-rènshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng. 'Shéi-rènshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng?
29. 'Qián-Xiáojie dào-shūdiàn-lái. 'Wáng-Xiáojie 'bù-dào-shūdiàn-lái. 'Shéi-dào-shūdiàn-lái?
30. Wǒ-qu-bàifang 'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Tā-qu-bàifang 'Wáng-Xiānsheng. 'Shéi-qu-bàifang 'Wáng-Xiānsheng?
31. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-Rìběn. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng dào-Yīngguo. 'Shéi-dào-Rìběn?
32. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng niàn-shū. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuò-shi. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng zuò-shénmo?
33. Wó-xǐhuan-zuò-chuán. Tā-xǐhuan-zuò-fēijī. Tā-xǐhuan-zuò-chuán-háishi-xǐhuan-zuò-fēijī?
34. Nǐ-shuōde bí-wó-hǎo. Tā-shuōde bí-nǐ-'gèng-hǎo. 'Shéi-shuōde-hǎo?
35. Dào-túshūguǎn wàng-'dōng-guǎi. Dào-shūdiàn wàng-'xī-guǎi. Dào-túshūguǎn wàng-'nár-guǎi?

## NARRATIVE

Read aloud and translate into English.

Wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin zuótian-cóng-Yīngguo dào-'Zhōngguo-lái. Tāmen-shi-'xiān-dào-Rìběn 'hòu-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Tāmen-hén-xǐhuan dào-'wàiguo-qu. Tāmen-'gèng-xǐhuan dào-'Zhōngguo lái. Zuótian-wǎnshang wó-qǐng-tāmen-qu-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Tāmen-suírán-shi dì-yí-cì-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn, kěshi 'hén-xǐhuan-chī. Wǒ-fùqin chīde-hěn-duō. Tā-gàosu-wǒ tā-zài-Rìběn kànjiàn-hěn-duō tāde-péngyou. Tā-hái-gàosu-wǒ xiànzài-wǒ-dìdi-mèimei dōu-hěn-gāo. Wǒmen-zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshang yùjian-'Wáng-Tàitai. Tā-kànjian-wǒde-fùqin-mǔqin tā-qǐng-tāmen-míngtian dào-tā-jiā-qu-chī-fàn. Tā-wèn: "Míngtian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu-ma?" Wó-mǔqin-shuō: "Xièxie, yǒu-gōngfu." Wǒ-fùqin-shuō: "Wó-hěn-xīwang dào-yíge-'Zhōngguo-péngyou-jiā-qù."

## DIALOGUE

Read aloud, preferably with two students acting out the roles, and translate into English.

'Zhāng-Xiānsheng 'Wáng-Xiānsheng liǎngge-rén zài-gōnggòng-qìchē-shang yùjian-tán-huà.

Zhāng: Wáng-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Hǎo-ma?

Wáng: 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma?

Zhāng: Fǔshang-dōu-hǎo-ma?

Wáng: 'Dōu-hǎo, xièxie-nín.

Zhāng: Nín-dào-nǎr-qu?

Wáng: Wǒ-qu-bàifang yíge-péngyou. Nín-ne?

Zhāng: Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-kàn-shū.

Wáng: Zhèr-'túshūguǎn wǒ-hái-bù-zhīdào zài-nǎr-ne. Wó-yé-hén-xǐhuan dào-'túshūguǎn-qù-kàn-shū.

Zhāng: Nín-bù-zhīdào túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr-ma?

Wáng: Wǒ-bù-zhīdào-ne.

Zhāng: Lí-Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán bù-yuǎn. Hěn-róngyi-zhǎo. Zuótian-wǎnshang wǒ-yùjian-'Qián-Xiānsheng. Tā-shuō sānyue-èrshiwǔhào tā-dào-'Rìběn-qu.

Wáng: Shì. Zuótian tā-dào-wǒ-jiā-qu. Tā-yě-gàosu-wǒ sānyue-dào-Rìběn.

Zhāng: Wó-xiǎng qǐng-ta-chī-fàn. Yé-qǐng-nín, qǐng-nín-'tàitai liǎngge-háizi dōu-lái.

Wáng: Xièxie-nín.

Zhāng: Nín-shíjiǔhào yǒu-gōngfu-ma? Wó-xiǎng-shíjiǔhào-wǎnshang-qǐng.

Wáng: Yǒu-gōngfu. Xièxie-nín.

Zhāng: Qǐng-nín-tàitai-háizi yídìng-lái.

Wáng: Wǒmen-yídìng-lái.

Zhāng: Nín-zài-nǎr-xià-chē?

Wáng: Qiántou-bù-yuǎn jiù-shi-wǒ-péngyou-jiā. Wǒ-jiù-zài-zhèige-chē-zhàn xià-chē.

Zhāng: Zài-guò-liǎngge-lù-kǒur, wàng-xī-guǎi, jiù-dào-túshūguǎn. Wǒ-zài túshūguǎn-mén-kǒur xià-chē. Zàijian. Shíjiǔhào yídìng-lái.

Wáng: Yídìng-lái, yídìng-lái.

## QUESTIONNAIRE

Assume both roles in the following oral questionnaire, to practice getting information about another person as well as providing it about yourself.

Q: May I ask, what is your [sur]name?

A: My [sur]name is King.

Q: What is your Chinese given name?

A: I don't have a Chinese given name.

Q: When did you come to China?

A: I came on February 1.

Q: You speak Chinese very well. Did you study it in America?

A: I studied in America. I speak badly.

Q: You speak really well. Who is in your family?

A: I have a father, mother, and younger brother.

Q: How old is your younger brother? Does he study?

A: My younger brother is ten. He studies in elementary school.

Q: How old [lit. ten and how many years] are you this year?

A: I'm eighteen.

Q: What does your father do?

A: He works at a university.

Q: How about your mother?

A: My mother doesn't work.

Q: Did you come by boat or by plane from America to China?

A: I came first from America to England, then from England to China. I came from America to England by boat, and from England to China by plane.

Q: Are you coming to China to study or to work?

A: I'm coming to study.

Q: At what university are you studying?

A: I'm studying at Far Eastern University.

Q: What are you studying?

A: I'm studying literature.

Q: Are you studying Chinese literature or foreign literature?

A: I'm studying English literature, and also studying Chinese literature.

Q: My home is east of Sun Yatsen Road, number 15. If you have time, I hope you will come often to my home. We'll talk a while.

A: Thank you. If I have time I will certainly go to your home to call on you.

Lesson 13 GETTING ACQUAINTED



“ 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní -hǎo-ma?’ ”

Dialogue: Mr. White and Miss Gao meet on the bus and get further acquainted.

Bái : 'Gāo-Xiáojie, ní -hǎo-ma?  
Shàng-nǎr-qu-le?

Miss Gao, how are you? Where  
have you been?

Gāo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-  
ma? Wǒ-shàng-xuéxiào-  
qu-le. Xiànzài-huí-jiā.

5

Hello, Mr. White. I've been at  
school. I'm on my way home  
now.

Bái : Nǐ-cóng-xuéxiào huí-jiā-  
hén-wǎn-ne.

You're returning home very late,  
(aren't you?)

Gāo: Yīnwei-xià-kè-yǐhòu  
wǒmen-xuéxiào-yǒu-yì-  
diǎr-shì, suóyì-'wǎn-le-  
yìdiǎr. Nín-dào-nǎr-qu?  
Shì-dào-wǒmen-jiā-qu-  
ma?

10

After class we had something to  
do at school, so I'm a little late.  
Where are you going? [Are you  
going] to our home?

Bái : Shì.

Yes.

Gāo: Jīntian-wǎnshang wǒ-fù-  
qīn-qǐng-nín-chī-fàn,  
'duì-bu-duì?

15

My father invited you to dinner  
this evening, isn't that so?

- Bái: Duì-le. Tài-'máfan-nǐmen-le.  
le.
- Gāo: 'Bù-'máfan. Huānyíng-nín-lái. 20  
It's no trouble. We're glad you're coming.
- Bái: Wǒ-hái-bu-zhīdào nǐ-zài-'něige-xuéxiào niàn-shū-ne.  
'něige-xuéxiào niàn-shū-ne.
- Gāo: Wǒ-zài-Dì-'yī-Zhōngxué-niàn-shū. 25  
[I'm studying] at No. 1 Middle School.
- Bái: 'Jǐniánjí?  
What year?
- Gāo: Gāozhōng-'sānniánjí. Jīn-nián wǒ-jiù-biyè-le.  
Third year higher middle. I'll be graduating this year.
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng nǐ-'yídìng-hěn-cōngming. 30  
[I think] you must be very bright.
- Gāo: 'Bù-cōngming. Bènjíle.  
I'm not [bright. I'm awfully stupid].
- Bái: Nǐ-kèqi-ne.  
You're being polite.
- Gāo: Nín-zài-Yuǎn-Dà 'jǐniánjí?  
What year are you in at Far Eastern?
- Bái: Wǒ-zài-sānniánjí.  
[I'm in] the junior year.
- Gāo: Wǒ-fùqīn-shuō nín-'yòu-cōngming 'yòu-yònggōng. 35  
My father says you're clever and hard-working.
- Bái: Wǒ-bènjíle. Yě-'bú-yònggōng.  
I'm not. [lit. I'm awfully stupid. Also, I don't work hard.]
- Gāo: Wǒ-xiànzài-mángjíle, yīn-wei-xuéxiào kuài-kǎoshì-le. 40  
I'm terribly busy now, as we're [lit. our school is] about to have exams. What about you?
- Bái: Wǒmen-'yě-méi-kǎo-ne. 'Kuài-yào-kǎo-le... Nǐ-xǐhuan kàn-diànyǐngr-ma?  
We haven't had our exams yet either. We'll be having them soon... Do you like [to see] movies?
- Gāo: Wǒ-'hén-xǐhuan. Chàbuduō-liǎngge-xīngqī jiù-qù-kàn-yíci. 45  
[I like to] very much. Almost every other week I go to one.
- Bái: Nǐ-kǎoshì-yǐhòu, wó-qíng-ni-kàn-diànyǐngr, hǎo-ma?  
After your exams may I invite you to see a movie?
- Gāo: 'Nín-yé-xǐhuan kàn-diànyǐngr-ma? 50  
Do you like movies too?
- Bái: Wó-'yé-xǐhuan kàn-diànyǐngr. Yǐqián zài-Měiguode-shíhou, wó-'měige-xīngqī 'dōu-qù-kàn-diànyǐngr. 55  
Yes. [lit. I like movies too.] [Previously,] when I was in America, I went to the movies every week. Let's take one in after exams. Be my guest.
- Gāo: Xièxie-nin. Jīntian-  
Thank you. This evening we



	wǎnshàng wǒmen-hái-qǐng-le yíwèi-'Yīngguo-péngyou-ne. Nín-rènshi-ma?	60	have also invited an English friend. (I take it) you're acquainted?
Bái :	Wǒ-'bú-rènshi. Shi-xiānsheng, shi-tàitai, háishi-xiáojie-ne?		No, I'm not. Who is it? [lit. Is it a gentleman, a married lady, or a girl?]
Gāo :	Shi-xiānsheng. Wǒ-fùqin méi-gàosu-nín-ma?	65	It's a gentleman. Didn't my father tell you?
Bái :	Tā-'méi-shuō. 'Jiù-shuō shi-yíwèi-'Yīngguo-péngyou.		He didn't say. He said only that it was an English friend.
Gāo :	Jīntian-wǎnshàng nǐmen-jiù-rènshi-le.	70	You'll get acquainted this evening.
Bái :	Lí-fǔshàng hái-yǒu-'duō-yuǎn?		How much farther is it to your home?
Gāo :	Yǐjīng-kuài-dào-le. Zài-guò-'sìge-lù-kǒur jiù-dào-le.	75	We'll soon be there. It's just four more blocks [lit. After passing four more intersections then we'll arrive.]
Bái :	Wǒ-dì-'yí-cì-lái. Rúguǒ-méi-yùjiàn-ni, hěn-nán-zhǎo-le.		(This is) the first time I've come (to your home). If I hadn't met you, it would have been hard to find.
Gāo :	'Bái-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn, xiànzài-'jídìǎn-zhōng-le? Wó-zǎochén-hěn-máng. Chīle-zǎofàn-jiù-zǒule, wàngle-dài-biǎo-le.	80	Mr. White, [may I ask,] what time is it [lit. has it become]? I was very busy this morning. I left right after breakfast [lit. after eating breakfast I left immediately], and forgot to wear my watch.
Bái :	Xiànzài chà-yí-kè-qīdiǎn.	85	It's now quarter of seven.
Gāo :	Dào-jiā jiù-chàbuduō-qī-diǎnle.		By the time we get home it will be just about seven.

## VOCABULARY

bèn	stupid (SV)
biǎo	watch, timepiece (N)
bìyè	graduate (IV) [lit. finish job] (Bì is also a surname)
cōngmíng	intelligent, clever, bright (SV) [lit. clever bright]
dài	wear (on the hands or head) (TV); (also, a surname)
diànyǐng(r)	motion picture, movie (N) [lit. electric shadow]
gāozhōng	higher middle school (N) [lit. high middle]

'huānyíng	welcome (TV) [lit. pleased receive]
huí	return (to) (TV)
jíle	in the extreme, extremely [lit. extremely finished] (Note 15)
kǎo	take <u>or</u> give an examination (in a subject, or for school) (TV)
kǎoshì	take <u>or</u> give an examination (IV) [lit. test try]
kè	class (N) lesson (M)
kèqi	polite, ceremonious, formal (SV) [lit. guest air]
le	(suffix indicating perfective aspect: Notes 1-8, 17)
máng	busy (SV)
máfan	cause trouble to, disturb (TV) troublesome (SV)
niánjí	year of school (M) [lit. year rank]
suóyi	therefore (MA)
wǎn	late (SV)
wàng	forget (V)
xīngqī	week (N) [lit. star period] (Notes 13-14 below)
xuéxiào	school (N) [lit. study school]
yǐhòu	after, afterwards (TW) [lit. take rear] (Note 11 below)
yǐjing	already (AD) [lit. already pass]
yǐqián	before, previously (TW) [lit. take front] (Note 11 below)
yīnwei	because, since (MA) [lit. because be]
yònggōng	work hard, be studious (V) [lit. use service]
yòu	again (AD)
zǎochen	morning, forenoon (TW) [lit. early morning]
zǎofàn	breakfast (N) [lit. early food]

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| lái                            | come  |
| lái-le                         | came  |
| 1. Tāmen-'dōu-lái-le.          | They've all come.                           |
| bìyè                           | graduate                                    |
| bìyè-le                        | graduated                                   |
| 2. Tā-dìdì qùnian-jiù-bìyè-le. | His younger brother graduated<br>last year. |

- |     |                                     |   |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|
|     | zǎochen<br>zuótian-zǎochen          | morning<br>yesterday morning                            |
| 3.  | Nǐ-zuótian-zǎochen dào-nǎr-qù-le?   | Where did you go yesterday morning?                     |
|     | mǎi-shū-qu<br>mǎi-shū-qu-le         | go to buy books<br>gone to buy books                    |
| 4.  | Tā-bú-zài-jiā, mǎi-shū-qu-le.       | He's not at home, (he's) gone to buy some books.        |
|     | chī-fàn<br>chī-fàn-le               | eat food<br>have eaten                                  |
| 5.  | Nǐ-chī-fàn-le-ma?                   | Have you eaten?   |
|     | chī-fàn-le<br>chī-le-fàn-le         | have eaten<br>have eaten                                |
| 6.  | Nǐ-chī-le-fàn-le-ma?                | Have you eaten?   |
|     | dào-le-túshūguǎn<br>jiù-jiè-shū     | arrived at the library<br>then take out books           |
| 7.  | Tā-dào-le-túshūguǎn jiù-jiè-shū.    | When he gets to the library, he'll take out some books. |
|     | jiù-jiè-shū<br>jiù-jiè-shū-le       | then take out books<br>then took out books              |
| 8.  | Tā-dào-le-túshūguǎn jiù-jiè-shū-le. | After he got to the library, he took out some books.    |
|     | huí<br>huí-jiā                      | return (to a place)<br>return home                      |
| 9.  | Nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou-huí-jiā?          | When are you returning home?                            |
|     | huí-jiā<br>huí-jiā-le               | return home<br>returned home                            |
| 10. | Tā-'mǎile-zìdiǎn jiù-huí-jiā-le.    | He returned home after buying the dictionary.           |
|     | zǎofàn<br>chīle-zǎofàn              | breakfast<br>having eaten breakfast                     |
| 11. | Wǒ-chīle-zǎofàn jiù-zǒu.            | I'll leave after [eating] breakfast.                    |
|     | biǎo<br>mǎile-biǎo                  | watch<br>bought the watch                               |
| 12. | Wǒ-mǎile-biǎo jiù-huí-jiā.          | I'll return home after I've bought the watch.           |
|     | dài<br>dài-biǎo                     | wear<br>wear a watch                                    |
| 13. | Wǒ-měitiān dōu-dài-biǎo.            | I wear a watch every day.                               |
|     | wǎn<br>wǎnle                        | late<br>become late                                     |
| 14. | Xiànzài-wǎnle, wǒ-yào-zǒu.          | It's [gotten to be]late. I must go.                     |

- cōngmíng  
cōngmíngde-xuésheng  
15. 'Gāo-Xiáojié shì-yíge-cōng-  
míngde-xuésheng.  
clever, bright  
bright student  
Miss Gao is a bright student.
- bèn  
bènde-duō  
16. Wó-bǐ-tāmen-'bènde-duō.  
stupid  
much more stupid  
I'm a lot more stupid than they  
are.
- máng  
'máng-bu-máng?  
17. Nǐ-xiànzài máng-bu-máng?  
busy  
busy or not?  
Are you busy now?
- kèqi  
zhēn-kèqi  
18. 'Zhōngguó-rén 'zhēn-kèqi.  
polite  
really polite  
Chinese are really polite.
- jiè-yìběn-shū  
jièle-yìběn-shū  
19. Wǒ-zuótiān jièle-yìběn-shū.  
borrow a book  
borrowed a book  
I borrowed one book yesterday.
- jièle-yìběn-shū  
jièle-yìběn-shū-le  
'hái-yào-jiè-yìběn  
20. Wǒ-jīntiān jièle-yìběn-shū-  
le, 'hái-yào-jiè-yìběn.  
borrowed one book  
have borrowed one book  
want to borrow another one  
I've borrowed one book today  
and want to borrow another.
- yǐjīng  
yǐjīng-qǐngle  
21. Wó-yǐjīng-qǐngle 'sānge-  
péngyou-le.  
already  
already invited  
I've already invited three  
friends.
- xīngqī  
yíge-xīngqī  
22. 'Yíge-xīngqī yǒu-'qītiān.  
week  
one week  
A week has seven days.
- xīngqītiān  
xīngqīyī  
23. Tā-xīngqī'tiān-lái-de, xīng-  
qī'yī-zǒu-de.  
Sunday  
Monday  
He arrived on Sunday and left on  
Monday.
- diànyǐngr  
kàn-diànyǐngr  
24. Wó-měi-xīngqīliù kàn-diàn-  
yǐngr.  
movie  
see a movie  
I go to the movies every Satur-  
day.
- yíci  
yíci-diànyǐngr  
25. Wó-měi-xīngqī kàn-yíci-  
diànyǐngr.  
one time  
one movie  
I see one movie a week.
- xuéxiào  
zài-'něige-xuéxiào?  
school  
at what school?

26. Nǐ-zài-'něige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū?

zǒule  
kuài-zǒule

27. 'Bái-Xiānsheng kuài-zǒule.

kǎo  
kǎo-shū

28. Wǒmen-'míngtiān-kǎo-shū.

kǎo  
kǎo-dàxué

29. Wǒmen-bìyè jiù-kǎo-dàxué.

kǎoshì  
'jiù-kǎoshìle

30. Wǒmen-xuéxiào jiù-yào-kǎo-shìle.

kè  
shàng-kè  
yào-shàng-kè-le

31. Wǒ-xiānzài yào-shàng-kè-le.

kè  
dì-sānkè

32. Wǒmen-jīntiān yào-niàn-dì-'sānkè-le.

yòu  
'yòu-láile

33. Tā-'zuótiān-láile. Jīntiān tā-'yòu-láile.

Zhōngguo-zì  
nán-xiě  
nán-niàn

34. 'Zhōngguo-zì 'yòu-nán-xiě 'yòu-nán-niàn.

máfan

35. Nǐ-bú-yào-máfan-ta.

máfan

36. Zuò-zhèige-shì hěn-máfan.

yǐqián  
shàng-chē-yǐqián

37. Shàng-chē-yǐqián yào-mǎi-piào.

At what school are you studying?

have left  
will soon have left

Mr. White will leave very soon.

take an examination  
have examinations

We have examinations tomorrow.

take an examination  
take an examination for college

After graduating we take the exams for college.

examine or be examined  
will soon have examinations

Our school is about to have exams.

class  
go to class  
will go to class

I'm going to class now.

lesson  
third lesson

We're going to read Lesson Three today.

again  
came again

He came yesterday. He came again today.

Chinese characters  
hard to write  
hard to read

Chinese characters are [both] hard to write and hard to read.

cause trouble to

Don't disturb him.

troublesome

It's a lot of trouble to do this job.

before  
before getting on the street-car

Before you get on the car you have to buy a ticket.

- yǐhòu  
 shàng-chē-yǐhòu  
 38. Shàng-chē-yǐhòu yào-mǎi-piào.
- shíhou  
 shàng-chē-de-shíhou  
 39. Shàng-chē-de-shíhou yào-mǎi-piào.
- wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián  
 suóyi  
 bù-néng-mǎi-shū  
 40. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián, suóyi-bù-néng-mǎi-shū.
- yīnwei  
 yīnwei-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián  
 41. Yīnwei-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián, suóyi-bù-néng-mǎi-shū.
- yònggōng  
 hěn-yònggōng  
 42. Nèige-xuésheng hěn-yònggōng.
- bù-chī  
 bù-chī-le  
 43. Xièxie, wǒ-bù-chīle.
- niánjí  
 èrniánjí  
 44. Tā-bù-zài-èrniánjí-le.
- gāozhōng  
 niàn-gāozhōng  
 45. Tā-xiānzài bú-niàn-gāozhōng-le.
- 'huānyíng  
 dào-wǒ-jiā-lái  
 46. Wǒ-huānyíng-nín-míngtian dào-wǒ-jiā-lái.
- jíle  
 hǎojíle  
 47. Tāde-Zhōngguo-huà hǎojíle.
- láiile  
 'méi-yǒu-lái  
 48. Tāmen-'méi-yǒu-lái.

- after  
 after getting on the car  
 After you get on the car you have to buy a ticket.
- time  
 when getting on the car  
 When you get on the car you have to buy a ticket.
- I don't have any money  
 therefore, so  
 can't buy books  
 I don't have any money, so I can't buy any books.
- because, since  
 since I don't have any money  
 Since I don't have any money, I can't buy any books.
- studious, hard-working  
 very diligent  
 That student works very hard.
- not eat  
 not eat any more  
 Thanks, I won't have any more.
- year of school  
 second year of school  
 He's no longer in the second year.
- higher middle school  
 study in higher middle school  
 school  
 He's no longer in higher middle school [now].
- welcome  
 come to my home  
 I look forward to your coming to my home tomorrow.
- awfully  
 awfully good  
 His Chinese is awfully good.
- came  
 did not come  
 They didn't come.

- láile  
 'méi-lái  
 49. Tā-'hái-méi-lái-ne. came  
 did not come  
 He still hasn't come.
- láile  
 méi-you  
 50. Tā-'láile-méi-you? came  
 not have  
 Did he come?
- bù-chī-le  
 51. Nǐ-bù-chī-le-ma? not eat any more  
 Aren't you eating any more?
- méi-yóu-bǐ  
 méi-bǐ  
 52. Nǐ-méi-bǐ-ma? not have a pen  
 not have a pen  
 Don't you have a pen?
- shàng-xué  
 xīngqīliù  
 53. Wǒmen-xīngqīliù bú-shàng-xué. attend school  
 Saturday  
 We don't go to school on Saturday.
- shàng-zhōngxué  
 shàng-dàxué  
 54. Nǐ-shàng-'zhōngxué hái-shì-shàng-'dàxué? attend middle school  
 attend college  
 Do you go to middle school or college?
- shàng-Yīngguo  
 55. Tā-kuài-shàng-Yīngguo-le. go to England  
 He's going to England soon.
- shàng-xīngqī  
 zuò-shénmo?  
 56. Nǐ-shàng-xīngqī zuò-shénmo-le? last week  
 do what?  
 What did you do last week?
- xià-xīngqī  
 xià-xīngqīsān  
 57. Wǒ-xià-xīngqīsān qu-'kàn-diànyǐngr. next week  
 next Wednesday  
 I'm going to see a movie next Wednesday.
- niàn-xiǎoxué  
 niàn-zhōngxué  
 58. Nǐ-dìdi-niàn-'xiǎoxué hái-shì-niàn-'zhōngxué? study in grade school  
 study in middle school  
 Is your younger brother going to grade school or middle school?
- gāozhōng-'jǐniánjí?  
 niàn-'jǐniánjí?  
 59. Nǐ-niàn-gāozhōng-'jǐniánjí? what year of higher middle school?  
 be in what year of school?  
 What year of higher middle school are you in?
- wàng  
 wàngle-míngzi-le  
 60. Wǒ-wàngle-tāde-míngzi-le. forget  
 forgot a name  
 I've forgotten his name.

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 13.1. Le Indicating Completed Action or New Situation  
(Notes 1-2 below)

## Pattern 13.1 a.

S	V	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb	<u>le</u>
Tā	zǒu	le.
'He has left.'		

## Pattern 13.1 b.

S	V(- <u>le</u> )	O	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb(- <u>le</u> )	Object	<u>le</u>
Tā	chīle	fàn	le.
'He has eaten.'			

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie zǎochen-lái-le.                            | Miss Gao came in the morning.                       |
| 2. Wó-mǔqin zuótian-zǎochen-zǒu-le.                        | My mother left yesterday morning.                   |
| 3. 'Qián-Tàitai chīle-fàn-le-ma?                           | Has Mrs. Qian eaten?                                |
| 4. Wǒ-dìdi jīntian-zǎochen-lái-le.                         | My brother came this morning.                       |
| 5. 'Máo-Xiānsheng mǎile-'zì-diǎn-le-ma?                    | Did Mr. Mao buy a dictionary?                       |
| 6. Nǐ-chīle-fàn-le-ma?                                     | Have you eaten?                                     |
| 7. Tā-bìyè-le-ma?  | Has he graduated?                                   |
| 8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie zhǎo-shéi-qu-le?                           | Whom has Miss Gao gone to visit?                    |
| 9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zhǎo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-qu-le-ma?            | Did Mr. White go to visit Mr. Gao?                  |
| 10. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng dào-shū-diàn-qu-le.                   | Mr. Zhang has gone to the bookstore.                |
| 11. Wǒ-gàosu-ni-le. Nǐ-wàng-le-ma?                         | I told you. Did you forget?                         |
| 12. Míngtian-wǎnshang tā-qǐng-ni-chī-fàn. Nǐ-zhīdao-le-ma? | He's inviting you to dinner tomorrow. Did you know? |
| 13. Jīntian-zǎochen wǒ-zuòle-diànchē-le.                   | I took a streetcar this morning.                    |
| 14. Wǒ-zuótian-yùjian-ta-le.                               | I met him yesterday.                                |



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 15. Tā-jīntian-zǎochen shàng-fēijī-le.        | He took the plane this morning.         |
| 16. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jīntian-shàng-shān-le-ma? | Did Mr. King go up the mountain today?  |
| 17. Wǒ-zài-túshūguǎn jièle-liángběn-shū-le.   | I've borrowed two books at the library. |
| 18. Wǒ-mǎile-gāngbǐ-le.                       | I've bought a pen.                      |
| 19. Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le-ma?                  | Did Mr. White come?                     |
| 20. Wǒ-zuótiān kànle-hěn-duō-shū-le.          | I read a lot yesterday.                 |

Pattern 13.2. Completed Action with le in Dependent Clauses  
(Note 3 below)

Pattern 13.2 a.

S	V <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	O	<u>jiù</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	Object	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Wǒ	chīle	fàn	jiù	zǒu.

'After eating I will leave.'

Pattern 13.2 b.

S	V <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	O	<u>jiù</u>	V <sub>2</sub>	<u>le</u>
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub> - <u>le</u>	Object	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	chīle	fàn	jiù	zǒu	le.

'After eating, I left.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā-mǎile-shū jiù-huǐ-jiā-le.                   | He returned home after buying the books.           |
| 2. Tā-xiàle-chē jiù-dào-gōngyuán-qu-le.           | After he got off the car he went to the park.      |
| 3. Qián-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn jiù-zǒu-le-ma?        | Did Mr. Qian leave after he ate?                   |
| 4. Gāo-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn jiù-dào-xuéxiào-qu-le. | After eating, Mr. Gao went to school.              |
| 5. 'Bái-Xiānsheng lái-le-jiù-zǒu-le.              | Mr. White came and then left immediately.          |
| 6. Tā-mǎile-běnzǐ jiù-zǒu.                        | He will leave after buying the notebook.           |
| 7. Nǐ-shàngle-chē jiù-mǎi-piào.                   | You buy the ticket right after you get on the car. |
| 8. Tā-mǎile-shū jiù-zǒu.                          | He will leave right after buying the books.        |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9. Tāmen-mǎile-máobǐ jiù-xiě-Zhōngguó-zì.    | They will write some Chinese characters after buying writing brushes. |
| 10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng chīle-zǎofàn jiù-zǒu.     | Mr. White will leave right after (eating) breakfast.                  |
| 11. Tā-chīle-zǎofàn jiù-dào-gōng-yuán.       | He will go to the park after (eating) breakfast.                      |
| 12. Tā-dàole-gōngyuán jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.  | After going to the park he will go to the library.                    |
| 13. Tā-mǎile-shū jiù-huí-jiā.                | He will return home after buying the books.                           |
| 14. Tā-shuōle-jiù-zǒu-le.                    | He mentioned it and left.   |
| 15. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jièle-shū-jiù-huí-jiā-le. | Mr. White returned home after borrowing the books.                    |

Pattern 13.3. Le with Stative Verbs and Time Expressions  
(Note 4 below)

Pattern 13.3 a.

(S)	(AD)	SV	<u>le</u>
(Subject)	(Adverb)	Stative verb	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	xiànzài	hǎo	le.
'I'm well now.'			

Pattern 13.3 b.

(AD)	TW	<u>le</u>
(Adverb)	Time word	<u>le</u>
Xiànzài	sāndiǎn	le.
'It's become 3:00.'		

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒde-fángzi 'tài-xiǎo-le.             | My home has become too small.               |
| 2. Xiànzài chà-yíkè-sìdiǎn-le.           | It's [gotten to be] 3:45.                   |
| 3. Nèige-háizi 'tài-gāo-le.              | That child is too tall.                     |
| 4. Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr 'tài-yuǎn-le.          | His home is too far from here.              |
| 5. Nèige-xuéxiàode-xuésheng 'tài-duō-le. | There are too many students in that school. |
| 6. Dào-Gāo-jia-qu 'tài-yuǎn-le.          | It is too far to go to the Gao home.        |
| 7. Zhèiběn-zìdiǎn tài-dà-le.             | This dictionary is too big.                 |
| 8. Ní-mǔqin-hǎo-le-ma?                   | Has your mother recovered?                  |

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 9. Nèige-háizi xiànzài pǎode-hěn-kuài-le.    | That child runs very fast now.        |
| 10. Xiànzài-'hén-wǎn-le. 'Yìdiǎn-le.         | It's late now. It's one o'clock.      |
| 11. 'Gāo-Tàitai tài-kèqi-le.                 | Mrs. Gao is too polite.               |
| 12. Wǒ-tài-máng-le. Bù-néng-dào-gōngyuán-qu. | I'm too busy. I can't go to the park. |
| 13. Qián-tài-shǎo-le.                        | I have too little money.              |
| 14. Xiànzài-'jídiǎn-zhōng-le?                | What time is it now?                  |
| 15. 'Máo-Xiānsheng shū-tài-duō-le.           | Mr. Mao has too many books.           |

Pattern 13.4. Single and Double le with Quantified Objects  
(Note 5 below)

Pattern 13.4 a.

S	(TW)	V- <u>le</u>	NU-M	O
Subject	(Time word)	Verb- <u>le</u>	Number-Measure	Object
Wǒ	jīntian	kànle	liángběn	shū.
'I read two books today (and that's all I'm reading).'				

Pattern 13.4 b.

S	(TW)	V- <u>le</u>	NU-M	O	<u>le</u>
Subject	(Time word)	Verb- <u>le</u>	Number-Measure	Object	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	jīntian	kànle	liángběn	shū	le.
'I've read two books today (and I'm not done yet).'					

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒ-zuótiān mǎile-liángběn-shū.  | I bought two books yesterday.                                       |
| 2. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng kànle-yíci-diànyǐngr.                                    | Mr. Gao has been to a movie once.                                   |
| 3. Wǒ-jīntian yǐjīng-kànle 'sānběn-shū-le.                                 | Today I've already read three books.                                |
| 4. 'Bái-Xiǎojie mǎile-wǔzhī-bǐ. 'Dōu-hén-hǎo.                              | Miss Bai bought five pens. All of them are very good.               |
| 5. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yǐjīng-mǎile-yìzhāng-dìtú-le. Hái-yào-'zài-mǎi-yìzhāng. | Mr. Qian has already bought one map. He still wants to buy another. |
| 6. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zài-Gāo-Xiānsheng-yòubiān mǎile-yì-suǒ-fángzi.          | Mr. Qian bought a house to the right of Mr. Gao('s house).          |
| 7. Tāmen-kànle 'wǔcì-diànyǐngr.  | They saw five movies.   |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 8. Bái-Xiānsheng-dào-túshūguǎn<br>jièle-liángběn-zìdiǎn.                     | Mr. White went to the library<br>and took out two dictionaries.                    |
| 9. Ní-yǐjīng-qǐngle-'báge-péng-<br>you-le. 'Hái-yào-qǐng-duō-<br>shao?       | You've already invited eight<br>friends. How many more are<br>you going to invite? |
| 10. Wó-hěn-máng. Zhèige-xīngqī<br>jiù-kànle-'yíci-diànyǐng.                  | I'm very busy. I've seen only<br>one movie this week.                              |
| 11. Tā-shuō tā-yào-mǎi-'sānběn-<br>shū. Yǐjīng-mǎile-'liángběn-<br>le.       | He says he wants to buy three<br>books. He's already bought two.                   |
| 12. Wǒmen-yǐjīng-zǒule chàbùduō-<br>'shílǐ-lù-le. 'Hái-yào-zǒu-<br>duó-yuǎn? | We've already walked almost ten<br>miles. How far do we still have<br>to go?       |
| 13. Wǒ-qùnian-zài-chéngwài<br>mǎile-yìsuǒr-fángzi.                           | I bought a house outside the city<br>last year.                                    |
| 14. Wó-mǎile-yìzhāng-dà-dìtú.  | I bought a large map.  |
| 15. Tā-xiěle-wǔge-zì. 'Dōu-bù-<br>hǎo.                                       | He wrote five characters. They<br>were all no good.                                |

Pattern 13.5. Imminent Action with le (Note 6 below)

S	(kuài)	V	<u>le</u>
Subject	('soon')	Verb	<u>le</u>
Tā	kuài	zǒu	le.

'He is leaving soon.'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Wǒ-dìdi jiù-yào-cóng-Měiguó-<br>lái-le.                                  | My younger brother will come<br>from America soon.        |
| 2. Wǒmen-xuéxiào xiànzài-kuài-<br>yào-kǎoshì-le.                            | Our school is about to have ex-<br>ams now.               |
| 3. Wúdiǎn-sānkè tā-jiù-lái-le.  | He'll come at 5:45.                                       |
| 4. Wǒ-kuài-zǒu-le. Wǒmen-jiù-<br>yào-shàng-kè-le.                           | I'm leaving. We're about to go<br>to class.               |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiáojie 'sāndian-zhōng-<br>láide, 'sìdian-zhōng-jiù-yào-<br>zǒu-le. | Miss Gao came at three o'clock<br>and will leave at four. |
| 6. Xiànzài kuài-dào-qīdiǎn-<br>zhōng-le.                                    | It will soon be seven o'clock<br>[now].                   |
| 7. Wǒ-'jiù-yào-chī-fàn-le.  | I'm about to eat.   |
| 8. Hái-yǒu-yíqè-zhōng jiù-dào-<br>wúdiǎn-le.                                | In another quarter of an hour it<br>will be five o'clock. |
| 9. Wǒ-'jiù-yào-kàn-shū-le.  | I'm about to read.  |

10. Yǐjīng-'bādiǎn-zhōng-le.  
Wǒ-'jiù-yào-zhǎo-Gāo-Xiān-  
sheng-qù-le.

It's already eight o'clock. I'm  
about to go visit Mr. Gao.

Pattern 13.6. Clauses Expressing Relative Time (Note 11 below)

Pattern 13.6 a.

S	V	<u>yǐqián/yǐhòu</u>
Subject	Verb	'before'/'after'
nǐ	lái	yǐqián
'before you come'		

Pattern 13.6 b.

S	V	<u>de-shíhou</u>
Subject	Verb	'when'
nǐ	lái	de-shíhou
'when you come'		

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Nǐ-lái-de-shíhou xiān-dào-<br>'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu-ma?                | When you come, will you first go<br>to Mr. Gao's home?                       |
| 2. Nǐ-láile-yǐhòu, wǒmen-kàn-<br>shū 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?                         | After you come, let's read —<br>O.K.?  |
| 3. Nǐ-qù-de-shíhou qíng-ni-mǎi<br>yìběn-zìdiǎn.                           | When you go (to the bookstore),<br>please buy a dictionary.                  |
| 4. Wǒmen-kǎole-yǐhòu qu-kàn-<br>diànyǐngr 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?                    | How about going to a movie after<br>we've had our exams?                     |
| 5. Wó-zǒu-de-shíhou wàngle-dài-<br>biǎo-le.                               | When I left, I forgot to wear my<br>watch:                                   |
| 6. Wó-mǎi-shū-de-shíhou xiān-<br>zhǎo-'Máo-Xiānsheng.                     | Whenever I buy books, I [first]<br>look up Mr. Mao.                          |
| 7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-xuéxiào-<br>lái-de-shíhou, xiān-zháo-wo-<br>tántan. | When Mr. White comes to school<br>he will visit me first for a chat.         |
| 8. Wǒ-dào-xuéxiào-yǐqián xiān-<br>chī-zǎofàn.                             | Before I go to school I [first] eat<br>breakfast.                            |
| 9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-Měiguó-<br>qù-de-shíhou, xiān-lái-bài-<br>fang-ni.  | When Mr. White goes to America,<br>he will first come and visit you.         |
| 10. Wó-mǔqīn-dào-zhèr-yǐhòu,<br>hěn-duō-péngyou qǐng-ta-chī-<br>fàn.      | After my mother arrived here a<br>lot of friends invited her to din-<br>ner. |
| 11. Wǒ-kàn-shū-de-shíhou bù-<br>xǐhuan-rén-zháo-wo.                       | When I read I don't like people<br>to visit me.                              |

12. Wǒ-xià-chuán-yǐhòu 'xiān-dào-Gāo-jia-qu. After getting off the boat, I go first to the Gaos'.
13. Wǒ-huí-jiā-yǐqián 'xiān-dào-túshūguǎn-qu. Before returning home, I'm [first] going to the library.
14. Wǒ-shàng-chuán-yǐhòu rènshi-le-hěn-duō-péngyou. After boarding the boat I made [the acquaintance of] numerous friends.
15. Wǒ-chī-fàn-de-shíhou bù-xǐ-huan-shuō-huà. When I eat I don't like to talk.

Pattern 13.7. Le with Negative Verbs (Note 7)

S	<u>bu</u>	V	<u>le</u>
Subject	<u>bu</u>	Verb	<u>le</u>
Wǒ	bù	chī	le.

'I'm not eating any more.'

1. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng bú-zài-shūdiàn-le. Tā-huí-jiā-le. Mr. Gao is no longer at the bookstore. He's gone home.
2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jīntian-tài-máng-le. Tā-bù-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-le. Mr. White is too busy today. He isn't going to the library.
3. Jīntian wǒ-kànle-sānběn-shū-le, suóyì-wǒ-bù-kàn-le. I've read three books today, so I'm not reading any more.
4. Jīntian wǒmen-huānyíng-yí-wèi-péngyou. Wǒ-bù-dào-'nǐ-nèr-qu-le. Today we're meeting [lit. welcoming] a friend. I'm not going to your place (after all).
5. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīntiān-yǒu-shì, suóyì-tā-bù-lái-le. Mr. Qian has something to do today, so he's not coming (after all).
6. Tā-méi-yǒu-qián. Bù-néng-zài-niàn-shū-le. He doesn't have any money. He can't study any more.
7. Tā-jīntian-méi-yǒu-qián-le, suóyì-tā-'bù-mǎi-shū-le. He has no more money today, so he's not buying any more books.
8. Zhèige-fàn bù-hǎo-chī. Wǒ-bù-chī-le. This food is unappetizing. I'm not eating any more.
9. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-mòshuǐ-le. Tā-xiǎng-qù-mǎi. Miss Gao doesn't have any more ink. She's going to go buy some.
10. Tā-suǐrán-hén-xiǎo, kěshi méi-yǒu-fùqīn-le. [Although] he's very young, but he's already lost his father [lit. nevertheless he no longer has a father].

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 50 Sentences (Note 2)

tā	—	lái	le	—
	jīntian	qù		ma
	zuótian	zǒu		
	jīnnian	dào		
	qùnian	bìyè		

II: 60 Sentences (Note 2)

(The asterisks here and in Tables III and V below indicate that only items in the same row may be taken together.)

	*		*		
nǐ	chī	—	fàn	le	—
tā	mǎi	-le	bǐ		ma
tāmen	xiě		zì		
	shàng		shān		
	jiè		shū		

III: 96 Sentences (Note 3)

(See note at head of Table II)

	*		*		
wǒ	chī	-le	fàn	jiù	zǒu
wǒmen	mǎi		bǐ		lái
tā	xiě		zì		qù
tāmen	jiè		shū		

IV: 15 Sentences (Note 4)

—	duō	—
tài	shǎo	le
	hǎo	
	wǎn	
	gāo	

V: 96 Sentences (Note 5)

(See note at head of Table II)

	*		*	
wǒ	kàn	-le	yì	-běn shū
tā	mǎi		liǎng	-zhī bǐ
	kàn		sān	-cì diànyǐngr
	zǒu		sì	-lǐ lù
	mǎi			-ge biǎo
	jiè			-běn zidiǎn

VI: 48 Sentences (Note 6)

wǒ	——	lái	le
nǐ	yào	zǒu	
tā	kuài	qù	
	jiù	mǎi	

VII: 48 Sentences (Note 7)

wǒ	chī - fàn	yǐqián
nǐ	kàn - shū	de - shíhou
tā	xiě - zì	yǐhou
	dào - nèr - qu	
	mǎi - piào	
	gàosu - ta	

VIII: 24 Sentences (Note 8)

wǒ	——	bu	chī	le
nǐ	men		mǎi	
tā			zǒu	
			qù	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. The in - ian - an Contrast

- |         |      |     |
|---------|------|-----|
| (a) yīn | yǎn  | ān  |
| (b) bīn | biān | bān |
| (c) pīn | piān | pān |
| (d) mǐn | mián | mán |
| (e) lín | lián | lán |

II. The ou - uo Contrast

- |          |      |         |     |          |      |
|----------|------|---------|-----|----------|------|
| (a) gōu  | guō  | (f) dōu | duō | (k) zhōu | zhuō |
| (b) gǒu  | guǒ  | (g) lóu | luó | (l) shōu | shuō |
| (c) gòu  | guò  | (h) kòu | kuò | (m) zǒu  | zuǒ  |
| (d) tóu  | tuó  | (i) hòu | huò | (n) còu  | cuò  |
| (e) chōu | chuō | (j) ròu | ruò | (o) sōu  | suō  |



III. Contrast between h and Zero Initial

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| (a) wā huā   | (e) wàn huàn   |
| (b) wǒ huǒ   | (f) wáng huáng |
| (c) wài huài | (g) wú hú      |
| (d) wèi huì  | (h) wèn hùn    |

## EXPANSION DRILLS

The following exercise provides an opportunity to build up long sentences step by step. Practice them until you are fluent at every step. Observe the changes in meaning through the successive steps of the expansion.

I

qù

qù-le

dào-nèr-qu-le

dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le

wǒ-dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le

wǒ-zuótian-dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le

Wǒmen-zuótian-dào-'tā-nèr-qu-le.

II

shū

mǎi-shū

mǎi-yìběn-shū

mǎile-yìběn-shū

mǎile-yìběn-shū-le

jīntian-mǎile-yìběn-shū-le

wǒ-jīntian-mǎile-yìběn-shū-le

Wǒ-jīntian-yǐjing-mǎile-yìběn-shū-le.

III

chī

chī-fàn

chīle-fàn

chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu

chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu-le

xiānsheng-chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu-le

Bǎi-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn-jiù-zǒu-le.

## IV

mǎi

mǎi-le

dōu-mǎi-le

tā-dōu-mǎi-le

shū, bǐ tā-'dōu-mǎi-le

Shū, bǐ tā-dōu-'mǎi-le-méi-you?

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Practice the following questions and answers. The questions all contain le, and the negative answers require the use of méi or méi-you.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-huǐ-jiā-le?                        | 'Bái-Xiānsheng hái-'méi-huǐ-jiā-ne.                |
| 2. Ní-mǎi-'shū-le-méi-you?  | Wó-'méi-you-mǎi-ne.                                |
| 3. Ní-mǔqin-zuótian-dào-le-ma?                                      | Wó-mǔqin-zuótian-'méi-dào. Jǐntian-jiù-dào.        |
| 4. Nǐ-zuótian dào-túshūguǎn-le-ma?                                  | Wǒ-zuótian-'méi-dào-túshūguǎn.                     |
| 5. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuótian-'lái-le-méi-you?                          | Tā-zuótian-'méi-lái. Tā-shuō-'jǐntian-lái.         |
| 6. Míngtiān wǒmen-dōu-dào-'Bái-Xiānsheng-nèr-qu. Tā-gàosu-ni-le-ma? | Wǒ-bù-zhīdào. Tā-'méi-gàosu-wo.                    |
| 7. Ní-yǐjīng-niàn-'dàxué-le-méi-you?                                | Méi-you. Wǒ-xiànzài-niàn-'zhōngxué.                |
| 8. Nǐde-shū mǎile-'jǐběn-le?  | Wó-mǎile-'liángběn-le. Hái-yǒu-'sānběn-méi-mǎi-ne. |
| 9. Nǐ-chī-'fàn-le-méi-you?  | Wǒ-'méi-chī-fàn-ne.                                |
| 10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-kǎoshì-le-ma?                                      | Hái-méi-you-ne.                                    |
| 11. Jǐntian-zǎochen nǐ-zuò-diànchē-le-ma?                           | Méi-you. Wǒ-'méi-zuò-diànchē.                      |
| 12. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou dàole-Měiguó-le?                 | Tā-hái-'méi-dào-Měiguó-ne.                         |
| 13. Gāngbǐ, mòshuǐ nǐ-'dōu-yǒule-ma?                                | Méi-you. Gāngbǐ, mòshuǐ wǒ-'dōu-méi-mǎi.           |

14. 'Máo-Xiānsheng dào-shūdiàn-le-ma? Méi-you. Tā-'jiù-qù-le.
15. 'Gāo-Xiáojie 'lái-le-méi-you? Gāo-Xiáojie-'méi-lái.
16. Zuótian nǐ-dào-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu-le-ma? Zuótian wǒ-'méi-dào-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-qu.
17. Nǐ-shàng-'Húnán-qù-le-méi-you? Wǒ-'méi-qù.
18. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn qu-jiè-shū-le-ma? Méi-you. Wǒ-'méi-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-jiè-shū.
19. Zìdiǎn, dìtú nǐ-'dōu-mǎi-le-méi-you? Zìdiǎn, dìtú wǒ-'dōu-méi-mǎi-ne.
20. Zuótian nǐ-kàn-diànyīngr-le-ma? Zuótian-wǒ-'tài-máng. 'Méi-kàn-diànyīngr.

## MONOLOGUE

Wǒ-yīnwei-xǐhuan-'Zhōngguo-wénxué, xiǎng-dào-'Zhōngguo-qu-niàn-shū, suóyì zài-yī-jiù-liù-èr-nián-èryue wǒ-cóng-Měiguó-dào-Zhōngguo-de. Wǒ-bú-shi-yìzhíde dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Wǒ-shi-cóng-Měiguó-zuò-chuán, xiān-dào-Rìběn, wǒ-zài-Rìběn-'yíge-xīngqī, yòu-zuò-fēijī-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Rìběn yé-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒ-zuò-chuán-de-shíhou, rènshìle-bù-shǎode-péng-you. Dào-Zhōngguo-yǐhòu, wǒ-yòu-rènshìle-hěn-duō-'Zhōngguo-péngyou: Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie, 'Máo-Xiānsheng, 'Qián-Xiānsheng, tāmen-'dōu-shi-wó-hén-hǎode-péngyou. Wǒ-zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū. Wǒ-niàn-wénxué. Yuǎndōng-Dàxué yóu-hěn-duō-'wàiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-'Zhōngguo-wénxué, 'Yīngguó-wénxué 'dōu-niàn-le. Zhōngguo-wénxué 'hěnnán. Zhōngwén bù-rǒngyì-xué. Zhōngguo-zì 'yòu-nán-xiě. Suírán-nán, kěshi-wó-hén-xǐhuan. Yǒu-yìsi-jíle. Yīnwei-wǒ-zài-Měiguó-dàxué yǐjīng-niàn-'èrniánjí-le, suóyì-wǒ-dào-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué jiù-niàn-'sānniánjí-le. Wǒ-shuōde-Zhōngguo-huà suírán-bú-tài-hǎo, kěshi wǒ-chàbuduō-'dōu-huì-shuō-le. Wó-xiǎng wǒ-bìyè-de-shíhou, yídìng-bǐ-xiànzài 'hǎo-yìdiǎr. Wǒ-xīwang-wǒ-bìyè-de-shíhou néng-kàn-shū, néng-xiě-zì, yě-néng-shuō 'gèng-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà.

## SETTING THINGS RIGHT

The following sentences based on the Dialogue contain false statements. Make whatever changes are necessary to turn them into true statements.

1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie cóng-túshūguǎn-huí-jiā.
2. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zhīdao-'Gāo-Xiáojie zài-něige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū.
3. Gāo-Xiānshengde-Yīngguo-péngyou shì-yíwèi-tàitai.
4. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wàngle-dài-biǎo-le.
5. Yuǎn-Dà yǐjīng-kǎoshì-le.
6. Gāo-Xiáojiede-mǔqīn-shuō 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'yòu-cōngmíng yòu-yònggōng.
7. 'Gāo-Xiáojie 'bù-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr.
8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie shàng-kè-yǐqián yǒu-yìdiǎr-shì.
9. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Yuǎn-Dà-'sìniánjí-niàn-shū.
10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie chàbuduō-'měige-xīngqī dōu-qù-kàn-diànyǐngr.

## WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Improvise a Chinese conversation along the following lines between an American student and a Chinese acquaintance.

You ask the acquaintance where he is studying. He says he is studying at the No. 3 Middle School. You ask what year. He answers that he's in the third year of higher middle school, and that he's graduating this year. Then he asks what you are studying. You reply that you're studying literature. He asks whether it's English literature or Chinese literature, and you mention the latter in reply. He tells you that you speak Chinese very well. You remark that he's too polite, and that you don't speak Chinese well. He insists that you are certainly very intelligent and very hard-working. You reply that you're really awfully dumb and don't work very hard. He asks what time it is. You say you forgot to bring your watch, but that you think it will soon be six-thirty. You ask him if he has something to do. He says he has and suggests further conversation later. You exchange farewells.

## NOTES

1. The suffix -le is attached either to verbs or to entire sentences.\* It has no precise English equivalent, though in many of its uses it corresponds roughly to the 'have (has, had)' of perfect-tense constructions, which denote past-flavored actions (had done, have been eating, have seen, have been writing, will have gone, will have been studying, having bought). Some specific uses of -le are described in Notes 2-9 below.
2. At the end of a sentence, -le indicates that the foregoing actions are completed or past, or that there has been a change to a new situation:

Tāmen-dōu-lái-le. Wǒmen-jiù-'tányitán-le. 'They all came, and then we had a chat.'

If the verb has a simple direct object, the verb may have a second -le attached to it, reinforcing the -le at the end:

Tāmen-dōu-chīle-fàn-le. 'They have all eaten.'

See pp. 174-75 for more examples.

3. The suffix -le attached to a verb in a dependent clause indicates that the action of the clause is completed with respect to the action of the main clause ('after having . . . -ed'). In a sentence of this structure, the main clause is commonly introduced by jiù 'then, and then, after that':

Wǒ-jièle-shū jiù-yào-dào-ta-jiā-qu. 'After having borrowed the book I will go to his home.'

Wǒ-jièle-shū jiù-dào-ta-jiā-qu-le. 'After borrowing the book I went to his home.'

Note that a phrase like Wǒ-chīle-fàn, with a single le attached to the verb, is not complete; it does not mean 'I ate' but rather 'after I ate,' and one expects something to follow.

See pp. 175-76 for more examples.

4. When -le is attached to a stative verb (e.g. hǎo 'is good') or to a time expression (e.g. shídiǎn-zhōng 'ten o'clock'), it means 'is (am, are)' in the special sense 'has (now) become,' as:

Wó-hǎo-le. 'I'm fine, now [as contrasted to my previous ill state].'  
(Cf. Wó-hǎo. 'I'm fine,' in answer to a queried greeting.)

Xiànzài-shídiǎn-zhōng-le. 'It's ten o'clock (already).' 'It's (now become) ten o'clock [and time to get on with a scheduled activity].'  
(Cf. Xiànzài-shídiǎn-zhōng. 'It's ten o'clock,' with no special emphasis.)

Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr 'tài-yuǎn-le. 'His home is too far from here.' (Spoken in a situation where the house is now farther from the speaker than in some other envisaged situation.)

See pp. 176-77 for more examples.

\* In our transcription, we attach -le to sentences by a hyphen (Tā-hǎo-le) and to non-terminal verbs directly (chīle-fàn).

5. In sentences containing an object preceded by a number, -le may indicate a simple past action (corresponding to English simple past tense):

Wǒ-jièle-sānběn-shū. 'I borrowed three books [and that is the end of my borrowing].'

Addition of a second -le at the end alters the connotation of the past action: it implies that the (completed) action bears a relation to another present or future action (cf. the English present perfect tense):

Wǒ-jièle-sānběn-shū-le. 'I've borrowed three books [in preparation for some other activity—borrowing more books, doing something with the books already borrowed, etc.]'

See pp. 177–78 for more examples.

6. A verb plus -le can mean 'be about to [do]' or 'be on the point of [do]ing':

Lái-le. 'I'm (on the point of) coming!' ['In another second, I'll have arrived.']

Wó-zǒu-le. 'I'm about to go.' ['I will have left in no time.']

The verb in this usage is often accompanied by a word which reinforces the sense of imminence—yào 'will,' jiù 'immediately,' kuài 'soon' (also 'fast') or the like:

Wǒ-jiù-zǒu-le. 'I'm just about to leave.'

Wǒ-kuài-yào-zǒu-le. 'I'm leaving soon.'

See pp. 178–79 for more examples.

7. A méi or bu negative verb suffixed with -le means either 'doesn't [do] any more' or 'no longer intends to [do],' depending on the context:

Wǒ-bu-chī-le. 'I'm not eating any more (because I'm full),' or 'I no longer intend to eat it.'

Zuótiān-qián-hěn-duō. Jīntiān-'méi-yǒu-le. 'Yesterday (I) had a lot of money. Today there isn't any more (left).'

See pp. 184–85 for more examples.

8. Except for the usage described in the preceding note, le appears only in affirmative sentences. Corresponding negative sentences have méi-yǒu, or méi, before the verb (or coverb, if there is one):

Tā-méi-yǒu-zǒu. or Tā-méi-zǒu. 'He hasn't gone.'

See p. 180 for more examples.

9. One way of making -le sentences interrogative is to add ma at the end:

Tā-lái-le-ma? 'Has he come?'

Alternatively, affirmative (not negative!) -le sentences can be made into questions by adding méi-you at the end:

Tā-'lái-le-méi-you? 'Has he come?'

See pp. 184–85 for more examples.

10. Méi-yǒu may be abbreviated to méi before nouns as well as before verbs:  
 Wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián. or Wǒ-méi-qián. 'I don't have any money.'

11. The relative-time words yǐqián 'before,' yǐhòu 'after,' and shíhou 'when, while' appear at the END of the clause, rather than at the beginning as in English:

nǐ-niàn-shū-YǐQIÁN 'BEFORE you study'

nǐ-niàn-shū-YǐHÒU 'AFTER you study'

nǐ-niàn-shū-de-SHÍHOU 'WHEN you study'

These subordinate time clauses must come BEFORE the main clause in Chinese sentences:

Nǐ-niàn-shū-de-shíhou yào-yònggōng. 'When you study, you have to work hard.'

Yǐhòu 'after' is optional in the type of changes mentioned above in Note 3:

Tā-chīle-fàn jiù-zǒu-le.

or

Tā-chīle-fàn-yǐhòu jiù-zǒu-le.

} 'After he ate, he left.'

12. Xīngqī 'week' is compounded with tiān 'day' to form xīngqītiān 'Sunday,' and with the numbers from one to six to name the remaining days of the week:

xīngqīyī 'Monday'

xīngqīsì 'Thursday'

xīngqī'èr 'Tuesday'

xīngqīwǔ 'Friday'

xīngqīsān 'Wednesday'

xīngqīliù 'Saturday'

13. The verb shàng 'ascend, go up; get on [a vehicle],' which we have encountered in the phrases shàng-shān 'ascend a mountain' and shàng-chē 'board a car,' also means 'go to (a place), attend,' as:

shàng-kè 'go to a class'

shàng-xué 'go to school' [lit. 'go to study']

shàng-xuéxiào 'go to (one's) school'

shàng-xiǎoxué 'go to elementary school'

shàng-Yīngguó 'go to England'

shàng-dàxué-èrniánjí 'attend second year of college'

Shàng and xià are also used before xīngqī 'week' and its compounds in the meanings 'last' and 'next' respectively:

shàng-xīngqī 'last week'

xià-xīngqīsān 'next Wednesday'

14. The verb niàn 'study' is used in various senses: (a) with a general meaning, as in niàn-shū; (b) with a specific object, as in niàn-wénxué 'study literature'; and (c) to refer to studying at a particular school or in a particular year of school;

Wǒ-niàn-zhōngxué. 'I'm studying in middle school.'

Wǒ-niàn-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué. 'I'm studying at Far Eastern University.'

Wǒ-niàn-dàxué-èrniánjí. 'I'm a sophomore in college.'

(See also Supplementary Lesson 8, Note 1)

15. The expression jíle is added to a stative verb as an intensifier:

hǎo 'good'

hǎojíle 'excellent'

16. The exchange in the Dialogue between Miss Gao and Mr. White regarding their diligence and intelligence (lines 29-38) sounds stilted and unnatural to native speakers of English, but it is characteristic of traditional China. Traditional social custom requires that a Chinese speak very deprecatingly about himself and with exaggerated praise for the person he is speaking to:

nín-fǔshang 'your residence' but

wǒ-jiā 'my home'

Nín-guìxìng? 'What is your [honorable] surname?'

Bìxìng 'My [miserable] surname is . . .'

(These polite forms, the last especially, are now considered out of date by some Chinese.)

After you, a foreigner, say a few words of Chinese to a native speaker, you will probably be told—however halting your delivery—that you speak Chinese very well. Remember on the one hand to take such remarks with a grain of salt, and on the other hand to participate in this Oriental practice as much as possible, by exalting the other person and humbling yourself. (These remarks apply especially to more traditionally minded Chinese such as are likely to be encountered in Taiwan or as long-time residents abroad. In the People's Republic some of the older polite expressions have been replaced by newer polite expressions or have been eliminated altogether. Care must be taken to use the appropriate form, depending on the given social situation.)

17. The particle le forms part of a number of frequently occurring fixed phrases that are very useful and therefore worth memorizing. The following examples occur in this lesson:

Hǎojíle. 'Fine! Excellent!'

Duì-le. 'Right!'

Wàngle. '(I've) forgotten'



Lesson 14 DISCUSSING SCHOOL WORK



"Tā-chàbuduō-měitiān 'yé-xiě-zì."

Dialogue: Mr. White and Miss Gao continue their conversation.

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiáojie, nǐmen-xué-xiào yí gòng yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?

Miss Gao, how many students does your school have altogether?

Gāo: Wǒmen-xuéxiào yǒu-'yì qiān-duō-rén.

[Our school has] over a thousand.

Bái: 'Nán-xuésheng-duō háishi-nǚ-xuésheng-duō-ne?

Which are (there) more (of), boys or girls?

Gāo: 'Nán-xuésheng-duō. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐmen-Yuǎn-Dà yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?

There are more boys. [Mr. White,] how many students do you have at Far Eastern?

Bái: Yǒu-'sānqiān-wúbǎi-duō-rén.

[There are] over 3,500.

Gāo: Wó-xiǎng nǐmen-zài-'dà-xué-niàn-shū-de-xuésheng yí dìng-'dōu-shi-hěn-cōng-míng-de.

I guess you college students must all be pretty bright.

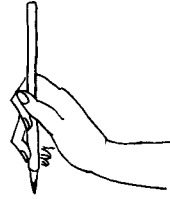
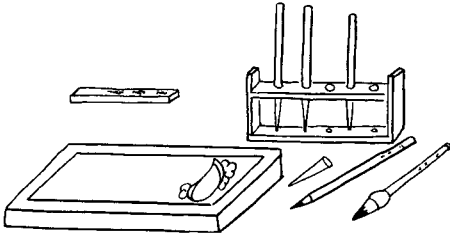
Bái: Yé-yǒu-cōngmíngde, yé-yǒu-bènde. Yǒu-rén-niànde-hén-hǎo, yǒu-rén-niànde-hěn-bù-hǎo.

Some are bright, some are stupid. Some [people] study very well, some [people] study very badly.

- Gāo: Qùnian-dào-Yuǎn-Dà-kǎo-shì-de-xuésheng yí gòng-yǒu-yí wàn-duō-rén. Kǎo-shangde zhí-yǒu-yì qiān-rén. Suǒyì-wǒ-shuō 'dà-xuéde-xuésheng 'dōu-hěn-cōngmíng. 25  
Last year over ten thousand students took the exams for Far Eastern. Only a thousand passed the exams. So I say university students are all very bright.
- Bái: 'Gāo-Xiǎojié, nǐ-zhōngxué-bìyè-yǐ hòu xiǎng-xué-shén-mo-ne? 30  
[Miss Gao,] what do you plan to study after graduating from middle school?
- Gāo: Wó-xiǎng-xué-wénxué, kěshì wǒ-yòu-bù-yònggōng yòu-bù-cōngmíng. Wó-xiǎng wǒ-yíding-kǎobushàng-dàxué. 35  
I'd like to study literature, but I don't work hard and I'm not bright. I'm sure I can't pass the college exams.
- Bái: Nǐ-kèqi-ne. 'Yíding-kǎodeshàng. 40  
You're being polite. You certainly can pass.
- Gāo: Nǐ-shuō-wó-kǎodeshàng-ma? 45  
Do you think [lit. say] I can [pass]?
- Bái: Wǒ-shuō nǐ-'yíding-kǎodeshàng. 40  
I think you certainly can [pass].
- Gāo: Ní-xiǎng-wǒ-xué-wénxué xuédeliǎo-ma? 45  
Do you think I will be able to study literature?
- Bái: Ní-'zěnmoxuébuliǎo-ne? Wó-yé-hěnxīwang nǐ-xué-wénxué. 45  
Why shouldn't you be able to? And I hope very much that you will [study literature].
- Gāo: Rúguó-wó-kǎobushàng-dàxué wǒ-jiù-xué-huà-huà. 50  
If I can't pass the exams for college, then I'll study painting.
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng-nǐ-'yíding-huì-huà, nǐ-huàde-huàr 'yíding-yé-hén-hǎo. 50  
I'm sure you can paint and that what you do is very good.
- Gāo: Huà-huàr wǒ-shi-xuéguo-de, kěshì-wǒ-huàde-bu-hǎo. 55  
It's true I've studied painting [lit. drawing pictures I have studied], but I paint badly.
- Bái: Yǐhuěr wǒ-jiù-kéyì-kànjian nǐ-huàde-huàr-le. 55  
In a little while I'll be able to see the paintings you've done.
- Gāo: Huàde-'bù-hǎo. Zuì-hǎo-nín-bù-kàn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, 'nín-shi-xué-shén-mo-de? 65  
They're badly done. It would be best if you didn't see them. What are you studying, Mr. White?
- Bái: Wǒ-yuánlái shi-xiǎng-xué-'kēxué-de, kěshì-wǒ-duì-'wàiguó-huà hén-yǒu-xìng-qu, 'gèng-xǐhuan-Zhōngguó-huà, suǒyì-wǒ-zài-Měiguó jiù-xué-Zhōngguó-huà, niàn-Zhōngguó-shū. Xiànzài-wǒ- 65  
I originally planned to study science, but I'm very much interested in foreign languages, especially Chinese, so in America I studied (spoken) Chinese and read Chinese books. Now I've come to China to study

- dào-Zhōngguo-lái xué-Zhōngguo-wénxué, yě-xué-yǔyánxué.
- Chinese literature, and also to study linguistics.
- Gāo: Xué-yǔyánxué 'zěnmó-xué-ne? Jiù-shi-xué-shuō-wàiguó-huà-ma? 70 How does one study linguistics? Is it simply studying (how) to speak a foreign language?
- Bái: Bú-shì. Xué-yǔyánxué shì-yòng 'kēxuéde-fāngfǎ yánjiū-yǔyán. Yǒu-rén-néng-shuō hén-hǎode-wàiguó-huà, dōu-tīngdedǒng, yě-shuōde-shífēn-hǎo, kěshì-bù-dǒng yòng-'kēxué-fāngfǎ yánjiū-yǔyán. 75 No. [Studying] linguistics is analyzing languages by scientific means. Some people are quite proficient in foreign languages—they can understand everything and speak very well—but they don't understand (how) to use scientific means to analyze foreign languages. 80
- Gāo: Nín-xǐhuan-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-ma? Nín-yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn xiědeliǎo-xiěbuliǎo? Do you like to write Chinese characters? Can you use Chinese in writing letters?
- Bái: Suírán-xiědeliǎo, kěshì-xiěde-bu-hǎo. Wó-gěi-Zhōngguo-péngyou-xiě-xìn xǐhuan-yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě. 85 I can [do so], but I write badly. (When) I write letters to Chinese friends, I like to write in Chinese.
- Gāo: Nín-néng-yòng-'máobí-xiě-zì-ma? 90 Can you write characters with a brush?
- Bái: Néng-yòng, kěshì-xiěde-bu-hǎo. I can, but I don't write well.
- Gāo: Rúguǒ-nín-néng-yòng-'máobí nín-xiěde-zì yídìng-hén-hǎo. Xiànzài-hěn-duō-Zhōngguo-rén dōu-bù-néng-yòng-'máobí-xiě-zì-le. Chàbuduō dōu-yòng-gāngbǐ-xiě-zì. 95 If you can use a writing brush, the characters you write are sure to be good. Nowadays many Chinese no longer can write characters with a brush. Almost all of them write with (fountain) pens.
- Bái: Nǐ-fùqīn-duì-wǒ-shuō nǐde-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo. 100 Your father told me that your calligraphy is excellent.
- Gāo: Bù-hǎo-bù-hǎo. Suírán-wǒ-fùqīn měitiān-chīguo-le-wǎnfàn-yǐhòu jiào-wǒ-yòng-'máobí-xiě-zì, kěshì-wǒ-hái-xiěde-bu-hǎo. 105 No, no. [Although] my father has me write with a brush every day after dinner, but I still write badly.
- Bái: Zuì-nánde shì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-le. Nǐ-fùqīn-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo. Wó-xiǎng-nǐ-yídìng xiěde-yé-hén-hǎo. 110 The most difficult thing is writing Chinese characters. Your father writes [characters] very well. I'm sure you write well too.
- Gāo: Yīnwei-wǒ-fùqīn-xiěde-hǎo suóyī-tā-měitiān-jiào-wó- Since my father writes well, he has me write every day. He

- xiě-zì-ne. Tā-chàbuduō-  
měitiān yé-xiě-zì.
- Bái : Nǐ-méi-tīngshuō-ma : 115 Haven't you heard it said:  
Huó-dào-lǎo, Live to old age,  
Xué-dào-lǎo, Study to old age,  
Hái-yóu-sānfēn There's still three-tenths  
Xuébudào. That one can't learn.
- Gāo : Bù-zhí -yǒu-'sānfēn-ba! 120 It's not just three-tenths!



## VOCABULARY

bǎi	hundred (NU) (Note 7 below)
dǒng	understand (TV)
duì	(facing) toward, to, regarding (CV)
'fāngfǎ	method, technique (N) [lit. means method]
gěi	give (TV) for, to (CV) (Note 1 below)
guo	(verb suffix: Note 5 below)
huà	paint, draw (TV)
huà	painting, drawing (N)
huó	live (IV)
kēxué	(study of) science (N)
lǎo	old (chiefly animate things) (SV)
liǎo	(resultative verb ending: Note 6 below)
qiān	thousand (NU)
shífēn	very (AD) [lit. ten part]

tīng	listen (to) (TV)
tīngshuō	hear (it said) that (TV) [lit. hear say]
wàn	ten thousand, myriad (also, a surname) (NU)
xìn	letter (N)
xìngqu	interest (in) (N) [lit. feelings interest] (Note 15)
yánjiū	study, make a study of, investigate (TV) [lit. re- search investigate] study, research (N)
yìhuǐr	a moment (TW) [lit. one moment]
yòng	use (TV) using, with (CV) (Note 1 below)
yǔyán	language (N) [lit. language word]
yǔyánxué	linguistics, linguistic science (N) [lit. language word study]
yuánlái	originally, actually (MA) [lit. origin come]
zhǐ	only (AD)
zuì	most (AD)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| yòng<br>yòng-máobǐ               | use<br>use a writing brush               |
| 1. Wǒ-bú-huì-yòng-máobǐ.         | I don't know how to use a writing brush. |
| yòng-máobǐ<br>xiě-zì             | use a writing brush<br>write characters  |
| 2. Wǒ-huì-yòng-máobǐ-xiě-zì.     | I can write characters with a brush.     |
| duì<br>duì-shéi?                 | toward, to<br>to whom?                   |
| 3. Tā-duì-shéi-shuō-huà?         | Who is he talking to?                    |
| xìngqu<br>hén-yǒu-xìngqu         | interest<br>be greatly interested        |
| 4. Tā-duì-wénxué hén-yǒu-xìngqu. | He's greatly interested in literature.   |
| gěi<br>gěi-ta-qián               | give<br>give him money                   |
| 5. Nǐ-gěi-ta-qián-ma?            | Are you giving him any money?            |
| gěi-ta<br>gěi-ta-mǎi             | give him<br>buy for him                  |
| 6. Nǐ-gěi-ta-mǎi-shū-ma?         | Are you buying him a book?               |

- xìn  
xiě-xìn  
7. Ní-gěi-ta-xiě-xìn-ma?  
letter  
write a letter  
Are you writing him a letter?
- zuì  
zuì-hǎo  
zuì-hǎode  
8. Zuì-hǎode shì-'duōshao-qían?  
most  
best  
the best one  
How much is the best one?
- huà  
zhèizhāng-huà  
9. Zhèizhāng-huà hén-yǒu-yìsi.  
painting  
this painting  
This painting is very interesting.
- huà  
huà-huà  
10. Tā-měitiān huà-yìzhāng-huà.  
paint  
paint paintings  
He does one painting a day.
- dǒng  
'dǒu-dǒng  
11. Nǐ-'dǒu-dǒng-ma?  
understand  
understand everything  
Do you understand everything?
- bù-dǒng-Zhōngguó-huà  
bù-dǒng-Zhōngguó-huà-de-rén  
12. Bù-dǒng-Zhōngwén-de-rén  
yě-néng-zài-zhèr-niàn-shū-ma?  
not understand Chinese  
people who don't understand Chinese  
Can people who don't understand Chinese also study here?
- tā-xiě-zì  
tā-xiěde-zì  
13. Tā-xiě-de-zì dōu-bú-duì.  
he writes characters  
the characters which he writes  
The characters that he wrote are all incorrect.
- zài-zhèr-niàn-shū  
zài-zhèr-niàn-shū-de  
14. Zài-zhèr-niàn-shū-de dōu-shì-'wàiguó-rén-ma?  
study here  
those who study here  
Is everyone studying here a foreigner?
- tā-shuō  
tā-shuō-de  
15. Tā-shuō-de nǐ-dōu-dǒng-ma?  
he says  
that which he says  
Do you understand all of what he says?
- kēxué  
xué-kēxué-de.  
16. Nǚrén yé-yǒu-xué-kēxué-de.  
science  
those who study science  
There are also some women who study science.
- yánjiū  
yánjiū-kēxué  
17. Yánjiū-kēxuéde-rén xiànzài-'gèng-duō-le.  
do research in  
do research in science  
There are even more people doing research in science now.
- yǔyán  
language

- yánjiū-yǔyán  
 18. Yánjiū-yǔyán-de-rén yǒu-  
 duōshǎo?  
 do research in language  
 How many people are doing re-  
 search in language?
- yǔyánxué  
 xué-yǔyánxué  
 19. Xué-yǔyánxué-de-xuéshēng  
 'duō-bu-duō?  
 linguistics  
 study linguistics  
 Are many students studying lin-  
 guistics?
- 'fāngfǎ  
 tā-yòng-de-'fāngfǎ  
 20. Tā-yòng-de-'fāngfǎ hén-  
 jiǎndān.  
 method  
 the method he uses  
 The method he uses is very sim-  
 ple.
- chī-'Rìběn-fàn  
 chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn  
 21. Nǐ-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn-ma?  
 eat Japanese food  
 have eaten Japanese food  
 Have you ever eaten Japanese  
 food?
- chīguo-'wàiguo-fàn  
 méi-chīguo-'wàiguo-fàn  
 22. Nǐ-méi-chīguo-'wàiguo-fàn-  
 ma?  
 have eaten foreign food  
 have never eaten foreign  
 food  
 Have you never eaten foreign  
 food?
- chīguo-'Zhōngguo-fàn  
 méi-you-chīguo-'Zhōng-  
 guo-fàn  
 23. Nǐ-chīguo-'Zhōngguo-fàn-méi-  
 you?  
 have eaten Chinese food  
 have never eaten Chinese  
 food  
 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?
- tīng  
 'tīngyitīng  
 24. Bú-yào-shuō-huà. Nǐ-'tīng-  
 yitīng.  
 listen  
 listen (for a while)  
 Don't talk. Listen!
- tīngshuō  
 25. Wǒ-tīngshuō-ta-hǎo-le.  
 hear it said  
 I hear he's recovered.
- lǎo  
 lǎo-le  
 26. Tā-lǎo-le, bù-néng-zǒu-lù-  
 le.  
 old  
 become old  
 He's old and can't walk any  
 more.
- kànjian  
 kànbujiàn  
 27. Kànbujiàn-Xī-Shān, yīnwei-  
 tài-yuǎn-le.  
 see  
 unable to see  
 It's impossible to see the West-  
 ern Hills because they're too far  
 away.
- kàndejiàn  
 kànbujiàn  
 28. Nǐ-kàndejiàn-kànbujiàn?  
 able to see  
 unable to see  
 Can you see it or not?

- liǎo  
chīdeliǎo  
chībuliǎo
29. Zhèige-fàn nǐ-chīdeliǎo-chībuliǎo?  
(resultative suffix)  
able to eat  
unable to eat  
Can you eat this food?
- huó  
huóbuliǎo
30. Tā-yídìng-huóbuliǎo.  
live  
unable to live  
He certainly can't survive.
- kǎoshang  
kǎobushang-zhōngxué
31. Tā-bènjíle, kǎobushàng-zhōngxué.  
pass an entrance exam  
unable to pass an entrance exam for middle school  
He's awfully stupid. He couldn't pass an entrance exam for middle school.
- mǎidào-le  
méi-mǎidào
32. Zhèiběn-shū 'wǒ-méi-mǎidào, kěshi-'tā-mǎidào-le.  
have succeeded in buying  
did not succeed in buying  
I didn't succeed in buying this book, but he did.
- zhǐ  
zhǐ-yǒu-yíge-rén
33. Wǒmen-zhǐ-yǒu-yíge-rén méi-xuéguo-Zhōngwén.  
only  
there is only one person  
There is only one person among us who has never studied Chinese.
- bǎi  
sìbǎikuài-qián
34. Wǒmen-yígòng-yǒu-'sìbǎikuài-qián.  
hundred  
four hundred dollars  
We have four hundred dollars in all.
- qiān  
liǎngqiān-duō-běn-shū
35. Zhèige-shūdiàn yíge-xīngqī mǎi-liǎngqiān-duō-běn-shū.  
thousand  
over two thousand books  
This bookstore sells over two thousand books every week.
- wàn  
yíwàn-duō-lǐ-lù
36. Zhōngguo-lí-Měiguó yíwàn-duō-lǐ-lù.  
ten thousand  
over ten thousand miles  
China is over ten thousand miles from America.
- yìqiān-sānbǎi  
èrshíbáge-xuésheng
37. Dì-sì-Xiǎoxué yǒu-yìqiān-sānbǎi-èrshíbáge-xuésheng.  
one thousand three hundred twenty-eight students  
No. 4 Elementary School has 1,328 students.
- yíwàn-qīqiān
38. Wǒmen-xuéxiào yǒu-yíwàn-qīqiānge-xuésheng.  
seventeen thousand  
Our school has seventeen thousand students.
- wànwan  
bāwànwan-duō
- one hundred million  
over eight hundred million



39. Zhōngguo yǒu-bāwànwàn-duō-rén.

China has over eight hundred million people.

yuánlái  
mǎibuliǎo-fángzi  
40. Yuánlái-zài-chénglǐ  
mǎibuliǎo-fángzi.

originally  
unable to buy a house  
Originally it was not possible to buy a house in the city.

bāfēn  
bāfēnde-xīwang  
41. Tā-kǎoshang-dàxué yǒu-bāfēn-  
de-xīwang.

eight parts (of ten)  
eight parts hope  
There is an eight-tenths chance that he will pass the college entrance test.

shífēn  
shífēn-hǎo  
42. Tā-Rìběn-huà shuōde-shífēn-  
hǎo.

very  
very good or very well  
He speaks Japanese very well.

yìhuĕr  
43. Wǒ-yìhuĕr-jiù-lái-le.

a little while  
I'll come in a moment.

zuì-hǎo  
44. Wǒmen-zuì-hǎo-'bú-qù.

best  
It would be best if we didn't go.

yě-mài-shū  
yě-mài-bǐ  
yě-mài-zhǐ  
45. Tāmen-yě-mài-shū, yě-mài-  
bǐ, yě-mài-zhǐ.

also sell books  
also sell pens  
also sell paper  
They sell books and pens and also paper.

tā-dàile  
tā-méi-yǒu-dài  
46. Tā-'dàile-méi-you?

he wore  
he did not wear  
Did he wear it?

biǎo-dàile  
biǎo-méi-dài  
47. Biǎo-'dàile-méi-you?

the watch was worn  
the watch wasn't worn  
Was the watch worn?

nèige-xuésheng  
hěn-cōngmíng  
48. Nèige-xuésheng-hěn-cōngmíng.

that student  
very bright  
That student is very bright.

hěn-cōngmíng  
shi-hěn-cōngmíngde  
49. Nèige-xuésheng shi-hěn-cōng-  
míngde.

very bright  
is a very bright one  
That student is very bright.

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 14.1. The Coverbs yòng, gěi, duì (Note 1 below)

S	CV	O <sub>1</sub>	V	O <sub>2</sub>
Subject	Coverb	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb	Object <sub>2</sub>
Tā	yòng	bǐ	xiě	zì.
'He writes with a pen.'				
Tā	gěi	ni	mǎi	shū.
'He is buying the books for you.'				
Tā	duì	ni	shuō	shénmo?
'What is he saying to you?'				

- 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-yòng-'  
'máobí-xiě-zì. Mr. White can write with a Chinese writing brush.
- 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng bù-néng-'  
yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. Mr. Johnson cannot write with a brush.
- 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-yòng-'  
'máobí-xiě-zì-ma? Can Mr. White write with a brush?
- 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yòng-'Zhōng-'  
wén-xiě-xìn. Mr. King writes letters in Chinese.
- 'Zhāng-Xiǎojie néng-yòng-'Yīng-'  
wén-xiě-xìn. Miss Zhang can write letters in English.
- 'Gāo-Xiǎojie xǐhuan-yòng-'lán-'  
mòshuǐ-xiě-zì. Miss Gao likes to write characters with blue ink.
- 'Bái-Xiānsheng kényi-yòng-máo-'  
bǐ xié-hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-zì. Mr. White can write very nice Chinese characters with a brush.
- Zuótiān-'Máo-Xiānsheng-lái-'  
duì-ni-shuō-shénmo? What did Mr. Mao come to tell you yesterday?
- Jīntiān-Gāo-Tàitai duì-Gāo-'  
Xiǎojie shuōle-hěn-duō-huà. Today Mrs. Gao talked a lot with Miss Gao.
- 'Gāo-Xiǎojie géi-ni-xiě-xìn-'  
le-ma? Did Miss Gao write you a letter?
- 'Bái-Xiānsheng duì-Gāo-Xiǎo-'  
jie-shuō tāmen-yào-kǎoshì-le. Mr. White told Miss Gao that they were about to have exams.
- 'Bái-Xiānsheng duì-'Gāo-Xiǎo-'  
jie-shuō tā-bènjīle. Mr. White told Miss Gao that he was awfully stupid.
- 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-Gāo-'  
Xiānsheng-shuō tā-kàn-diàn-'  
yǐngr-le. Mr. Qian told Mr. Gao that he had seen a movie.
- 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-duì-'  
'wénxué méi-yǒu-xìngqu. Mr. Zhang says he is not interested in literature.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>15. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-duì-'wénxué-yǒu-xìngqu-ma?</p> <p>16. Qián-Tàitai duì-Qián-'Xiānsheng-shuō tā-qu-bàifang-péngyou.</p> <p>17. 'Gāo-Xiáojie duì-tā-mǔqīn-shuō tā-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.</p> <p>18. 'Máo-Xiānsheng gěi-'Bái-Xiānsheng jièle-hěn-duō-shū.</p> <p>19. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-ta-péng-you-shuō tā-duì-wénxué-méi-xìngqu.</p> <p>20. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-ta-tàitai-shuō jīntian-wǎnshàng tā-'bù-huǐ-jiā chī-wǎnfàn.</p> <p>21. 'Qián-Xiáojie duì-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-'bù-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr.</p> <p>22. 'Gāo-Xiáojie duì-kàn-diànyǐngr hén-yǒu-xìngqu-ma?</p> <p>23. 'Qián-Xiānsheng duì-kàn-shū méi-yǒu-xìngqu.</p> <p>24. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng géi-ni-mǎile hěn-duō-shū-ma?</p> <p>25. 'Bái-Xiānsheng duì-shuō-wàiguó-huà yǒu-xìngqu-ma?</p> | <p>Did Mr. Qian say he was interested in literature?</p> <p>Mrs. Qian told Mr. Qian that she was going to visit a friend.</p> <p>Miss Gao told her mother she was going to the library.</p> <p>Mr. Mao borrowed a lot of books for Mr. White.</p> <p>Mr. Qian told his friend he wasn't interested in literature.</p> <p>Mr. Qian told his wife that he wasn't going home for dinner tonight.</p> <p>Miss Qian told Mr. Zhang that she didn't like to see movies.</p> <p>Is Miss Gao very much interested in seeing movies?</p> <p>Mr. Qian isn't interested in reading.</p> <p>Did Mr. Zhang buy a lot of books for you?</p> <p>Is Mr. White interested in speaking foreign languages?</p> |
|---|---|

Pattern 14.2. Subordination of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs to Nouns  
(Notes 2-4 below)

Pattern 14.2 a.

S	V	<u>de</u>	(N)
Subject	Verb	<u>de</u>	(Noun)
xuésheng	jiè	de	shū
'books which students borrow'			

Pattern 14.2 b.

V	O	<u>de</u>	(N)
Verb	Object	<u>de</u>	(Noun)
jiè	shū	de	xuésheng
'students who borrow books'			

1. Tā-xiě-de-zì-hén-hǎo.  
The characters he writes are very nice.
2. Nǐ-shuō-de-huà wǒ-'dōu-dǒng.  
I understand everything you say.
3. Zuótian 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-jìede-nèiběn-shū 'zhēn-yǒu-yìsi.  
The book that Miss Gao borrowed yesterday is really interesting.
4. Tā-shuō-de 'dōu-shì-zhēn-huà.  
What he says is always the truth.
5. Tā-zuótian-kàn-de-shū jīn-tian-jiù-wàng-le.  
The book he read yesterday he's forgotten today.
6. Nèiwèi-Měiguó-xuésheng wǒmen-shuō-de-huà tā-'dōu-dǒng.  
That American student understands all of what we say.
7. Wǒ-zuótian-jìe-de-nèiběn-shū hěn-nán-niàn.  
The book I borrowed yesterday is very hard to read.
8. Bái-Xiǎnsheng-jìe-de-nèiběn-shū zuì-yǒu-yìsi.  
The book that Mr. White borrowed is most interesting.
9. Zhāng-Xiǎnsheng-mǎi-de-nèizhāng-huà hén-hǎo-kàn.  
The painting that Mr. Zhang bought is very pretty.
10. Zuótian-lái-de-nèige-xuésheng shì-yánjiu-yǔyánxué-de.  
The student who came yesterday is studying linguistics.
11. Nèiwèi-cóng-Yīngguó-lái-de-xuésheng shì-yánjiu-kēxué-de.  
That student who has come from England is studying science.
12. Nèige-xué-huà-huàr-de-'nǚ-xuésheng bù-dǒng-Zhōngwén.  
That girl student who is studying painting does not understand Chinese.
13. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie zuótian-mǎi-de-nèiběn-shū shì-'yánjiu-huà-huà-fāngfǎ-de.  
The book that Miss Gao bought yesterday is [one] for studying techniques of painting.
14. Zuótian-'Máo-Xiǎnsheng zài-túshūguǎn-jìe-de-shū 'dōu-méi-you-yìsi.  
The books that Mr. Mao borrowed at the library yesterday are all uninteresting.
15. Shàng-xīngqī wǒ-zài-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-mǎi-de-shū wǒ-kàn-le-'dōu-bù-dǒng.  
The books I bought last week at the Three Friends Bookstore I've read but don't understand.
16. Nèiwèi-néng-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì-de-wàiguó-xuésheng cōng-míng-jíle.  
That foreign student who can write with a brush is tremendously bright.
17. Zài-nèige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū-de chábuduō-dōu-shì-'wàiguó-xuésheng.  
The ones who are studying at that school are almost all foreign students.
18. Jīntian-wǎnshàng dào-Gāo-jia-chī-fàn-de dōu-shì-Gāo-Xiǎnshengde-hǎo-péngyou.  
The people [lit. the ones] who are going to the Gaos' home for dinner this evening are all good friends of Mr. Gao.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>19. Dào-Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū-de-wàiguó-xuésheng chàbuduō-dōu-shi-yánjiu-yǔyán huòzhě-wénxué-de.</p> <p>20. Zài-nèige-dàxué-niàn-shū-de-xuésheng chàbuduō-yǒu-èrshíge-Měiguó-xuésheng.</p> <p>21. Nèige-háizi-tài-bèn-le. Xiānsheng-shuō-de-huà tā-dōu-wàng-le.</p> <p>22. Qián-Xiānsheng-zuótian-mǎide-bǐ 'dōu-bu-néng-yòng.</p> <p>23. Zài-nèige-dàxué-niàn-shū-de-xuésheng nán-xuésheng-shǎo nǚ-xuésheng-duō.</p> <p>24. Zhèi-shi-wǒ-zài-túshūguǎn 'jiè-de-shū.</p> <p>25. Qián-Xiānsheng-jīntian-mǎi-de-shi-Měiguó-bǐ.</p> <p>26. Nèiwèi-mǎi-shū-de-wàiguó-xuésheng jiù-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-ma?</p> <p>27. Gāo-Xiáojie-cōngming-jíle. Xiě-de-zì, huà-de-huà 'dōu-hǎo.</p> <p>28. Nèiwèi-kàn-shū-de-xiānsheng shi-Gāo-Xiānshengde-péngyou.</p> <p>29. Mào-shū-de-'Máo-Xiānsheng shi-'Yīngguó-rén-ma?</p> <p>30. Gāo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de-fángzi zài-shānshang-ma?</p> | <p>Almost all foreign students who come to China to study take up either language or literature.</p> <p>Among the students studying at that university, there are almost twenty American students.</p> <p>That child is too stupid. He has forgotten everything that the teacher said.</p> <p>The pens that Mr. Qian bought yesterday are all useless.</p> <p>Of the students studying at that university, there are few men [students] and many girls [lit. girl students].</p> <p>This is the book I borrowed at the library.</p> <p>What Mr. Qian bought today is an American pen.</p> <p>Is that foreign student who is buying books Mr. White?</p> <p>Miss Gao is very intelligent. The characters she writes (and) the paintings she does are all fine.</p> <p>That gentleman who is reading is Mr. Gao's friend.</p> <p>Is the Mr. Mao who sells books an Englishman?</p> <p>Is the house that Mr. Gao bought located on a hill?</p> |
|--|---|

Pattern 14.3. Completed Action with guo (Note 5 below)

Pattern 14.3 a. (Sentences 1-10 below)

S	(AD)	V	- <u>guo</u>	(O)
Subject	(Adverb)	Verb	- <u>guo</u>	(Object)
Wǒ	méi	chī	-guo	Zhōngguó-fàn.
'I have never eaten Chinese food.'				

Pattern 14.3 b. (Sentences 11–20 below)

S	(TW)	V	- <u>guo</u>	<u>le</u>
Subject	(Time word)	Verb	- <u>guo</u>	<u>le</u>
Tā	zuótiān	shuō	-guo	le.
'He mentioned it yesterday.'				

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Wǒ-dàoguo-Rìběn.   | I've been to Japan.   |
| 2. Nǐ-chīguo-'Měiguó-fàn-méi-you?   | Have you ever eaten American food?  |
| 3. Nèige-lǎo-rén méi-kànguo-diànyǐngr.  | That old man has never seen a movie.  |
| 4. Wǒ-xuéguo-yǔyánxué.  | I've studied linguistics.   |
| 5. Wǒ-méi-xuéguo-kēxué.   | I've never studied science.   |
| 6. Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué-niàn-shū-de-shíhou méi-yòngguo-gāngbǐ.                             | When I was studying in middle school, I never used a fountain pen.          |
| 7. Wó-mǔqīn-méi-zuòguo-fēijī.   | My mother has never ridden on a plane.                                      |
| 8. 'Máo-Xiānsheng méi-kànguo-Zhōngwén-shu.  | Mr. Mao has never read any Chinese books.                                   |
| 9. Nǐ-dàoguo-Shāndong-ma?   | Have you ever been to Shantung?   |
| 10. Nǐ-kànjianguo tā-huà-de-huàr-ma?  | Have you ever seen the painting he's done?                                  |
| 11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng 'zuótiān-lái-guo-le.  | Mr. Qian came yesterday.  |
| 12. Tā-zuótiān-shuōguo-le tā jīntian-'bù-lái-le.                                      | He mentioned yesterday that he wouldn't come today.                         |
| 13. Tā-yǐjīng chīguo-wǎnfàn-le.   | He's already eaten dinner.  |
| 14. 'Gāo-Xiáojie zuótiān-dàoguo-'Qián-Xiáojie-jiā.                                    | Miss Gao went to Miss Qian's home yesterday.                                |
| 15. Wǒ-jīntian-dàoguo-túshūguǎn-le.   | I've been to the library today.   |
| 16. Zhèige-zì wǒ-zuótiān-xuéguo, kěshi-jīntian-yòu-wàng-le.                           | I studied this character yesterday, but today I've forgotten it.            |
| 17. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jīntian-dào-shūdiàn-qùguo-le.                                      | Mr. White went to the bookstore today.                                      |
| 18. Nǐ-zuótiān dàoguo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?  | Did you go to Mr. Gao's home yesterday?                                     |
| 19. Nǐ-'shàng-xīngqī kànguo-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-le-ma? Wǒ-qùguo-le, kěshi-tā-méi-zài-jiā. | Did you see Mr. Wang last week? I went (to see him), but he wasn't at home. |

20. Nǐ -zuótian zhǎoguo- 'Máo-  
Xiānsheng-le-ma? Wǒ-  
méi-zhǎoguo-ta. Did you visit Mr. Mao yester-  
day? I didn't visit him.

Pattern 14.4. Resultative Verbs (Note 6 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	( <u>bu/de</u> )	V <sub>2</sub>	(O)
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	( <u>bu/de</u> )	Verb <sub>2</sub>	(Object)
Wǒmen	kàn	-bu	jiàn	hú.
'We can't see the lake.'				
Wǒmen	kàn	-de	jiàn	hú.
'We can see the lake.'				

A. Resultative-verb Phrases Composed from Vocabulary of Lessons 1-14  
(Note 6 below)

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1. kànjian     | see   |
| 2. kàndejiàn   | be able to see                                  |
| 3. kànbujiàn   | be unable to see                                |
| 4. tīngjian    | hear  |
| 5. tīngdejiàn  | be able to hear                                 |
| 6. tīngbujiàn  | be unable to hear                               |
| 7. yùjian      | encounter                                       |
| 8. yùdejiàn    | be able to encounter                            |
| 9. yùbujiàn    | be unable to encounter                          |
| 10. kàndedǒng  | be able to understand by reading                |
| 11. kànbudǒng  | be unable to understand by reading              |
| 12. tīngdedǒng | be able to understand by hearing                |
| 13. tīngbudǒng | be unable to understand by hearing              |
| 14. hǎodeliǎo  | be able to get well                             |
| 15. hǎobuliǎo  | be unable to get well                           |
| 16. mǎideliǎo  | be able to buy (because funds are adequate)     |
| 17. mǎibuliǎo  | be unable to buy (because funds are inadequate) |
| 18. chīdeliǎo  | be able to eat (because there is not too much)  |
| 19. chībuliǎo  | be unable to eat (because there is too much)    |
| 20. niàndeliǎo | be able to read <u>or</u> study                 |
| 21. niànbuliǎo | be unable to read <u>or</u> study               |

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 22. tīngdeliǎo | be able to understand (aurally)                      |
| 23. tīngbuliǎo | be unable to understand (aurally)                    |
| 24. xiědeliǎo  | be able to write                                     |
| 25. xiěbuliǎo  | be unable to write                                   |
| 26. zōudeliǎo  | be able to go  |
| 27. zōubuliǎo  | be unable to go                                      |
| 28. zuòdeliǎo  | be able to do  |
| 29. zuòbuliǎo  | be unable to do                                      |
| 30. zuòdeliǎo  | be able to ride <u>or</u> sit                        |
| 31. zuòbuliǎo  | be unable to ride <u>or</u> sit                      |
| 32. dǒngdeliǎo | be able to understand                                |
| 33. dǒngbuliǎo | be unable to understand                              |
| 34. huódeliǎo  | be able to live                                      |
| 35. huóbuliǎo  | be unable to live                                    |
| 36. yòngdeliǎo | be able to use                                       |
| 37. yòngbuliǎo | be unable to use                                     |
| 38. mài deliǎo | be able to sell                                      |
| 39. màibuliǎo  | be unable to sell                                    |
| 40. mǎidào     | succeed in buying                                    |
| 41. mǎidedào   | be able to buy (because the item is available)       |
| 42. mǎibudào   | be unable to buy (because the item is not available) |
| 43. zhǎodào    | succeed in finding                                   |
| 44. zhǎodedào  | be able to find                                      |
| 45. zhǎobudào  | be unable to find                                    |
| 46. jièdào     | succeed in borrowing                                 |
| 47. jièdedào   | be able to borrow                                    |
| 48. jièbudào   | be unable to borrow                                  |
| 49. kàndào     | succeed in seeing                                    |
| 50. kàndedào   | be able to see                                       |
| 51. kànbudào   | be unable to see                                     |
| 52. xuédào     | study up to (i.e. study as far as)                   |
| 53. xuèdedào   | be able to study up to                               |
| 54. xuèbudào   | be unable to study up to                             |
| 55. zǒudedào   | be able to arrive at                                 |
| 56. zǒubudào   | be unable to arrive at                               |
| 57. kǎoshang   | pass entrance examinations                           |



- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 58. kǎodeshàng  | be able to pass examinations                                     |
| 59. kǎobushàng  | be unable to pass examinations                                   |
| 60. niàndeshàng | be able to study (because funds are adequate)                    |
| 61. niànbushàng | be unable to study (because funds are inadequate)                |
| 62. gěideshàng  | be able to give (i.e. make payments)                             |
| 63. gěibushàng  | be unable to give (i.e. make payments)                           |
| 64. chīdexià    | be able to eat (because there is not too much)                   |
| 65. chībuxià    | be unable to eat (because there is too much)                     |
| 66. zuòdexià    | be able to sit down (because there is enough room)               |
| 67. zuòbuxià    | be unable to sit down (because there is not enough room)         |
| 68. xiědexià    | be able to write down (because there is enough room)             |
| 69. xiěbuxià    | be unable to write down (because there is not enough room)       |
| 70. niàndeguò   | be able to surpass in studies (i.e. do better than someone else) |
| 71. niànbuguò   | be unable to surpass in studies                                  |

#### B. Sentences Illustrating Use of Resultative Verbs

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nèiwèi-lǎo-tàitai bù-néng-chī-fàn-le. Hǎobuliǎo-le.       | That old lady can no longer eat. It's no longer possible for her to get well.    |
| 2. Nèiběn-shū-'tài-hǎo-le, kěshiwǒ-méi-qián. Mǎibuliǎo.      | That book is excellent, but I don't have any money. I can't buy it.              |
| 3. Zhèiběn-shū zài-shūdiànli-mǎibudào. Nǐ-'yídìng-màideliǎo. | This book can't be bought in a bookstore. You certainly will be able to sell it. |
| 4. Zhèiběn-shū hěn-duō-shūdiàn'dōu-mǎibudào-le.              | This book can't be bought any more in lots of bookstores.                        |
| 5. Fàn-tài-duō-le. Wǒ-chībuliǎo.                             | There's too much food. I can't eat it all.                                       |
| 6. Xièxie-nin. Wǒ-chīde-tài-duō-le. Chībuxià-le.             | Thank you. I've eaten too much. I can't eat any more.                            |
| 7. Wǒ-zuótian-mǎide-yìběn-shū'jīntian-jiù-zhǎobudào-le.      | Today I can't find a book that I bought yesterday.                               |
| 8. Qǐng-wèn-nin, Gāo-Xiānsheng-                              | May I ask, on what hill is Mr.   |

- jiā zài-'něige-shānshang?  
Wó-zěnmò zhǎobudào-ne?
9. Nǐ-kànjian-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-le-ma? Méi-you. Tā-jiā-lí-wǒ-jiā tài-yuǎn. Wǒ-kànbu-jiàn-ta.
10. Zhèitiáo-lù-xībiar yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-hóng-fángzi. Nǐ-kànde-jiàn-ma? Tài-yuǎn-le. Wǒ-kànbujiàn.
11. Jīntian-mǎile-yìběn-shū. Róng-yi-jíle. Wǒ-dōu-kàndedǒng.
12. Tā-shuō-huà shuōde-tài-kuài-le. Wǒ-tīngbudǒng.
13. Wǒ-shuōde-huà nǐ-tīngjian-le-ma? Nǐ-shuōde-huà wǒ-méi-tīngjian.
14. Wǒ-tài-bèn-le. Wǒ-yídìng-niànbuliǎo-dàxué.
15. Wǒ-méi-qián. Wó-xiáng-wǒ-niànbushàng-dàxué.
16. Yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn ní-xiědeliǎo-ma? Wó-xiěbuliǎo. Tài-nán-le.
17. Nǐ-míngtian-dào-gōngyuán-qù-ma? Yīnwei-wó-yóu-hěnduō-shì, 'míngtian-wó-qù-buliǎo.
18. Tā-zǒude-tài-màn-le. Yìtiānzǒubuliǎo-èrlǐ-lù.
19. Tāde-shì-tài-máfan-le. Wǒ-zuòbuliǎo.
20. Tā-bu-néng-shuō-huà-le. Yídìng-huòbuliǎo-le.
21. Tāde-fángzi-tài-xiǎo-le. Yǒu-péngyou jiù-zuòbuxià-le.
22. Yìzhī-gāngbǐ-liǎngkuài-qián.
- Gao's home? How is it that I can't find it?
- Did you see Mr. Zhang? No. His home is too far from my home. I can't (go) see him.
- West of this road is a little red house. Can you see it? It's too far. I can't see it.
- I bought a book today. It's awfully easy. I can understand it all.
- He talks too fast. I can't understand him.
- Did you hear what I said? I didn't hear what you said.
- I'm too stupid. I certainly can't do college work.
- I don't have any money. I guess I can't attend college.
- Can you write letters in Chinese? I can't. It's too hard.
- Are you going to the park tomorrow? I have a lot to do, so I can't go tomorrow.
- He walks too slowly. He can't walk two miles a day.
- His work is too difficult [lit. troublesome]. I can't do it (for him).
- He's no longer able to speak. He certainly can't live any longer.
- His house is too small. (If he) has friends he can't seat them.
- A fountain pen is two dollars. It

- Yòngbuliáo-'wǔkuai-qián.  
couldn't be five dollars.
23. Wǒ-zài-túshūguǎn yùjian-  
'Zhāng-Xiáojie-le.  
I met Miss Johnson in the li-  
brary.
24. Zhèiběn-shū qíng-ni-gěi-  
Wáng-Xiáojie kéyi-ma? Wǒ-  
jīntian yùbujian-ta.  
May I ask you to give this book  
to Miss Wang? I'm not likely to  
run into her today.
25. Zhèiběn-shū zài-túshūguǎn-  
jièdedào-ma?  
Is it possible to borrow this  
book at the library?
26. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu zǒude-  
dào-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-ma?  
Rúguó-zǒudedào qíng-ni-géi-  
wo-mǎi-yìběn-shū.  
(On the way) to the library can  
you get to the Three Friends  
Bookstore? If you can [get to it]  
please buy a book for me.
27. Nèizhāng-zhǐ-'tài-xiǎo-le.  
Xiěbuxià-hěn-duō-zì. Nǐ-  
zì-xiǎode-'xiǎo-yìdiǎr jiù-  
xiědexià-le.  
That sheet of paper is too small.  
You can't write many characters  
on it. Write the characters a  
little smaller and you'll be able  
to get them on.
28. Tā-shuō-huà shuōde-'tài-kuài-  
le. Wǒ-'dōu-tīngbudǒng.  
He talks too fast. I can't under-  
stand anything (he says).
29. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng Zhōngwén-  
shuōde-hǎojiǔ. Wǒ-'dōu-  
tīngdedǒng.  
Mr. King speaks Chinese awfully  
well. I can understand every-  
thing (he says).
30. Wó-xiǎng-xià-xīngqī wǒmen-  
xuébudào-dì-'shíqīkè.  
I don't think we'll be able to get  
to Lesson 17 by next week.
31. 'Zhāng-Xiáojie kǎoshàng-dà-  
xué-le.  
Miss Zhang has passed the ex-  
ams for college.
32. Tā-yòu-cōngmíng yòu-yòng-  
gōng. Yíding-kǎodeshàng-  
dàxué.  
He's bright and he works hard.  
He can certainly pass the exams  
for college.
33. 'Nèige-xuésheng yòu-bèn-yòu-  
bú-yònggōng. Kǎobushàng-dà-  
xué.  
That student is stupid as well as  
lazy. He can't pass the college  
entrance exams.
34. Wáng-Xiānsheng-'tài-cōng-  
míng-le. Wǒ-suǐrán-hěn-  
yònggōng kěshi-'hái-niànbu-  
guò-ta.  
Mr. King is too brilliant. Al-  
though I work very hard I [still]  
can't beat him [in studying].
35. Nèige-xuésheng-'tài-cōngmíng-  
le. Tā-'yíding-niàndeguò-  
Zhāng-Xiānsheng.  
That student is extremely in-  
telligent. He can certainly do  
better than Mr. Johnson [in  
studying].

## Pattern 14.5. Large Numbers (Note 7)

## Pattern 14.5a. Numbers into the Tens of Thousands

(Each of the unit-numbers may be preceded by a digit from one to nine)

wàn	qiān	bǎi	shí
10,000's	1,000's	100's	10's
sānwàn	sìqiān	wúbǎi	liùshí
'thirty-four thousand five hundred sixty'			

## Pattern 14.5b. Numbers into the Hundreds of Millions

(As above, followed by wàn '10,000')

wàn	qiān	bǎi	shí	wàn
10,000's	1,000's	100's	10's	10,000's
sānwàn	sìqiān	wúbǎi	liùshí	wàn
'34,560 ten-thousands = 345,600,000'				

1. Tīngshuō-Měiguó xiànzài-chà-buduō yóu-liǎngwànwàn-rén. I hear that the United States now has almost 200,000,000 people.
2. Zhōngguó-rén-zuì-duō. Chà-buduō-yǒu-jiǔwànwàn-rén. Chinese are the most numerous. There are almost 900,000,000 of them.
3. Měiguó-lí-Zhōngguó-hén-yuǎn—'yíwàn-duō-lǐ-lù. America is a long way from China—over 10,000 miles.
4. Qián-Xiānsheng-'hén-xǐhuan-niàn-shū. Tā-jīnnián-yǐjīng-mǎile yìbái-jiǔshíbēn-shū-le. Mr. Qian is very fond of reading. He's already bought 190 books this year.
5. Tāde-qían-tài-duō-le. Chàbuduō-yǒu-qībǎi-wūshiwànkuaì-qían. He has too much money—he has almost \$7,500,000.
6. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng yǒu-qían-jiù-mǎi-shū. Tā-yìgòng-yǒu yíwàn-wǔqiān-duō-bēn-shū-le. Tāde-jiā jiù-shi-yíge-xiǎo-tú-shūguǎn. If Mr. Johnson has money he buys books. He has acquired a total of over 15,000 books. His home is a miniature (public) library.
7. Rúguǒ wó-yǒu-liǎng-sān-qiān-kuaì-qían wǒ-jiù-dào-wàiguó-qu. If I had two or three thousand dollars I'd go abroad.
8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng mǎile-yìsuǒ-dà-fángzi. Yòngle-jiǔwàn-wǔ-qiān-duō-kuaì-qían. Mr. Wang bought a big house. He spent over \$95,000 (for it).
9. Nèige-xuéxiào yìgòng-yǒu- That school has 3,000 students

sānqiān-xuésheng: 'nán-xué-sheng yìqiān-jiúbǎi-rén, nǚ-xuésheng yìqiān-yìbǎi-rén.

in all: 1,900 boys [lit. male students], 1,100 girls [lit. female students].

10. Zhèige-chéng-hěn-dà. Chà-buduō yǒu-shíqīwàn-wùqiān-rén.

This city is quite large. It has almost 175,000 people.

### SUBSTITUTION TABLES

#### I: 36 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	yòng	máobǐ	xiě	xìn	—
nǐ		qiānbǐ		zì	ma
tā		gāngbǐ			

#### II: 54 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	gěi	xiānsheng	mǎi-piào	—
nǐ		tàitai	xiě-xìn	ma
tā		xiáojie	jiè-shū	

#### III: 54 sentences (Note 1)

wǒ	duì	Wáng	Xiānsheng	shuō	huà
nǐ		Qián	Tàitai		shénmo
tā		Gāo	Xiáojie		

#### IV: 27 phrases (Note 2)

wǒ	jiè	de	zìdiǎn
nǐ	mǎi		shū
tā	yào		bēnzi

#### V: 72 phrases (Notes 2-3)

(Asterisks indicate columns either of which may be used)

*				*	
—	jiè	zìdiǎn	de	—	xiānsheng
zhèige	mǎi	shū		zhèige	rén
nèige	yào			nèiwèi	

#### VI: 72 sentences (Note 5)

nǐ	—	yòng	-guo	máobǐ	—
tā	méi	jiè		gāngbǐ	ma
		jiàn		qiānbǐ	

VIIa: 8 phrases (Note 6)

kàn	-de-	jiàn
tīng	-bu-	dǒng

VIIb: 12 phrases (Note 6)

jiè	-de-	dào
xué	-bu-	liǎo
mǎi		

VIII: 64 phrases (Note 7)

yí	-wàn	yì	-qiān	yì	-bǎi
èr		èr		èr	
sān		sì		wǔ	
liù		qī		bā	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

I. Contrasts in ui: tones 1-2 versus tones 3-4

(The Sounds of Chinese, 8)

(Not all Chinese speakers make these contrasts; some pronounce all of these finals like those of tones 3-4.)

(a) guī guǐ	(e) huī huǐ	(i) tuí tuì
(b) guī guì	(f) huí huì	(j) suí suì
(c) kuī kuì	(g) duī duì	(k) zhuī zhuì
(d) kuí kuǐ	(h) tuī tuǐ	(l) cuī cuì

II. Contrasts in iu and you: tones 1-2 versus tones 3-4

(The Sounds of Chinese, 13)

(Not all Chinese speakers make these contrasts; some pronounce all of these finals like those of tones 3-4.)

(a) niú niǔ	(c) jiū jiǔ	(e) xiū xiǔ
(b) liú liù	(d) jiū jiù	(f) xiū xiù
(g) yōu yǒu	(i) yōu yòu	
(h) yóu yǒu	(j) yóu yòu	

## III. Contrasts in Stress (The Sounds of Chinese, 22)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Shi-Wáng-'Xiānsheng-láide shi-Wáng-'Tàitai-láide?   | Is it Mr. King or Mrs. King who has come?       |
| 2. Shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-láide shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-láide? | Is it Mr. King or Mr. White who has come?       |
| 3. Tā-shi-jīntian-'mǎi-de-chē háishi-'mài-de-chē?      | Did he buy or sell a car today?                 |
| 4. Tā-shi-jīntian-mǎi-chē háishi-mǎi-fángzi?           | Is he buying a car or a house today?            |
| 5. Tā-'jīntian-lái háishi-'míng-tian-lái?              | Is it today or tomorrow that he's coming?       |
| 6. Tā-jīntian-lái háishi-jīntian-zǒu?                  | Is he coming or going today?                    |
| 7. Wǒ-shuō-jīntian, méi-shuō-zuótian.                  | I said <u>today</u> , not <u>yesterday</u> .    |
| 8. Wǒ-shuō-jīnnián, méi-shuō-jīntiān.                  | I said this <u>year</u> , not this <u>day</u> . |

## IV. Contrasts in Juncture (The Sounds of Chinese, 21)

- (a) yínán      yīn'àn  
 (b) míngē      míng'é  
 (c) fāngài      fáng'ài

## THE TOPIC-COMMENT CONSTRUCTION (Note 8 below)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ní-mǎile-piào-le-ma? Piào-mǎi-le.   | Did you buy the tickets? The tickets have been bought.                  |
| 2. Nǐ-kéyi-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà-ma? Zhōngguo-huà-kéyi-shuō.                                      | Can you speak Chinese? (I) can speak Chinese.                           |
| 3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng mǎile-'bǐ-méi-you? Tā-bí-mǎi-le.   | Did Mr. White buy the pens? He bought the pens.                         |
| 4. 'Qián-Xiānsheng dào-túshū-guǎn-le-ma? 'Qián-Xiānsheng túshūguǎn-dàoguo-le.                  | Did Mr. Qian go to the library? Mr. Qian has been to the library.       |
| 5. 'Zhāng-Xiáojie zuótian-'kànguo-diànyǐngr-le-ma? 'Zhāng-Xiáojie zuótian diànyǐngr-kànguo-le. | Did Miss Zhang see a movie yesterday? Miss Zhang saw a movie yesterday. |
| 6. Nèige-xuésheng niànguo-'dàxué-le-ma? Ta-'zhōng-   | Has that student attended college? He's been to middle                  |

- xué-niànguo-le, 'dàxué-hái-méi-niàn-ne.
7. Nǐ-niàn-shū-le-ma? Shū-niàn-le.
8. Ní-mǎi-shū-gěi-'qián-méi-you? Qián-gěi-le.
9. Nǐ-chīle-fàn-le-ma? Fàn-chīguo-le.
10. Nǐ-néng-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì-ma? 'Zhōngguo-zì néng-xiě.
11. Ní-géi-ni-mǔqīn xiě-xìn-le-ma? Géi-wó-mǔqīn-de-xìn xiě-le.
12. Ní-mǎi-'mòshuǐ-le-méi-you? Mòshuǐ-mǎi-le.
13. Nǐ-zuótiān-shuō-mǎi-zìdiǎn, mǎi-dìtú. Dōu-'mǎi-le-méi-you? Zìdiǎn-mǎi-le, dìtú-hái-méi-mǎi-ne.
14. Ní-xiě-zì-le-ma? Zì-xiě-le.
15. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-le nèi-suǒr-dà-fángzi-ma? Nèi-suǒr-dà-fángzi tā-mǎi-le.
- school, but has not yet been to college.
- Did you do (your) studying? The studying's done.
- Did you pay the money when you bought the books? The money has been paid.
- Have you eaten? I've already eaten.
- Can you write Chinese characters? (I) can write Chinese characters.
- Did you write a letter to your mother? The letter to my mother has been written.
- Did you buy the ink? The ink has been bought.
- Yesterday you said (you were going) to buy a dictionary and a map. Did you buy both? I bought the dictionary, but have not yet bought the map.
- Did you write the characters? The characters have been written.
- Did Mr. Gao buy that big house? He bought that big house.

## MONOLOGUE

Wǒ-shi-yíge-Měiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-dào-Zhōngguó lái-niàn-shū. Xiànzài-'Zhōngguó-shū wǒ-néng-kàndedǒng-le. 'Zhōngguó-huà yě-dōu-néng-shuō-le. Wǒ-duì-xiě-zì zuì-yǒu-xìngqǐ. Wó-měitiān dōu-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, 'Qián-Xiānsheng tāmen-kànjian-wó-xiě-de-zì, dōu-shuō-xiěde-hǎojíle. Bù-zhīdào tāmen-shì-kèqī-ne háishi-zhēn-huà-ne. Yòng-máobí-xiě-zì hěn-nán. Zhōngguó-rén chábuduō-yě-dōu-yòng-gāngbǐ huòzhě qiānbǐ xiě-zì-le. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-duì-xiě-zì hěn-yǒu-yánjiū. Wó-xiě-de-zì cháng-qǐng-tā-kàn. Tā-yě-gàosu-wo xiě-zì-de-'fāngfǎ, suǒyì-wó-hěnxìexie-tā.



## CHECKING UP

The questions below are based on material in the Dialogue at the beginning of this lesson.

1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-xuéxiào yíòng-yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?
2. Dào-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-kǎoshì-de-xuésheng yíòng-yǒu-'duōshao-rén?
3. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-'zěnmō-kǎobushàng-dàxué?
4. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō 'Gāo-Xiáojie kǎodeshàng-dàxué-ma?
5. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-rúguó-kǎobushàng-dàxué ta-jiù-xué-shénmō?
6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng xīwang-'Gāo-Xiáojie-xué-shénmō?
7. 'Gāo-Xiáojie xuéguo-huà-huàr-ma?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yuánlái-xiǎng-xué-shénmō-ne?
9. Yuǎndōng-Dàxué yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?
10. 'Duōshao-rén kǎoshàng-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-le?
11. Xué-yǔyánxué 'zěnmō-xué-ne?
12. 'Bái-Xiānsheng gěi-'Zhōngguo-péngyou-xiě-xìn, yòng-'Zhōngwén háishi-yòng-'Yīngwén?
13. 'Gāo-Xiáojiede-fùqin 'zì-xiěde-hǎo-bu-hǎo?
14. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō xiànzài-Zhōngguo-rén dōu-yòng-'shénmō-bí-xiě-zì?
15. 'Shéi-duì-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō Gāo-Xiáojiede-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo?

## NOTES

1. The verb yòng 'use' also functions as a coverb meaning 'by, with, by means of':

'Zhōngguo-rén yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. 'Chinese write characters with a writing brush.'

The verb gěi 'give,' which is similar to its English equivalent in that it takes both direct and indirect objects (Tā-gěi-wó-bǐ. 'He gave me a pen. '), is also used as a coverb meaning 'to' or 'for':

Wǒ-jīntian-gěi-ta-xiě-xìn. 'I'm writing him a letter today.' 'I'm writing a letter for him (i.e. to someone else) today.'

Wǒ-jīntian-gěi-ta-mǎi-shū. 'I'm buying him a book today.' 'I'm buying a book for him today.' \*

---

\* Note that the second of these English sentences is ambiguous: it could mean either 'I bought a book to give him as a present' or 'I bought a book to save him the effort of doing so himself.' The Chinese, however, is not ambiguous; it can only have the first English meaning. However, in a few cases, such as gěi-ta-xiě-xìn, the sentence is ambiguous out of context.

The verb duì 'face toward' is used as a coverb. Most often it corresponds to English 'toward' or 'to':

Tā-duì-wǒ-shuō tā-bù-lái-le. 'He told me [lit. said to me that] he isn't coming any more.'

Occasionally it corresponds more closely to 'with respect to':

Wǒ-duì-wénxué hén-yǒu-xìngqū. 'With respect to literature, I'm very interested.' Or, more freely, 'I'm very much interested in literature.'

2. Subordination of transitive and intransitive verbs to nouns is an extension of subordination of nouns and stative verbs (Lesson 5, Note 2, p. 55):

wǒ-péngyoude-shū 'my friend's book'  
hén-xiǎode-shū 'a very small book'

With other verbs as well, de occurs between the verb phrase and the following noun:

dào-túshūguǎn-qù-de-xuésheng 'students who go to the library'  
xué-wénxué-de-xuésheng 'students who study literature'  
xuésheng-kàn-de-shū 'books which students read'

The verb phrases often correspond to English relative clauses; but in Chinese the clauses always come before the modified noun—not after it, as in English.

3. Specifiers (e.g. zhèi 'this,' nèi 'that') used with subordinate clauses can come either before the clause or before the noun:

nèige-mǎi-shū-de-rén <u>or</u> mǎi-shū-de-nèige-rén	}	'the person who is buying books'
---	---	----------------------------------

If the clause is a long one, the specifier is more likely to occur before the noun. In this usage the specifier more often has the force of the definite article 'the' in English rather than its basic meaning 'this' or 'that.'

4. The noun to which a clause is subordinated can be omitted:

Zài-nèr-kàn-shū-de-rén bu-dōu-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.

or

Zài-nèr-kàn-shū-de bu-dōu-shi-'Zhōngguo-rén.

'Not all those reading there are Chinese.'

5. The verb suffix -guo has two meanings:

- (a) In a context where no specific time is mentioned, it suggests that an action has (or has not) been experienced at some indefinite time in the past:

Wǒ-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn. 'I've eaten Japanese food (at some time or other).'

Wǒ-méi-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn. 'I have never [= not ever] eaten Japanese food.'

Nǐ-chīguo-'Rìběn-fàn-méi-you? 'Have you ever eaten Japanese food?'

- (b) In a context where a specific time is mentioned or understood, -guo places emphasis on the fact that an action has already been completed. Thus in answer to a question about whether you accomplished the task of borrowing a certain book from the library today, you might answer:

Jièguo-le. 'I've borrowed it (already).'

6. Resultative verbs (RV) are compound transitive verbs. Some of the compounds have a clear action-result relationship:

tīng 'listen' + jiàn 'see, perceive' = tīngjian 'perceive by listening' —  
i.e. 'hear'

Often, however, these compounds have meanings which are not predictable from the separate meanings of the parts (cf. English 'understand'), so that you cannot form your own resultative compounds by combining two likely-sounding verbs; you must learn each one individually as you encounter it.

Resultative verbs, as distinguished from other verbs, have special forms for adding the meanings 'be able' and 'be unable.' For 'be able,' de is inserted between the two parts:

tīngjian 'hear' > tīngdejiàn 'able to hear, can hear'

For 'be unable,' bu is inserted:

tīngjian 'hear' > tīngbujian 'unable to hear, can't hear'

Resultative compounds whose second member is liǎo (which here has no meaning in itself but only the grammatical function of forming compounds) have no simple verb + liǎo forms; they occur only in de and bu combinations:

chīdeliǎo 'can eat'  
chībuliǎo 'can't eat'

The latter forms are interchangeable with the auxiliary-plus-verb pattern:

néng-chī or chīdeliǎo 'able to eat, can eat'

The two patterns may even be combined, so that there is a double expression for 'can':

néng-chīdeliǎo 'able to eat, can eat'

Resultative verb compounds are made negative by méi or méi-you:

Wǒ-méi-kànjian-ta. 'I didn't see him.'

Rarely, however, are they preceded by bu; instead, the verb-bu-verb form is used, expressing a 'cannot' rather than a 'does not' negative:

Nǐ-tīngjian-ma? 'Do you hear?'  
Wǒ-tīngbujian. 'I can't hear.'

7. Numbers over 99 are expressed with combinations using bǎi 'hundred,' qiān 'thousand,' wàn 'ten thousand'; the larger units precede the smaller:

sānbǎi-sìshiwǔ '345'  
yíwàn-èrqiān-sānbǎi-sìshiwǔ '12,345'

Numbers above 10,000 are expressed in multiples of ten thousand (not, as in English, in multiples of one thousand or one million):

shíwàn '100,000'  
 bǎiwàn '1,000,000'  
 qiānwàn '10,000,000'  
 wànwàn '100,000,000'

The numbers bǎi, qiān, and wàn, when combined with '2,' take liǎng or èr:

liángbǎi or èrbǎi '200'

The measure ge is often omitted after bǎi, qiān, and wàn, and also after duō when the following word refers to people:

yìbǎi-rén '100 people'  
 sānqiān-duō-rén 'over 3,000 people'

8. Chinese subject-verb (SV) constructions may have two different interpretations, according to the context. For example, this sentence may have the following separate meanings:

Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-kàn-le.

(a) Mr. King also read (the book which has been under discussion).

(b) I also saw Mr. King (among other of my acquaintances).

In meaning (a), the subject (S) performed the action of the verb (V); this can be called an Actor-Action relationship and considered a special subtype of the S-V construction.

In meaning (b), the relationship between the parts is different: the subject (S) is commented on by—but did not perform the action of—the verb (V). Meanings of the (b) type might be referred to as T-C, or Topic-Comment, constructions, and considered another subtype of the S-V construction.

In constructions of the T-C type, the word order of the Chinese sentence often corresponds loosely with the word order of English passive sentences:

Fàn-chī-le. '(About) the food—eat(ing) has (been done to it).' (Cf.: 'The food has been eaten.')

It is misleading, however, to translate the T-C construction with an English passive sentence, since the English passive construction has quite different connotations from the Chinese T-C pattern. The T-C pattern names something, then says something about it; the effect is often to emphasize the V, or Comment, part of the sentence.

Here are more examples:

A-A: Nǐ-dōu-mǎi-le-méi-you? 'Did you buy everything?'

T-C: Shū-dōu-mǎi-le-méi-you? 'The books . . . did buy them all?'

T-C: Zhèiběn-shū xiànzài-shūdiàn-mǎibudào. '(About) this book. . . now [in] bookstores it can't be bought'—or, more freely, 'You can't buy this book in bookstores nowadays.'

The Topic-Comment construction is used more often in speech than in writing. It would be preferable not to use it in writing isolated sentences and to limit its use where appropriate in connected speech.

9. An alternative, and slightly less blunt, way of saying N-V is the construction N shi V de:

Wǒ-chīguo. 'I've eaten (it).'

Wǒ-shi-chīguo-de. 'I've eaten (it).' [lit. 'I am the one who ate it.']

Zhèiběn-shū hěn-dà. 'This book is very large.'

Zhèiběn-shū shi-hěn-dà-de. 'This book is a very large one.'

Context will determine whether the form with shi . . . de has the same connotation as the simpler form, or whether a more literal translation is a closer representation of what the Chinese expresses.

10. The word zuì is used in two meanings: '-est' and 'very, extremely':

Zhèi-sìge-rén-lǐtòu, tā-shi-zuì-gāo-de. 'Among these four men, he is the tallest.'

Tā-shuōde zuì-hǎo. Wǒ-dōu-tīngdedǒng. 'He speaks extremely well. I can understand everything (he says).'

The word tài is also used in two meanings, 'excessively, too' and 'very, extremely':

Rén-tài-duō. 'There are too many people.'

Tā-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-tài-hǎo-le. 'He speaks Chinese extremely well.'

11. Other ways of expressing extreme or excessive degrees of an attribute, in addition to those described in Note 10, are:

- (a) Giving special stress to a word. Observe the effect of stress in the following pairs of sentences:

Tā-hén-hǎo. 'He's O.K.'

Tā-'hén-hǎo. 'He's very good.'

- (b) Suffixing jíle 'extremely' to the stative verb:

Tā-bènjíle. 'He's extremely stupid.'

- (c) Repeating the phrase containing the stative verb:

Tā-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde hén-hǎo hén-hǎo. 'He speaks Chinese very well.'

12. The expression zuì-hǎo 'best' is used either before or after the subject to mean 'had better [do so-and-so]':

Wǒ-jīntian-méi-qián. Wǒ-zuì-hǎo míngtian-mǎi-shū. 'I don't have any money today. It would be best if I bought the books tomorrow.'

Zuì-hǎo-wǒmen-bu-qù. 'We'd better not go.'

13. The measure fēn 'part,' which we have encountered in expressions of time and money (yīfēn-zhōng 'one minute,' yīfēn-qián 'one cent'), is occasionally used in the meaning 'one-tenth,' usually in a figurative sense:

Tā-huó-de-xīwang zhí-yǒu-sānfēn. 'There is only a three-tenths hope of his living.'

The expression shífēn 'ten-tenths' is used as an intensifying adverb in the meaning 'very,' comparable to the English expression 'one hundred per cent' (a hundred per cent acceptable, etc.):

Zhèizhī-bǐ shífēn-hǎo. 'This pen is very good.'

14. The adverb yě 'also' is repeated in two or more consecutive parallel verbal expressions to mean 'both . . . and . . .,' or, if more than two, 'X and Y and Z . . . all three,' and so on:

Jīntian shū-yě-niàn-le, zì-yé-xiě-le. 'Today I have done both the studying and the writing.'

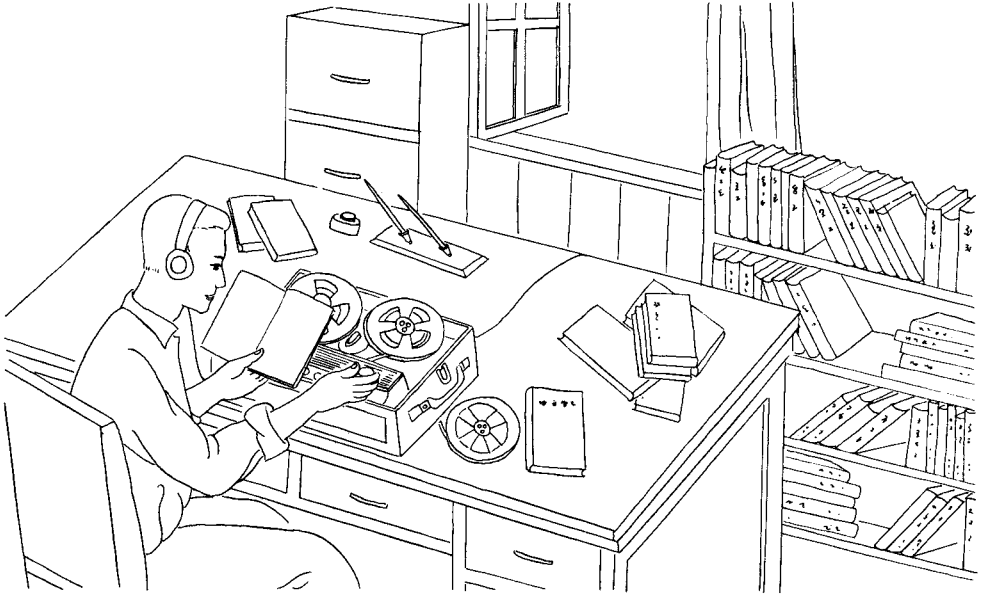
15. Note carefully that expressions with xìngqu 'interest (in)' require human subjects and do not permit inanimate subjects, which require the form yǒu-yìsi 'be interesting':

Wǒ-duì-yǔyánxué hén-yǒu-xìngqu. 'I'm very much interested in linguistics.'

Yǔyánxué hén-yǒu-yìsi. 'Linguistics is very interesting.'

(See also Supplementary Lesson 14, Note 1)

Lesson 15 STUDYING AND TRAVELING



“Tīng-lùyīn shì-xué-yǔyán-'zui-hǎode-fāngfǎ-le.”

Dialogue: Mr. White and Miss Gao speak of their studies and travels.

- |  |          |  |
|--|----------|--|
| Gāo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-xuéle 'jǐniánde-Zhōngwén-le?  |          | Mr. White, how many years have you been studying Chinese?  |
| Bái: Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué jiù-kāishǐ-niàn-'Zhōngwén. Gāozhōng-'èrniánjí wǒ-jiù-niàn-Zhōngwén-le.  | 5        | I began (to study Chinese) in high school. [It was] in my second year in senior high [that I studied Chinese].   |
| Gāo: Nín-Zhōngwén xuéde-'zhēnbù-shǎo-le.   |          | You've been studying it for quite a while.   |
| Bái: Wǒ-niàn-'Zhōngwén chàbù-duō-yǐjīng-yóu-'wǔnián-le.  | 10       | [I've been studying it] for almost five years.   |
| Gāo: Suóyì-nínde-Zhōngwén nènmo-hǎo-ne. Nín-zài-Měiguó-xué-Zhōngwén 'zěnmoxué-ne?  |          | That's why your Chinese is so good. How did you study Chinese in America?  |
| Bái: Wǒmen-kāishǐ-'xué-de-shíhou měitiān-shàng-'yígezōngtóude-kè. Jiàoyuánjiāo-wǒmen-shuō. Xià-kè-yǐhòu wǒmen-jiù-tīng-lùyīnjiéde-lùyīn. | 15<br>20 | At the beginning [lit. when we began to study], we went to class one hour a day. The teacher taught us to speak. After [leaving] class we listened to recordings on a tape recorder. |

Gāo: Tīng-lùyīn shì-xué-yǔyán-  
'zuì-hǎode-fāngfǎ-le.

Listening to recordings is the  
best way to study languages.

Bái: Duì-le.

That's right.

Gāo: Nín-měitiān-tīng-lùyīn  
yào-tīng-'duōshao-shíhou-  
ne?

25

How much time did you listen to  
recordings each day?

Bái: Zài-'zhōngxué-de-shíhou  
tīngde-shǎo-yidiǎr. Měi-  
tiān-tīng 'sān-sìshífēn-  
zhōngde-lùyīn. Zài-'dà-  
xué-de-shíhou měitiān-yào-  
tīng 'yì-liǎngge-zhōngtóu.

30

We listened less in high school—  
[we listened] thirty or forty  
minutes a day. When I was in  
college we had [to listen for] one  
or two hours a day.

Gāo: Nín-zhēn-yònggōng.

You really work hard.

Bái: Xué-yǔyán bìdēi-yònggōng.  
Xué-yǔyán hén-yǒu-yìsi.  
Kāishǐ-de-shíhou hěn-nán  
xué. Yǐhòu jiù-róngyì-le,  
gèng-yǒu-xìngqù-le. Wǒ-  
nèige-shíhou-jiù-xiǎng  
jiānglái-yídìng-dào-Zhōng-  
guo-qu-niàn-shū.

35

40

You have to work hard to study a  
foreign language. Language  
study is very interesting. At the  
beginning it was hard going.  
Later it got easier and I became  
even more interested. It was  
then that I got the idea of [surely  
in the future] going to China to  
study.

Gāo: Nín-xiànzài 'zhēn-dào-  
Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū-le...  
Nín-dào-Zhōngguo zuò-'fēijī  
háishi-zuò-'chuán-lái-de-ne?

45

Now you've really come to China  
to study. . . . Did you come by  
plane or by boat?

Bái: Wǒ-xiān-cóng-Niūyue zuò-  
qìchē dào-Sānfánshì. Wǒ-  
zuòle-'liùtiān-de-qìchē cái-  
dào-ner.

First I went by car from New  
York to San Francisco, arriving  
there after a six-day drive.

Gāo: Tīngshuō-Sānfánshì 'Zhōng-  
guo-rén-hěn-duō. Shì-'zhēn-  
de-ma?

50

I hear there are a lot of Chinese  
in San Francisco. Is that right?

Bái: Nèr-'Zhōngguo-rén-bù-shǎo.  
Zài-Sānfánshì zhùle-bātiān.  
Wǒ-yòu-zuòle-shítíānde-  
chuán dào-Rìběn. Zài-Rì-  
běn zhùle-yíge-xīngqī, jiù-  
zuò-fēijī dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-  
le.

55

There are quite a few [Chinese  
there]. I stayed in San Francis-  
co for eight days. Then I  
traveled for ten days by boat to  
Japan. I stayed in Japan for a  
week, and then came to China by  
plane.

Gāo: Cóng-Rìběn-zuò-fēijī-dào-  
Zhōngguo yào-'duōshao-  
shíhou-ne? 'Yào-bu-yào  
qī-bāge-zhōngtóu-ne?

60

How much time does it take by  
plane from Japan to China?  
[Does it take] seven or eight  
hours?

Bái: Yòngbudào-qī-bāge-zhōng-  
tóu. Sān-sìge-zhōngtóu jiù-  
dào-le.

65

It doesn't take that long [lit. It  
can't take seven or eight hours].  
You can make it in three or four  
[hours].



- Gāo: Nín-zuòguo-'jǐcì-fēijī-le? How many times have you been on a plane?
- Bái: Wó-yǐjīng-zuòguo-'hěn-duō-cì-le. [I've been] quite a few times [already].
- Gāo: Wǒ-hái-méi-zuòguo-fēijī-ne. 70 Yǒu-jīhui wó-děi-'zuò-yíci. I haven't even been on a plane yet. If I have a chance I must go up in one [lit. sit once].
- Bái: Jiānglái nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu yīnggāi-zuò-fēijī dào-bié-de-dìfang-qu-wárwǎr. [In the future] after you graduate you should take a plane somewhere and go have fun.
- Gāo: Wǒ-xiǎng bìyè-yǐhòu gēn-wǒ-fùqīn-mǔqīn-tāmen yíkuàr-dào-Rìběn-wárwǎr. 75 Hěn-duō-rén-shuō Rìběn-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒ-xīwang-dào-Rìběn-yǐhòu zài-nèr-zhùyì-liǎngge-yuè. I think that after I graduate I'll go to Japan with my father and mother for a vacation [lit. to have fun]. Many people say Japan is quite interesting. I hope [after getting to Japan] to stay there for a month or two.
- Bái: Rìběn-'shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi. 80 Yīnggāi-qu-wárwǎr. Japan is very interesting. You should go there and have fun.
- Gāo: Wǒ-fùqīn-mǔqīn dōu-qùguo-Rìběn. Tāmen-'hén-xǐhuan-Rìběn. Tāmen-zài-nèrzhùle-liǎngge-duō-yuè-ne, 85 hái-mǎile-hěn-duō Rìběn-dōngxi. My father and mother have both been to Japan. They liked it very much. They stayed there for more than two months, and bought a lot of Japanese things.
- Bái: Ní-'zěnmó-méi-gēn-tāmen yíkuàr-qù-ne? 90 How come you didn't go along with them?
- Gāo: Yīnwei-wǒmen-xuéxiào-kǎoshì, wǒ-méi-gōngfu-qù. 95 Wǒ-yuánlái-xiǎng kǎowán-yǐhòu gēn-liǎng-sānge-'péngyou-yíkuàr-qù, kěshìwǒ-bìng-le, suóyì-jiù-méiqu. Because our school was having exams, I didn't have time. I had planned originally to go with two or three friends after exams were over, but I got sick, so I didn't go.
- Bái: Nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu xīwang-nǐ-zhēn-néng-qù-yíci. 100 After you graduate I hope you really can go [once].
- Gāo: 'Dāngrán-néng-qù-le. Yīnwei-wo-fùqīn-mǔqīn tāmen-'dōu-xǐhuan-qù, bìyè-yǐhòu huòzhě-gēn-tāmen-'yíkuàr-qù. 105 Of course I'll be able to [go]. Since my father and mother would both like to go, perhaps I'll go with them after I graduate.
- Bái: Nǐ-fùqīn-mǔqīn tāmen-qù-Rìběn zhùzai-nǎr-ne? When your father and mother go to Japan, where do they stay?
- Gāo: Wǒ-fùqīn-zai-Rìběn yǒu-yíwèi-Rìběn-lǎo-péngyou. 110 Tāmen-qùdao-Rìběn jiùzhùzai-tā-jiā. [In Japan] my father has an old Japanese friend. When they go to Japan they stay at his home.

- Bái : Nǐ-huì-huà-huà 'gèng-yīnggāi dào-biéde-dìfang-qu-kànkàn. Your knowing how to paint is even more reason why you should go have a look at other places.
- Gāo: Nǐ-zhènmo-shuō wǒ-yí-dìng-děi-dào-Rìběn-qù-yíci. 115 The way you talk I certainly must take a trip to Japan.

## VOCABULARY

bì	must, have to (AV) (Note 14)
bìděi	must, have to (AV) (Note 14)
bié(de)	other
bìng	sick (SV) sickness (N)
cái	(only) then, not until then (AD) (Note 13)
dāngrán	naturally, of course (MA) [lit. ought be]
děi	must, have to (AV) (Note 13)
dìfang	place, space (N) [lit. earth region]
dōngxi	(concrete) thing, object (N)
gāi	should, ought to (AV) (Note 15)
gēn	(together) with (CV)
jiānglái	in the future, hereafter (TW) [lit. about to come]
jiāo	teach (TV) (See Supplementary Lesson 15, Note 3)
jīhui	opportunity (N)
kāishǐ	begin (to do) (AV) [lit. open beginning]
lù-yīn	record (sound) (VO)
lùyīn	recording (N)
lùyīnjī	(tape) recorder (N) [lit. record sound machine]
nènmo,	in that case (MA)
nàme	so, that (AD) (Note 18)
Niūyue	New York (PW)
Sānfánshì	San Francisco (PW) (See Supplementary Lesson 15, Note 4)
wán	finished, completed, done (IV)
wár	amuse oneself (with), play (with), have fun (IV)
yíkuà	together (AD) [lit. one lump]
yīngdāng	should, ought to (AV) [lit. should ought] (Note 15)

yīnggāi	should, ought to (AV) [lit. should must] (Note 15)
yuè	month (N) (Note 1)
zènmo, zhènmo zènme, zhènme	sō, this (AD) (Note 18)
zhōngtóu	hour (N)
zhù	live (at) (TV); stop, cease (IV)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| yuè<br>shí'èrge-yuè                          | month<br>twelve months                            |
| 1. Yìnián yǒu-shí'èrge-yuè.                  | One year has twelve months.                       |
| zhōngtóu<br>èrshisìge-zhōngtóu               | hour<br>twenty-four hours                         |
| 2. Yìtiān yǒu-èrshisìge-zhōngtóu.            | One day has twenty-four hours.                    |
| lù<br>yīn                                    | record, make a recording<br>sound                 |
| 3. Wǒmen-xiànzài-lù-yīn kényi-ma?            | Can we record now?                                |
| lùyīn<br>lùde-bù-hǎo                         | a recording<br>record badly                       |
| 4. Zhèige-lùyīn lùde-bù-hǎo.                 | This recording is badly done.                     |
| lùyīnjī<br>yòng-lùyīnjī                      | recording machine<br>use a recorder               |
| 5. Wǒmen-yòng-lùyīnjī xué-yǔyán.             | We use recorders in studying languages.           |
| kāishǐ<br>kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén                | begin<br>begin to study Chinese                   |
| 6. Wǒmen-shi-jiǔyuè kāishǐ-xué-'Zhōngwén-de. | We began to study Chinese in September.           |
| zhù<br>zhù-Měiguó                            | live (in <u>or</u> at a place)<br>live in America |
| 7. Tāmen-dōu-zhù-Měiguó.                     | They all live in America.                         |
| zài-Měiguó<br>zài-Měiguó-zhù                 | in America<br>live in America                     |
| 8. Tāmen-dōu-zài-Měiguó-zhù.                 | They all live in America.                         |
| Niǔyue<br>zhù-Niǔyue                         | New York<br>live in New York                      |
| 9. Ní-xǐhuan-zhù-Niǔyue-ma?                  | Do you like to live in New York?                  |

10. Sānfánshì  
zài-Sānfánshì-zhù  
Tīngshuō-zài-Sānfánshì-zhù  
hén-yǒu-yìsi.  
San Francisco  
live in San Francisco  
I hear it's very interesting to  
live in San Francisco.
11. jiāo  
jiāo-tāmen  
Wǒ-jiāo-tāmen-Zhōngwén.  
teach  
teach them  
I teach them Chinese.
12. jiāo  
jiāo-shū  
Tā-zài-Niǔyue-jiāo-shū.  
teach  
teach  
He teaches in New York.
13. jiāo-shū  
jiāo-yíge-zhōngtóu-shū  
Wǒ-xiànzài yào-jiāo-yíge-  
zhōngtóu-shū.  
teach  
teach for one hour  
I'm going to teach for one hour  
now.
14. jiāo-shū  
jiāo-liǎngge-zhōngtóude-  
shū  
Wó-měitiān jiāo-liǎngge-zhōng-  
tóude-shū.  
teach  
teach for two hours  
I teach two hours every day.
15. zài-Niǔyue-zhù  
sānge-yuè  
Wó-xiǎng-zài-Niǔyue zhù-  
sānge-yuè.  
live in New York  
three months  
I plan to live in New York for  
three months.
16. bìng  
yǒu-bìng  
Tā-yǒu-'shénmo-bìng?  
sickness  
have a sickness  
What illness does he have?
17. bìng  
bìng-le  
Tā-qùnián-bìngle-bāitiān.  
sick  
become sick  
He was sick for eight days last  
year.
18. wár  
wárwar  
Wǒmen-dào-nèr-qu-wárwar-  
hǎo-ma?  
have a good time  
have a good time  
How about going there and hav-  
ing a good time?
19. wár  
wárle  
wárle-yíge-xīngqī  
Tāmen-èryue wárle-yíge-  
xīngqī.  
have fun  
had fun  
had fun for a week  
They had fun for a week in Feb-  
ruary.
20. jiāo-sìge-zhōngtóu-  
shū  
jiāole-sìge-zhōngtóu-  
shū  
Wǒ-zuótiān jiāole-sìge-zhōng-  
tóu-shū.  
teach for four hours  
taught for four hours  
I taught for four hours yester-  
day.

21. cái  
cái-zǒu  
Tā-bú-zài-jiā. Cái-zǒu.  
just, then and only then  
just left  
He isn't at home. He just left.
22. wán  
wán-le  
Dōu-wán-le-ma?  
finish  
finished  
Is everything finished?
23. chīwán  
chīwánle-fàn  
Wǒmen-chīwánle-fàn cái-zǒu.  
finish eating  
finished eating  
We'll go after we've finished eating.
24. chīdewán  
chībuwán  
Nǐ-shífēn-zhōng chīde-wán-chībuwán?  
able to finish eating  
unable to finish eating  
Can you eat [lit. finish eating] in ten minutes?
25. dāngrán  
dāngrán-xiěbuwán  
Wǒ-yíkè-zhōng dāngrán-xiěbuwán.  
naturally  
naturally unable to finish writing  
Of course I can't finish writing in a quarter of an hour.
26. biéde  
méi-yǒu-biéde  
Nǐ-yǒu-'biéde-méi-you?  
other  
not have any other  
Do you have any other?
27. biéde  
biéde-shì  
Wǒ-méi-yǒu-biéde-shì.  
other  
other tasks  
I have no other tasks.
28. dìfang  
nèige-dìfang  
Nèige-dìfang méi-yǒu-'wàiguò-rén.  
place  
that place  
There are no foreigners in that place.
29. dōngxī  
zhèige-dōngxī  
Zhèige-dōngxī-jiào-shénmo?  
thing  
this thing  
What's this thing called?
30. jiānglái  
bǐ-xiànzài  
shuōde-hǎo  
Nǐ-jiānglái-shuōde bǐ-xiànzài-hǎo.  
some time in the future  
compared to now  
speak well  
You will speak better in the future than (you do) now.
31. děi  
Wó-déi-zǒu-le.  
must  
I must go.
32. bìděi  
bìděi-kànwán  
Wǒ-jīntian bìděi-kànwán-zhèiběn-shū.  
must  
must finish reading  
I must finish reading this book today.

bú-bì  
bú-bì-xiě  
33. Zhǐ-niàn, bú-bì-xiě.

don't have to  
don't have to write  
Just read, (you) don't have to  
write.

gāi  
34. Wǒ-xiànzài-gāi-zǒu-le.

ought to  
I ought to go now.

yīnggāi  
35. Wǒ-yīnggāi-'míngtian-qù.

ought to  
I should go tomorrow.

yīngdāng  
36. Wǒ-yīngdāng-qù-kàn-ta.

ought to  
I should go see him.

gēn  
gēn-shéi?  
37. Tā-gēn-'shéi-shuō-huà?

with  
with whom?  
Who is he talking with?

nènmo  
nènmo-dà  
38. Nènmo-dàde wǒ-bú-yào.

so  
so big, that big  
I don't want such a big one.

zènmo  
zènmo-bèn  
39. Ní-zènmo-'zènmo-bèn?

so  
so stupid, this stupid  
How come you're so stupid?

zhènmo  
zhènmo-kèqi  
40. Ní-zènmo-zhènmo-kèqi?

so  
so polite, this polite  
Why are you so polite?

jīhui  
yǒu-jīhui  
41. Tā-méi-yǒu-jīhui-kàn-shū.

opportunity  
have an opportunity  
He doesn't have a chance to  
read.

yíkuàr  
yíkuàr-qù  
42. Wǒmen-yíkuàr-qù-hǎo-ma?

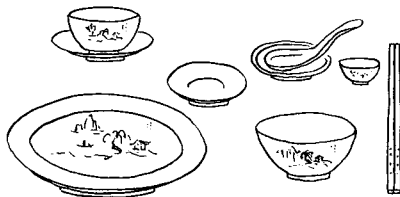
together  
go together  
Shall we go together?

cì  
shuō-yí cì  
43. Qǐng-nín-'zài-shuō-yí cì.

time, occasion  
say once  
Please say it one more time.

chī-sāncì  
chī-sāncì-Zhōngguo-fàn

eat three times  
eat Chinese food three times



44. Wó-zhǐ-chīguo 'sāncì-Zhōngguo-fàn. I've eaten Chinese food only three times.
45. nǐ-qù  
Shì-'nǐ-qù-ma? you are going  
Are you going?
46. tā-míngtiān-qù  
Tā-shì-'míngtiān-qù-ma? he is going tomorrow  
Is he going tomorrow?
47. yòng  
yǒu-yòng  
Zhèige-zìdiǎn-méi-yǒu-yòng. use, make use of  
be useful  
This dictionary is useless.
48. zài-jiāli  
xiě-zì  
Tā-zài-jiāli-xiě-zì. in the house  
write characters  
He is writing characters in the house.
49. xiězai  
Tā-xiězai-zhǐshang. write on  
He is writing on paper.
50. zhùzai  
Tā-zhùzai-Niūyue. live at or in a place  
He lives in New York.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 15.1. Duration of an Action in the Future (Note 4 below)

S	(yào)	V	T	(-de)	(O)
Subject	(yào)	Verb	Time	(-de)	(Object)
Wǒ	yào	kàn	yíge zhōngtóu	-de	shū.

'I will read a book for one hour.'

1. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yào-dào-Rìběn-qù-bànnián. Mr. Qian will go to Japan for half a year.
2. Yīnwei-yào-kǎoshì-le, 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-niàn-liǎngge-xīngqī-shū. Because he's about to have exams, Mr. White is going to study for two weeks.
3. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-shuō tā-kǎoshì-yǐhòu yào-huà-liǎngge-yuède-huàr. Miss Gao says that after she has her exams she will paint for a couple of months.
4. Wó-xiǎng-xià-xīngqī qu-mǎi-yíge-lùyīnjī, xià-kè-yǐhòu měitiān-tīng-yíge-zhōngtóu-de-lùyīn. I plan to buy a recorder next week and listen to recordings an hour a day after class.
5. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-Sānfánsì. Tā-xiǎng-yíge- Mr. Zhang is delighted with San Francisco. A week from now he

- xīngqī-yǐhòu dào-Sānfánshì  
zhù-liǎng-sānge-xīngqī.
6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng xiáng-qǐng-yíwèi-xiānsheng jiāo-ta-yì-niánde-Yīngwén.
7. 'Gāo-Tàitai xiǎng-dào-Niūyue qū-liǎngge-yuè.
8. 'Zhāng-Xiáojie xiáng-měitiān xué-liǎngge-zhōngtóude-Yīngwén.
9. Tā-xiǎng-dào-Húnán qū-liǎngge-xīngqī.
10. Tā-xiǎng-cóng-míngtiān-kāishǐ tā-yào-xué 'sānge-yuède-Zhōngwén.
11. Máo-Tàitai-shuō tā-yào-dào-Shāndong-qu-bànnián.
12. Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-xiǎng-dào-Yīngguo-qu-yì-nián, zài-dào-Měiguó-qu-sānge-yuè.
13. Wó-xiǎng-bànnián-yǐhòu dào-Zhōngguo-qu-zhù-yìnián.
14. Wǒ-duì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì hén-yǒu-xìngqu. Wó-xiǎng yǐhòu-měitiān xiě-yíge-zhōngtóude-zì.
15. Máo-Xiānsheng-xiǎng dào-Zhōngguo-qu-yíge-yuè.
- intends to go to San Francisco and stay two or three weeks.
- Mr. Mao plans to ask a teacher to teach him English for a year.
- Mrs. Gao intends to go to New York for two months.
- Miss Zhang plans to study English two hours a day.
- He intends to go to Hunan for two weeks.
- He plans to study Chinese for three months beginning tomorrow.
- Mrs. Mao says she will go to Shantung for half a year.
- Mr. Zhang says he plans to go to England for a year, and then to America for three months.
- Half a year from now I plan to go to China for a year.
- I'm very much interested in writing Chinese characters. I plan to write characters for an hour a day hereafter.
- Mr. Mao intends to go to China for a month.

Pattern 15.2. Duration of an Action in the Past (Note 5 below)

S	V	-le	T	(-de)	(O)
Subject	Verb	-le	Time	(-de)	(Object)
Wǒ	kàn	-le	yíge zhōngtóu	-de	shū.

'I read for one hour.'

1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie xuéle-'sānnián-de-huà.
2. 'Qián-Xiānsheng bìngle-bànnián-cái-hǎo.
3. Qùnián-wǒ-dào-Rìběn wárlē-liǎngge-yuè.
- Miss Gao studied painting for three years.
- Mr. Qian was sick for half a year before he recovered.
- I went to Japan last year for a pleasure trip for a couple of months.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. Zhèiběn-Yīngwén-shū wǒ-xué-le-yìnián.</p> <p>5. Tā-duì-'Zhōngwén méi-xìngqu. Jiù-xuéle-bànnián.</p> <p>6. Wǒ-xuéle-'liùniánde-Zhōngwén, kěshi-shuōde-'hái-bu-hǎo.</p> <p>7. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng xuéle-wǔnián-de-Rìběn-huà.</p> <p>8. Tā-niànle-'liǎngge-xīngqīde-shū jiù-bu-niàn-le.</p> <p>9. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguo jiāole-wǔnián-bànde-shū.</p> <p>10. Wó-hén-xǐhuan chī-Zhōngguo-fàn. Zài-Zhōngguo-de-shíhou chīle-yìniánde-Zhōngguo-fàn.</p> | <p>I studied this English book for one year.</p> <p>He was not interested in Chinese. He studied it for only half a year.</p> <p>I studied Chinese for six years, but I still speak it badly.</p> <p>Mr. King studied Japanese for five years.</p> <p>He studied for two weeks and then didn't study any more.</p> <p>Mr. Johnson taught in China for five and a half years.</p> <p>I'm very fond of Chinese food. I ate it [lit. Chinese food] for a year when I was in China.</p> |
|--|---|

Pattern 15.3. Duration of an Action into the Present (a)  
(Note 6 below)

S	V	-le	T	(-de)	(O)	le
Subject	Verb	-le	Time	(-de)	(Object)	le
Wǒ	kàn	-le	yíge zhōngtóu	-de	shū	le.

'I have been reading for an hour.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Bái-Xiānsheng-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-wǔnián-le.</p> <p>2. Qián-Xiānsheng-zài-Rìběn yǐ-jīng-zhùle-bànnián-le.</p> <p>3. Wǒ-jīntian-niànle 'wǔge-zhōng-tóude-shū-le.</p> <p>4. Máo-Xiǎojie-xuéle liǎngnián-bànde-Yīngwén-le.</p> <p>5. Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-dào-'Měiguó-láile yǒu-wǔnián-duō-le.</p> <p>6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiāole-chàbu-duō-sānshiwǔnián-shū-le.</p> <p>7. Wǒ-jīntian-zài-túshūguǎn kàn-le-'sìge-zhōngtóude-shū-le.</p> <p>8. Wǒ-jīntian tīngle-yíge-bàn-zhōngtóude-lùyīn-le.</p> | <p>Mr. White has been studying Chinese for five years.</p> <p>Mr. Qian has been living in Japan for half a year [already].</p> <p>I've been studying for five hours so far today.</p> <p>Miss Mao has been studying English for two and a half years.</p> <p>Mr. Gao says he has been in America for over five years.</p> <p>Mr. King has been teaching for almost thirty-five years.</p> <p>I've been reading in the library for four hours so far today.</p> <p>I've been listening to recordings for an hour and a half so far today.</p> |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9. Wǒ-jīntian xiěle-yíge-zhōng-tóu-zì-le.  | I have been writing characters for an hour so far today.  |
| 10. Tāmen-yǐjīng tánle-wūshífēn-zhōngde-huà-le.                                      | They've been conversing for fifty minutes [already].  |
| 11. Nèige-háizi yǐjīng-zuòle-'liǎng-ge-zhōngtóude-diànchē-le, 'hái-bù-xiǎng-xià-chē. | That youngster has been riding the streetcar for two hours already and still has no thought of getting off. |
| 12. Tāmen-zǒule-'yíge-zhōngtóude-lù-le.  | They have been walking for an hour.   |
| 13. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuòle-'yíge-zhōngtóu-shì-le.                                      | Mr. Mao has been working for an hour.   |
| 14. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng jiāole-liǎng-ge-zhōngtóude-shū-le.                              | Mr. Johnson has been teaching for two hours.  |
| 15. Wǒ-jīntian jiù-xuéle-bànge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén.                                  | I've studied Chinese for just half an hour today.   |

Pattern 15.4. Duration of an Action into the Present (b)  
(Note 7 below)

S	V	O	(yǐjīng)	(yǒu)	T	le
Subject	Verb	Object	('already')	('there is')	Time	le
Wǒ	kàn	shū	yǐjīng	yǒu	yíge-zhōngtóu	le.
‘I've already been reading for an hour.’						

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā-zuò-shì yǐjīng-yíge-zhōng-tóu-le.             | He's already been working for an hour.                           |
| 2. 'Qián-Xiānsheng zhùzai-Rìběn yóu-liǎngnián-le.   | Mr. Qian has been living in Japan for two years.                 |
| 3. Wǒ-jiāo-shū yǐjīng-'sānshí-duō-nián-le.          | I've already been teaching for thirty-odd years.                 |
| 4. Wǒ-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-yóu-wūnián-le.            | I've [already] been studying Chinese for five years.             |
| 5. Bái-Xiáojie-xué-huà-huàr yǐjīng-wūnián-le.       | Miss Bai has [already] been studying painting for five years.    |
| 6. Qián-Xiānsheng-xué-wénxué yǐ-jīng-sānnián-le.    | Mr. Qian has [already] been studying literature for three years. |
| 7. Máo-Xiānsheng-lái-Yīngguo yóu-liǎngge-xīngqī-le. | It's been two weeks since Mr. Mao came to England.               |
| 8. Wǒ-dào-Měiguó yǐjīng-'yíge-yuè-le.               | It's been a month [already] since I arrived in America.          |

- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| 9.  | Wáng-Xiānsheng-xué-Zhōng-wén yǒu-yìnián-le. | Mr. King has been studying Chinese for a year. |
| 10. | Wǒ-rènshi-ta yǐjīng-yóu-wǔ-niánle.          | I've known him for five years.                 |

Pattern 15.5. Number of Occurrences (Note 8 below)

S	V	(le)	NU	-ci	(O)
Subject	Verb	(le)	Number	-ci	(Object)
Wǒ	zuò	le	sān	-cì	fēijī.

'I've ridden on a plane three times.'

- |     |  |   |
|-----|--|---|
| 1.  | Nèige-diànyǐngr 'tài-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒ-kànle-liǎngcì.                                 | That movie is extremely interesting. I saw it twice.  |
| 2.  | Shàng-xīngqī wǒ-kànle-liǎngcì-diànyǐngr.   | I saw two movies last week.   |
| 3.  | Qùnián wǒ-qùle-yíci-Rìběn.   | I went to Japan once last year.   |
| 4.  | Nèige-zì wó-xiěle-'wǔci. 'Hái-bu-huì-xiě.  | I wrote that character five times. I still can't write it.  |
| 5.  | Wǒ-bù-dǒng. Qǐng-nín-'zǎishuō-yíci.  | I don't understand. Please say it once more.  |
| 6.  | Nèige-'Zhōngguo-zì bù-róng-yì-xiě. Jiāoyuán-jiāole-wǒ-sìci wǒ-hái-bu-huì-xiě.    | That Chinese character is not easy to write. The teacher taught it to me four times and I still can't write it. |
| 7.  | Wǒ-dào-'Zhōngguo-lái yǐjīng-chīguo-'jiǔci-Zhōngguo-fàn.                          | (Since) coming to China I've already eaten Chinese food nine times.   |
| 8.  | Kǎoshì-yǐhòu wó-děi-qù-kàn-yíci-diànyǐngr.                                       | After exams I must go see a movie.  |
| 9.  | Gāo-Xiānsheng-bingle. Wǒ-yīngdāng qù-'kàn-ta-yíci.                               | Mr. Gao is [lit. has become] ill. I certainly must go see him [once].   |
| 10. | Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán wǒ-hái-bu-zhīdào-zài-nǎr-ne. Míng-tian wó-děi-gēn-ta-qù-yíci. | I still don't know where Sun Yatsen Park is. I must go (there) with him [once] tomorrow.                        |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 24 phrases (Notes 1-2)

bàn	-nián
yī	-ge yuè
liǎng	-tiān
sān	-ge zhōngtóu
sì	
wǔ	

II: 48 phrases (Notes 1-2)

yì	-nián	—
liǎng	-tiān	bàn
sān		duō
liù		
qī		
bā		

III: 54 phrases (Notes 1-2)

yí	-ge	—	yuè
liǎng		bàn	xīngqī
sān		duō	zhōngtóu
jiǔ			
shí			
shíyī			

IV: 96 sentences (Notes 3 c and 4)

(Here and in the following Tables, where columns are marked with asterisks, items must be taken from the same horizontal row.)

		*				*
tā	yào	jiāo	jǐ	-ge-zhōngtóu	—	shū
	xiǎng	lù	yī	-tiān	de	yīn
		tīng		-ge-xīngqī		lùyīn
		niàn				shū

V: 80 sentences (Note 5)

(See note at head of Table IV)

	*					*
tā	zuò	-le	jǐ	-ge-zhōngtóu	—	shì
	jiāo		liǎng	-tiān	de	shū
	tīng			-ge-xīngqī		lùyīn
	niàn					shū

VI: 80 sentences (Note 6)

	*					*	
tā	zuò	-le	jǐ	-ge-zhōngtóu	—	shì	le
	jiāo		sān	-tiān	de	shū	
	tīng			-ge-xīngqī		lùyīn	
	niàn			-ge-yuè		shū	
				-nián			

VII: 96 sentences (Note 7)

tā	niàn	-le	——	——	yī	-ge-zhōngtóu	le
	zhù		yǐjing	yǒu	liǎng	-tiān	
	jiāo				sì		
	xué						

VIII: 96 sentences (Note 8)

	*				*
tā	kàn	——	jǐ	-cì	diànyǐng
	qù	-le	yí		Rìběn
	chī	-guo	sì		Zhōngguo-fàn
	bàifang		wǔ		Gāo-Xiānsheng
	zuò				fēijī
	lái				Zhōngguo

IX: 54 sentences (Note 3 d)

tā	jǐ	-nián	méi	chī Zhōngguo fàn	——
	yī	-ge-yuè		niàn Zhōngwén	le
	liǎng	-tiān		kànjian ta	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

(See The Sounds of Chinese, 20)

I. Suffixed r with final a, o, e, u, ng: add r

- |          |       |          |       |
|----------|-------|----------|-------|
| (a) bǎ   | bǎr   | (g) fǎ   | fǎr   |
| (b) gē   | gēr   | (h) zhè  | zhèr  |
| (c) suǒ  | suǒr  | (i) duǒ  | duǒr  |
| (d) tù   | tùr   | (j) shù  | shùr  |
| (e) dèng | dèngr | (k) gǒu  | gǒur  |
| (f) māo  | māor  | (l) fēng | fēngr |

II. Suffixed r with ai, an, en: drop final letter and add r

- |         |     |          |      |
|---------|-----|----------|------|
| (a) wán | wár | (d) bàn  | bàr  |
| (b) fēn | fēr | (e) mén  | mér  |
| (c) hái | hár | (f) miàn | miàr |

III. Suffixed r with final i, u after consonants: add er

- |        |      |        |      |
|--------|------|--------|------|
| (a) jī | jiēr | (d) yú | yuér |
| (b) yí | yiér | (e) yǔ | yuǐr |
| (c) qì | qièr | (f) xù | xuèr |

IV. Suffixed r with final "i," in, un: drop final letter and add er

- |         |      |          |       |
|---------|------|----------|-------|
| (a) shì | shèr | (d) xìn  | xièr  |
| (b) zǐ  | zěr  | (e) jīn  | jiēr  |
| (c) cì  | cèr  | (f) zhǔn | zhuèr |

## EXPANSION DRILLS

## I

kàn

kànwán

kàndewán

shū-kàndewán

zhèiběn-shū-kàndewán

zhèiběn-shū tā-kàndewán

zhèiběn-shū ta-jīntian-kàndewán

zhèiběn-shū ta-jīntian-kéyi-kàndewán

zhèiben-shū ta-jīntian-yídìng-kéyi-kàndewán

zhèiben-shū ta-shì-bu-shi-jīntian-yídìng-kéyi-kàndewán?

Nǐ-shuō-zhèiben-shū ta-shì-bu-shi-jīntian-yídìng-kéyi-kàndewán?

## II

shū

kàn-shū

kàn-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-kàn-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-kàn-sānge-zhōngtóu-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-kàn-sānge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-kànle-sānge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū

wǒ-kànle-sānge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le

wǒ-kànle-chàbuduō-sānge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le

wǒ-yǐjing-kànle-chàbuduō-sānge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le

Wǒ-xiànzai-yǐjing-kànle-chàbuduō-sānge-zhōngtóude-Zhōngwén-shū-le.

## A LITTLE VARIETY

This exercise shows how to give variety to your speech by saying the same thing (or virtually the same thing) in two different ways.

1. Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shi-jiàoyuán.  
'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-xuéxiào-jiāo-shū.
2. Tā-yǐqián shi-xué-kēxué-de.  
Yuánlái tā-shi-xué-kēxué-de.
3. Zhèige-zì bù-róngyi-xiě.  
Zhèige-zì hěn-nán-xiě.
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng hén-yǒu-qián.  
'Wáng-Xiānsheng qián-hěn-duō.
5. Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr bù-hén-yuǎn.  
Tā-jiā-lí-zhèr hěn-jìn.
6. Nèige-háizi-hěn-qíguài, 'yísuì-bàn jiù-huì-pǎo.  
Nèige-háizi 'yísuì-bàn jiù-huì-pǎo. 'Zhēn-qíguài.
7. Tā-zài-túshūguǎn-zuò-shì.  
Tā-zuò-shì shi-zài-túshūguǎn.
8. Wǒmen-dōu-'huānyíng nín-dào-'zhèr-lái.  
Nín-dào-'zhèr-lái wǒmen-dōu-'huānyíng.
9. Ní-zóu-yǐqián bú-yào-wàngle-dài-biǎo.  
Ní-zóu-yǐqián xiān-dài-biǎo.

10. Nèiběn-shū bǐ-zhèiběn-shū-jǐǎndān.  
Nèiběn-shū bǐ-zhèiběn-shū róngyì-niàn.
11. Xiànzài chà-wǔfēn-zhōng shídiǎn-le.  
Xiànzài jiúdiǎn-wúshiwǔfēn-le.
12. Zhèr-lí-Zhōngshān-Lù bù-yuǎn.  
Cóng-zhèr-dào-Zhōngshān-Lù hěn-jìn.
13. Yīnwei-wǒ-méi-qián, suóyǐ-bù-mǎi-fángzi.  
Wǒ-bù-mǎi-fángzi shi-yīnwei-wǒ-'méi-yǒu-qián.
14. Zhí-yǒu-yíkuài-qián bù-néng-mǎi-nèiběn-shū.  
Yíkuài-qián mǎibuliǎo-nèiběn-shū.
15. Tā-zài-'dàxué-niàn-shū shi-xué-wénxué-de.  
Tā-zài-dàxué-niàn-wénxué.
16. 'Qián-Xiānsheng xīwang-dào-'Yīngguo-qù-yíci.  
'Qián-Xiānsheng xīwang-qù-Yīngguo-yíci.
17. Dào-'gōngyuán-qù tài-yuǎn-le, suóyǐ wǒ-bù-xiǎng-qù.  
Gōngyuán-'nènmo-yuǎn wǒ-'bù-xiǎng-qù.
18. 'Zhènmo-shuō nǐ-jīntian-'bù-yídìng-lái-le.  
Tīng-nǐ-zènmo-shuō nǐ-jīntian-huòzhě-'bù-lái-le.
19. Tā-huóbuliǎo-le, bù-néng-shuō-huà-le.  
Tā-huà-yǐjīng-bù-néng-shuō-le, 'yídìng-huóbuliǎo-le.
20. Wǒ-'cháng-dào-chéng-lǐtou-qu.  
Chéng-lǐtou wǒ-'cháng-qù.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

Each of the following items consists of one or more statements followed by a question. Read each aloud, and answer the question orally in Chinese.

1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-xué-yǔánxué. Tā-duì-shénmo-hén-yǒu-xìngqu?
2. Tā-měitiān-zǎochen bādiǎn-zhōng-chī-fàn. Tā-nèige-shíhou-chī-de shi-'zǎofan háishi-'wǎnfàn?
3. Qùnian shi-yī-jiǔ-liù-yī-nián. 'Jīnnian-shi-jǐnián?
4. Tā-zuótian-tīngle èrshiwǔfēn-zhōngde-lùyīn. Wǒ-tīngle-'èrshifēn-zhōng. 'Shéi-tīngde-duō?
5. Jīntian-shi-shíyīyue-shíliùhào. Wǒ-shi-jīnnian-jiǔyue-shíliùhào kāishǐ-niàn-Zhōngwén-de. Wó-yǐjīng-niànle 'jǐge-yuède-Zhōngwén?



6. Wǒ-péngyou-niàn-gāozhōng-'èrniánjí. Tā-niàn-'zhōngxué háishi-niàn-'dàxué?
7. Nèige-rén-bènjíle. Tā-niànle-'liùniánde-gāozhōng 'hái-méi-bìyè-ne. Nǐ-shuō ta-kǎodeshàng-dàxué kǎobushàng-dàxué?
8. Zhèige-zìdiǎn zì-'tài-shǎo-le. Zhèige-zìdiǎn 'yǒu-yòng-méi-yǒu-yòng?
9. Wǒ-huì-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà, bú-huì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. Wǒ-'huì-bú-huì yòng-Zhōngguo-zì-xiě-xìn?
10. 'Shíge-rén xiǎng-zuò-'yíge-xiǎo-qìchē. Nǐ-shuō tāmen-'zuòdexià-zuò-bu-xià?

## NOTES

1. The neutral syllable yuè, as you know, is used to form names of the months: wǔyuè 'May.' Here it functions as a measure, since it can be preceded directly by a number. When yuè has a fourth tone, it is a noun meaning 'month.' It is used to count months, rather than name them, and is preceded not by a number but by a measure: wǔge-yuè 'five months.'
2. Chinese time words as a group are a good example of the differences in classification of Chinese and English words. The English words 'year,' 'month,' 'week,' 'day,' and 'hour' are all nouns—that is, they are grammatically the same kind of word. The corresponding Chinese words, however, are of two different types:

<u>Nouns</u>	<u>Measures</u>
yuè 'month'	nián 'year'
xīngqī 'week'	tiān 'day'
zhōngtóu 'hour'	

The measures nián and tiān can be preceded directly by a number:

wǔnián 'five years'  
wǔtiān 'five days'

The nouns cannot be preceded directly by a number but must have an intervening measure:

wǔge-yuè 'five months'  
wǔge-xīngqī 'five weeks'  
wǔge-zhōngtóu 'five hours'

3. Observe the differences among the following kinds of time expressions and their positions within the sentence:

(a) Time expressions indicating the WHEN of an occurrence (or non-occurrence) come BEFORE the verb:

Wǒ-míngtiān-qù. 'I'm going tomorrow.'  
Wǒ-míngtiān-bú-qù. 'I'm not going tomorrow.'

- (b) Time expressions indicating the PERIOD WITHIN WHICH of an occurrence (or non-occurrence) come BEFORE the verb:

Wó-(měi-)sāngē-xīngqī kàn-yíběn-shū. 'I read one book every three weeks.'

Wǒ-zhèi-sāntiān kànle-sìběn-shū-le. 'I've read four books within the past [lit. these] three days.'

- (c) Time expressions indicating the DURATION of an occurrence come AFTER the verb:

Tā-yào-zài-Zhōngguó zhù-sānnián. 'He will live in China for three years.'

- (d) Time expressions indicating the DURATION of a NON-occurrence come BEFORE the verb:

Wǒ-sānnián méi-xué-Zhōngwén. 'I didn't study Chinese for three years.'

Wǒ-sānnián bú-xué-Zhōngwén. 'I'm not going to study Chinese for three years.'

4. A direct object in the construction described in Note 3 c can come at the end:

Tā-yào-xué sānnián-Zhōngwén.

or  
Tā-yào-xué sānniánde-Zhōngwén.

} 'He will study Chinese for three years.'

Or, the verb may be said twice, followed first by the object and then by the time expression:

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yào-xué-sānnián. 'He will study Chinese for three years.'

5. The pattern described in Notes 3 c and 4 is made past by suffixing -le to the verb:

Tā-zài-Zhōngguó zhùle-sānnián. 'He lived in China for three years (but is doing so no longer).'

Tā-xuéle-sānnián-Zhōngwén.

or  
Tā-xuéle-sānniánde-Zhōngwén.

or  
Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-sānnián.

} 'He studied Chinese for three years (but is doing so no longer).'

6. If the pattern described in Notes 3 c and 4 has two occurrences of le—one attached to the verb, the other at the end of the sentence—the construction means 'has been doing V (and still is)':

Tā-zài-Zhōngguó zhùle-sānnián-le. 'He has been living in China for three years (and still is).'

Tā-xuéle-sānnián-Zhōngwén-le.

or  
Tā-xuéle-sānniánde-Zhōngwén-le.

or  
Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-sānnián-le.

} 'He has been studying Chinese for three years.'

7. In the construction just described ('has been—and still is—doing'), the

words yǐjīng [lit. 'already'] or yǒu [lit. 'there is'] or both may be added, as follows:

- (a) If the verb with le is not followed by an object, yǐjīng may be inserted BEFORE this verb, or yǐjīng or yǒu or both may be inserted AFTER the verb:

'He's been studying Chinese for three years.'

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-xuéle-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-yǐjīng-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-yǒu-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén xuéle-yǐjīng-yǒu-sānnián-le.

- (b) If the verb is followed by an object (in which case there is no verb suffix le), yǐjīng or yǒu or both may be inserted after the object:

'He's been studying Chinese for three years.'

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǒu-sānnián-le.

or

Tā-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-yǒu-sānnián-le.

8. The measure cì 'occasion,' which we encountered in Lesson 11 as a measure for movies (yí cì diànyǐng 'one movie'), is used also as a measure meaning 'number of times':

Wó-xiǎng-xià-xīngqī qù-kàn-liǎngcì-diànyǐng. 'I plan to go see two movies next week.' or 'I plan to go to the movies twice next week.'

Also:

Tā-láile-sāncì, kěshì-nǐ-'dōu-bú-zài-jiā. 'He came three times, but you were never at home.'

Nǐ-chīle-'jǐcì-Zhōngguo-fàn? 'How many times have you eaten Chinese food?'

In this pattern, an object referring to a person comes BEFORE, not after, the expression for number of times:

Wǒ-kànle-tā-sāncì. 'I saw him three times.'

9. An ordinal expression of time of occurrence or non-occurrence ('the first time,' 'the third time,' etc.) comes BEFORE the verb:

Dì-yí cì tā-méi-zài-jiā. 'The first time he wasn't at home.'

Zhèi-shi-wǒ dì-yí cì-lái. 'This is the first time I've come.'

10. Zài 'in' or 'at' has two separate grammatical functions:

- (a) It is used as a coverb if its subject and that of the main verb are identical:

Tā-zài-jiāli xiě-xìn. 'He's writing letters in the house.' [lit. 'He is in the house (and is) writing letters.']

- (b) It is used as a postverb (that is, suffixed to a preceding verb) if the subjects of the two verbs are different:

Tā-xiězai-shūshang. 'He wrote (it) on the book'—that is, 'He wrote (it and it is) on the book.'

In some cases the two functions of zài are interchangeable:

Tā-zài-Niūyue-zhù.  
           or  
 Tā-zhùzai-Niūyue. } 'He lives in New York.'

When the main verb is zhù 'live,' zài may be omitted altogether:

Tā-zhùzai-Niūyue.  
           or  
 Tā-zhù-Niūyue. } 'He lives in New York.'

11. The verbs lái 'come' and qù 'go' may take a direct object, without the co-verb meaning 'to':

Nǐ-shi-shénmo-shíhou lái-Zhōngguo-de? 'When was it that you came to China?'

Wǒ-lái-Měiguó yǒu-sānnián-duō-le. 'It's been over three years since I've come to America.'

12. The adverbs zài, yǒu, hái, and yě all have similar meanings but distinctly different usages. Zài means 'again, more, also, (and) then' with respect to future action:

Wǒ-míngtiān-'zài-lái. 'I'm coming again tomorrow.'

Chī-fàn-yǐhòu wǒmen-zài-qù-kàn-diànyǐng, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 'After eating let's go see a movie, O.K.?'

Yòu means 'again, more, also' referring to past action:

Tā-zuótiān-láile-yíci, jīntiān-ta-'yòu-láile-yíci. 'He came once yesterday and he came once more today.'

Hái means 'still, in addition, more' and refers to conditions now in existence:

Tā-hái-zài-zhèr. 'He is still here.'

Wǒ-hái-yào. 'I want some more.' [lit. 'I still want some.']

Wǒ-mǎile-sānběn-shū, wǒ-hái-yào-mǎi-yìběn. 'I bought three books and want to buy one more.' [lit. 'I bought three books and still want to buy one.']

Yě means 'also, too, besides' and refers generally to the subject or topic of the sentence:

Máo-Xiānsheng-zài-zhèr, Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-zài-zhèr. 'Mr. Mao is here, and Mr. Wang is also here.'

13. The adverb cái 'then; then and only then' is used before the second of two verbs to indicate that the action of the second verb occurred only after that of the first verb was completed. The verb modified by cái is never followed by le:

Wǒ-shuōle-sāncì, tā-cái-tīngjian. 'I said it three times, and only then did he hear me.'

14. Notice that English 'have to' and 'must' mean the same thing when they are affirmative, but that when made negative their meanings diverge:

(a) 'don't have to' means 'need not';

(b) 'must not' means 'permission is denied'

Chinese děi (bìděi) corresponds to both affirmative 'have to' and 'must'; but in the negative, which has the special form bú bì, it matches only the (a) negative above: 'don't have to, need not.'

15. The auxiliary verbs gāi, yīnggāi, and yīngdāng 'ought to, should' are used interchangeably. The affirmative forms often have a stronger meaning, corresponding to English 'must,' while the negative forms have the force of 'must not':

Wǒ-gāi-zǒule. 'I must go.'

Nǐ-'bù-yīngdāng-nènmo-shuō. 'You shouldn't speak so.' or 'You mustn't talk that way.'

These words, then, are nearly identical with those described in the preceding note.

16. Gēn '(together) with' is used as a coverb to join coordinate nouns:

Wǒ-gēn-ni-qù. 'I'm going with you.'

Shū-gēn-bǐ dōu-shi-wǒde. 'The books and the pens are all mine.'

17.

Shì 'be' with heavy stress emphasizes what the sentence is asserting:

Zhèiběn-shū 'shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi. 'This book is very interesting.'

Unstressed shì, bu-shì, and shì-bu-shì occur in sentences stating a contrast of some kind; their use indicates that it is some other word in the sentence to which attention is directed:

Shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-yào-lái-ma? . . . Bu-shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-yào-lái, shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng-yào-lái. 'Is it Mr. King who's coming? . . . It isn't Mr. King who's coming, it's Mr. White.'

Similarly:

Shì-Wáng-'Tàitai-yào-lái-ma? 'Is it Mrs. King who's coming?'

Tā-shì-'míngtiān-qù. 'He's going tomorrow.'

Tā-míngtiān shì-dào-'Zhōngguó-qù. 'He's going to China tomorrow.'

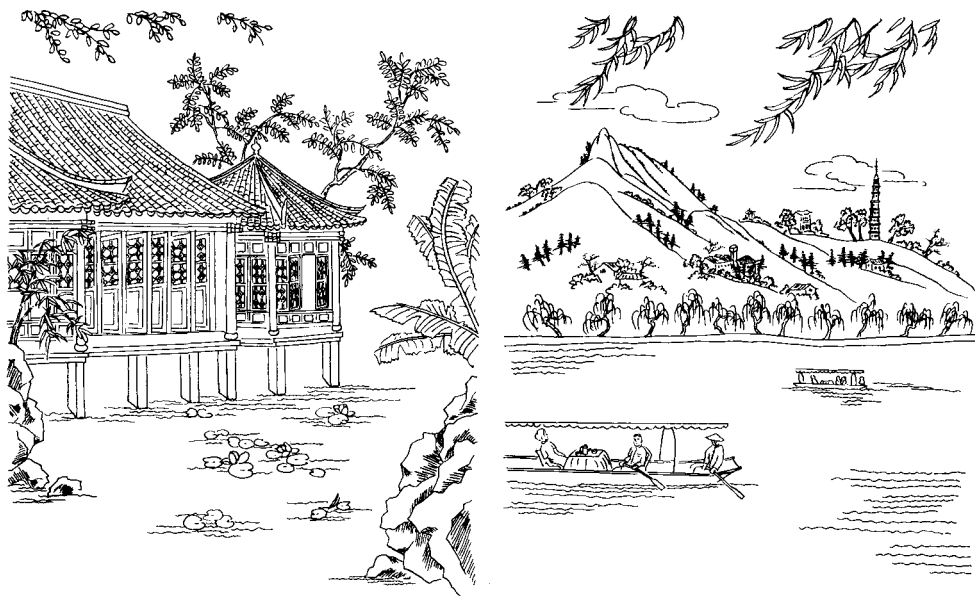
Compare the shì . . . háishi pattern in Lesson 7, Note 12, pp. 84-85.

18. The adverbs zhènmò or zènmò 'this sort' and nènmò 'that sort' are used in the sense 'so, as, to such-and-such an extent.' Zhènmò or zènmò refers to something close by and nènmò to something farther away or at no specified place or distance:

Nǐ-zhènmò-zènmò-wǎn-ne? 'How come you're so late?'

Tā-jiā-nènmò-yuǎn wǒ-bù-xiǎng-qù. 'His home is so far away that I don't think I'll go (there).'

## Lesson 16 VISITING FRIENDS



“Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng.”

Dialogue: Mr. White, accompanied by Miss Gao, arrives at the Gao home and visits with the Gaos and another guest.

Gāo: Yǐjīng-dào-le. 'Qiántou-gōngyuán-mén-kǒu jiù-shì-chē-zhàn. Wǒmen-jiù-xià-chē. 'Xiàle-chē shàng-shān-jiù-dào-le.

5

Here we are. The park gate ahead is the bus stop. [We get off now.] After we get off and climb the hill we'll be there.

Bái: Fǔshàng-zhèige-dìfang hén-hǎo-a. 'Yòu-yǒu-shān 'yòu-yóu-shuǐ. 'Zhènmo-piàoliang!

This area around your home is very nice. You have hills and you have water. So beautiful!

Gāo: Suóyī-wǒ-fùqīn 'měitiān-dōu-yào-chūqu-zóuzou. Lián-xīngqītiān tā-méishì dōu-yào-chūqu. Chū-qu-huílai dōu-shì-zǒu-lù.

10

That's why my father likes to go out for a walk every day. Even on Sundays when he doesn't have to work, he always goes out for a walk [lit. going out and returning is always (a matter of) walking].

Bái: Nǐ-fùqīn 'yé-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-ma?

15

Does your father also like to travel?

Gāo: Tā-'zuì-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-le.

He likes nothing better than

	Tā-měinián dōu-lǚxíng-jǐcì.		traveling. Every year he takes a few trips.
Bái :	Tā-dōu-dàoguo 'shénmo-dìfang?	20	Where has he been?
Gāo :	Zhōngguo-chàbuduō 'suó-yǒude-dìfang tā-dōu-dào-guo-le.		He's been almost everywhere in China.
Bái :	Tā-zuì-xǐhuan 'shénmo-dìfang?	25	What place does he like best?
Gāo :	Yīnwei-tā-shi-'Hángzhou-rén, suóyi-tā-shuō tā-zuì-xǐhuan-Sūzhou-Hángzhou.		Since he comes from Hangchow, he says he likes Soochow and Hangchow best of all.
Bái :	Lǚxíng 'shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi. 'Ní-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-ma?	30	Travel <u>is</u> interesting. Do you like to travel?
Gāo :	Wó-xǐhuan, kěshi-méi-jīhui. Wǒ-'shénmo-dìfang-dōu-méi-qùguo. . . . Dào-le. Wǒmen-xià-chē-ba.	35	I do, but I don't have any opportunities (to do so). I haven't been anywhere. . . . Here we are. Let's get off.
Bái :	Wàng-'něibiān-zǒu?		Which way do we go?
Gāo :	Wàng-'zuó-guǎi-jiu-shàng-shān.		We turn left and go up the hill.
Bái :	Zhèige-dìfang-'zhēn-hǎo. 'Ní-měitiān-dào-xuéxiào zuò-chē háishi-zǒu-lù-ne?	40	This place is really nice. [Every day] do you take the bus to school, or do you walk?
Gāo :	Wǒ-chàbuduō-dōu-zuò-chē.		I nearly always take a bus.
Bái :	Zuò-chē yào-'duōshao-shí-hou-ne?		How long does it take to go by bus?
Gāo :	'Èrshifēn-zhōng jiu-dào-le.	45	It takes twenty minutes.
Bái :	Fǔshang-lí-xuéxiào yě-bu-hěn-jìn.		Your home isn't very close to the school.
Gāo :	Bú-tài-yuǎn. . . . Dào-le.*		It's not too far. . . . Here we are.* (She knocks.)
Gāo-Tàitai :	Shéi-a?		Who (is it)?
Gāo-Xiáojie :	Wǒ. Mā! Kāi-mén! 'Kèren-lái-le.	50	Me. Mom! Open the door! The guest has come.

\* The layout of the Gao home is as follows. The main door or gate leads into a courtyard. On the left are utility rooms, the kitchen, and a store-room; on the right is a study; and straight ahead, facing south, is a combined living room and dining room, flanked on both sides by bedrooms. The gate is barred on the inside, not locked. When Miss Gao knocks, Mrs. Gao comes out of the kitchen to let her in, and Mr. Gao comes out of the living room to receive his guest.

(Gāo-Tàitai-chūlai duì-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō:)

Gāo-Tàitai: Oh, 'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le. 'Háo-jiǔ-bu-jiàn. Ní-hǎo-ma? 'Máng-bu-máng?

55

Bái: Gāo-Tàitai, 'háo-jiǔ-bu-jiàn. Nín-hǎo? Gāo-'Xiānsheng-hǎo-ma?

60

Gāo-Tàitai: Hǎo, xièxie-ni.

(Gāo-Xiānsheng tīngjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le yě-chūlai-le.)

Gāo-Xiānsheng: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, hǎo-ma? Lái-lái. Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi-'jiè-shao-jièshao. Zhèiwèi-shi-'Wàn-Jiàoshù. Zhèiwèi-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng.

65

70

Bái: Jiúyǎng.

Wàn: Ní-hǎo.

Wàn: Wǒ-'cháng-tīng-'Lǎo-Gāo\*tán-dào-ni.

Gāo: Jīntiān-hǎojíle. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi dōu-shuō-'Zhōng-wén. Rúguǒ nǐmen-shuō-'Yīngwén wǒ-nèirén-lián-'yíge-zì yě-tīngbu-dǒng. Tā-jiu-méi-fázi gēnkèren-shuō-huà-le. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi búdàn-néng-shuō, érqǐě-shuōde-'shífēn-hǎo.

75

80

Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng-kèqi.

Wàn: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou dào-'Zhōngguó-lái-de?

85

Bái: Wǒ-shi-qùnian-'báyue-láide. Nín-ne?

Wàn: Wó-yǐjīng-láile-'liǎngnián-le. Nǐ-zài-'něige-dàxué?

90

(Mrs. Gao comes out and says to Mr. White:)

Oh, Mr. White, you're here! I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you? Have you been busy?

Mrs. Gao, I haven't seen you for a long time (either). How are you? How is Mr. Gao?

Fine, thanks.

(Mr. Gao, on hearing that Mr. White has arrived, also comes out.)

Mr. White, how are you? Come (in), come (in). I'll introduce the two of you. This is Professor Wanamaker. This is Mr. White.

Pleased to meet you.

Pleased to meet you.

I've often heard [Old] Gao\* speak of you.

This is wonderful. You can both speak Chinese. If you spoke English my wife wouldn't understand even one word, and she wouldn't have any way of talking to you [lit. to the guests]. Not only can you both speak (Chinese), but you both speak very well.

Mr. Gao is being polite.

Mr. White, when did you come to China?

I came last August. And you?

I've been here two years now. At what university are you?

\* Friends of about the same age address each other either by their given names or by their surnames preceded by the word lǎo 'old': Lǎo-Qián 'Old Qian.'



- Bái : Wǒ-zài-'Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū. I'm studying at Far Eastern University.
- Wàn: Yuǎn-Dà wǒ-hái-yǒu-jǐge-péngyou. Nǐ-shì-xué-shénmo-de? 95 I have a few other friends at Far Eastern. What are you studying?
- Bái : Wǒ-xué-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué. (I'm studying) language and literature.
- Wàn: Hǎojíle. Wǒmen-'dōu-shì yánjiu-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué-de. 100 Wonderful. We're both students of language and literature.
- Bái : Wǒ-kànguo-nín-zuò-de-nèiběn 'Zhōngguo-Wénxué-Yánjiu. Nín-xiě-de-zhēnhǎo. Duì-wǒmen-xué-wénxué-de-rén hén-yǒu-yòng. 105 I've read your Studies in Chinese Literature. You've done a really fine job of writing. It's a great help for those of us studying literature.
- Wàn: Wǒ-xiànzài-'yòu-xiěle-yìběn yánjiu-wénxué-de-shū. I've just finished (writing) another book of literary research.
- Gāo : 'Bái-Xiānsheng, Lǎo-Wàn-de-xuéwen 'zhēn-bú-cuò. 110 Mr. White, [Old] Wan's scholarship is really good. You two should get together often to carry on your studies.
- Wàn: Lǎo-Gāo, nǐ-bié-zhènmo-kèqi 'hǎo-bù-hǎo? 115 [Old] Gao, don't flatter so, [all right?]
- (Wàn-Jiàoshòu duì-Gāo-'Xiáojie-shuō:)
- Měiyīng, lái, zuòxia. Wǒmen-yíkuài-tántan. Gāo-Xiáojie cōngmíng-piàoliang. Shū-niànde-hǎo, huà-huà-de-hǎo. 120 Meiying, come sit down. Let's talk together. (To the others:) Miss Gao is intelligent and attractive. She studies well, she paints well.
- Bái : Duì-le. 'Gāo-Xiáojie, wǒmen-děi-'kànkān-nǐde-huà-le. 125 That's right. Miss Gao, we must look at your paintings.
- Gāo Xiáojie: Bié-kàn-le. Wǒ-huà-de-bù-hǎo. Don't look (at them). I paint badly.
- Bái : Bié-kèqi-le. Qíng-ní-bǎ-huà-náchulai wǒmen-kànkān. 130 Don't be polite. Please bring out the paintings for us to look at.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Měiyīng, bá-nǐ-'suǒyǒu-de-huà dōu-náchulai. Qǐng-tāmen-liǎngwèi-kànkān. Meiying, bring all your paintings out. Let [both of] them have a look.
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Wǒ-zhèr zhí-yǒu-jǐzhāng-huà. 135 I have only a few paintings here.

(Gāo-Xiáojie náchu-sì-wǔzhāng-huà-lai.)

Bái : Huàde-hǎojíle. Nǐ-xuéguo-jǐnián-le? 140

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Zhèige-háizi tā-'hén-xǐhuan-huà-huà. Xué-le-'méi-yǒu-jǐnián.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Wǒ-xuéle-'sānnián.

Wàn : 'Zhēn-cōngming. Xuéle-'sānnián jiu-huàde-'zhènmo-hǎo. Dōu-shi-xiànzài-huà-de-ma? 145

Gāo-Xiáojie: Bú-shi. Yǒude-shi kǎishǐ-'xué-de-shíhou-huà-de. Yǒude-shi 'xiànzàihuà-de. 150

Bái : Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huà 'zhēn-hǎo. Huà-de-shi-nǎr-a? 155

Gāo-Xiáojie: Zhèi-jiu-shi-Hángzhou-a.

Bái : Oh, zhè-jiu-shi-Hángzhou-a. 'Zhēn-piàoliang.

Wàn : Zhōngguo yǒu-yíjù-huà-shuō : 160

'Shàng-yǒu-tiāntáng,  
'Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng.

Shuōde-yì 'diár-yě-bú-cuò.

(Miss Gao brings out four or five paintings.)

They're wonderfully well done. How many years have you studied?

This child loves to paint. She hasn't studied many years.

I've studied three years.

Really talented. Three years of study and you paint so well. Did you paint them all just recently [lit. now]?

No. I painted some when I began to study and some just recently.

This landscape painting is really nice. What place is it [that's shown]?

Why, this is Hangchow.

Oh, so this is Hangchow. It's really attractive.

China has a saying :

Above is heaven,  
Below are Soochow and Hangchow.

The saying is not at all an exaggeration.

## VOCABULARY

bǎ	take (CV)
bié	don't (AV)
búdàn	not only (MA) [lit. not merely]
chū	exit from (TV)
cuò	wrong, mistaken (CV)
érqiě	but also (MA) [lit. and moreover]
fázi	method, plan (N)
Hángzhou	Hangchow (PW)
jiàoshòu	professor (N) (also, a title)

jièshao	introduce (TV)
jìn	enter (TV)
jiúyǎng	Pleased to meet you. [lit. long look up to] (See Supplementary Lesson 16, Note 1)
jù	(measure for sentences)
kāi	open (door, etc.); drive (car) (TV)
kèren	guest (N) [lit. guest person]
lián	even, even including (CV); (also, a surname)
lǚxíng	travel (IV) [lit. travel go]
mā	(one's own) mother (N) (Note 15)
ná	hold, grasp, carry, take (TV)
nèiren	(one's own) wife (N) (Note 16)
piàoliang	attractive, elegant, beautiful (SV) [lit. bleach bright]
shānshuǐ	scenery, landscape (N) [lit. mountain water]
shuǐ	water (N)
'suóyǒude	all (before nouns)
Sūzhou	Soochow (PW) (Sū is also a surname)
tiāntáng	heaven (N) [lit. sky hall]
xuéwen	learning, scholarship (N) [lit. study ask]
yǒude	some (before nouns)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| bié<br>bié-tīng                       | don't!<br>don't listen!            |
| 1. Nǐ-bié-tīng-tāde-huà.              | Don't you listen to him.           |
| ná<br>bié-ná                          | take<br>don't take!                |
| 2. Bié-ná-wǒde-dōngxi.                | Don't take my things.              |
| jìn<br>jìn-chéng                      | enter<br>enter the city            |
| 3. Qìchē-bù-kéyi-jìn-chéng.           | Cars cannot enter the city.        |
| chū<br>chū-chéng                      | exit from, leave<br>leave the city |
| 4. Wǒmen-yíkuàr-chū-chéng<br>kéyi-ma? | Can we leave the city together?    |
| jìn<br>jìnlai                         | enter<br>come in                   |
| 5. Qǐng-jìnlai!                       | Please come in!                    |

- |     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| 6.  | jìnqu<br>kéyi-jìnqu<br>Wōmen-kéyi-jìnqu-ma?  | go in<br>can go in<br>May we go in?  |
| 7.  | chū<br>chūlai<br>Qǐng-nín-chūlai-kànkàn.   | leave<br>come out<br>Please come out and take a look.  |
| 8.  | chūqu<br>Tāmen-dōu-chūqu-le.   | go out<br>They've all gone out.  |
| 9.  | ná<br>náqu<br>Dōu-'náqu-le-méi-you?  | carry<br>take away<br>Have they all been taken out?  |
| 10. | nálai<br>Nǐ-nálai-ba!  | bring<br>Bring it!   |
| 11. | nèiren<br>wǒ-nèiren<br>Wǒ-nèiren bú-zài-jiā.<br>Tā-chūqu-le.                                     | wife<br>my wife<br>My wife isn't home. She's gone out.   |
| 12. | kèren<br>qǐng-kèren<br>Qǐng-kèren-jìnlai.  | guest<br>invite guests<br>Invite the guests to come in.  |
| 13. | jiàoshòu<br>'Máo-Jiàoshòu<br>'Máo-Jiàoshòu xià-'kè-le-<br>méi-you?                               | professor<br>Professor Mao<br>Has Professor Mao left class?  |
| 14. | zǒulái<br>zǒuqù<br>zǒulái-zǒuqù<br>Háizi-zài-lùshang zǒulái-<br>zǒuqù.                           | walk toward<br>walk away from<br>pace back and forth<br>The child is walking back and forth on the road.               |
| 15. | xiǎnglái-xiǎngqù<br>yǐnggāi-'zěnmò-zuò<br>Wó-xiǎnglái-xiǎngqù bù-zhī-<br>dào-yǐnggāi-'zěnmò-zuò. | think over and over<br>how it should be done<br>I thought and thought (but still)<br>don't know how it should be done. |
| 16. | huí-jiā<br>huí-jiā-qu<br>Nǐ-'shēnmò-shíhou huí-<br>jiā-qu?                                       | return home<br>go back home<br>When do you go back home?   |
| 17. | huí-jiā<br>huí-jiā-lai<br>Tā-jīntian 'bù-huí-jiā-lai.  | return home<br>come back home<br>He isn't coming [back] home to-<br>day.   |

18. mā  
Mā! Wǒmen-'shénmo-shí-  
hou-chī-fàn?  
mother  
Mom! When do we eat?
19. lǚxíng  
lǚxíng-liǎngcì  
Wó-měinián-lǚxíng-liǎngcì.  
travel  
make two trips  
I make two trips a year.
20. Hángzhou  
dà-chéng  
Hángzhou shi-'dà-chéng-ma?  
Hangchow  
big city  
Is Hangchow a big city?
21. Sūzhou  
lí-Sūzhou  
Hángzhou-lí-Sūzhou 'bù-yuǎn.  
Soochow  
from Soochow  
Hangchow is not far from Soochow.
22. yǒude  
yǒude-hǎo  
Yǒude-hǎo, yǒude-'bù-hǎo.  
some  
some are good  
Some are good, some are bad.
23. 'suóyǒude  
'suóyǒude-rén  
Qíng-'suóyǒude-rén-dōu-lái.  
all  
all the people  
Invite everyone to come.
24. jìnqu  
nájinqu  
Dōu-'nájinqu-le-méi-you?  
go in  
take in  
Have they all been taken in?
25. nádejìngqù  
nábuìngqù  
Yǒude-'nádejìngqù, yǒude-  
'nábuìngqù.  
able to carry in  
unable to carry in  
Some can be carried in, some can't [be carried in].
26. shuǐ  
méi-yóu-shuǐ  
Húli-méi-yóu-shuǐ.  
water  
there's no water  
There's no water in the lake.
27. fázi  
zhèige-fázi  
Zhèige-fázi bú-tài-hǎo.  
method, way, means  
this method  
This method isn't very good.
28. méi-yǒu-fázi  
méi-fázi-niàn-shū  
Yīnwei-wǒ-'méi-qián, suóyi-  
'méi-fázi-niàn-shū.  
have no means (of doing something)  
have no way to study  
Since I have no money I have no way of studying.
29. kāi  
kāi-mén  
Qíng-nǐ-qu-kāi-mén.  
open  
open the door  
Please go open the door.

- kāi  
 kāi-qìchē  
 30. Nǐ-huì-bu-huì-kāi-qìchē?  
 drive  
 drive a car  
 Do you know how to drive a car?
- 'náhuíqu  
 'náhuí-jīā-qu  
 31. Nǐ-'dōu-náhuí-jīā-qu-le-ma?  
 take back  
 take back home  
 Did you take them all back home?
- jù  
 liǎngjù-huà  
 32. Zhèi-liǎngjù-huà shì-'shén-mo-yìsi?  
 (measure for sentences)  
 two sentences  
 What is the meaning of these two sentences?
- xuéwen  
 tāde-xuéwen  
 33. Tāde-xuéwen-hǎojié.  
 learning  
 his scholarship  
 He is extremely learned. [lit. His scholarship is extremely good.]
- xuéwen  
 yǒu-xuéwen  
 34. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu hén-yǒu-xuéwen.  
 learning  
 be learned  
 Professor Wanamaker is very learned.
- piàoliang  
 35. 'Nèige-nǚ-xuésheng 'hěn-piàoliang.  
 attractive  
 That girl student is very attractive.
- shānshuǐ  
 zhèrde-shānshuǐ  
 36. Zhèrde-shānshuǐ hěn-piàoliang.  
 scenery  
 the scenery here  
 The scenery here is very attractive.
- shānshuǐ  
 shānshuǐ-huàr  
 37. Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huàr 'duōshao-qián?  
 landscape  
 landscape painting  
 How much is this landscape painting?
- búdàn  
 érqiě  
 38. Tā-búdàn-piàoliang, érqiě hén-yǒu-qián.  
 not only  
 but also  
 She's not only attractive, but also very rich.
- niàndào  
 niàndào-dì-'jǐkè?  
 39. Wǒmen-jīntian niàndào-dì-'jǐkè?  
 reach [in studying]  
 reach what lesson?  
 What lesson have we reached today?
- niànbudào  
 niànbudào-dì-èrshíkè  
 40. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī niànbudào-dì-èrshíkè.  
 unable to reach [in studying]  
 unable to reach the 20th lesson  
 We can't get to Lesson 20 by next week.

- pǎodào  
 pǎodào-nǎr-qu?  
 41. Tā-pǎodào-nǎr-qu-le?  
 run to  
 run away to where?  
 Where's he run off to?
- bǎ  
 bǎ-'suóyǒude-shū  
 42. Qíng-ní-bǎ 'suóyǒude-shū  
 dōu-gěi-ta.  
 take  
 take all the books  
 Please give him all the books.
- cuò  
 cuò-le  
 43. Wǒ-zhīdao-wǒ-cuò-le.  
 wrong  
 made a mistake  
 I know I made a mistake.
- bú-cuò  
 hěn-bú-cuò  
 44. Nèige-diànyǐng hěn-bu-cuò.  
 not bad  
 very good  
 That movie is very good.
- cuò  
 niàncuò  
 45. Zhèige-zì nǐ-niàncuò-le.  
 wrong  
 read incorrectly  
 You've read this character in-  
 correctly.
- xiěcuò-le  
 zài-xiě-yíci  
 46. Bá-xiěcuò-le-de-zì 'zài-xiě-  
 yíci.  
 wrote incorrectly  
 write once more  
 Write once more the characters  
 that you wrote incorrectly.
- jièshao  
 nǐmen-liǎngwèi  
 47. Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi  
 'jièshao-jièshao.  
 introduce  
 the two of you  
 I'll introduce the two of you (to  
 each other).
- jièshao-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu  
 gěi-'Bái-Xiānsheng  
 48. Qíng-ní-gěi-'Bái-Xiānsheng  
 jièshao-jièshao-'Wàn-Jiào-  
 shòu.  
 introduce Professor Wana-  
 maker  
 to Mr. White  
 Please introduce Professor  
 Wanamaker to Mr. White.
- lián  
 lián-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu  
 49. Lián-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu yě-bù-  
 dǒng.  
 even  
 even Professor Wanamaker  
 Even Professor Wanamaker  
 doesn't understand.
- lián-Niūyue  
 50. Wǒ-lián-Niūyue dōu-méi-qù-  
 guo.  
 even New York  
 I haven't even been to New York.
- yìfēn-qíán  
 51. Wǒ-'yìfēn-qíán dōu-méi-you.  
 one cent  
 I don't even have a cent.
- jiúyǎng  
 52. Liǎngge-rén-dōu-shuō: "Jiú-  
 yǎng."  
 pleased to meet you  
 Both persons said: "Pleased to  
 meet you."

- |     |                                      |                                     |
|-----|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|     | tiāntáng<br>shàngbuliǎo              | heaven<br>unable to go up           |
| 53. | Tā-'yídìng shàngbuliǎo-<br>tiāntáng! | He certainly can't go to heaven!    |
|     | yóu-'jǐkuài-qíán?                    | have how many dollars?              |
| 54. | Ní-yóu-'jǐkuài-qíán?                 | How many dollars do you have?       |
|     | 'yóu-jǐkuài-qíán                     | have a few dollars                  |
| 55. | Wǒ-'zhí-yóu-jǐkuài-qíán.             | I have only a few dollars.          |
|     | shéi-shuō?                           | who says?                           |
|     | 'shéi-dōu-shuō                       | everyone says                       |
| 56. | 'Shéi-dōu-shuō tā-'hén-yǒu-<br>qián. | Everyone says he's very<br>wealthy. |
|     | yào-shénmo?                          | want what?                          |
|     | 'shénmo-yě-bú-yào                    | want nothing                        |
| 57. | Wǒ-'shénmo-yě-bú-yào.                | I want nothing.                     |
|     | tā-xiě-shū                           | he writes books                     |
| 58. | Shū-shi-'tā-xiě-de.                  | The books were written by him.      |

## PATTERN DRILLS

## Pattern 16.1. Verbs of Motion (Note 1 below)

S	V	O
Subject	Verb	Object
Tā	shàng	shān.

'He is climbing the hill.'

- |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | 'Jiàoyuán duì-xuésheng-shuō:<br>"Shàng-kè-de-shíhou bié-<br>wàngle-ná-shū." | The teacher said to the students:<br>"When you go to class don't for-<br>get to take (your) books." |
| 2. | Míngtiān tā-xiǎng-chū-chéng-<br>kàn-péngyou.                                | Tomorrow he plans to leave the<br>city to see (some) friends.                                       |
| 3. | 'Bái-Xiānsheng-jìn-chéng mǎi-<br>le-hěn-duō-dōngxi.                         | Mr. White went to the city and<br>bought a lot of things.   |
| 4. | Wó-měitiān-wǎnshang 'bādiǎn-<br>zhōng-huī-jīā.                              | I return home every evening at<br>eight o'clock.  |
| 5. | 'Máo-Xiānsheng míngtiān-<br>zǎochen-shàng-chuán.                            | Mr. Mao will go aboard tomor-<br>row morning.   |
| 6. | Tā-zhùzai-shānshang. Měi-<br>tiān-dōu-yào 'shàng-shān<br>'xià-shān.         | He lives on a hill. Every day he<br>goes up and down the hill.                                      |



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. Xuéxiào zài-hú-zuǒbiar. Wǒ-jiā zài-hú-yòubiār. Měitiān-yào-guò-hú. | The school is to the left of the lake. My home is to the right of the lake. I have to cross the lake every day. |
| 8. Wǒmen-jīntian 'shénmo-shíhou-xià-kè?                               | When do we leave class today?   |
| 9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng hái-yǒu-'sān-ge-yuè jiū-huí-guó-le.                | Mr. Wang still has three months before returning to his own country.  |
| 10. 'Máo-Xiānsheng jīntian-wǎn-shang 'jiúdiǎn-zhōng-shàng-fēijī.      | Mr. Mao boards the plane this evening at nine.  |

Pattern 16.2. Directive Postverbs (Notes 2-3 below)

S	V	-PV
Subject	Verb	Postverb
Tā	shàng	-qu.
'He is going up.'		

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Shū-mǎi-le, kěshi-méi-náilai.  | The books have been bought, but not brought (here).                                   |
| 2. Wǒ-nèiren hái-méi-huílai-ne.  | My wife hasn't come back yet.   |
| 3. Zuótiān wǒ-qu-zhǎo-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Wǒ-hái-méi-jìn-qu, tā-jiū-chūlai-le. | Yesterday I went to visit Mr. Gao. Just as I was about to go in, he came out.         |
| 4. Ní-'zěnmó-lái-de? . . . Wó-zǒulai-de.                                   | How did you come? . . . I came on foot.   |
| 5. Wǒ-jīntian 'jiā-lǐtóu-yǒu-shì. Wǒ-'xiànzài-jiū-huíqu.                   | I have something to do at home today. I'm going back (there) right now.               |
| 6. Wó-yǒu-yìběn 'hén-hǎode-zì-diǎn. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu jièqu-le.                | I have an excellent dictionary. Professor Wanamaker borrowed it [and took it away].   |
| 7. Nèige-zì wǒ-wàngle. Xiǎng-lái-xiǎngqù 'hái-bu-rènshí.                   | I've forgotten that character. I've thought and thought and still don't recognize it. |
| 8. Kèren-lái-le, nèige-háizi pǎo-lái-pǎoqu.                                | When the guests came the child ran back and forth.                                    |
| 9. Jīntian-lùshang guòlái-guòqu-de-rén hěn-duǒ.                            | Today there are a lot of people going back and forth on the road.                     |
| 10. 'Bái-Xiānsheng bú-zài-jiā. Chūqu-le.                                   | Mr. White isn't at home. He's gone out.   |

## Pattern 16.3. Objects and Postverbs (Notes 4-5 below)

S	V	O	(PV)
Subject	Verb	Object	(Postverb)
Tā	shàng	shān	qu.

'He is going up the hill.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Wǒ-shàng-shān qu-bàifang-<br>'Gāo-Xiānsheng.                              | I'm going up the hill to visit Mr. Gao.                              |
| 2. Wǒ-fùqin chū-chéng-qu-le.   | My father has gone out of town.                                      |
| 3. Wǒ-shi-zuótiān jìn-chéng-lái-de.  | I came into town yesterday.  |
| 4. Mā! 'Qíng-nǐ shàng-'zhèr-lai.   | Mom! Please come here.   |
| 5. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'Qián-Xiānsheng tāmen-'dōu-shàng-shān-lái-le.              | Mr. Bai and Mr. Qian both came up the hill.                          |
| 6. Wǒ-hēn-xīwang shàng-'Hángzhou-qu-lǚxíng.                                  | I hope very much to go to Hangchow for a trip.                       |
| 7. Wǒ-yǒu-jīhuì yě-shàng-'Sūzhou-qu-kànkàn.                                  | (If) I have an opportunity I will also go to Soochow to have a look. |
| 8. Nèige-háizi xiànzài-'hái-méihuí-jiā-lai-ne. Bù-zhīdào tā-shàng-nǎr-qu-le. | That child still hasn't come home. I don't know where he's gone.     |
| 9. Yǐjīng-'shídiǎn-le. Wǒ-yào-huí-jiā-qu-le.                                 | It's already ten. I'm going back home.                               |
| 10. 'Wáng-Jiàoshòu jīnnián-jiǔ-yue-huí-guó-qu.                               | Professor King is going back to his own country this September.      |

## Pattern 16.4. Compound Verbs (Note 6 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	(bu/de)	V <sub>2</sub>	PV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	(bu/de)	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Postverb
Tā	pǎo		shang	lai.

'He is running up(ward).'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Yǒude-háizi pǎoshànglai-le,<br>yǒude-háizi pǎoxiaqu-le. | Some children ran up, some (children) ran down. |
| 2. Shān-'tài-gāo, zǒubushàngqù.                            | The hill is too high, (one) can't walk up it.   |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. Nèige-shān-'tài-gāo. Suóyǒu-de-rén 'dōu-zǒubushàngqù. | That hill is too high. Nobody can walk up it.           |
| 4. Wǒde-shū nábuhuílái-le.                               | I can't get my book back.                               |
| 5. Zuótian wǒ-cóng-shūdiàn 'zǒuhuíqu-de.                 | I walked back from the bookstore yesterday.             |
| 6. Nèige-háizi 'zǒuhuílai-de.                            | That child came back on foot.                           |
| 7. Nèige-mén 'tài-xiǎo. Méiyǒu-fázi 'zǒujìnqu.           | That door is too small. There's no way of going in.     |
| 8. Zhèige-dōngxi 'tài-dà. Nábujìnqu.                     | This thing is too big. It can't be carried in.          |
| 9. Nèitiáo-lù yǒu-shuǐ, zǒubugòqù.                       | There's water on the road, (you) can't walk across.     |
| 10. Nèige-dōngxi bú-'tài-dà. 'Yídìng-nádejìnqu.          | That thing isn't too big. It can certainly be taken in. |

Pattern 16.5. Compound Verbs with Objects (Notes 6-7)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>	O	PV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Object	Postverb
Tā	pǎo	shàng	shān	lái.

'He is running up the hill (toward us).'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Tā-kāi-mén zǒujìn-fángzi-qu-le.                                 | He opened the door and went into the house.                           |
| 2. Yǒude-náhuí-shūdiàn-qu, yǒude-náhuí-túshūguǎn-qu.               | Take some back to the bookstore, and [take] some back to the library. |
| 3. 'Nèige-dōngxi yīngdāng-nájìn-fángzi-lai.                        | That thing should be brought into the house.                          |
| 4. Tā-zuótian-wǎnshang 'shíyī-diǎn-bàn-zhōng cái-zǒuhuí-jiā-qu-de. | Yesterday evening (it was) eleven-thirty before he walked back home.  |
| 5. 'Zuótian-tāmen-sānge-rén yíkuàr-zǒushang-shān-qu-le.            | Yesterday the three of them walked up the mountain together.          |
| 6. Wǒ-'wàngle-ná-běnzi-le. Wódéi-'pǎohuí-jiā-qu-ná.                | I forgot to bring (my) notebook. I must hurry back home to get it.    |
| 7. Ní-yǐqián-jiè-de-shū qǐng-'náhuí-túshūguǎn-lai.                 | Please bring back to the library the books that you borrowed earlier. |
| 8. Zuótian wǒ-kàn-diànyǐngr-yǐhòu, wǒ-shi-'zǒuhuí-jiā-qu-de.       | Yesterday I walked (back) home after I saw the movie.                 |

9. Ní-mǎi-de-shū 'dōu-yào-ná-huí-Měiguó-qu-ma? Are you taking all the books you bought back to America?
10. Lùyīnjī míngtiān-nǐ-yào-'náhuì-xuéxiào-lai. You must bring the recorder back to school tomorrow.

Pattern 16.6. Compound Verbs with dào (Notes 8-9)

S	V	- <u>dào</u>	P	( <u>lai/qu</u> )
Subject	Verb	'to'	Place	('come'/'go')
Tā	huí	-dào	shānshang	qu.

'He went back to the top of the hill.

1. 'Xiān-nádao-zhèr-lai, 'hòu-nádao-wàitou-qu. First bring it here, and then take it outside.
2. Zhèiběn-shū yǐjīng-xuédao dì-shíliùkè-le. We've already studied this book up to Lesson 16.
3. Wǒmen-'xià-xīngqī xuédedào-xuébudào dī-shíjiùkè? By next week can we study up to Lesson 19?
4. Wó-mǔqīn huídào-Měiguó-qu-le. My mother has gone back to America.
5. Tā-xiěde-nèiběn-shū yǐjīng-'xiědào-nǎr-le? How far has he gotten in that book he's writing?
6. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'méi-zuò-chē, shì-'zōudào-chénglǐ-qu-de. Mr. Gao didn't go by car, he went to town on foot.
7. Wǒde-shū dōu-nádao-jiā-qu-le. My books have all been taken home.
8. Nǐmen-tīng-lùyīn 'yídìng-yào-tīngdào dì-shíliùkè. In listening to the recordings, you must be sure to listen up to Lesson 16.
9. Qǐng-wèn, wǒmen-jīntian xué-dào-nǎr-le? May I ask, where have we gotten to [lit. studied to] today?
10. Chē kāidào-nǎr-qu-le? Where has the car been driven to?

Pattern 16.7. Definite Objects with the Coverb bǎ (Note 10 below)

S	<u>bǎ</u>	O <sub>1</sub>	V	(O <sub>2</sub> )
Subject	'take'	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb	(Object <sub>2</sub> )
Wó	bǎ	zìdiǎn	gěi	ta.

'I gave him the dictionary.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. 'Bái-Xiānsheng bǎ-tāde-shū 'dōu-nádào-xuéxiào-qu-le.                           | Mr. White took all his books to school.  |
| 2. Wó-bǎ-tāmende-míngzi 'dōu-wàng-le.   | I've forgotten all their names.  |
| 3. Ní-bǎ-nèiběn-shū 'dōu-kàn-wán-le-ma?   | Have you finished reading all of that book?  |
| 4. Wǒ-rúguó-yǒu-qián, bǎ-nèige-shūdiànde-shū 'dōu-mǎilai.                         | If I had the money, I'd buy all the books in that bookstore.                                 |
| 5. Tā-bǎ-lùyīnjī-mài-le.  | He sold the recorder.  |
| 6. 'Bái-Xiānsheng bǎ-jīntian-xué-de-zì 'dōu-xiězài-běnzi-shang.                   | Mr. White wrote in his notebook all the words (he) studied today.                            |
| 7. Qíng-ni-bǎ xué-yǔyán-de 'fāngfǎ gàosu-wo.                                      | Please tell me about the way to study languages.   |
| 8. Nèige-xuésheng-'zhēn-bèn. Bǎ-'zuì-jǐǎndānde-zì dōu-xiěcuò-le.                  | That student is really stupid. He wrote all the simplest characters wrong.                   |
| 9. Jīntian wó-bá-biǎo kàncuò-le.  | I looked at my watch wrong today.  |
| 10. 'Máo-Xiānsheng bǎ-shūdiàn-lide-Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn 'dōu-náchulai géi-wǒ-kànkàn. | Mr. Mao brought out all the Chinese-English dictionaries in the bookstore for me to look at. |
| 11. Ní-bǎ-shū 'dōu-mǎi-le-ma?   | Did you buy all the books?   |
| 12. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng bǎ-shānshang-nèisuǒr-fángzi-mài-le.                           | Mr. King sold that house on the hill.  |
| 13. Tā-bá-wǒde-shū dōu-náqu-le.   | He took away all my books.   |
| 14. 'Bié-bǎ-zhèiběn-shū-gěi-ta. Wǒ-hái-kàn-ne.                                    | Don't give him this book. I'm still reading it.  |
| 15. Nǐ-bù-bǎ-qián-gěi-ta tā-zěnmomǎi-ne?  | (If) you don't give him the money how will he buy it?  |

Pattern 16.8. The Coverb lián (Note 11 below)

Pattern 16.8a.	<u>lián</u>	S	<u>yě/dōu</u>	V
	'even'	Subject	'also'	Verb
	Lián	tā	yě	qù-le.
	'Even <u>he</u> went.'			

Pattern 16.8b.

(S)	( <u>lián</u> )	O	(S)	( <u>yě/dōu</u> )	V
(Subject)	('even')	Object	(Subject)	('also')	Verb
	Lián	'tā	wǒ	yě	bù qǐng.
	'I'm not even inviting <u>him</u> .'				

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Jīntian wǒ-zhí-qíng-nǐ-'yíge-rén. Lián-'Bái-Xiānsheng wǒ-dōu-bù-qǐng.  | Today I'm inviting only you. I'm not even inviting Mr. White.  |
| 2. Nèige-zì búdàn-'wǒmen-bú-rènshi, lián-'jiàoyuán yě-bú-rènshi.  | Not only do WE not recognize that character, even the teacher doesn't recognize it.  |
| 3. Zuótiān wǒmen-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. Lián-'fùqīn-dōu-qù-le.   | Yesterday we went to see a movie. Even father went.  |
| 4. Nǐ-zěnmǒ-'zěnmǒ-bèn-a? 'Zhèige-zì yě-bú-rènshi.  | How come you're so stupid? You don't even recognize this character.  |
| 5. Wǒ-jīntian-'tài-máng-le. Lián-'fàn-dōu-méi-chī.  | I'm too busy today. I haven't even eaten.  |
| 6. Wǒ-jīntian 'yì máo-qian-dōu-méi-yǒu.   | I don't have a dime today.   |
| 7. Wǒ-jīntian-zǎochen dào-xué-xiào-de-shíhou, xuéxiàoli 'yíge-rén-yě-méi-yǒu.   | When I went to school this morning, there wasn't a single person there [lit. in school].   |
| 8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng tài-cōng-míng-le. Xuéle-liǎngniǎnde-'Zhōngwén búdàn-huì-shuō-Zhōngwén lián-'shū-dōu-néng-kàndǒng-le. | Mr. King is awfully intelligent. After studying Chinese for two years, he can not only speak Chinese but can even read [and understand]. |
| 9. Nèige-rén 'yíge-péngyou-dōu-méi-yǒu.   | That man doesn't have even one friend.   |
| 10. Zhèige-zì 'tài-róngyi-le. Nǐ-zěnmǒ-lián-'zhèige-zì dōu-bù-huì-xiě?  | This character is very easy. How come you can't even write it [lit. this character]?   |

Pattern 16.9. Question Words as Indefinites (Note 12 below)

Pattern 16.9a.

(S)	V	QW
(Subject)	Verb	Question Word
Wó	'yǒu	jǐběn shū.
'I have a few books.'		

Pattern 16.9b.

QW	<u>yě/dōu</u>	V
Question Word	<u>yě/dōu</u>	Verb
Shéi	dōu	méi-lái.
'Nobody came.'		

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Nǐ-dào-nǎr-qu? Wǒ-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu.</p> <p>2. Nǐ-xué-'Zhōngguo-huà xuéle-'jǐnián-le? Wǒ-xué-le yǐjīng-'yóu-jǐnián-le.</p> <p>3. Nǐ-yǒu-'duōshao-shū? Wǒ-'méi-you-duōshao-shū.</p> <p>4. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie jīntian-dào-nǎr-qu-le? Tā-jīntian-'nár-yě-méi-qù.</p> <p>5. Nǐ-yào-mǎi-'shénmo-shū? Wǒ-'shénmo-shū-dōu-bù-mǎi.</p> <p>6. Jīntian-wǎnshàng nǐ-jiāli-yóu-'jǐge-kèren? Jīntian-wǎnshàng 'méi-jǐge-rén.</p> <p>7. 'Wáng-Jiàoshòu 'hén-yǒu-xué-wen-ma? Tā-'méi-shénmo-xuéwen.</p> <p>8. Nǐ-zài-zhèr-zhùle-'jǐnián-le? Wǒ-zài-zhèr 'méi-zhù-jǐnián.</p> <p>9. Nǐ-xiǎng-shàng-nǎr-qu? Wǒ-'nár-yě-bù-xiǎng-qù.</p> <p>10. 'Qián-Xiǎojie zěnmó-'nènmopiàoliang? Wǒ-shuō-tā 'bù-zěnmó-piàoliang.</p> | <p>Where are you going? I'm not going anywhere (in particular).</p> <p>How many years have you been studying the Chinese language? I've been studying it for a few years.</p> <p>How many books do you have? I don't have many books.</p> <p>Where did Miss Gao go today? She didn't go anywhere today.</p> <p>What books do you want to buy? I'm not buying any books.</p> <p>How many guests are there at your house this evening? There aren't many [people] this evening.</p> <p>Is Professor King very learned? He doesn't have much learning.</p> <p>How many years have you been living here? I haven't been living here long [lit. many years].</p> <p>Where are you planning to go? I'm not thinking of going anywhere.</p> <p>How is it that Miss Qian is so pretty? I say she isn't so pretty.</p> |
|---|---|

Pattern 16.10. Passives with shi . . . de (Note 13 below)

S	<u>shi</u>	(N)	V	<u>de</u>
Subject	<u>shi</u>	(Noun)	Verb	<u>de</u>
Zhèiběn-shū	shi	tā	xiě	de.

'This book was written by him.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huà shi-'Gāo-Xiǎojie-huà-de.</p> <p>2. 'Nèige-péngyou shi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jièshào-de.</p> <p>3. Nèiběn-shū hǎojíle. Shi-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de.</p> | <p>This landscape painting was painted by Miss Gao.</p> <p>That friend was introduced by Mr. Gao.</p> <p>That book is excellent. It was bought by Mr. Johnson.</p> |
|--|--|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. Mǎi-'shū-de-qián shi-'wó-gěi-de.   | The money for buying books was given by me.  |
| 5. Nèiběn-zìdiǎn shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiè-de.   | That dictionary was borrowed by Mr. White.   |
| 6. Zhè-'suóyǒude-zì dōu-shi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-ma?   | Were all these characters written by Mr. Gao?  |
| 7. Jīntian-wǎnshang wǒmen-qukàn-diànyǐng. Piào-shi-'Máo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de. Tā-'qǐng-wǒmen.           | This evening we're going to see a movie. The tickets were bought by Mr. Mao. He is inviting us.                                |
| 8. Nèige-'Zhōngwen-xìn xiě-de-zhēn-hǎo. Shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-ma?                              | That Chinese letter is very well written. Was it written by Mr. King?  |
| 9. Zuótian wǒ-tīngle-yìhuǐr-lùyīn. Nèige-lùyīn shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-lù-de. Zhōngwén shuōde-hǎo-jíle. | I listened to a recording for a while yesterday. That recording was done by Mr. Wang. The Chinese was spoken exceedingly well. |
| 10. 'Shānshang-nèisuǒr-fángzi 'zhēn-piàoliang. Shi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-zhù-de-ma?                        | That house on the hill is very attractive. Is it occupied by Mr. Gao?  |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 32 sentences (Note 1)

nǐmen	——	shàng	chuán	——
tāmen	xiǎng	xià	shān	ma

II: 96 sentences (Notes 2-3)

nán-rén	huí	-lai	—
nǚ-rén	guò	-qu	le
tāmen	pǎo		
	ná		
	jìn		
	chū		
	shàng		
	xià		



III: 72 sentences (Notes 4-5)

xiānsheng	shàng	shān	—	—
háizi	xià	chē	lái	ma
tāmen			qù	

IV: 90 phrases (Notes 6-7)

pǎo	—	shàng	lái
zǒu	bu	guò	qù
ná	de	huí	
		jìn	
		chū	

V: 72 sentences (Note 6)

háizi	—	shàng	shān	—
tāmen	pǎo	xià	chuán	lái
	zǒu			qù

VI: 64 phrases (Note 8)

pǎo	dào	túshūguǎn	lái	—
zǒu		shūdiàn	qù	le
huí		Hángzhou		
ná		Sūzhou		

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Contrasts of Initials in Two-Syllable Pairs

This exercise consists of pairs of expressions which are distinguished in meaning solely by the differences of tone on the first syllable. Blank spaces indicate phrases involving a shift from 33 to 23, that is a shift from third tone to second tone.

10, 20 zhuōzi, zhuózi

11, 21 fēiji, féi-jī

10, 30 Shānxi, Shǎnxi

11, 31 mā-chī, mǎ-chī

10, 40 zhuīzi, zhuìzi

11, 41 shāng-fēng, shàng-fēng

12, 22 fēi-é, féi-é

13, 23 huī-shǒu, huí-shǒu

12, 32 zōng-zé, zǒng-zé

(13, 33)

12, 42 yōng-rén, yòng-rén

13, 43 jūn-zhǔ, jùn-zhǔ

14, 24 tōu-piào, tóu-piào

14, 34 xiāng-jiàn, xiǎng-jiàn

14, 44 jiē-dào, jiè-dào

20, 10 zhuózi, zhuōzi

20, 30 yízi, yǐzi

20, 40 máde, màde

22, 12 féi-é, fēi-é

22, 32 hú-lái, hǔ-lái

22, 42 huí-lái, huì-lái

24, 14 tóu-piào, tōu-piào

24, 34 wú-shì, wǔ-shì

24, 44 dá-dào, dà-dào

30, 10 Shǎnxi, Shānxi

30, 20 mǎde, máde

30, 40 mǎide, màide

32, 12 zōng-zé, zōng-zé

32, 22 hǔ-lái, hú-lái

32, 42 mǎi-fáng, mài-fáng

34, 14 xiǎng-jiàn, xiāng-jiàn

34, 24 wǔ-shì, wú-shì

34, 44 zuǐ-huài, zuì-huài

40, 10 zhuìzi, zhuīzi

40, 20 màde, máde

40, 30 màide, mǎide

42, 12 yòng-rén, yōng-rén

42, 22 huì-lái, huí-lái

42, 32 mài-fáng, mǎi-fáng

21, 11 féi-jī, fēi-jī

21, 31 wú-yī, wǔ-yī

21, 41 huá-bīng, huà-bīng

23, 13 huí-shǒu, huī-shǒu

(23, 33)

23, 43 xíng-lǐ, xìng-lǐ

31, 11 mǎ-chī, mā-chī

31, 21 wǔ-yī, wú-yī

31, 41 huǒ-chē, huò-chē

(33, 13)

(33, 23)

(33, 43)

41, 11 shàng-fēng, shāng-fēng

41, 21 huà-bīng, huá-bīng

41, 31 huò-chē, huǒ-chē

43, 13 jùn-zhǔ, jūn-zhǔ

43, 23 xìng-lǐ, xíng-lǐ

(43, 33)

44, 14 jiè-dào, jiē-dào

44, 24 dà-dào, dá-dào

44, 34 zuì-huài, zuǐ-huài

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Rúguǒ ní-géi-liǎngge-rén-jièshao, shì-'yíge-rén-shuō -Jiúyǎng háishi-'liǎngge-rén-shuō-Jiúyǎng-ne?
2. Tā-rènshi 'èrbǎige-Zhōngguo-zì. Wǒ-rènshi 'sānbái-wǔshige-Zhōngguo-zì. 'Shéi-rènshi-de-zì-duō?
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng qùguo-Hángzhou. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng qùguo-Sūzhou. Tā-men-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-qùguo-Hángzhou?
4. 'Qián-Xiānshengde-tàitai hěn-piàoliang. 'Wáng-Xiānshengde-tàitai bú-piàoliang. Nǐ-shuō 'shéide-tàitai-hǎokàn?
5. 'Wáng-Tàitai cóng-Gāo-jia-dào-shūdiàn-qu. 'Gāo-Tàitai zài-jiā-lǐtou. Shì-shéi-zài-lùshang?
6. 'Gāo-Xiáojie xǐhuan-huà-huà. 'Wáng-Xiáojie hén-xǐhuan-huà. Tā-men-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-huì-huà-huà?
7. 'Bái-Xiānsheng lái-Zhōngguo-'yìnián. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu lái-Zhōngguo-'èrnián. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-xiān-dào-Zhōngguo-de?
8. Wáng-Xiānsheng zuótian-kāile-'sānge-zhōngtóude-chē. Wáng-Tàitai 'bú-huì-kāi-chē. 'Shéi-huì-kāi-chē?
9. Wáng-Xiānsheng huídào-Yīngguo-qu-le. Wáng-Tàitai 'hái-zài-Zhōngguo-ne. 'Shéi-dào-Yīngguo-qu-le?
10. Gāo-Xiānsheng zōuhuilai-de. Gāo-Tàitai zuò-'chē-huilaide. Zǒu-lù-de-shì-shéi?

## NOTES

1. In Chinese, as in English, verbs of motion sometimes indicate direction relative to the speaker (e.g. go in, come in), and sometimes have no such indication (e.g. enter). Thus Tāmen-jīntian-jìn-chéng 'They're entering the city today' gives no clue to whether the speaker is himself inside or outside the city.
2. Postverbs of direction indicate the direction of a motion relative to the speaker. Two of these are lái 'come [toward me]' and qu 'go [away from me]':
 

Qǐng-jìnlai. 'Please come in.' (Spoken by someone already inside to someone outside.)

Qǐng-jìnqu. 'Please go in.' (Spoken by someone outside to another person who is also outside.)

3. A verb said twice, first with postverb lái 'come' and immediately after with postverb qù 'go' (both with tones) means 'do V back and forth':

zǒulái-zǒuqù 'walk back and forth'

Sometimes the meaning is figurative:

xiǎnglái-xiǎngqù 'rack one's brains' [lit. 'think back and forth']

4. When a verb with a directional verb after it has an object, the object is either placed in front of the verb, as the topic, or is inserted between the verb and the postverb:

Nèiběn-shū qíng-nǐ-ná-lai.	} 'Please bring that book.'
Qíng-nǐ-ná-nèiběn-shū-lai.	

5. Some compound verbs consist of two verbs of motion or action:

pǎoshàng 'run up'	náshàng 'carry up'
pǎojìn 'run in'	nájìn 'carry in'
pǎohuí 'run back'	náhuí 'carry back'

Such verbs are further compounded with directional postverbs:

pǎoshàng-lai 'run up (toward the speaker)'  
 pǎoshàng-qu 'run up (away from the speaker)'  
 náhuí-lai 'bring back'  
 náhuí-qu 'take back'

6. If the compound verbs mentioned in the preceding note have a place word as object, this is inserted before the postverb:

pǎoshàng-shān-lai 'run up the mountain (toward the speaker)'  
 pǎoshàng-shān-qu 'run up the mountain (away from the speaker)'  
 náhuí-shūdiàn-lai 'bring back to the bookstore'  
 náhuí-shūdiàn-qu 'take back to the bookstore'

7. The compound verbs with directional postverbs described in Note 5 are resultative verbs. This means they have special forms to express 'be able to' and 'be unable to':

náhuí-lai 'bring back'  
 nádehuílái 'able to bring back'  
 nábuhuílái 'unable to bring back'

8. The verb dào 'to' is often suffixed to other verbs to mean 'to' or 'toward' or 'up to, as far as,' forming expressions parallel to English 'walk to,' 'run to,' 'take [something] to,' 'read as far as.' Use of lái 'come' or qù 'go' at the end shows whether the direction is toward or away from the speaker:

Wǒmen-míngtiān xuédào-dì-sānkè. 'We study to the third lesson tomorrow.'  
 Tā-pǎodào-shānshang-lai. 'He is running up the mountain (toward the speaker).'

The last sentence is almost the same in meaning as:

Tā-pǎoshang-shān-lai.

The former gives somewhat greater emphasis to the destination (shān-shang), the latter to the action (pǎoshang).

9. Compound verbs with dào, discussed in the preceding note, are resultative verbs, so that de and bu are inserted between the main verb and dào to make the phrase mean 'able to' and 'unable to' respectively:

xuédào 'study as far as'

xuédedào 'able to study as far as'

xuébudào 'unable to study as far as'

Wǒmen-míngtiān xuébudào dī-sānkè. 'We can't get to the third lesson by tomorrow.'

10. The coverb bǎ, literally 'take,' introduces the direct object of a verb. It is used—

- (a) When a definite thing is referred to. Compare:

Tā-géi-wǒ-shū. 'He gave me a book.'

Tā-bǎ-shū-géi-wǒ. 'He gave me the book.'

- (b) When the main verb is followed by another object, verb, or suffix, e.g. :

Wó-bǎ-zì dōu-xiěwán-le. 'I've finished writing all the characters.'

A useful way to drill this construction is for the teacher to present an ordinary SVO sentence and request students to transform it into the bǎ construction. For example:

Teacher: Tā-géi-wǒ-shū.

Student: Tā-bǎ-shū-géi-wǒ.

11. The adverb yě 'also,' if used with a stressed object placed before the verb, means 'even':

Wǒ-'yìběn-shū yé-méi-yǒu.

or

'Yìběn-shū wǒ-yé-méi-yǒu.

'I don't have even one book.'

(The subject comes either before or after the transposed object.)

The adverb dōu, literally 'all,' is also used in this way:

Wǒ-'yìběn-shū dōu-méi-yǒu.

or

'Yìběn-shū wǒ-dōu-méi-yǒu.

'I don't have even one book.'

The preceding examples are also expressed with the coverb lián 'even' before the object:

Wǒ-lián-'yìběn-shū yé-méi-yǒu. or

Wǒ-lián-'yìběn-shū dōu-méi-yǒu. or

Lián-'yìběn-shū wó-yě-méi-yǒu. or

Lián-'yìběn-shū wǒ-dōu-méi-yǒu.

If yě or dōu are used in reference to the subject, the coverb lián is generally used also:

Lián-'tā yě-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.     or

Lián-'tā dōu-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.

'Even he doesn't recognize this character.'

A useful way to drill this construction is for the teacher to present an ordinary SVO sentence and request students to transform it into the foregoing construction. For example:

Teacher: Tā-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.

Student: Lián-tā-dōu-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.

12. The meanings of question words (shénmo 'what?' shéi 'who?' nǎr 'where?' etc.) shift to indefinite meanings ('few,' 'everything,' 'nothing,' 'everywhere,' 'nowhere,' and the like) under the following conditions:
- (a) When they occur in constructions containing dōu 'all' or yě 'also' plus a verb:
- |                        |   |   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| Wǒ-'shénmo-dōu-bú-yào. | } | 'I want nothing.' or 'I don't want anything.' |
| Wǒ-'shénmo-yě-bú-yào.  |   |   |
- 'Shéi-dōu-huì. 'Everybody knows how.'
- 'Shéi-dōu-bú-huì. 'Nobody knows how.'
- (b) When some word other than the question word receives the chief stress. Compare:
- Tā-yóu-'jǐběn-shū? 'How many books does he have?'  
(stress on jǐ 'how many?')
- Tā-'yóu-jǐběn-shū. 'He has a few books.'  
(stress on yóu 'have')
13. Sentences of the type (S) V O (Subject-Verb-Object) when transformed into the pattern O shi (S) V de cause shifts in the connotation of the Chinese sentence which correspond to the following English processes: (a) the object changes from indefinite to definite; (b) the tense becomes past; (c) the voice becomes passive; (d) the portion of the utterance between shi and de receives the chief emphasis. Thus:
- Wó-mǎi-shū. 'I'm buying books.'
- but—
- Shū shi-wó-mǎi-de. 'The books were bought by me.'
- Nár-mǎi-shū? 'Where (does one) buy books?'
- but—
- Shū shi-nár-mǎi-de? 'Where were the books bought?'
- Shénmo-shíhou mǎi-shū? 'When does one buy books?'
- but—
- Shū shi-shénmo-shíhou-mǎi-de? 'When were the books bought?'

A useful way to drill this construction is for the teacher to present the SVO form and request students to transform it into O shi S V de. For example:

Teacher: Wó-mǎi-shū.

Student: Shū-shi-'wó-mǎi-de.

14. Girls' names frequently include the word měi 'beautiful,' as in Měiyīng—literally 'beautiful (and) brave.'
15. The word mā 'mother' is most often used in direct address. Occasionally one hears wǒ-mā for 'my mother,' but mā is not used in reference to another person's mother.
16. The word for 'wife' is nèiren if spoken by a man in reference to his own wife, and tàitai in direct address (i.e. 'Wife!') or if the reference is to another person's wife. (See also Supplementary Lesson 16, Note 2)
17. The verb shi 'be' is frequently used to join verbal phrases as well as noun phrases:

Xiě-Zhōngguó-zì shi-hěn-bu-róngyì-de. 'Writing characters is (something which is) not at all easy.'

Xué-xiě-zì shi-bìdēi-yònggōng. 'Studying the writing of characters is (a matter of) having to be industrious.'

Xué-yǔánxué jiù-shi-yánjiū-wàiguó-huà. 'To study linguistics is to investigate foreign languages.'

18. The verb cuò 'wrong' preceded by bu 'not' has the special meaning 'not bad' or 'that's right.' Hěn-bu-cuò, literally 'quite not bad,' is much like English 'not at all bad,' actually meaning 'pretty good.' Cuò is also suffixed to a few verbs to mean '[do] wrong or incorrectly':

Wó-bǎ-shū-mǎicuò-le. 'I bought the wrong book.' [lit. 'I incorrectly bought the book.']

Here are some other compounds formed with cuò:

niàncuò 'read incorrectly'

xiěcuò 'write incorrectly'

kàncuò 'look at incorrectly'

zuòcuò 'do incorrectly'

shuōcuò 'say incorrectly'

mǎicuò 'buy incorrectly'

tīngcuò 'hear incorrectly'

nácuò 'take incorrectly'

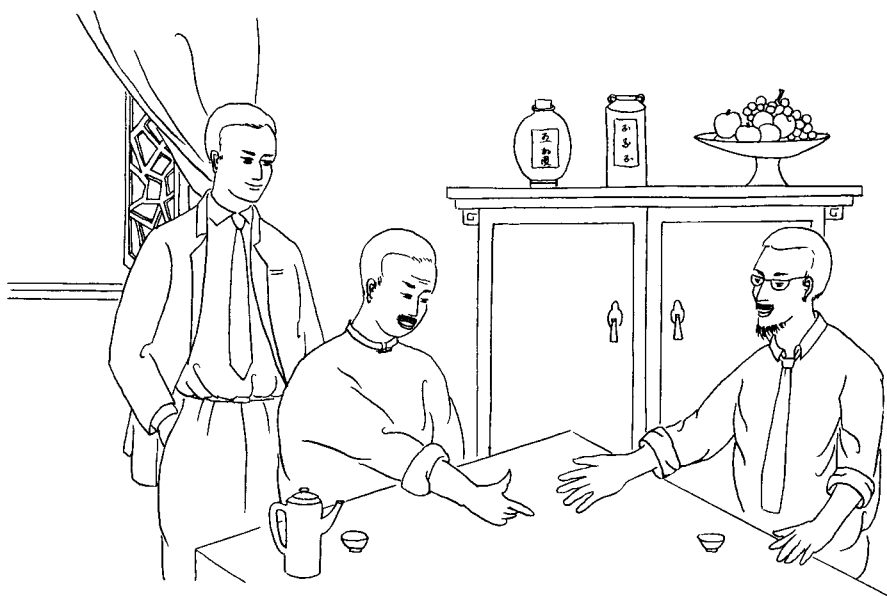
19. Yìdiǎr yě and yìdiǎr dōu are used with negative verbs to express the idea 'not at all':

Wǒ-yìdiǎr dōu-bù-dǒng. 'I don't understand anything at all.'

Wǒ-yìdiǎr qián yě-méi-yǒu. 'I don't have any money at all.'

Yīngwén-yìdiǎr yě-bù-nán. 'English isn't at all difficult.'

Lesson 17 PLAYING 'GUESS-FINGERS'



"Qīge-qīge-qīge-a! . . . Bā-a!"

Dialogue: Mr. Gao, Professor Wanamaker, and Mr. White converse as Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao put the finishing touches on dinner.

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Wàn-Jiàoshou,  
Bái-Xiānsheng tāmen-sānge-rén  
hē-chá-de-shíhou, tāmen-tán-  
Sūzhou-Hángzhou.

While Mr. Gao, Professor Wana-  
maker, and Mr. White are drink-  
ing tea, they talk of Soochow and  
Hangchow.

Gāo : Nǐmen-tándào

5

(Since) you've mentioned

Shàng-yǒu-tiāntáng  
Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng

Above is Heaven  
Below are Soochow and Hang-  
chow

wǒ-xiànzài-gēn-nǐmen-  
tányitan wǒde-lǎo-jiā-  
Hángzhou.

10

I'll tell you now about my old  
home, Hangchow.

Bái : Nín-shi-zài-Hángzhou  
zhǎng-dà-de-ma?

Did you grow up in Hangchow?

Gāo : Wǒ-shi-zài-Hángzhou-  
shēng-de. Wǒ-'èrshi-  
jǐsuì cái-líkai-Háng-  
zhou.

15

I was born in Hangchow. I didn't  
leave there [lit. Hangchow] until  
I was in my twenties.



- Wàn : Wǒ-zài-Yīngguo jiù-tīngshuō  
'Hángzhou-hén-hǎo. 'Yīng-  
guo-rén dào-'Zhōngguo-lǚ-  
xíng yídìng-yào-dào-Háng-  
zhou-qu. Huílai-'dōu-shuō  
Hángzhou-hǎode-bùdéliǎo. 20 (Even while) I was in England, I  
heard that Hangchow is very  
nice. Englishmen who travel to  
China feel it is a must to go  
there [to Hangchow]. When they  
come back, they all say that  
Hangchow is wonderful.
- Gāo : Nǐ-méi-qùguo-Hángzhou-ma,  
Lǎo-Wàn? You haven't been to Hangchow,  
[Old] Wan?
- Wàn : Wǒ-méi-qùguò. 25 I never have.
- Gāo : Hángzhou-yǒu-ge-hú jiào-  
Xī-Hú shi-'hén-yǒu-míng-  
de. Cóngqián-de-rén bǎ-  
Xī-Hú bǐzuò-yíge-'zuì-  
piàoliàngde-nǚ-rén Xī-Shī.\* 30 Hangchow has a lake called West  
Lake that's very famous. Peo-  
ple of earlier days compared  
West Lake to Xi Shi, one of the  
most beautiful of women.\* You  
can tell from this how beautiful  
the lake is.
- Wàn : Wǒ-láiguo-Zhōngguo-'jǐcì  
dōu-méi-qùguo-Hángzhou.  
Xīwang-jiānglái qù-yíci. 35 I've been to China several times  
but have never been to Hang-  
chow. I hope to go there some  
day [lit. once in the future].
- Gāo : Tiānqi-nuǎnhuode-shíhou  
yóu-hǎoxiē-rén dào-Háng-  
zhou-lǚxíng. When the weather's warm a lot  
of people make trips to Hang-  
chow.
- Bái : Wǒ-xīwang jiānglái-yǒu-jī-  
huì dào-Hángzhou-lǚxíng. 40 I hope [in the future] I'll have an  
opportunity to make a trip to  
Hangchow. What's Soochow like?  
'Sūzhou-zěnmoyàng? Sū-  
zhou gēn-Hángzhou-yíyang-  
ma? Is Soochow like Hangchow?
- Gāo : Sūzhou méi-yǒu-Hángzhou-  
nènmo-dà. Shānshuǐ-bù-  
yíyàng, kěshi-yé-hěn-piào-  
liàng. 45 Soochow isn't as big as Hang-  
chow. The scenery is different,  
but also very beautiful.
- Bái : Nín-fǔshang-zhèige-dìfang  
'yé-hěn-piàoliàng. Chàbu-  
duō-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie huà-  
de-nèizhāng-huàr yíyàng-  
piàoliàng. 50 This area around your home is  
very beautiful too. It's almost  
as beautiful as that painting of  
Miss Gao's.
- Gāo : Yīnwei-wó-xǐhuan-Háng-  
zhou, suóyi-cóngqian-jiu-  
xiǎng, jiānglái-wǒ-'yídìng-  
zhǎo-yíge-dìfang xiǎng-  
'Hángzhou-yíyàng-hǎo wǒ-  
cái-zhù-ne. Hòulai-péng-  
you jièshao-zhèige-dìfang. 55 Since I like Hangchow, I used to  
think that at some future time I  
would make it a point to look for  
a place as nice as Hangchow to  
settle down. Later, friends in-  
troduced me to this place. Al-  
though it's not as nice as Hang-

\* Xī-Shī, one of the greatest beauties in Chinese history, lived during the Warring Kingdoms Period (B. C. 403-221).

- Suírán-méi-you-'Hángzhou-nènmo-hào, kěshì-yǒu-yì-diǎr-xiàng-Hángzhou. Wǒ-jiù-zài-zhèr mǎile-zhèi-suǒr-fángzi. 65
- Bái : Tīngshuō Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-piàoliang.\* Shì-zhēndema? I hear the women of Soochow are beautiful.\* Is that so?
- Gāo : Bù-yídìng. Yǒude-piàoliang, yǒude-yé-hēn-nánkàn. 70
- Wàn : Shì. Sūzhou-nǚ-rén 'shì-piàoliang. Nǐ-kàn-Gāo-Xiáojie duómo-piàoliang. It is so. Soochow women are beautiful. You see how attractive Miss Gao is.
- Bái : Gāo-Xiáojie shì-'Sūzhou-rén-a? 75
- Wàn : Gāo-Xiáojie shì-zài-'Sūzhou-shēng-de. Gāo-'Tàitai-shì-Sūzhou-rén. Lǎo-Gāo zài-Sūzhou-rènshi-de-Gāo-Tàitai. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén zài-'Sūzhou-jiēhūn, Gāo-Xiáojie shì-zài-'Sūzhou-shēng-de. Gāo-'Xiáojie-zhǎngde gēn-Gāo-'Tàitai-yíyàng-piàoliang. 80 85
- Bái : Oh, suóyì-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie nènmo-piàoliang-ne! Oh, so that's why Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao are so attractive !
- Wàn : Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-yǒumíng. Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-yǒumíng. 90
- Gāo : Wǒmen-zhǐ-shuō-huà-le. Wǒ-wàngle qíng-nǐmen-liǎngwèi-hē-jiǔ-le. Lǎo-Wàn, 'Bái-Xiānsheng, qǐng. 95
- Wàn : Zhèi-jiǔ-'zhēn-hǎo. Shì-shénmo-jiǔ-a? This wine is really nice. What is it?

\* China has its geographical stereotypes comparable to the thrifty Scotchman and the hard-bargaining New Englander. Natives of Shansi are supposed to be penny-pinching, southerners cunning, and Soochow women beautiful.

- Gāo : Shi-Méigui-Lù.\* Lǎo- 100 It's Rose Dew.\* [Old] Wan, what  
Wàn, zēnmoyàng, wǒmen-  
hēle-zhèibēi huá-'quán-  
hǎo-bu-hǎo? \*\* do you say, after this cup shall  
we play 'guess-fingers'?
- Wàn: Hǎo. Fine.
- Gāo : 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-kàn- 105 Mr. White, have you seen 'guess-  
jianguo-huá-quán-de-ma? fingers' played?
- Bái : Wǒ-hái-méi-kànjianguo-  
ne. No, I haven't.
- Gāo : Lǎo-Wàn, lái, wǒmen-huá-  
quán-ba. [Old] Wan, come on, let's play. 110
- Gāo : Sìge-a! Wàn: Qī-a! (Gao:) Four! (Wan:) Seven!
- Wàn: Nǐ-yíng-le. Wǒ-hē. You win. I drink.
- Gāo : Shíge-shíge-a! Wàn: Wǔ-  
a! (Gao:) Ten! (Wan:) Five!
- Gāo : Wǒ-yíng-le. Nǐ-hē. 115 I win. You drink.
- Gāo : Wǔge-wǔge-a! Wàn: Liù-a. (Gao:) Five! (Wan:) Six!  
(No one wins.)
- Gāo : Qīge-qīge-qīge-a! Wàn:  
Bā-a! (Gao:) Seven! (Wan:) Eight!
- Wàn: Nǐ-yíng-le. Wǒ-'yòu-hē. You win. I drink again.
- Gāo : 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-kàn. 120 Mr. White, what do you think, is  
Yǒu-yìsi-ma? it interesting?
- Bái : 'Hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wó-hěn-  
qíguài wèi-shénmo-'yíng-  
de-rén bu-hē-jiǔ-ne? Very interesting. I'm puzzled  
about why the winner doesn't  
drink.

---

\* Méigui-Lù 'Rose Dew' is the name of a popular light wine which is taken in tiny cups holding only a few thimblefuls.

\*\* The game of 'guess-fingers' is widely played in China by people of all ages. There are several versions. In one, especially popular with children, two opponents simultaneously extend the right hand in the form of a fist or an open palm or with the first and second fingers spread apart, the others being held against the palm. The fist represents a stone, the open palm represents cloth, and the spread fingers represent scissors. Cloth wins over stone, stone wins over scissors, and scissors win over cloth (since cloth covers stone, stone breaks scissors, scissors cut cloth). In another version, the two contestants simultaneously extend none to five fingers while calling out their guesses as to the total number of fingers extended by the two contestants. The numbers are often called out over and over again at a very rapid pace; sometimes the numbers are called in fixed phrases with such auspicious connotations as 'four happinesses' and 'six successes.' These latter versions are especially popular with men who like to play the game while having wine as a prelude to dinner.

Gāo : Ní-'děng-yìhuěr jiù-míng-bai-le.	125	Wait a moment and you'll understand.
Gāo : Qīge-qīge-a! Wàn: Jiǔ-a!		(Gao:) Seven! (Wan:) Nine!
Gāo : Wǒ-'yòu-yíng-le. Nǐ-'yòu-hē.		I win again. You drink again.
Wàn: Lǎo-Gāo, nǐ-kàn, jiǔ-bēi-zhēn-bù-xiǎo-a.	130	[Old] Gao, see, the wine cups aren't so small after all.
Gāo : Lǎo-Wàn, 'zài-huá.		[Old] Wan, let's play again.
Wàn: Gòu-le. Zài-huá jiù-hēde-'tài-duō-le.		Enough. If I play again I'll have too much wine.
Bái : Oh, 'xiànzài-wǒ-cái-míng-bai wèi-shénmo 'yíng-de-rén bù-hē-jiǔ.	135	Oh, now I understand why the winner doesn't drink.

## VOCABULARY

bēi	cup (M) (Note 8)
bēi(zi)	cup (N) (Note 8)
bǐ	compare (TV)
bùdéliǎo	awfully [lit. not reach end] (Note 10)
chá	tea (N)
cóngqián	formerly, in the past (TW) [lit. from before]
děng	wait (IV)
gòu	be enough (IV)
hǎoxiē	good many, a lot (Note 9)
hē	drink (TV)
huá-quán	play guess-fingers (See Supplementary Lesson 17, Note 1)
<b>jiéhūn, jiéhūn</b>	marry (IV)
jiǔ	wine (N)
lù	dew (N)
méigui	rose (N)
míngbai	understand (TV) [lit. clear white]
nuǎnhuo	warm (SV)
quán	fist (N)
shēng	be born (IV); give birth to (TV)
tiānqi	weather (N)
wèi-shénmo?	why? [lit. for what?]
xiàng	resemble (EV) (Notes 1, 2, 4)

xiē	few (M) (Note 9)
yàng	kind (M)
yíng	win (TV)
yíyàng	same (SV) (Notes 2-3, 5)
yǒu-míng	famous (VO) [lit. have name]
zě(mo)yàng? zěn(me)yàng?	like what? how about it? well? [lit. how kind?]
zhǎng	grow (IV)
zuò	as (Note 7)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |    |                                  |                                       |
|----|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|    | xiàng                            | resemble                              |
|    | xiàng-tāde-fùqin                 | resemble his father                   |
| 1. | Tā-hěn-xiàng tāde-fùqin.         | He looks a lot like his father.       |
|    | yǒu-yìdiǎr                       | have a little                         |
|    | yǒu-yìdiǎr-xiàng                 | resemble a little                     |
| 2. | Tā-yǒu-yìdiǎr xiàng-tāde-mǔqin.  | He resembles his mother a little.     |
|    | yàng                             | kind                                  |
|    | zhèiyàng                         | this kind                             |
| 3. | Zhèiyàng-rén hén-shǎo.           | This sort of person is quite rare.    |
|    | nèiyàng                          | that kind                             |
|    | nèiyàngde                        | that kind (of)                        |
| 4. | Wó-xiàng-mǎi 'nèiyàngde-bǐ.      | I'd like to buy that kind of pen.     |
|    | yíyàng                           | one kind, same                        |
| 5. | Zhèi-liǎngge-dōngxi-yíyàng.      | These two things are alike.           |
|    | yíyàng                           | the same                              |
|    | bù-yíyàng                        | not the same, different               |
| 6. | Zhèi-liǎngge-lùyīnjī bù-yíyàng.  | These two recorders are not the same. |
|    | zhèige                           | this                                  |
|    | gēn-nèige                        | with that                             |
| 7. | Zhèige-gēn-nèige-yíyàng.         | This and that are the same.           |
|    | xiàng-nèiběn-shū                 | resemble that book                    |
|    | xiàng-nèiběn-shū-yíyàng          | be the same as that book              |
| 8. | Zhèiběn-shū xiàng-nèiběn-yíyàng. | This book is the same as that one.    |
|    | tiānqi                           | weather                               |

- zhèrde-tiānqi  
9. Zhèrde-tiānqi bù-gēn-nèrde-tiānqi-yíyàng.  
the weather here  
The weather here is not the same as the weather there.
- Húnán-de-tiānqi  
gēn-Dōngběide-tiānqi  
10. Húnán-de-tiānqi gēn-Dōngběide-tiānqi bù-yíyàng.  
the weather in Hunan  
and the weather in Manchuria  
The weather in Hunan is different from the weather in Manchuria.
- Húběide-tiānqi  
chàbuduō  
11. Húběide-tiānqi chàbuduō-gēn-Húnán-de-tiānqi-yíyàng.  
the weather in Hupei  
almost  
The weather in Hupei is almost the same as the weather in Hunan.
- bú-xiàng  
bú-xiàng-wǒde-yíyàng  
12. Nǐde-bǐ bú-xiàng-wǒde-yíyàng.  
does not resemble  
is not like mine  
Your pen is not like mine.
- jiǔ  
13. Zhèige-jiǔ hén-hǎo.  
wine  
This wine is excellent.
- bēi  
jiǔ-bēi  
14. Zhōngguo-jiǔ-bēi hén-xiǎo.  
cup  
wine cup  
Chinese wine cups are very small.
- bēizi  
sānge-bēizi  
15. Ná-sānge-bēizi-lai.  
cup  
three cups  
Bring three cups.
- bēi  
sānbēi-jiǔ  
16. Qíng-ni-ná sānbēi-jiǔ-lai.  
cup  
three cups of wine  
Please bring three cups of wine.
- gēn-nèige-bēizi-yíyàng  
gēn-nèige-bēizi yíyàng-xiǎo  
17. Zhèige-bēizi gēn-nèige-yíyàng-xiǎo.  
the same as that cup  
as small as that cup  
This cup is as small as that one.
- nuǎnhuo  
gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo  
18. Húběi-gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo-ma?  
warm  
as warm as Hunan  
Is Hupei as warm as Hunan?
- nuǎnhuo  
gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo  
bù-gēn-Húnán yíyàng-nuǎnhuo  
warm  
as warm as Hunan  
not as warm as Hunan

19. Shāndong bù-gēn-Húnán yí-yàng-nuǎnhuo.  
 xiàng-Shānxi-yíyàng  
 xiàng-Shānxi-yíyàng-dà  
 Shantung is not as warm as Hunan.  
 like Shansi  
 as big as Shansi
20. Shāndong chàbuduō-xiàng-Shānxi-yíyàng-dà.  
 méiguī  
 yǒude-méiguī  
 Some roses are red, some are white.  
 rose  
 some roses
21. Yǒude-méiguī shi-hóngde, yǒude-shi-báide.  
 lù  
 Méiguī-Lù  
 xiàng-Méiguī-Lù  
 This wine is as nice as Rose Dew.  
 dew  
 Rose Dew  
 resemble Rose Dew
22. Zhèige-jiǔ xiàng-Méiguī-Lù yíyàng-hǎo.  
 xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr  
 yíyàng-xǐhuan kàn-diànyǐngr  
 I like to see movies as much as you do.  
 like to see movies  
 equally like to see movies
23. Wǒ-gēn-nǐ-yíyàng xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr.  
 xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn  
 yíyàng-xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn  
 I don't like to eat Chinese food as much as he does.  
 like to eat Chinese food  
 equally like to eat Chinese food
24. Wǒ-bù-xiàng-tā-yíyàng xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn.  
 nǐ-xiàng-tā  
 nènmo-cōngmíng  
 You are as intelligent as he is.  
 you resemble him  
 that intelligent
25. Nǐ-xiàng-'tā-nènmo-cōngmíng.  
 tā-xiàng-nǐ  
 zhènmo-cōngmíng  
 He is as intelligent as you are.  
 he resembles you  
 this intelligent
26. Tā-xiàng-'nǐ-zhènmo-cōngmíng.  
 nènmo-yònggōng  
 You work as hard as he does.  
 so hard-working
27. Nǐ-yǒu-tā-nènmo-yònggōng.  
 nènmo-xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn  
 You don't like to eat Chinese food as much as he does.  
 like to eat Chinese food as much
28. Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā nènmo-xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn.  
 chá  
 ná-chá-lai  
 Please bring some tea.  
 tea  
 bring tea
29. Qǐng-ná-chá-lai.  
 hē  
 drink

30. xǐhuan-hē-chá  
Wǒ-xiàng-nǐ-yíyàng xǐhuan-  
hē-chá.  
like to drink tea  
I like to drink tea as much as  
you do.
31. hē  
hǎo-hē  
Zhèige-chá-'zhēn-hǎo-hē.  
drink  
nice to drink  
This tea is really nice to drink.
32. míng  
yǒu-míng  
Sūzhou-méi-yǒu-Hángzhou  
nènmo-yǒu-míng.  
name  
be famous or well known  
Soochow isn't as well known as  
Hangchow.
33. jiēhūn  
Tāmen-shi-'qùnian-jiēhūn-  
de.  
marry  
They were married last year.
34. Wáng-Xiānsheng gēn-  
Wáng-Tàitai  
shi-qùnian-jiēhūn-de  
Wáng-Xiānsheng gēn-Wáng-  
Tàitai shi-qùnian-jiēhūn-de.  
Mr. and Mrs. King  
were married last year  
Mr. and Mrs. King were married  
last year.
35. zhǎng  
zhǎng-dà  
Tā-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-  
dà-de.  
grow  
grow up  
He grew up in China.
36. zhǎng-gāo  
Nèige-háizi xiànzài-zhǎng-  
gāo-le.  
grow tall  
That child has grown tall now.
37. gòu  
'gòu-bu-gòu  
Fàn-'gòu-bu-gòu?  
enough  
enough or not  
Is there enough food?
38. huá-quán  
Nǐ-huì-huá-quán-ma?  
play 'guess-fingers'  
Can you play 'guess-fingers'?
39. gēn-ta-fùqin  
yíyàng-gāo  
Tā-zhǎngde gēn-ta-fùqin  
yíyàng-gāo.  
with his father  
equally tall  
He's grown as tall as his father.
40. gēn-ta-yíyàng-hǎo  
Nǐ-huá-quán-huá-de gēn-  
ta-yíyàng-hǎo.  
as good as he  
You play 'guess-fingers' as well  
as he does.
41. cóngqián  
gēn-ta-yíyàng-duō  
Wǒ-cóngqián-chī-de gēn-  
tā-yíyàng-duō.  
formerly  
as much as he  
I used to eat as much as he does.
42. xiàng-tā-nènmo-duō  
Nǐ-mǎi-shū-mǎi-de xiàng-  
'tā-nènmo-duō.  
as much as he  
You buy as many books as he  
does.



43. méi-yǒu-'tā-nènmo-duō  
Nǐ-mǎi-shū-mǎi-de méi-yǒu-'tā-nènmo-duō.  
not as many as he  
You don't buy as many books as he does.
44. yíng  
yíng-le-sāncì  
Wó-yě-yíng-le-sāncì.  
win  
won three times  
I also won three times.
45. shēng  
Tā-shi-zài-Húnán-shēng-de.  
be born  
He was born in Hunan.
46. shēngzài  
Tā-shēngzài-Húnán.  
be born in  
He was born in Hunan.
47. míngbai  
míngbai-nǐde-yìsi  
Wǒ-bù-míngbai-nǐde-yìsi.  
understand  
understand your meaning  
I don't understand what you mean.
48. wèi-shénmo?  
Nǐ-wèi-'shénmo-bú-qù?  
why?  
Why aren't you going?
49. děng  
'děngyiděng  
Qǐng-ni-'děngyiděng.  
wait  
wait a while  
Please wait a while.
50. nǐ-kàn  
zěnmoyàng?  
Nǐ-kàn-nèiběn-shū zěnmoyàng?  
you see or you think like what?  
What do you think of that book?
51. zěnmoyàng?  
'bù-zěnmoyàng  
Nèiběn-shū 'bù-zěnmoyàng.  
like what?  
nothing much  
That book isn't anything much.
52. xiē  
zhèxiē-shū  
Zhèxiē-shū 'dōu-shi-nǐde-ma?  
a few  
these books  
Are all these books yours?
53. nèixiē  
nèixiē-rén  
Nèixiē-rén dōu-shi-'shénmo-rén?  
those  
those men  
Who are those men?
54. hǎoxiē  
Hǎoxiē-fángzi 'dōu-shi-yí-yàngde.  
a good many, a lot  
A lot of homes are alike.
55. yǒu-xiē  
yǒu-xiē-rén  
Yǒu-xiē-rén 'xǐhuan-lǚxíng,  
yǒu-xiē-rén 'bù-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.  
there are some  
there are some people  
There are some people who like to travel, and some people who don't [like to travel].

- bǐ  
 'bǐyībǐ  
 56. Nèi-liǎngge-xuésheng 'bǐ-yībǐ.  
 compare  
 make a comparison  
 Compare those two students.
- bǎ-zhèige-xuésheng  
 gēn-nèige-xuésheng  
 57. Bǎ-'zhèige-xuésheng gēn-'nèige-xuésheng 'bǐyībǐ.  
 take this student  
 with that student  
 Compare this student with that student.
- bǐdeshàng  
 bǐbushàng  
 58. 'Tāde-xuéwen bǐdeshàng-bǐbushàng 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu?  
 comparable  
 not comparable  
 Can his learning compare with Professor Wanamaker's?
- bǐzuò  
 bǐ-sìniánjíde-xuésheng  
 59. Jiàoshòu 'dōu-bǎ-ta bǐzuò-'sìniánjíde-xuésheng.  
 compare with, equate with  
 equate with senior students  
 The professors all rank him with the senior students.
- kànzuo  
 kànzuo-yíge-'Zhōngguo-rén  
 60. Wó-bǎ-nèige-'Rìběn-rén kànzuo-yíge-'Zhōngguo-rén.  
 view as, take for, mistake for  
 view as a Chinese, (mis)-take for a Chinese  
 I mistook that Japanese for a Chinese.
- hǎo-kàn  
 hǎo-kānde-hěn  
 61. Méiguī-hǎo-kānde-hěn.  
 pretty  
 very pretty  
 Roses are very pretty.
- bùdéliǎo  
 dàde-bùdéliǎo  
 62. Tāde-fángzi dàde-bùdéliǎo.  
 awfully  
 awfully big  
 His house is awfully big.
- méi-yǒu-rén  
 xǐhuan-mǎi  
 63. Nèisuǒr-fángzi-dàde méi-yǒu-rén-xǐhuan-mǎi.  
 there isn't anyone  
 like to buy  
 That house is so big that no one wants to buy it.
- nènmo  
 wǒmen-yíkuàr-qù  
 64. Nènmo-wǒmen-'yíkuàr-qù 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  
 since that's the case  
 we go together  
 Then how about our going together?

## PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 17.1. Similarity and Disparity (Note 2 below)

N <sub>1</sub>	<u>gēn/xiàng</u>	N <sub>2</sub>	<u>yíyàng</u>
Noun <sub>1</sub>	'with'/'resemble'	Noun <sub>2</sub>	'alike'
Zhèige-yánse	gēn	nèige-yánse	yíyàng.
'This color is like that color.'			

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒde-biǎo gēn-nǐde-biǎo-yí-yàng.                            | My watch is like your watch.  |
| 2. Nèizhī-bǐ gēn-zhèizhī-yí-yàng.                              | That pen is like this one.  |
| 3. 'Jīntiānde-tiānqi gēn-'zuó-tiānde-tiānqi-yíyàng.            | Today's weather is like yesterday's weather.                              |
| 4. Shāndong bù-gēn-Shānxi-yí-yàng.                             | Shantung is not like Shansi.  |
| 5. Rìběn-fàn bú-xiàng-'Zhōngguo-fàn-yíyàng.                    | Japanese food is not like Chinese food.                                   |
| 6. 'Zhèrde-tiānqi chàbuduō-gēn-'nèrde-tiānqi-yíyàng.           | The weather here is almost the same as the weather there.                 |
| 7. 'Zhōngguo-bǐ bú-xiàng-'Měiguó-bǐ-yíyàng.                    | Chinese pens are not like American pens.                                  |
| 8. 'Dàxué bú-xiàng-'zhōngxué-yíyàng.                           | College isn't like middle school.   |
| 9. Zǎofàn-gēn-wǎnfàn bù-yí-yàng.                               | Breakfast is different from dinner.                                       |
| 10. 'Rìběn-zì gēn-'Zhōngguo-zì yǒude-yíyàng yǒude-'bù-yí-yàng. | Some Japanese and Chinese characters are the same and some are different. |

Pattern 17.2. Similarity and Disparity (Note 3 below)

N <sub>1</sub>	<u>gēn/xiàng</u>	N <sub>2</sub>	<u>yíyàng</u>	V
Noun <sub>1</sub>	'with'/'resemble'	Noun <sub>2</sub>	'alike'	Verb
Tā	gēn	nǐ	yíyàng	yònggōng.
'He is as diligent as you are.'				
Tā	gēn	nǐ	yíyàng	xǐhuan-kàn-shū.
'He likes to read as much as you do.'				

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Wáng-Tàitai xiàng-Wáng-Xiānsheng yíyàng-yònggōng.                  | Mrs. Wang is as hard-working as Mr. Wang.   |
| 2. Niàn-Zhōngguo-shū gēn-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì yíyàng-nán.                  | Reading Chinese is as hard as writing Chinese.                                    |
| 3. Zhèige-fàn gēn-wó-mǔqin-zuòde yíyàng-hǎo-chī.                      | This food is as delicious as my mother's.   |
| 4. Húnánde-shānshuǐ gēn-Húběide yíyàng-hǎo-kàn.                       | The scenery in Hunan is as beautiful as that in Hupei.                            |
| 5. Gāo-'Xiáojie-xiě-de-zì gēn-Gāo-'Xiānsheng-xiě-de-zì yíyàng-hǎo-ma? | Are the characters written by Miss Gao as nice as the characters done by Mr. Gao? |

6. 'Zhèige-chá-bēi gēn-'nèige-yí-yàng-dà.  
This teacup is as big as that one.
7. Nǐde-zìdiǎn gēn-wǒde-yíyàng-xiǎo.  
Your dictionary is as small as mine.
8. 'Wáng-Xiáojie xiàng-ta-mǔ-qin yíyàng-piàoliang.  
Miss King is as attractive as her mother.
9. Tā-shuōde-Zhōngwén gēn-'Zhōngguo-rén-shuō-de yíyàng-hǎo.  
The Chinese that he speaks is as good as that spoken by a Chinese.
10. Tā-niàn-shū xiàng-nǐ-niàn-shū yíyàng-hǎo.  
He studies as well as you do.
11. Húběi bù-gēn-Shāndong yí-yàng-dà-ma?  
Isn't Hupeh as large as Shantung?
12. Diànchē bú-xiàng-gōnggòng-qìchē yíyàng-kuài.  
Streetcars aren't as fast as buses.
13. 'Wǒde-qián bú-xiàng-'nǐde-qián yíyàng-duō.  
I don't have as much money as you do.
14. 'Wáng-Tàitai-huà-de-huà xiàng-'Qián-Tàitai-huà-de yí-yàng-hǎo.  
The paintings done by Mrs. Wang are as good as those done by Mrs. Qian.
15. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng bú-xiàng-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng yíyàng-cōngmíng.  
Mr. King is not as intelligent as Mr. Johnson.
16. 'Zhōngguo-rén gēn-'wàiguó-rén yíyàng-xǐhuan-wár.  
Chinese like to have fun as much as foreigners do.
17. Wǒ-xiàng-tā-yíyàng xīwang-dào-'Zhōngguo-qu.  
I'm as eager as he is to go to China.
18. 'Qián-Xiānsheng bú-xiàng-'Gāo-Xiānsheng yíyàng-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.  
Mr. Qian does not like to travel as much as Mr. Gao does.
19. 'Máo-Xiānsheng xiàng-'Gāo-Xiānsheng yíyàng-xǐhuan-kàn-shū.  
Mr. Mao likes to read as much as Mr. Gao does.
20. Wǒ-gēn-ta-yíyàng xīwang-dào-'Zhōngguo-qu-niàn-shū.  
I'm as eager as he is to go to China to study.

## Pattern 17.3. Similarity and Disparity (Note 4 below)

N <sub>1</sub>	yǒu/xiàng	N <sub>2</sub>	nènmo	V
Noun <sub>1</sub>	'have'/'like'	Noun <sub>2</sub>	'as'	Verb
Wǒ	yǒu	tā	nènmo	gāo.
'I'm as tall as he is.'				
Wǒ	yǒu	tā	nènmo	xǐhuan-kàn-shū.
'I like to read as much as he does.'				

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Wáng-Tàitai yǒu-Wáng-'Xiānsheng-nènmo-cōngming.</p> <p>2. 'Nèizhāng-dìtú méi-yǒu-zhèizhāng-zhènmo-hǎo.</p> <p>3. Zuò-chuán méi-yǒu-zuò-fēijī-nènmo-kuài.</p> <p>4. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-zì méi-yǒu-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-nènmo-hǎo.</p> <p>5. 'Zhèiběn-zìdiǎn méi-yǒu-'nèiběn-nènmo-hǎo.</p> <p>6. 'Nèiběn-shū méi-yǒu-'zhèiběn-shū-zhènmo-róngyì.</p> <p>7. 'Qián-Xiáojie méi-yǒu-'Wáng-Xiáojie-nènmo-piàoliang.</p> <p>8. Wǒ-dìdi xiàng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-nènmo-yònggōng.</p> <p>9. 'Zhèrde-rén méi-yǒu-'nèrde-nènmo-duō.</p> <p>10. 'Niàn-Zhōngguo-zì méi-yǒu-'xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-nènmo-nán.</p> <p>11. Wǒ-bú-xiàng-nǐ nènmo-xīwang-dào-'wàiguo-qù.</p> <p>12. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-'Bái-Xiānsheng nènmo-xǐhuan-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn.</p> <p>13. Wǒ-xiàng-nǐ-nènmo-xǐhuan-lǚ-xíng.</p> <p>14. Gāo-Tàitai bú-xiàng-Gāo-'Xiānsheng-nènmo-xīwang Měiyīng-dào-'wàiguo-qu-niàn-shū.</p> <p>15. Wǒ-bú-xiàng-nǐ nènmo-xīwang-jiéhūn.</p> | <p>Mrs. King is as smart as Mr. King.</p> <p>That map isn't as good as this one.</p> <p>Going by boat isn't as fast as going by plane.</p> <p>The characters that Mr. Qian writes aren't as nice as those written by Mr. Gao.</p> <p>This dictionary isn't as good as that one.</p> <p>That book isn't as easy as this one.</p> <p>Miss Qian is not as attractive as Miss Wang.</p> <p>My younger brother works as hard as Mr. Bai.</p> <p>There aren't as many people here as there are there.</p> <p>Reading Chinese characters isn't as hard as writing them.</p> <p>I'm not as eager as you are to go abroad.</p> <p>Mr. King does not like to eat Chinese food as much as Mr. White does.</p> <p>I like to travel as much as you do.</p> <p>Mrs. Gao is not as eager as Mr. Gao for Meiying to go abroad to study.</p> <p>I'm not as eager as you are to get married.</p> |
|---|--|

Pattern 17.4. Similarity and Disparity (Note 5 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	O <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	-de	<u>gēn</u>	O <sub>2</sub>	<u>yíyàng</u>	SV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>1</sub>	-de	'with'	Object <sub>2</sub>	'equally'	Stative Verb
Nǐ	niàn	shū	niàn	-de	gēn	tā	yíyàng	hǎo.
'You study as well as he does.'								

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Tā-xiǎng-de gēn-nǐ-yí-yàng-kuài.</p> | <p>He thinks as fast as you do.</p> |
|--|-------------------------------------|

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu shuō-de-gēn-<br>'Zhōngguo-rén yíyàng-hǎo. | Professor Wanamaker speaks as well as a Chinese. |
| 3. Tā-niàn-shū niànde-gēn-nǐ-<br>yíyàng-hǎo.               | He studies as well as you do.                    |
| 4. Tā-zǒu-lù gēn-nǐ-yíyàng-kuài.                           | He walks as fast as you do.                      |
| 5. Tā-chī-fàn gēn-nǐ-yíyàng-duō.                           | He eats as much as you do.                       |
| 6. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-mǎi-shū mǎi-<br>de-gēn-wǒ-yíyàng-duō.    | Mr. Gao buys as many books as I do.              |
| 7. Tā-kǎoshì-kǎo-de xiàng-wǒ-<br>yíyàng-máng.              | He's as busy with exams as I am.                 |
| 8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-huà-shānshuǐ<br>huà-de gēn-'tā-yíyàng-hǎo. | Miss Gao paints landscapes as well as he does.   |
| 9. Tā-huá-quán-huá-de gēn-nǐ-yí-<br>yàng-hǎo.              | He plays 'guess-fingers' as well as you do.      |
| 10. Tā-shuō-huà gēn-nǐ-yíyàng-<br>màn.                     | He talks as slowly as you do.                    |

## Pattern 17.5. Similarity and Disparity (Note 6 below)

S	V <sub>1</sub>	O <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	-de	yǒu/xiàng	O <sub>2</sub>	nènmo	SV
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Object <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>1</sub>	-de	'have'/'like'	Object <sub>2</sub>	'as'	Stative Verb
Nǐ	niàn	shū	niàn	-de	yǒu	tā	nènmo	hǎo.
'You study as well as he does.'								

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-xiě-zì-xiě-<br>de méi-yóu-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo.                       | Mr. Johnson does not write characters as well as you do.                 |
| 2. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shuō-'Zhōng-<br>wén-shuō-de xiàng-'nǐ-<br>zhènmo-hǎo.           | Mr. King speaks Chinese as well as you do.                               |
| 3. Tā-kǎoshì-kǎo-de méi-'nǐ-<br>zhènmo-máng.                                       | He isn't as busy with exams as you are.                                  |
| 4. Tā-chī-de xiàng-nǐ-zhènmo-<br>kuài.   | He eats as fast as you do.   |
| 5. 'Máo-Xiānsheng rènshi-zì-<br>rènshide méi-'nǐ-zhènmo-duō.                       | Mr. Mao does not know as many characters as you do.                      |
| 6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-kàn-shū xiàng-<br>'Gāo-Xiānsheng-nènmo-duō.                      | Mr. Mao reads as many books as Mr. Gao does.                             |
| 7. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō-Yīng-<br>wén shuō-de-xiàng-'Yīngguo-<br>rén-nènmo-hǎo.     | Mr. Qian speaks English as well as an Englishman.                        |
| 8. Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-mài-shū-mài-<br>de xiàng-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-<br>shūdiàn-nènmo-duō. | The Three Friends Bookstore sells as many books as Mr. Wang's bookstore. |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 9. Tā-jìè-shū-jìè-de méi-yǒu-<br>'nǐ-zhènmo-duō. | He doesn't borrow as many books as you do.         |
| 10. Tā-tīng-lùyīn bú-xiàng-'nǐ-zhènmo-duō.       | He doesn't listen to recordings as much as you do. |

Pattern 17.6. Qualification of Stative Verbs (Note 10 below)

S	SV	<u>-de</u>	A*	
Subject	Stative Verb	<u>-de</u>	A*	
Tā	hǎo	-de	hěn.	'He's very good.'
Tā	hǎo	-de	bùdéliǎo.	'He's awfully good.'
Tā	piàoliang	-de	rén-dōu-xǐhuan-ta.	'She's so attractive everyone likes her.'
1. Shānshang-nèisuǒr-fángzi				
dàde-hěn.				That house on the hill is huge.
2. Nèige-dìfang piàoliangde-				
bùdéliǎo.				That area is awfully attractive.
3. Niǔyue-rén duōde-bùdéliǎo.				New York has a terrific number of people.
4. Zhèige-chá hǎo-hēde-bùdéliǎo.				This tea is awfully good.
5. Wǒ-mángde méi-jīhui-kàn-diànyǐngr.				I'm so busy I don't have time to see movies.
6. Nèige-xiǎojie-piàoliangde hěnduō-rén xiǎng-gēn-ta-jiēhūn.				That young lady is so pretty that she has lots of suitors.
7. 'Hángzhou-shānshuǐ hǎo-kānde-méi-fázi-shuō.				The scenery at Hangchow is indescribably beautiful.
8. Nèige-xuésheng-'tài-bèn, bènde-lián-'yíge-zì-dōu-burènshi.				That student is very stupid, so much so that he doesn't recognize a single character.
9. Nèige-dìfang-piàoliangde chàbuduō-'suóyǒude-rén 'dōu-xiǎng-dào-nèr-qu-lǔxíng.				That place is so beautiful that almost everyone wants to make a trip there.
10. Nèige-fángzi-'tài-dà, dàde-méi-rén-yào-mǎi.				That house is too big, so much so that no one wants to buy it.

---

\* Where A is hěn 'very,' bùdéliǎo 'extremely,' or else a sentence.

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 32 sentences (Note 2)

(The asterisks here and in Table II below indicate that only items in the same row may be taken together—zhèrde-tiānqi with nèrde-tiānqi, Sānfánshì with Niǔyue, etc.)

*			*		
zhèrde-tiānqi	—	xiàng	nèrde-tiānqi	yíyàng	—
Sānfánshì	bu	gēn	Niǔyue		ma
dàxué			zhōngxué		
gāngbǐ			máobǐ		

II: 32 sentences (Note 3)

*			*		
zhèiběn-shū	—	xiàng	nèiběn-shū	yíyàng	—
wǒde-bǐ	bu	gēn	nǐde-bǐ		hǎo
Sūzhou			Hángzhou		
zhèige-yánse			nèige-yánse		

III: 72 sentences (Note 4)

Húnán	(méi) yǒu	Húběi	zhènmo	yuǎn
	(bú) xiàng	Dōngběi	zènmo	dà
			nènmo	hǎo

IV: 72 sentences (Note 5)

(The asterisks here and in Table V below indicate that only items from the same row may be taken together. Also, either one of the asterisked columns may be omitted altogether.)

*	*				
wǒ	shuō-huà	shuō-de	xiàng	tā	yíyàng
	niàn-shū	niàn-de	gēn		hǎo
	xiě-zì	xiě-de			kuài
	zuò-shì	zuò-de			màn

V: 64 sentences (Note 6)

*	*				
wǒ	shuō-huà	shuō-de	(méi) yǒu	tā	zhènmo
	xiě-zì	xiě-de	(bú) xiàng		nènmo
					hǎo
					kuài



## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## I. Contrast of Finals in Two-Syllable Pairs

This exercise consists of pairs of expressions which are distinguished in meaning solely by differences in tone on the second syllable. Digits represent tone sequences; 10, for example, means first tone followed by neutral tone.

10 vs. 11-14

dōngxi, dōng-xī

fāde, fādá

xiāzi, xiāzǐ

tāde, tā-dà

11 vs. 10-14

dōng-xī, dōngxi

sānshī, sānshí

fēnfā, fēnfǎ

shān-dōng, shān-dòng

12 vs. 10-14

fādá, fāde

sānshí, sānshī

gāi-mái, gāi-mǎi

gōng-rén, gōng-rèn

13 vs. 10-13

xiāzǐ, xiāzi

fēnfǎ, fēnfā

gāi-mǎi, gāi-mái

gāi-mǎi, gāi-mài

14 vs. 10-13

tā-dà, tāde

shān-dòng, shān-dōng

gōng-rèn, gōng-rén

gāi-mài, gāi-mǎi

20 vs. 21-24

méimao, méi-māo

méi-ne, méi-ná

xíngli, xíng-lǐ

yíge, yígè

21 vs. 20-24

méi-māo, méimao

méi-qiān, méi-qián

qígān, qígǎn

bái-huā, báihuà

22 vs. 20-24

méi-ná, méi-ne

méi-qián, méi-qiān

méi-lí, méi-lǐ

méi-qián, méi-qiàn

23 vs. 20-24

xíng-lǐ, xíngli

qígǎn, qígān

méi-lǐ, méi-lí

qiánjǐn, qiánjìn

24 vs. 20-23

yígè, yíge

báihuà, bái-huā

méi-qiàn, méi-qián

qiánjìn, qiánjǐn

30 vs. 31-34

huǒji, huǒjī  
mǎi-ma, mǎi-má  
hǎode, hǎo-dà

31 vs. 30-34

huǒjī, huǒji  
běifāng, běi-fáng  
wǔ-yī, wǔyì

32 vs. 30-34

mǎi-má, mǎi-ma  
běi-fáng, běifāng  
wǔshí, wǔshì

(33 vs. 30-34)

34 vs. 30-33

hǎo-dà, hǎode  
wǔyì, wǔ-yī  
wǔshì, wǔshí

40 vs. 41-44

dà-ma, dà-mā  
dàode, dàodé  
kuàide, kuài-dǎ  
kuàile, kuàilè

41 vs. 40-44

dà-mā, dà-ma  
yì-tīng, yì-tíng  
huìzhāng, huìzhǎng  
huì-fēi, huì-fèi

42 vs. 40-44

dàodé, dàode  
yì-tíng, yì-tíng  
xià-xué, xià-xuě  
xìngmíng, xìngmìng

43 vs. 40-44

kuài-dǎ, kuàide  
huìzhǎng, huìzhāng  
xià-xuě, xià-xué  
kuài-mǎi, kuài-mài

44 vs. 40-43

kuàilè, kuàile  
huì-fèi, huì-fēi  
xìngmìng, xìngmíng  
kuài-mài, kuài-mǎi

## II. Tonal Shifts in Three-Syllable Expressions

### A. Changes of Third Tone to Second Tone

If two third-tone syllables occur together, the first changes to second tone. If three third-tone syllables occur together, the first two change to second tone. These changes are shown in our transcription.

330 &gt; 230

nǐ mǔqin > ní-mǔqin  
wǒ xǐhuan > wó-xǐhuan  
qǐng wǔge > qíng-wǔge  
mǎi jiǔge > mái-jiǔge

331 &gt; 231

hěn jiǎndān > hén-jiǎndān  
yě hǎo chī > yé-hǎo-chī  
wǒ mǎi shū > wó-mǎi-shū  
yě yǒu chē > yé-yǒu-chē

## 3 3 2 &gt; 2 3 2

wǒ lǔxíng > wó-lǔxíng  
 hěn yǒu míng > hén-yǒu-míng  
 zhǐ yǒu qián > zhí-yǒu-qián  
 yě děi lái > yé-děi-lái

## 3 3 3 &gt; 2 2 3

wǒ yě yǒu > wó-yé-yǒu  
 nǐ mǎi bǐ > ní-mái-bǐ  
 yě hěn hǎo > yé-hén-hǎo  
 mǎi wǔběn > mái-wúběn

## 3 3 4 &gt; 2 3 4

yě kǎoshì > yé-kǎoshì  
 wǒ xiě zì > wó-xiě-zì  
 yě hǎokàn > yé-hǎokàn  
 wǔlǐ lù > wúlǐ-lù

## B. Change of Second Tone to First Tone

If a second-tone syllable with light stress occurs as the middle of three tonal syllables and follows a first or second tone, it changes to a first tone when spoken at rapid conversational speed. Since this change does not always take place, however, we do not show it in our writing.

1 2 1 > 1 1 1	1 2 2 > 1 1 2	1 2 3 > 1 1 3	1 2 4 > 1 1 4
Zhōngwén-shū	sānmáo-qián	dōu-méi-mǎi	sāntiáo-lù
dōu-méi-shuō	tā-méi-yíng	jiānglái-xiě	tā-hái-zuò
tā-néng-fēi	dōu-nán-xué	tā-lái-zhǎo	dōu-méi-kàn
tā-cháng-chī	sānniánjī	xīnán-yǒu	Sānfánshì
2 2 1 > 2 1 1	2 2 2 > 2 1 2	2 2 3 > 2 1 3	2 2 4 > 2 1 4
shéi-néng-shuō	xué-wénxué	yuánlái-yǒu	Húnán-huà
nín-hái-chī	hái-méi-lái	hái-nán-xiě	lái-xuéxiào
shéi-méi-hē	cóng-Húnán	suírán-yǒu	shéi-tán-huà
cái-néng-jiāo	bié-ná-qián	cái-lái-mǎi	bié-lái-kàn

## C. Change of Third Tone to First Tone

If a third-tone syllable with light stress occurs in the middle of a three-syllable expression after a first or second tone and before another third tone, it changes to a first tone in rapid speech. (Note that this change is a combination of the two changes mentioned in A and B.) We show in our transcription only the A change, since the B changes do not always occur.

1 3 3 &gt; 1 2 3 &gt; 1 1 3

2 3 3 &gt; 2 2 3 &gt; 2 1 3

tā yě yǒu &gt; tā-yé-yǒu

nín děi zǒu &gt; nín-déi-zǒu

dōu mǎi bǐ &gt; dōu-mái-bǐ

shéi xiǎng mǎi &gt; shéi-xiǎng-mǎi

shū yě hǎo &gt; shū-yé-hǎo

méi yǒu bǐ &gt; méi-yóu-bǐ

tā hěn lǎo &gt; tā-hén-lǎo

ná wǔběn &gt; ná-wúběn

## EXPANSION DRILLS

## I

tā

gēn-tā

gēn-tā-yíyàng

gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo

bù-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo

nǐ-bù-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo

nǐ-bù-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo-ma

## II

kuài

nènmo-kuài

chīde-nènmo-kuài

chīde-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

tā-chīde-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

tā-chīde méi-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

tā-chī-fàn-chīde méi-yóu-nǐ-nènmo-kuài

## III

yíyàng

yíyàng-màn

gēn-tā-yíyàng-màn

nǐ-gēn-tā-yíyàng-màn

nǐ-zuò-shì gēn-tā-yíyàng-màn

nǐ-zuò-shì-zuòde gēn-tā-yíyàng-màn

## SENTENCE CONVERSION

The Chinese sentences below are converted step by step into quite different sentences.

- I. From: Mrs. Gao is very fond of visiting foreign friends.  
To: Professor Wanamaker can't read Chinese books.

1. 'Gāo-Tàitai-hén-xǐhuan bàifang-wàiguó-péngyou.
2. 'Wàn-Tàitai-hén-xǐhuan bàifang-wàiguó-péngyou.
3. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-hén-xǐhuan bàifang-wàiguó-péngyou.
4. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-hén-xǐhuan kàn-wàiguó-péngyou.
5. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-bù-xǐhuan kàn-'wàiguó-péngyou.
6. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-bù-xǐhuan kàn-'wàiguó-shū.
7. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-bù-xǐhuan kàn-'Zhōngwén-shū.
8. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu bú-huì-kàn-'Zhōngwén-shū.

- II. From: I'm also buying a five-dollar pen tomorrow.  
To: He reads only ten minutes a day.

1. Wǒ-míngtiān yé-mái-wǔkuài-qiánde-bǐ.
2. Wǒ-míngtiān yé-mái-wǔfēn-qiánde-bǐ.
3. Wǒ-míngtiān yé-mái-wǔfēn-qiánde-shū.
4. Wǒ-míngtiān jiù-mái-wǔfēn-qiánde-shū.
5. Tā-míngtiān jiù-mái-wǔfēn-qiánde-shū.
6. Tā-měitiān jiù-mái-wǔfēn-qiánde-shū.
7. Tā-měitiān jiù-kàn-wǔfēn-zhōngde-shū.
8. Tā-měitiān jiù-kàn-shífēn-zhōngde-shū.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Qián-Xiānsheng hēle-'sānbēi-chá. Qián-Tàitai hēle-'sìbēi-chá. Tāmen-yìgòng-hēle-'jǐbēi-chá?
2. Gāo-Xiānsheng shuō-'Hángzhou-huà. Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie dōu-shuō-'Sūzhou-huà. Shuō-'Hángzhou-huà-de-rén-duō háishi-shuō-'Sūzhou-huà-de-rén-duō?
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-huá-quán yíngle-liùcì. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng yíngle-sāncì. 'Shéi-yíng-le?
4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng qùguó-Hángzhou-wǔcì. 'Bái-Xiānsheng qùguó-sìcì. 'Shéi-qùde-duō?

5. Wáng-Xiānsheng hē-Méiguī-Lù. Wáng- 'Tàitai-hē-chā. 'Shéi-hē-jiǔ?
6. 'Gāo-Xiáojie huàle-'wǔzhāng-shānshuǐ-huà. 'Wàn-Xiáojie huà-le-'liǎngzhāng. Huà-wǔzhāng-de-shi-shéi?
7. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng jiēhūn-wǔnián-le. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiēhūn-qīnián-le. Shéi-'xiān-jiēhūn?
8. Wǒ-qùguo-Xī-Hú-liǎngcì. Tā-qùguo-Xī-Hú-yíci. Tā-qùguo-'jǐci?
9. Wǒ-líkai-Hángzhou shíwǔnián. Tā-líkai-Hángzhou shí'èrnián. Shéi-'xiān-líkai-Hángzhou?
10. Tā-xǐhuan-nuǎnhuode-tiānqi. Wó-xǐhuan-bù-nuǎnhuode-tiānqi. 'Shéi-xǐhuan-nuǎnhuode-tiānqi?

## NOTES

1. The expression yǒu yidiǎr—literally 'have a little'—is used in the meaning 'somewhat' before verbs:

Wǒ-zhèi-jǐtiān yǒu-yìdiǎr-máng. 'I've been somewhat busy these few days.'

Tā-yǒu-yìdiǎr xiàng-ta-mǔqin. 'He somewhat resembles his mother.'

2. The expression yíyàng—literally 'one kind'—as a verb means 'be alike,' 'be like,' 'similar to':

Zhèi-liángběn-shū yíyàng. 'These two books are alike.'

Zhèi-liángběn-shū bù-yíyàng. 'These two books are not alike.' or 'These two books are different.'

If the things being compared are mentioned separately, they are connected by gēn 'with' or xiàng 'resemble':

Wǒde-bǐ gēn-tāde-bǐ yíyàng.

or  
Wǒde-bǐ xiàng-tāde-bǐ yíyàng. } 'My pen is like his pen.'

(See also Supplementary Lesson 17, Note 2)

3. Yíyàng used adverbially before a verb means 'equally' or 'as':

Wǒde-bǐ gēn-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo. or

Wǒde-bǐ xiàng-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo.

'My pen is as good as his.' [lit. 'My pen and his pen are equally good.']

In this construction, bu 'not' and other adverbial modifiers are placed before either gēn 'with, and' or xiàng 'resemble':

Wǒde-bǐ bù-gēn-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo. or

Wǒde-bǐ bú-xiàng-tāde-bǐ yíyàng-hǎo.

'My pen isn't as good as his pen.'

In sentences with gēn 'with, and' it is possible also to put an adverbial modifier before yíyàng:

Wǒde-bǐ gēn-tāde-bǐ bù-yíyàng-hǎo. 'My pen isn't as good as his pen.'

A few verbs other than stative verbs (e.g. hǎo 'good') are used in this construction. Note xǐhuan in the following example:

Wǒ-gēn-nǐ yíyàng-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'I like to see movies as much as you do.' [lit. 'I and you equally like to see movies.']

(See also Supplementary Lesson 17, Note 2)

4. An alternative way of expressing similarity and disparity is to use yǒu 'have' or xiàng 'resemble' in the coverb position before a verb which is itself preceded by any of the adverbs nènmo, zhènmo, or zènmo 'so':

Ní-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo.	}	'You are as good as he is.'
<u>or</u> Nǐ-xiàng-tā-nènmo-hǎo.		
Tā-yóu-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo.	}	'He is as good as you are.'
<u>or</u> Tā-xiàng-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo.		

The negative forms of these sentences use méi before yǒu and bú before xiàng:

Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo.	}	'You're not as good as he is.'
<u>or</u> Nǐ-bú-xiàng-tā-nènmo-hǎo.		

In sentences containing yǒu the adverbs nènmo, zhènmo, and zènmo can be omitted:

Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo.	}	'You're not as good as he is.'
<u>or</u> Nǐ-méi-yǒu-tā-hǎo.		

5. The constructions described in Note 3 are also used in sentences comparing how an action is performed:

Nǐ-xiě-zì xiěde-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo. 'You write as well as he does.'

In such sentences, xiě-zì and xiěde are optional:

Nǐ-xiěde gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo.	}	'You write as well as he does.'
<u>or</u> Nǐ-xiě-zì gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo.		

(See also Supplementary Lesson 17, Note 2)

6. The constructions discussed in Note 4 are also used in sentences comparing how an action is performed:

Nǐ-xiě-zì xiěde-méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo. 'You don't write as well as he does.'

Here also, xiě-zì and xiěde are optional.

7. The verb zuò 'do' is used as a postverb in kànzuo 'regard as,' bǐzuò 'rank as, equate with':

Wó-bǎ-tā kànzuo-wǒde-péngyou. 'I regarded him as my friend.'

Wó-bǎ èr-zì kànzuo-sān-zì. 'I took the character two to be the character three.'

Wó-bǎ-nèige-'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng bǐzuò-'dàxuéde-xuésheng. 'I rank that high-school student as a college student.'

8. The Chinese tendency to use two-syllable expressions as full forms and monosyllables as combining forms is illustrated by the contrast of bēi and bēizi. The latter is a fully independent word for 'cup':

Zhèige-bēizi-tài-dà-le. 'This cup is too large.'

Bēi is used as a combining nominal form (chá-bēi 'teacup,' xiǎo-bēi 'small cup') as well as a measure (sānbēi-chá 'three cups of tea').

9. The measure xiē is used as a general pluralizing form:

Zhèiběn-shū-shi-wǒde. 'This book is mine.'

Zhèixiē-shū-shi-wǒde. 'These books are mine.'

Xiē is not used if a specific number is mentioned (except in the expression yìxiē 'a few'):

Zhèi-sānběn-shū-shi-wǒde. 'These three books are mine.'

Xiē 'few' combines with hǎo 'good' in hǎoxiē 'a good many, a good deal':

Mǎi-yìsuǒr-fángzi yào-hǎoxiē-qián. 'Buying a house requires quite a lot of money.'

Hǎoxiē is often used after yǒu 'have' in the shared-object-subject construction described in Lesson 9 (Note 7, p. 118):

Zuótiān-yǒu-hǎoxiē-xuéshēng lái-kǎoshì. 'Yesterday there were quite a few students who came to take the exams.'

Xiē is also used in the combination yǒu-xiē meaning 'some':

Nèige-shūdiàn-mǎi-de-shū, yǒu-xiē-shi-hǎo-de, yǒu-xiē-shi-bù-hǎo-de. '(Of) the books sold by that bookstore, some are good, some are bad.'

10. The most common type of qualifier for a stative verb is a preceding adverb:

hěn-dà 'quite large'

Stative verbs can also be qualified by the suffix de plus a following qualifying expression:

dàde-hěn 'very large'

dàde-bùdéliǎo 'awfully big'

dàde-méi-rén-yào 'so big that no one wants (it)'



## Lesson 18 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

All the possible tonal combinations of three syllables are here illustrated with vocabulary from the first three Units. The digits to the left indicate the tone of the first syllables, those at the top the tones of the second and third syllables. Asterisks indicate expressions which have undergone tonal shifts. (See Lesson 17, Pronunciation Drill II, pp. 288-90, for these and other possible changes in tone.)

	0 0	0 1	0 2	0 3	0 4
1	zhīdaole	xiānsheng-shuō	tāmen-lái	chībuliǎo	shuōde-màn
2	háizide	xuésheng-tīng	róngyi-xué	xuéde-hǎo	fángzi-dà
3	xǐhuan-ma	zěnmò-shuō	xǐhuan-lái	xiède-hǎo	pǎode-kuài
4	tàिताide	màide-duō	wàngle-ná	niànbuliǎo	kànbujiàn

	1 0	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4
1	gāozhōngde	sānfēn-zhōng	yīngdāng-xué	xīngqīwǔ	fēiji-kuài
2	rén-duō-le	méi-tīngshuō	xué-Zhōngwén	shízhī-bǐ	néng-chī-fàn
3	wǒ-shuōde	wǒ-jiāo-shū	xiě-Yīngwén	mǎi-gāngbǐ	yě-chī-fàn
4	kuài-chī-ba	lùyīnjī	niàn-kēxué	sìzhībǐ	dào-shūdiàn

	2 0	2 1	2 2	2 3	2 4
1	dōu-lái-le	tā-huí-jiā	zhēn-nán-xué	gōngyuán-yuǎn	tā-méi-kàn
2	shéi-lái-le	hái-méi-chī	xué-wénxué	méi-qián-mǎi	Húnán-huà
3	wǒ-xuéde	yě-méi-shuō	qǐng-nín-lái	yǒu-qián-mǎi	hěn-nán-niàn
4	tài-róngyi	zuì-nán-shuō	dào-Húnán	zuì-nán-zhǎo	shàng-xuéxiào

	3 0	3 1	3 2	3 3	3 4
1	shū-mǎi-le	zhēn-hǎo-chī	tā-yǒu-qián	gāngbǐ-hǎo*	xiān-mǎi-piào
2	nán-zōu-ma	shíběn-shū	Húběi-rén	qián-hén-shǎo*	shíjiǔsuì
3	mái-běnzǐ*	hén-hǎo-chī*	jiúbǎi-rén*	wó-yóu-bǐ*	hén-hǎo-kàn*
4	tài-hǎo-le	qù-mǎi-shū	yào-wǔmáo	wàng-béi-guǎi*	zuì-hǎo-kàn

	4 0		4 1		4 2
1	dōu-mài-le		tīng-lùyīn		dōu-tài-nán
2	hái-zuò-ma		néng-shàng-shān		shíkuài-qián
3	kǎoshì-le		yě-yònggōng		mǎi-dìtú
4	zuì-dà-de		zì-tài-duō		màipiàoyuán
		4 3		4 4	
	1	shān-tài-xiǎo		tā-zuì-dà	
	2	rén-tài-shǎo		lí-zhèr-jìn	
	3	yǒu-sìběn		yě-tài-dà	
	4	jiè-zìdiǎn		sìwàнкуài	

## ANALOGY DRILL

The drills below consist of three parts: (1) a statement, (2) a question, and (3) an answer. In Section A, all three are given; in Section B, only the statement is given. To perform Section B, the teacher says the statement, one student asks an appropriate question on the analogy of those in Section A, and another student makes an appropriate response, again on the foregoing analogy. Examples:

Ta-'bú-xìng-Wáng. 'His name isn't King.'

Ta-bú-xìng-Wáng xìng-shénmo? 'If his name isn't King, what is his name?'

Ta-xìng-Zhāng. 'His name is Johnson.'

Jīntian bú-shi-xīngqīyī. 'Today isn't Monday.'

Jīntian bú-shi-xīngqīyī shi-xīngqījǐ? 'If today isn't Monday what day of the week is it?'

Jīntian shi-xīngqī'èr. 'Today is Tuesday.'

Zhèi-bú-shi-'gāngbǐ. 'This isn't a fountain pen.'

Zhèi-bú-shi-'gāngbǐ shi-shénmo? 'If this isn't a fountain pen what is it?'

Zhèi-shi-'qiānbǐ. 'This is a pencil.'

Wǒ-bú-niàn-shū. 'I don't study.'

Nǐ-bú-niàn-shū zuò-shénmo? 'If you don't study what do you do?'

Wǒ-zuò-shì. 'I work.'

## Section A

1. Wǒ-bù-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Nǐ-bù-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn chī-shénmo? Wǒ-chī-'Měiguó-fàn.
2. Zhèi-bú-shi-wǒde-shū. Zhèi-bú-shi-'nǐde-shū shi-'shéide-shū? Shi-'Zhāng-Xiānshengde-shū.

3. Wǒ-bú-huà-huàr. Nǐ-bú-huà-huàr zuò-shénmo? Wó-xiě-zì.
4. Wǒ-jīntian bù-tīng-lùyīn. Nǐ-bù-tīng-lùyīn zuò-shénmo? Wǒ-niàn-shū.
5. Wǒ-bú-shàng-Hángzhou. Nǐ-bú-shàng-'Hángzhou shàng-nǎr? Wǒ-shàng-Sūzhou.
6. Wǒ-míngtian 'bú-qù-lǚxíng. Nǐ-bù-lǚxíng zuò-shénmo? Kàn-diànyīng.
7. Wǒ-bù-hē-jiǔ. Nǐ-bù-hē-jiǔ hē-shénmo? Wǒ-hē-chá.
8. Tā-xiě-xìn bú-yòng-máobǐ. Tā-bú-yòng-'máobǐ yòng-shénmo? Tā-yòng-'gāngbǐ.
9. Wǒ-bú-shàng-xuéxiào. Nǐ-bú-shàng-xuéxiào shàng-nǎr? Shàng-túshū-guǎn.
10. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīnnian-bú-dào-'Měiguó-qu. Tā-bú-dào-'Měiguó dào-nǎr-qu? Tā-dào-'Rìběn-qu.
11. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'wúdiǎn-zhōng-bù-lái. Tā-'wúdiǎn-zhōng-bù-lái 'jídìǎn-zhōng-lái? Tā-'liùdiǎn-zhōng-lái.
12. Wó-mǔqīn sìyue-'bú-dào-Měiguó-lái. Tā-'sìyue-bù-lái 'shénmo-shíhou-lái? Tā-'báyue-lái.
13. 'Qián-Xiānsheng jīnnian-bú-dào-Yīngguó-qu. Tā-jīnnian bú-dào-'Yīngguó-qu dào-nǎr-qu? Tā-dào-Měiguó-qu.
14. Wǒ-jīntian-bù-mǎi-shū-qu. Nǐ-jīntian-bù-mǎi-shū mǎi-shénmo? Wó-mǎi-mòshuǐ-qu.
15. Wǒ-bú-zài-'Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū. Nǐ-bú-zài-'Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū zài-'nǎr-niàn-shū? Wǒ-zài-'zhōngxué-niàn-shū.
16. Wǒ-fùqīn bù-xǐhuan-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn. Tā-bù-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn xǐhuan-chī-'shénmo-fàn? Tā-xǐhuan-chī-'Měiguó-fàn.
17. Tā-bú-xiàng-ta-mǔqīn. Tā-bú-xiàng-ta-mǔqīn xiàng-shéi? Tā-xiàng-tā-fùqīn.
18. Wǒ-'bù-xiáng-mái-biǎo. Nǐ-bù-mái-biǎo mǎi-shénmo? Wó-xiáng-mái-shū.
19. Tā-bú-zài-'zhōngxué-jiāo-shū. Tā-bú-zài-zhōngxué-jiāo-shū zài-'nǎr-jiāo-shū? Tā-zài-'xiǎoxué-jiāo-shū.
20. 'Wǒmen-bù-huānying-ta. 'Nǐmen-bù-huānying-ta 'shéi-huānying-ta? 'Méi-rén-huānying-ta.
21. Wǒ-jīntian-bú-shàng-kè. Nǐ-bú-shàng-kè zuò-shénmo? Wǒ-tīng-lùyīn.

22. Wǒ-bú-zài-sìniánjí. Nǐ-bú-zài-'sìniánjí zài-'jǐniánjí? Wǒ-zài-'sān-niánjí.
23. Wǒ-duì-'kēxué-méi-yǒu-xìngqu. Nǐ-duì-'kēxué-méi-yǒu-xìngqu duì-'shénmo-yǒu-xìngqu? Wǒ-duì-'yǔánxué-yǒu-xìngqu.
24. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan 'zhèige-fāngfǎ. Nǐ-bù-xǐhuan 'zhèige-fāngfǎ xǐhuan-'něige-fāngfǎ? Wó-xǐhuan-'něige-fāngfǎ.
25. Wǒ-bù-shífēn-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Nǐ-bù-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn xǐhuan-chī-'shénmo-fàn? Wó-xǐhuan chī-'Rìběn-fàn.
26. Wǒ-bú-yòng-'Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn. Nǐ-bú-yòng-'Zhōngwén-xiě-xìn yòng-'shénmo-wén-xiě-xìn? Wǒ-yòng-'Yīngwén-xiě-xìn.
27. Nèige-háizi 'zuì-bù-xǐhuan-kàn-shū. Tā-bù-xǐhuan-kàn-shū xǐhuan-zuò-shénmo? Tā-xǐhuan-wár.
28. Wǒmen-jīntian xuébuwán-dì-'sānkè. Nǐmen-xuébuwán-dì-'sānkè xuédewán-dì-jǐkè? Wǒmen-xuédewán-dì-'èrkè.
29. Wǒ-jīntian-bù-xiǎng-tīng 'liǎngge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn. Nǐ-bù-xiǎng-tīng 'liǎngge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn xiǎng-tīng-'jǐge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn? Wó-xiǎng-tīng 'yíge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn.
30. Tā-méi-bǎ-zìdiǎn-géi-wo. Tā-méi-ba-'zìdiǎn-géi-ni bǎ-'shénmo-géi-ni-le? Tā-bǎ-'dìtú-géi-wo-le.
31. 'Zhèige-fázi bù-hǎo. 'Zhèige-fázi-bù-hǎo 'shénmo-fázi-hǎo? 'Méi-you-hǎo-fázi.
32. Wó-géi-ni-'jièshao-de-nèiwèi-péngyou bú-shi-jiàoshòu. Tā-bú-shi-'jiàoshòu shi-shénmo? Tā-shi-'zhōngxué-jiàoyuán.
33. Bié-bǎ-zhèixiē-dōngxi nájìn-fángzi-qu. Bù-nájìn-fángzi-qu nǎdào-nǎr-qu? Nǎdào-shūdiàn-qu.
34. Bú-shi-'wǒ-gàosu-xiānsheng-de. Bú-shi-'nǐ-gàosu-xiānsheng-de shi-shéi-gàosu-xiānsheng-de? Shi-'tā-gàosu-xiānsheng-de.
35. Tā-bú-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-dà-de. Tā-bú-shi-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-dà-de shi-zài-'nǎr-zhǎng-dà-de? Tā-shi-zài-'Měiguó-zhǎng-dà-de.
36. Jīntian-bú-shi-'wǔhào. Jīntian-bú-shi-'wǔhào shi-'jǐhào? Jīntian-shi-'liùhào.
37. Xī-Shān bú-zài-xīnánbiar. Xī-Shān bú-zài-xīnánbiar zài-něibiar? Xī-Shān-zài-xībēibiar.
38. Wǒmen-bú-zài-'zhèr-xià-chē. Wǒmen-bú-zài-'zhèr-xià-chē zài-'nǎr-xià-chē? Wǒmen-zài-gōngyuán-mén-kǒur-xià-chē.
39. Wǒmen-bú-mài 'hóng-mòshuǐ. Nǐmen-bú-mài 'hóng-mòshuǐ mài-'shénmo-yánse-mòshuǐ? Wǒmen-jiù-mài-'hēi-mòshuǐ, 'lán-mòshuǐ.

40. Wǒ-bú-shi-děng-Gāo-Xiáojie. Nǐ-bú-shi-děng-Gāo-Xiáojie děng-shéi?  
Wó-děng-Gāo-Xiānsheng.
41. Tā-bú-shi-'qùnian-jiēhūn-de. Tā-bú-shi-'qùnian-jiēhūn-de shì-'shénmo-  
shíhou-jiēhūn-de? Tā-shì-'jīnnian-jiēhūn-de.
42. Tiānqi-bù-hǎode-shíhou wǒ-bú-dào-gōngyuán-qu. Nǐ-bú-dào-gōngyuán-  
qu dào-nǎr-qu? Wǒ-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu.
43. Tā-huá-quán bú-shi-yíngle-'sāncì. Tā-bú-shi-yíngle-'sāncì yíngle-'jǐ-  
cì? Tā-yíngle-'liǎngcì.
44. Chī-de-dōngxi bú-shi-'wó-mǎi-de. Bú-shi-'ní-mǎi-de shì-'shéi-mǎi-  
de? Shì-'tā-mǎi-de.
45. 'Liǎngge-běnzi-bú-gòu. 'Liǎngge-běnzi-bú-gòu 'jǐge-běnzi-gòu-ne?  
'Sānge-běnzi-cái-gòu-ne.

## Section B

1. Wǒ-jīntian bú-dào-túshūguǎn-qu.
2. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-yìbǎikuài-qián.
3. Wǒ-bù-gěi-ta-qián.
4. Tā-yuánlái bù-xǐhuan-yánjiu-kēxué.
5. Wǒ-jiānglái bú-niàn-dàxué.
6. Tā-bù-xǐhuan-jiāo-shū.
7. Wǒ-jīntian bù-xiǎng-chūqu.
8. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan zhùzai-shānshang.
9. Tā-bù-xǐhuan kāi-diànchē.
10. Wǒ-bù-xiáng-mǎi-chá-bēi.
11. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-lǚxíng.
12. Tā-bú-shi-zài-'Húnán-shēng-de.
13. Tā-bú-shi-'zǎochen-lái-de.
14. Tā-bú-niàn-'yìniánjí.
15. Tā-bú-duì 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà.
16. Wǒ-bù-géi-wó-mǔqin-mǎi-shū.
17. Zhèige-bú-jiào-qiānbǐ.
18. Wǒmen-jīntian bú-niàn-dì-shíjiǔkè.
19. Zhèige-zì bú-shi-wó-xiě-de.
20. Wǒ-bú-zuò-fēijī-qù.
21. Zhèige-zìdiǎn bú-shi-wǒde.

22. Wǒmen-bú-wàng-béi-guǎi.
23. Tā-bú-xìng-Bái.
24. Tā-bú-zhù-Niǚyue.
25. Bú-shi-'tā-gàosu-wǒ-de.

## REPLACEMENT DRILL

Replace some element in each sentence with the parenthesized expression to the right.

1. Tāde-Zhōngguo-huà bú-cuò. (hén-hǎo)
2. Wǒmen-zuì-hǎo déng-jīfēn-zhōng. (yìhuěr)
3. Wǒmen-bìděi-dào-biéde-dìfang-qu. (děi)
4. Nǐ-wèi-shénmo méi-dài-biǎo? (mǎi)
5. Nǐ-kàn zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huà 'hǎo-bù-hǎo? (zěnmoyàng)
6. Nǐmen-yīngdāng měitiān-tīng 'liǎngge-zhōngtóu-lùyīn. (gāi)
7. Tā-shuō-de-huà wo-'dōu-dǒng. (míngbai)
8. Tā-qǐngle-hěn-duō-kèren, kěshi-lián-'yíge-rén dōu-méi-lái. (yě)
9. 'Zhèige-dōngxī gēn-'nèige-dōngxī-yíyàng. (xiàng)
10. Nèige-lǎo-xiānsheng hén-yǒu-qián. (míng)
11. Yìqiāнкуài-qián 'gòu-bu-gòu? (wàn)
12. Wǒmen-chī-fàn-yǐqián xiān-hē-chá. (huá-quán)
13. Wó-zhí-yǒu-sānkuài-qián. (jiù)
14. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-jīhui wǒ-yídìng-dào-nèr-qu-lǚxíng. (gōngfu)
15. Wǒmen-dōu-mángde-hěn. (bùdéliǎo)
16. Wó-bǎ-ta kànzuò-yíge-xuésheng. (jiàoyuán)
17. Wǒmen-kuài-yào-kǎo-shū-le. (kǎoshì)
18. Wǒ-yìdiǎr-dōu-bù-míngbai. (shénmo)
19. Zhèiyàng bú-xiàng-nèiyàng nènmo-hǎo. (méi-yǒu)
20. Tāmen-dāngrán chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. (yídìng)

## INSERTION DRILL

Insert into the following items the material in parentheses. This may require you to combine the two sentences into one. For example:

Wǒ-máng. Lián-'fàn-dōu-bù-néng-chī. (de)  
'I'm busy. I can't even eat.'

Insertion of de into these sentences gives a single sentence: '

Wǒ-mángde lián-'fàn-dōu-bù-néng-chī.  
'I'm so busy I can't even eat.'

1. Wǒ-méi-gōngfu, bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyīng. (yīnwei... suóyi)
2. Tā-bìyè-le. Dào-'Rìběn-qu-le. (yǐhòu... jiu)
3. Nèige-xuéxiào yǒu-'Zhōngguo-xuésheng, yǒu-'wàiguó-xuésheng. (yě... yě)
4. Tā-méi-yǒu-qián. Hái-yào-qu-kàn-diànyīng. (suírán... kěshi)
5. Tāmen-dōu-bèn. Méi-yǒu-rén-xǐhuan-tāmen. (de)
6. Tā-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà, huì-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì. (yě... yě)
7. Nǐ-méi-yǒu-qián. Bù-néng-mǎi-shū. (rúguǒ... jiu)
8. Tā-chī-fàn. Dào-túshūguǎn-qu. (xiān... hòu)
9. Wó-xiǎng-qu-bàifang-péngyou. Méi-yǒu-gōngfu. (kěshi)
10. Wǒ-yào-kǎoshì-le, bù-néng-qu-wár. (yīnwei... suóyi)
11. Wǒ-jīntian-méi-niàn-shū, yě-méi-xiě-zì. (búdàn... érqǐě)
12. Bái-Xiānsheng-cōngming, érqǐě-yònggōng. (yòu... yòu)
13. Wó-yǒu-gōngfu. Yídìng-dào-nǐn-jiā-qu. (rúguǒ)
14. Nèige-xuésheng-hěn-bèn, yě-bù-yònggōng. (búdàn... érqǐě)
15. Wǒ-néng-kàn-Zhōngwén-shū, bù-néng-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. (suírán... kěshi)
16. Wǒ-xué-yǔyán. 'Měitiān-tīng-lùyīn. (de-shíhou)
17. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-gōngfu-qu-wár. Méi-yǒu-qián. (búdàn... érqǐě)
18. Tā-niànguó-dàxué. Méi-bìyè. (kěshi)
19. Tā-xuéle-yìniánde-'Zhōngguo-huà-le. Yíjù-'Zhōngguo-huà yě-bù-néng-shuō. (suírán... kěshi)
20. Wǒ-zuòwán-le-shì. Wǒmen-kéyi-zǒu. (yǐhòu... jiu)

### TRANSFORMATION DRILL

#### A. Transformation from Affirmative to Negative.

Note that there are several possible types of transformation, depending on the form of the affirmative sentence.

1. Tā-zuótian-lái-le. Tā-zuótian-'méi-lái.
2. Tā-shi-zài-Dōngběi-shēng-de. Tā-'bù-shi-zài-Dōngběi-shēng-de.

3. Tā-zài-Húnán-zhǎng-dà-de. Tā-'bú-shi-zài-Húnán-zhǎng-dà-de.
4. Tā-kāodeshàng-dàxué. Tā-kǎobushàng-dàxué.
5. Nǐ-déi-zǒu. Nǐ-'bú-bì-zǒu.
6. Tā-dào-nǎr-qu? Tā-'bú-dào-nǎr-qu.
7. Tāde-xuéwen-hén-hǎo. Tāde-xuéwen-'bù-hén-hǎo.
8. Tā-zài-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-chī-fàn. Tā-'bú-zài-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-chī-fàn.
9. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-hén-hǎo. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-'bù-hén-hǎo.
10. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī niàndedào-dì-'èrshikè. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī niàn-budào-dì-'èrshikè.

B. Transformation from Indefinite Active to Definite Passive.

In the first of each pair of sentences below, the object is either definite or indefinite, the verb is active, and the time is immaterial. In the second, the object is always definite, the time is past, and the translation can be expressed as a passive. For example:

Tāmen-mài-shū. 'They sell books.'  
 Shū-shi-'tāmen-mài-de. 'The books were sold by them.'

1. Gāo-Xiáojie huà-huàr. Huàr shi-'Gāo-Xiáojie-huà-de.
2. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu xiěle-zhèiběn-shū. Zhèiběn-shū shi-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-xiě-de.
3. Tā-mǎile-nèige-'zìdiǎn-méi-yǒu? Nèige-zìdiǎn shi-'tā-mǎi-de-ma?
4. Tā-mǎi-piào. Piào-shi-'tā-mǎi-de.
5. 'Gāo-Tàitai zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn. 'Zhōngguo-fàn shi-'Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de.
6. Tā-xiěle-sānběn-shū-le. Sānběn-shū shi-'tā-xiě-de.
7. Tā-zài-túshūguǎn-jiè-shū. Shū-shi-tā-zài-'túshūguǎn-jiè-de.
8. Wó-gěi-tā-qián. Qián-shi-'wó-gěi-ta-de.
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng jiāo-wo-Zhōngwén. Zhōngwén shi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-jiāo-wo-de.
10. Wó-xiě-xìn. Xìn-shi-'wó-xiě-de.

MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES

(Read aloud and translate)

1. Xià-kè-yǐhòu wǒ-jiù-huí-jiā.
2. 'Gāo-Xiáojie zuótian-mǎile-yíge-biǎo.



3. Tā-'gāozhōng-hái-méi-niànwán jiù-yào-kǎo-dàxué.
4. Wǒ-xīngqīliù xiǎng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr.
5. Nèiwèi-jiàoyuán-hén-hǎo. Wǒmen-'dōu-huānying-ta.
6. Qíng-nǐ-kàn wó-xiě-de-zhè-jǐge-'Zhōngguo-zì 'duì-bu-duì.
7. Xué-yǔyán yǒu-'yídìngde-fāngfǎ.
8. Nǐ-chīguo-'Zhōngguo-fàn-ma? Wǒ-chīguo-hěn-duō-cì-le.
9. Wó-yóu-wǔqiāнкуài-qián wǒ-jiù-dào-Yīngguo-Měiguó qù-lǚxíng.
10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie zhǎngde-'shífēn-piàoliang.
11. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yòng-wǔwàнкуài-qián mǎile-yìsuǒr-fángzi.
12. Jīntian wǒ-hái-méi-géi-wo-nǚ-péngyou-xiě-xìn-ne.
13. 'Máo-Xiānsheng duì-kēxué-'hén-yǒu-xìngqu.
14. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-láile-yìhuěr jiù-zǒu-le.
15. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yuánlái-shi-xué-'kēxué-de. Hòulái yòu-xué-wénxué-le.
16. Wó-měitiān dēi-tīng yíge-zhōngtóude-lùyīn.
17. Yīnwei-tā-bìng-le, suóyì-jīntian-bú-dào-xuéxiào-lái.
18. Nǐ-míngtian-sāndiǎn-zhōng 'yídìng-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-ma? Wǒ-dāng-rán-qù-le.
19. 'Kuài-yào-kǎoshì-le. Wó-dēi-yònggōng-niàn-shū-le.
20. Wǒ-xīwang-jiānglái néng-shàng-'Zhōngguo-qu-niàn-shū.
21. Wǒmen-'dōu-xǐhuan nèiwèi-jiàoyuán. Tā-jiāo-shū jiāode-hǎojíle.
22. Wǒ-jiānglái-yǒu-jīhui yě-dào-wàiguó-qu-lǚxíng.
23. 'Bái-Xiānsheng rènshi-'Máo-Xiānsheng. Shi-'Qián-Xiānsheng-jièshao-de.
24. Zuótian gēn-jǐge-péngyou yíkuài-shàng-shān-le.
25. Wǒmen-xué-yǔyán yīngdāng-měitiān-tīng-lùyīn.
26. Wáng-Xiānsheng-bìng-le. Wǒ-yīnggai-qu-kànkān-ta.
27. Tā-jiā-zhùzai-shānshang. Mǎi-dōngxì-hěn-máfan.
28. 'Bái-Xiānsheng búdàn-'shū-niànde-hǎo, érqiě-zì yé-xiěde-hǎo.
29. Yuǎndōng-Dàxué kǎoshì-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì. Yígòng-kǎole èrbǎi-duō-gezì. 'Bái-Xiānsheng lián-'yíge-zì dōu-méi-xiěcuò.
30. Xué-yǔyán, tīng-lùyīn-zhèige-fāngfǎ zhēn-hǎo.
31. Liǎngge-rén-kāishǐ-rènshi yídìng-dēi-shuō "Jiúyǎng, jiúyǎng."
32. Nèige-háizi sìsuì-le. Lián-yíjù-huà yě-bú-huì-shuō.
33. Gāo-Tàitai gěi-Gāo-Xiáojie-kāi-mén.
34. Nèige-háizi-bènjíle. Niànle-yìnián-shū lián-yíge-zì yě-bú-rènshi.
35. Tā-bǎ-jiā-lǐtou 'suóyǒude-shū 'dōu-nádào-xuéxiào-qu-le.
36. Yǒude-rén-xǐhuan-lǚxíng, yǒude-rén xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr.

37. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu 'zhēn-yǒu-xuéwen. Tā-xiěde-shū-hǎojíle.  
 38. Tā-dài-ta-fùqinde-biǎo.  
 39. 'Máo-Xiānsheng 'bú-zài-jiā. Tā-chūqu-le.  
 40. Nín-qǐng-'jìnlai-zuò-yìhuēr.

## DIALOGUE

'Wàn-Jiàoshòu yào-huǐ-'Yīngguo-qu-le. Tāde-xuésheng, 'Zhāng-Dōngshēng, xiáng-qǐng-tā-chī-fàn. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén-tán-huà.

Zhāng: 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu, nín-hǎo-ma?

Wàn: Oh, Dōngshēng, wó-hǎo. Ní-hǎo-ma?

Zhāng: Wó-hǎo, xièxie-nín. Wǒ-tīngshuō nín-yào-huǐ-'Yīngguo-qu-le.

Wàn: Duì-le. Wǒ-èrshiwǔhào jiù-zǒu-le. Ní-kǎoshì-yǐhòu dào-Yīngguo-qu-wárwǎr.

Zhāng: Wó-hěn-xīwang dào-'Yīngguo-qu, kěshi-tài-máng. Kǎoshì-yǐhòu yě-bìděi-yònggōng-niàn-shū. Wó-xiáng-děi-bìyè-yǐhòu cái-yǒu-jīhuì dào-'Yīngguo-qu-ne.

Wàn: Xīwang-nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu dào-Yīngguo-qu. Wǒmen-zài-'Yīngguo-jiàn.

Zhāng: Hǎo. Wó-yě-shi zènmo-xīwang. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu, nín-kuài-zǒu-le. Wó-xiǎng-zhèige-xīngqī-lǐtou qǐng-nín-chī-fàn. Wǒ-hái-qǐng-jǐge-'biéde-péngyou. Nín-shénmo-shíhou-yǒu-gōngfu-ne? Qǐng-nín-'shuō-yíge-shíhou.

Wàn: Nǐ-tài-kèqi.

Zhāng: Nín-bié-kèqi.

Wàn: Nènmo xīngqī'wú-hǎo-bu-hǎo?

Zhāng: Hǎo. Wó-xiáng-qǐng-nín dào-wǒ-'jiā-lǐtou-lái. Qǐng-nín-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn 'hǎo-bù-hǎo?

Wàn: Hǎojíle. Wǒ-zuì-xǐhuan chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Kěshi-tài-máfan-le.

Zhāng: Nín-bié-kèqi.

Wàn: Ní-fǔshang-zài-nǎr-a?

Zhāng: Wǒ-jiā-jiù-zài-Zhōngshān-Lù, yìbái-wǔshíbá hào. Lí-Sān-Yǒu-Shū-diàn-bù-yuǎn. Qǐng-nín-xīngqīwǔ wǎnshang-qīdiǎn-zhōng dào-wǒ-jiā-lái.

Wàn: Hǎo. Wǒmen-xīngqīwǔ-jiàn.

Zhāng: Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshang-jiàn.

Wàn: Xièxie-ni.

## NARRATIVE

Zuótian-tiānqi hén-nuǎnhuo. Wǒmen-xuéxiào bú-shàng-kè, suóyi - wozhǎole-jǐge-péngyou. Yé-yǒu-'Gāo-Měiyīng-Xiǎojie. Wǒmen-yí gòng-qíge-rén qu-lǚxíng. Wǒmen-jiù-xiǎng: "Dào-nǎr-qu-hǎo-ne?" 'Gāo-Xiǎojie - shuō: "Wǒmen-shàng-Běi-Hú-nèibiān, nèige-dà-shānshang-qu-wár-ba." Tā-shuō-nèige-shānshang piàoliang-jíle. Tā-shuō-nèige-shānshang zuì-gāode-dìfang jiù-shi-yíge-dà-gōngyuán. Nèr-yóu-hěn-duō-méiguī. Yīnwei-tā-hén-xǐhuan-méiguī, tā-shuō-dào-nèr-qu. Suóyi-wǒmen-jiù-qù-le.

'Qù-de-shíhou, wǒmen-xiān-zuò gōnggòng-qìchē. Yīnwei-wǒmen-shi-lǚxíng, suóyi-wǒmen-zuòdào-Zhōngshān-Lù jiù-xià-chē-le. Zhōngshān-Lù lí-nèige-dà-shān hái-yǒu-hén-yuǎn-ne. Wǒmen-qíge-rén yíkuàr-zǒu-lù-tánhuà, hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wǒmen-wàng-shānshang-zǒu-de-shíhou, yùjian-le-Máo-Xiānsheng Máo-Tàitai gēn-tāmen-liǎngge-háizi 'yě-lái-shàng-shān. Yǒude-péngyou bú-rènshi-Máo-Xiānsheng, Máo-Tàitai. Wó-gěi-tāmen-jièshao-leyǐhòu, jiù-dōu-rènshi-le. Wǒmen-jǐge-rén 'dōu-xǐhuan-tāmen - nèi-liǎngge-háizi. 'Dōu-hěn-piàoliang. Xiànzai-yòu-yǒu-'Máo-Xiānsheng tāmen - sìge-rén, wǒmen-yí gòng-shi shíyíge-rén-le.

Wǒmen-dào-shānshang yǐjing-chàbuduō-shí'èrdiǎn-le. Dōu-xiǎng-chī-dōngxi-le. Bá-wǒmen-zài-shānxià-mǎi-de-dōngxi dōu-náchulai. Wǒmen-zài-yíkuàr-chī. Suírán-wǒmen-'chī-de-dōngxi mǎile - bù - shǎo, kěshi-wǒmen-wàngle-ná-shuǐ. Wǒmen-méi-yóu-shuǐ-hē. 'Máo-Tàitai-tāmen ná-shuǐ-lái-le. Wǒmen-měige-rén dōu-hēle-yìdiár-shuǐ.

Chīwanle-dōngxi-yǐhòu, 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō: "Xiànzài-wǒmen-kāishǐ-wár-le." 'Gāo-Xiǎojie-huà-huàr. Wǒmen-jǐge-rén yǒude-zóuzou, yǒude-kàn-méiguī, yǒude-tántan. 'Zuì-yǒu-yìside hái-shi-nèi-liǎngge-háizi pǎolái-pǎoqù-de.

Jīntian-wǒmen-wárde-hén-hǎo. Yǐjing-kuài-dào-wúdiǎn-zhōng-le, 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō: "Wǒmen-gāi-xià-shān-huí-jiā-le." Kěshi-nèi-liǎngge-xiǎoháizi 'hái-bù-xiáng-zǒu.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng méi-yǒu-qián, suóyi-tā-bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bù-néng-qù, yīnwei-tā-méi-yǒu-gōngfu. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-wèi-shénmo bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr?

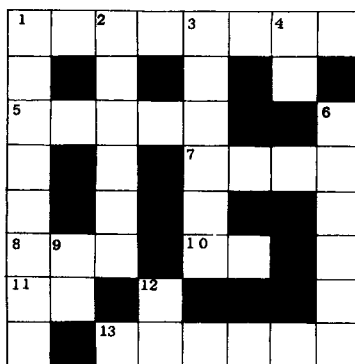
2. Wó-xiáng-mǎi-liùběn-shū. Yǐjīng-mǎile-sìběn-le. Wǒ-hái-yào-mái-jíběn?
3. Wǒ-yòng-'gāngbǐ-xiě-zì. Tā-yòng-'máobǐ-xiě-zì. 'Shéi-yòng-máobǐ-xiě-zì?
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-chīle-fàn jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-le. Tā-'jièle-shū-yǐhòujiù-huǐ-jiā. Tā-'xiān-zuò-shénmo?
5. Niàn-'wénxué-de-xuésheng dōu-shi-nǚ-ren. Niàn-kēxuéde 'dōu-shi-nán-ren. Nǚ-xuésheng-niàn-shénmo?
6. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng 'Wáng-Tàitai shàng-xīngqī-bìng-le. Wáng-Xiānsheng xiànzài-hǎo-le, Wáng-Tàitai hái-méi-hǎo-ne. 'Shéi-hái-yǒu-bìng?
7. Xiànzài-yǐjīng-sāndiǎn-le. Wǒ-yào-zǒu-le. Xiànzài-jídìǎn-zhōng-le?
8. Wǒ-dìdi méi-niànguo-kēxué. Tā-shuō kēxué-méi-yǒu-yìsi. Tā-duì-kēxué yǒu-xìngqu-ma?
9. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-yǐhòujiù-kāishǐ-xué-'Zhōngwén. Tā-zài-'Měiguó-de-shíhou xué-le-'Zhōngwén-méi-you?
10. Méi-yǒu-xuéguo-'Zhōngguo-huà - de - xuésheng kàn de dǒng - kàn budǒng 'Zhōngwén-shū?
11. Yí gòng-yǒu yí wàn wàn-'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng, yì qiān wàn-'dàxuéde-xuésheng. Shi-'zhōngxuéde-xuésheng-duō háishi-'dàxuéde-xuésheng-duō?
12. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng bú-zài-túshūguǎn-le. Tā-huǐ-jiā-le. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng hái-zài-túshūguǎn-ma?
13. 'Bái-Xiānsheng zuótian-niànle-wǔge-zhōngtóu-shū. 'Gāo-Xiáojie cóng-liángdiǎn-dào-wúdiǎn-zhōng niàn-shū. 'Shéi-niànde-duō?
14. 'Wàitou-yóu-liǎngge-rén. Wó-qǐng-tāmen-jìnlai. Wǒ-zài-lǐtou háishi-zài-wàitou?
15. Tā-bǎ-'Zhōngwén-shū dōu-nádào-túshūguǎn-qu-le, bǎ-'Yīngwén-shū dōu-náhuǐ-jiā-lái-le. 'Zhōngwén-shū-zài-nǎr?
16. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng. Wǒ-bú-huǐ-zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn. Lián-wǒ-'nèiren yě-bú-huǐ-zuò. Wáng-Tàitai huǐ-bú-huǐ-zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn?
17. Tā-'shénmo-dōu-méi-mǎi. Tā-mǎile-'shū-méi-you?
18. Wǔge-zì shi-wó-xiě-de. Shíge-shi-'tā-xiě-de. 'Shéi-xiěde-duō?
19. Tā-shuō-'Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-bí-ní-hǎo. Wǒ-shuōde méi-yóu-nǐ-zhènmo-hǎo. Wǒmen-sāngge-rén 'shéi-shuōde-hǎo?
20. Yǒude-'Rìběn-zì gēn-'Zhōngguo-zì-yíyàng, yǒude-'bù-yíyàng. Suóyǒude-'Rìběn-zì dōu-gēn-'Zhōngguo-zì yíyàng-ma?

21. Tā-zuótian-jièle-'liángběn-shū. Jīntian-yòu-jièle-'sānběn. Tā-yí gòng-jièle-'jībēn-shū?
22. 'Dìdi-niàn-dàxué-'sìniánjí. Mèimei-niàn-'èrniánjí. 'Shéi-xiān-bìyè?
23. Yīnwei-tā-méi-yǒu-qián, suóyì-bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyīngr. Tā-wèi-shénmo bú-qu-kàn-diànyīngr?
24. Wáng-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-yánjiu-kēxué. Wáng-Xiáojie hén-xǐhuan-yánjiu-wénxué. Wáng-Xiānsheng duì-shénmo-yǒu-xìngqu?
25. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguo-xuéle liǎng-niánde-'Zhōngguo-huà. Zài-'Yīngguo-xuéle-yìnián-Zhōngwén. Tā-zài-'Yīngguo-xuéguo-méi-you?
26. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu zài-Zhōngguo yánjiule-wūnián-yǔyán, èrnián-wénxué. Tā-yánjiu-'shénmo-de-shíhou zuì-duō?
27. Qián-'Xiānsheng-hěn-máng. Tā-méi-gōngfu-kàn-diànyīngr. Qián-'Tàitai-cháng-kàn-diànyīngr. 'Shéi-bú-kàn-diànyīngr?
28. Wǒ-shì-zài-'Zhōngguo-zhǎng-dà-de. Tā-zài-'Rìběn-zhǎng-dà-de. 'Shéi-shì-Zhōngguo-rén?
29. Wǒ-fùqīn-géi-wo-'wǔkuài-qián. Wó-mǔqīn-géi-wo-'sānkuài-qián. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'yí gòng-géi-wo-duōshao-qián?
30. Zhèizhī-bǐ bú-shì-'wó-mǎi-de. Shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-mǎi-de. Zhèizhī-bǐ shì-'shéi-mǎi-de?

CROSSWORD PUZZLE

Cóng-zuǒ-wàng-yòu

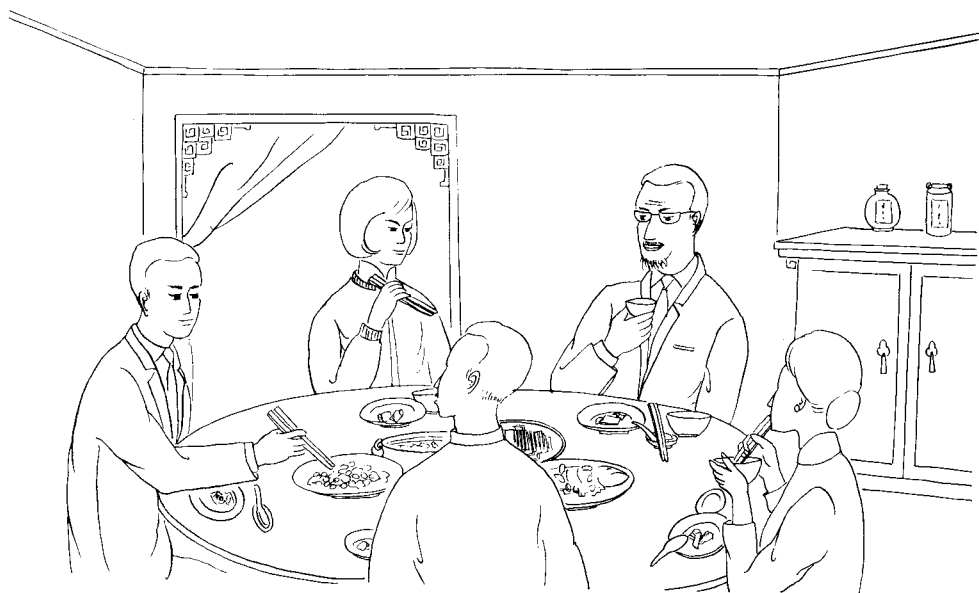
1. Zhōngguo-zuì-piàoliangde-chéng.
5. Wǒ-méi-yǒu-tā — cōngmíng.
7. Fāngfǎ.
8. Xiānsheng, tàitai, xiáojie, xuésheng, háizi 'dōu-shì-shénmo?
10. Bǎ.
11. Yī-gēn-sān-de-zhōngjiār.
13. Yǒude-rén yòng-zhèige-xiě-zì.



Cóng-shàng-wàng-xià

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Cóng-Húnán-lái-de-rén.</li> <li>2. Tāmen-bú-shì-nǚ-rén shì-shénmo?</li> <li>3. Ní-měitiān-zǎochen chī-shénmo?</li> <li>4. Míngbai-le-yǐhòu, cháng-yòng-zhèige-zì.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Wǒ-bù-néng-qu-kàn-diànyīngr, — wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián.</li> <li>9. Gēn-shàngtou-shíyī-yíyàng.</li> <li>12. Mǔqīn.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

## Lesson 19 EATING FAMILY STYLE



“Biàn-fàn, hén-jiǎndān.”

Dialogue: Mr. White and Professor Wanamaker have dinner at the Gao home.

Gāo-Tàitai: Fàn-hǎo-le. 'Wàn-Xiānsheng 'Bái-Xiānsheng, qǐng-chī-fàn-ba.

Dinner's ready. Mr. Wanamaker, Mr. White, please (come and) eat.

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Lǎo-Wàn Bái-Xiānsheng, wǒmen-chī-fàn. 5

[Old] Wan, Mr. White, let's have dinner.

Wàn: Gāo-Tàitai, jīntian-'tài-máfan-nín-le.

Mrs. Gao, we've put you to too much trouble today.

Gāo-Tàitai: Méi-shénmo. Biàn-fàn,\* hén-jiǎndān.

It's nothing. It's plain food,\* very simple.

---

\* The Chinese dinner at the Gaos', though not precisely biàn-fàn 'plain food' in the American sense, is not an elaborate dinner such as one might have in a restaurant. The courses are as follows:

Shīzi-tóu 'lion's head' (large meatballs made of ground pork, fried with cabbage and stewed for several hours)

Hóng-shāo-jī 'red-cooked chicken' (chicken first seared in hot fat and then simmered in soy sauce until the meat is very soft)

Táng-cù-yú 'sweet-and-sour fish' [lit. sugar and vinegar fish] (fish cooked

- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Qǐng-zuò, qǐng-zuò. Wǒmen-suíbiàn-zuò. 10 Please sit down, please sit down. Let's sit down anywhere we like.
- Bái: Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie, qǐng-lái-yíkuàr-chī-ba. Mrs. Gao, Miss Gao, please come and eat with us.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Měiyīng-lái. Wǒ-nèiren déi-bǎ-cài-zuòwán. 15 Meiying (can) come. My wife has to finish preparing the (remaining) dishes. Let's start eating. She'll come in a moment.
- Wàn: He! Bùdéliǎo! Zěnmó-'zhènmó-duōde-cài-a! My! There's no end (of food). How is it that there are so many courses!
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Biàn-fàn, 'méiyǒu-shénmo-cài. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi suíbiàn-zuò, suíbiàn-chī. Wǒ-nèiren yě-'bù-zěnmó-huì-zuò-cài. 20 It's plain food, nothing in particular. [Both of you] sit and eat as you please. My wife isn't such a good cook. If it isn't fish then it's meat. There aren't any fine dishes.
- Bú-shi-yú jiù-shi-ròu. 25 'Méi-shénmo-hǎo-cài.
- Bái: Gāo-Tàitai, cài-'tài-duō-le. Nín-bié-máng-le. 30 Mrs. Gao, there are too many courses. Don't do so much. Please come, let's eat together.
- Qǐng-lái, wǒmen-yíkuàr-chī-fàn-ba.
- Gāo-Tàitai: Nǐmen-jǐwèi-xiān-qǐng. Hái-yǒu-'yíge-cài wǒ-jiù-lái-le. (All of) you start eating. There's still one more dish and then I'll come.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒmen-'xiān-chī. 35 Let's start eating.
- Bái: Cài-zhēn-piàoliang. Dōu-jiào-shénmo? Everything is [lit. The dishes are] very attractive. What are they all called?
- Gāo Xiānsheng: Zhèige-jiào-shī-zi-tóu. This one is called lion's head.
- Bái: 'Zěnmó-jiào-shīzi-tóu-ne? 40 How come it's called lion's head? It's an odd name.
- Míngzi-hěn-qíguài.

with sugar and vinegar)

Chǎo-dòufu 'fried bean curd' (bean curd fried in a very hot pan while being constantly stirred, with soy sauce, ginger, and scallions, and beef, pork, or shrimp)

Chǎo-báicài 'fried cabbage' (cabbage fried with soy sauce, ginger, scallions, and meat)

Niú-ròu-tāng 'beef soup' (beef with scallions and ginger)

Note that the soup is usually taken toward the end of the meal. A soup is not reckoned as a course, so that in a restaurant one might say: Yào-sìge-cài yíge-tāng 'Order four dishes and a soup.'

- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wó-xiǎng-huòzhě  
shì-yīnwei-měi-yíge-dōu-  
hēn-dà, suóyì-jiào-shìzi-  
tóu. 45 I think perhaps it's because each  
(of the meatballs) is quite large,  
[so it's called lion's head].
- Bái: 'Zhèige-cài-shì-shénmo?' What is this dish?
- Gāo Xiānsheng: Zhèi-shì-chǎo-  
báicài. [This is] fried cabbage.
- Bái: Zhèige-ne? And what about this?
- Gāo Xiānsheng: Zhèi-shì-hóng-  
shāo-jī.\* 50 [This is] red-cooked chicken.\*
- Bái: 'Zhèige-wǒ-zhīdao. Shì-  
chǎo-dòufu. This I know. It's fried bean  
(Mrs. Gao, having finished the curd.
- ('Gāo-Tàitai bǎ-cài-zuòhǎo-le  
názhe-cài-chūlai-le.) 55 [last] dish, brings it out.)
- Gāo-Tàitai: 'Méi-shénmo-hǎo-  
cài. Qǐng-'duō-chī-yì-  
diǎr. Wó-xiǎnglái-xiǎng-  
qù yé-xiǎngbuchū tèbiéde-  
cài-lai. 60 There aren't any fine dishes.  
Please eat a little more. I  
thought and thought but couldn't  
think of anything special.
- Wàn: Nín-tài-kèqi-le. Cài-'tài-  
hǎo-le, bǐ-fānguārde-cài-  
dōu-hǎo. You're too polite. The food is  
excellent, better than any res-  
taurant food.
- Gāo-Tàitai: Guòjiǎng, guòjiǎng. You flatter me.
- Wàn: Shìzi-tóu zuòde-hǎojié. 65 The lion's head is awfully well  
Wǒ-tèbié-xǐhuan-chī. done. I'm particularly fond of  
it.
- Gāo-Tàitai: Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-  
dōu-xǐhuan chī-'shénmo-  
cài? Mr. White, what dishes do you  
like?
- Bái: Wó-xǐhuan chī-hóng-shāo-  
de, xiǎng-hóng-shāo-ròu,  
hóng-shāo-jī, hóng-shāo-  
yú—wǒ-'dōu-xǐhuan-chī. 70 I like red-cooked things, such as  
[red-cooked] meat, [red-cooked]  
chicken, [red-cooked] fish—I  
like them all.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: 'Bái-Xiānsheng,  
nǐ-zài-Měiguó yě-cháng-  
chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn-ma? 75 Mr. White, did you often have  
Chinese food in America too?
- Bái: Cháng-chī. Wó-hén-xǐ-  
huan-chī, cháng-gēn-péng-  
you-yíkuàr qu-chī-Zhōng-  
guó-fànguār. 80 I often did. I liked [to eat] it  
very much, and often went with  
friends to eat in Chinese restau-  
rants.

\* 'Red-cooked,' so called from the coloring imparted by the liberal use of soy sauce, is the rendering for hóng-shāo given by Buwei Yang Chao in her delightful book, How to Cook and Eat in Chinese, New York, John Day, 1945. (Her introduction, incidentally, contains a wealth of information on Chinese table manners.)



Gāo-Tàitai: Suóyī-nǐ-yòng-kuàizi  
yòngde-nènmo-hǎo-ne.

That's why you use chopsticks  
so well.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Zài-Měiguó-de-  
'Zhōngguó-fànguǎr duō-  
ma?

85

Are there many Chinese restau-  
rants in America?

Bái : Bù-shǎo.

Quite a few.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Měiguó-de-Zhōng-  
guó-fàn hǎo-chī-ma?

Is the Chinese food in America  
good?

Bái : Zài-Měiguó-de-'Zhōngguó-  
fànguǎr chàbuduo-dōu-shì-  
Guǎngdong-fànguǎr. Tāmen-  
zuò-de hǎo-shì-hǎo, kěshì-  
méi-yǒu-Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-  
de zhènmo-hǎo-chī. Shì-  
zi-tóu-zài-Měiguó chūle-  
Sānfánshì-Niǔyue jǐge-dà-  
chéng-yǐwài, jiù-chību-  
zháo.

90

The Chinese restaurants in  
America are almost all Can-  
tonese restaurants. Their cook-  
ing is good all right, but it isn't  
as good as Mrs. Gao's. Apart  
from a few big cities (like) San  
Francisco and New York, lion's  
head just can't be had in Ameri-  
ca.

95

Wàn: Zhèige-táng-cù-yú hén-hǎo-  
chī.

100

This sweet-and-sour fish is de-  
licious.

Bái : Gāo-Tàitai, qǐng-wen, zhèi-  
ge-táng-cù-yú-lǐtou dōu-  
yǒu-shénmo?

May I ask, Mrs. Gao, what's in  
it [lit. what's in this sweet-and-  
sour fish]?

Gāo-Tàitai: Táng-cù-yú-lǐtou  
yǒu-bái-táng-yǒu-cù. Yīn-  
wei-yòu-yǒu-táng-yòu-yǒu-  
cù, suóyī-yòu-tián-yòu-  
suān.

105

It [lit. the sweet-and-sour fish]  
has white sugar and vinegar [in  
it]. Since it has both sugar and  
vinegar, it's both sweet and  
sour.

Bái : Báicài bìděi-yòng-'zhū-ròu-  
chǎo-ma?

110

Does cabbage have to be fried  
with pork?

Gāo-Tàitai: Bù-yídìng. Rúguó-  
ní-xǐhuan chī-niú-ròu, jiù-  
yòng-niú-ròu-chǎo.

Not necessarily. If you like to  
eat beef, make it with beef.

Bái : Nènmo-chǎo-dòufu-ne?

Then how about fried bean curd?

Gāo-Tàitai: Suíbiàn-zhū-ròu niú-  
ròu dōu-kéyì.

115

Whatever you like—pork and beef  
will both do.

Bái : Gāo-Xiáojie, nǐ-huì-zuò-  
fàn-ma?

Miss Gao, can you cook?

Gāo-Xiáojie: Wǒ-bú-huì-zuò-fàn.

I don't know how to.

Gāo-Tàitai: Tā-yě-huì-zuò jǐ-  
yàng-cài, zuòde-hái-bú-  
cuò.

120

She can make a few [kinds of]  
dishes too, and she doesn't do  
them badly at all.

Bái : Nín-cài zuòde-zhènmo-  
hǎo, wó-xiǎng-Gāo-Xiáojie  
jìe yídìng-zuòde-yě-bú-  
cuò.

125

You've done these dishes so well  
I'm sure Miss Gao also is a  
good cook.

Gāo-Tàitai: Xīwang-nǐ-cháng-lái, jiù-zài-zhèr chī-biàn-fàn.		I hope you will come often and have our simple cooking here.
Bái: Xièxie-nin.		Thank you.
Gāo-Tàitai: Nǐ-xià-cì-lái wǒ- jiào-Měiyīng-zuò.	130	Next time you come I'll have Meiying cook.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Qǐng-chī-cài. Tàitai, gāi-ná-tāng-le.		Please eat. (To his wife:) You should bring the soup.
Gāo-Tàitai: Wǒ-gēn-'Bái-Xiān- sheng shuō-huà-shuōde wàngle-ná-tāng-le. (Tā-bǎ-tāng-ná-lai.)	135	I've been talking with Mr. White so much that I've forgotten to get it. (She brings the soup.)
Bái: Zhèi-shi-'shénmo-tāng?		What (kind of) soup is this?
Gāo-Tàitai: 'Niú-ròu-tāng.		Beef soup.
Bái: Tāng-'zhēn-hǎo.	140	It's really nice.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Qǐng-duō-chī- cài.		Please have some more food.
Wàn: Wǒmen-yǐjing-chībǎo-le, yòu-hē-hěn-duō-tāng.		We've already eaten our fill, and we've had a lot of soup too.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Lǎo-Wàn, Bái- Xiānsheng, zài-chī-yì- diǎr. Chīde-'tài-shǎo.	145	[Old] Wan, Mr. White, have a bit more. You've eaten too little.
Wàn: Wǒ-yìdiár-yě-méi-kèqi. Chīde-hén-bǎo. Xièxie.		I haven't been the least bit po- lite. I've eaten until I'm quite full. Thank you.
Bái: Xièxie. Chīde-'tài-duō- le.	150	Thank you. I've eaten too much.
Gāo-Tàitai: 'Zhēn-chībǎo-le- ma?		Are you really full?
Wàn: Bǎo-le. Xièxie.		Yes, thank you.
Gāo-Xiānsheng: Nènmo jiù-qǐng- hē-chá-ba.	155	Then please have some tea.

## VOCABULARY

báicài	cabbage (N) [lit. white vegetable]
bǎo	full, satiated (SV)
biàn-fàn	plain food (N) [lit. convenient food]
cài	dish, course; vegetable (N)
chǎo	sauté, fry (TV)
chúle	except for (MA) (Note 5 below)

cù	vinegar (N)
dòufu	bean curd (N) [lit. legume curd]
fànguǎn/r	restaurant (N) [lit. food establishment]
Guǎngdong	(city of) Canton, (province of) Kwangtung (PW) [lit. broad east]
guòjiǎng	(you) flatter (me) [lit. pass praise] (See Supplementary Lesson 19, Note 1)
he!	Gosh! My!
jī	chicken (N)
kuàizi	chopsticks (N)
niú	cow, ox (N)
ròu	meat (N)
shāo	roast, braise (N)
shīzi	lion (N)
suān	sour (SV)
suíbiàn	as you please, any way one likes (MA) [lit. follow convenience] (Note 13 below)
tāng	soup (N)
táng	sugar (N)
tèbié	special (SV) [lit. special other]
tián	sweet (SV)
tóu	head (N)
yǐwài	besides, except for [lit. take outside] (Note 5 below)
yú	fish (N)
-zháo	(suffix indicating accomplishment: Note 8 below)
-zhe	(suffix indicating progressive action: Note 2 below)
zhū	pig (N)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| cài                              | dish, course                          |
| jǐge-cài                         | how many courses?                     |
| 1. Wǒmen-jīntian chī-'jǐge-cài?  | How many courses shall we have today? |
| tāng                             | soup                                  |
| yíge-tāng                        | one soup                              |
| 2. Wǒmen-yào sìge-cài-yíge-tāng. | We want four dishes and a soup.       |
| táng                             | sugar                                 |

3. báitáng  
Zuì-hǎode-táng shi-báitáng.  
white sugar  
The best sugar is white sugar.
4. kuàizi  
yòng-kuàizi-chī-fàn  
Nǐ-huì-yòng-'kuàizi-chī-fàn-  
ma?  
chopsticks  
eat with chopsticks  
Can you eat with chopsticks?
5. hē-yìdiǎr  
duō-hē-yìdiǎr  
Duō-hē-yìdiǎr-tāng-ba.  
drink a little  
drink a little more  
Have a little more soup.
6. 'màn-yìdiǎr  
shuō-'màn-yìdiǎr  
Wǒ-bù-dǒng. Qǐng-nín-  
shuō-'màn-yìdiǎr.  
a little slower  
speak a little slower  
I can't understand. Please speak  
a little more slowly.
7. 'màn-yìdiǎr  
'màn-yìdiǎr-shuō  
Wǒ-bù-míngbai. Qǐng-nín-  
'màn-yìdiǎr-shuō.  
a little slower  
speak a little slower  
I don't understand. Please speak  
a little more slowly.
8. dòufu  
yòng-kuàizi-chī-dòufu  
Yòng-kuàizi-chī-dòufu bù-  
róngyi.  
bean curd  
eat bean curd with chop-  
sticks  
It's not easy to eat bean curd  
with chopsticks.
9. báicài  
xǐhuan-chī-báicài  
Zhōngguó-rén hén-xǐhuan-  
chī-báicài.  
cabbage  
like to eat cabbage  
Chinese are very fond of cab-  
bage.
10. fànguǎr  
zài-fànguǎr-chī-fàn  
Wǒ-hén-xǐhuan zài-fànguǎr-  
chī-fàn.  
restaurant  
eat in a restaurant  
I like to eat in restaurants very  
much.
11. fànguǎr  
chī-fànguǎr  
Nǐ-bù-xǐhuan chī-fànguǎr-  
ma?  
restaurant  
eat in a restaurant  
Don't you like to eat in restau-  
rants?
12. Guǎngdong  
chī-Guǎngdong-fànguǎr  
Wǒmen-chī-Guǎngdong-fànguǎr  
kéyi-ma?  
Canton  
eat at a Cantonese restau-  
rant  
Can we eat at a Cantonese res-  
taurant?
13. tīng  
tīngzhe  
Wǒ-tīngzhe-lùyīn-ne.  
chīzhe-fàn  
listen  
listening  
I'm listening to a recording.  
eating

- tīng-lùyīn  
14. Wǒ-chīzhe-fàn tīng-lùyīn.
- chǎo  
chǎo-báicài  
chǎo-dòufu  
15. Chǎo-báicài chǎo-dòufu dōu-  
hěn-róngyì-zuò.
- ròu  
yòng-shénmo-ròu?  
16. Zuò-chǎo-báicài yòng-shén-  
mo-ròu?
- zhū  
zhū-ròu  
zhū-ròu-chīde-duō  
17. Zhōngguo-rén zhū-ròu-chīde-  
duō.
- niú  
niú-ròu  
niú-ròu-chīde-duō  
18. Měiguó-rén niú-ròu-chīde-  
duō-ne háishi-zhū-ròu-chī-  
de-duō-ne?
- shīzi  
méi-yǒu-shīzi  
19. Zhōngguo-yǒu-láohu méi-yǒu-  
shīzi.
- tóu  
shīzi-tóu  
20. Zhèige-cài jiào-'shīzi-tóu.
- bú-shi-Yīngguo-rén  
jiù-shi-Měiguó-rén  
21. Nèige-'wàiguó-rén bú-shi-  
'Yīngguó-rén jiù-shi-'Měi-  
guó-rén.
- bù-chī-zhū-ròu  
jiù-chī-niú-ròu  
22. Wǒmen-bù-chī-'zhū-ròu jiù-  
chī-'niú-ròu.
- bú-shi-chī-zhū-ròu  
jiù-shi-chī-niú-ròu  
23. Wǒmen-bú-shi-chī-zhū-ròu  
jiù-shi-chī-niú-ròu.

- listen to recordings  
I listen to recordings while eat-  
ing.
- sauté, fry  
fried cabbage  
fried bean curd  
Fried cabbage and fried bean  
curd are both very easy to make.
- meat  
use what meat?  
What meat is used in (making)  
fried cabbage?
- pig  
pork  
eat more pork  
Chinese eat more pork.
- cow  
beef  
eat more beef  
Do Americans eat more beef or  
pork?
- lion  
there are no lions  
There are tigers but not lions in  
China.
- head  
lion's head  
This dish is called lion's head.
- isn't an Englishman  
then is an American  
That foreigner—if he isn't Eng-  
lish, he's American.
- not eat pork  
then eat beef  
If we don't eat pork then we eat  
beef.
- not eat pork  
then eat beef  
If we don't eat pork then we eat  
beef.

- shāo  
24. Zhèige-ròu shi-shāo-de.  
roast, braise  
This meat is roasted.
- hóng-shāo  
hóng-shāo-ròu  
25. Ní-xǐhuan-chī hóng-shāo-ròu-  
ma?  
red-cooked  
red-cooked meat  
Do you like red-cooked meat?
- mǎi  
mǎizhao  
26. Ní-'mǎizhao-le-méi-you?  
buy  
succeed in buying  
Did you succeed in buying it?
- mǎizhao  
mǎibuzháo  
27. Zhèige xiànzài-mǎibuzháo.  
succeed in buying  
unable to succeed in buying  
This can't be bought nowadays.
- wó-děngle-bàntiān  
tā-yě-méi-lái  
28. Wó-děngle-bàntiān, tā-yě-  
méi-lái.  
I waited a long time  
yet he did not come  
Although I waited a long time, he  
didn't come.
- wó-děngle-bàntiān  
tā-dōu-méi-lái  
29. Wó-děngle-bàntiān, tā-dōu-  
méi-lái.  
I waited a long time  
yet he didn't come  
Although I waited a long time, he  
didn't come.
- náchulai  
náchu-shūdiàn-lai  
30. Bǎ-shū dōu-náchu-shūdiàn-  
lai.  
bring out  
bring out of the bookstore  
Bring all the books out of the  
bookstore.
- náchulai  
náchu-huàr-lai  
31. Qǐng-nín náchu-huàr-lai, wǒ-  
yào-kànkàn.  
bring out  
bring out the paintings  
Please bring out the paintings, I  
want to look at them.
- tèbié  
32. Nèige-rén hěn-tèbié.  
special, peculiar  
That man is quite peculiar.
- tèbié-xǐhuan  
33. Wǒ-tèbié-xǐhuan chī-shīzi-  
tóu.  
especially like  
I especially like to eat lion's  
head.
- yú  
34. Zhèi-shi-yú-shi-ròu-ne?  
fish  
Is this fish or meat?
- cù  
yòngwán-le  
35. Cù-yòngwán-le-ma?  
vinegar  
use up  
Is the vinegar all used up?
- chúle  
chúle-chá  
except for, besides  
except for tea

36. Chúle-chá ta-'shénmo-dōu-bù-hē.

yǐwài  
chá-yǐwài

37. Chá-yǐwài tā-'shénmo-dōu-bù-hē.

38. Tā-chúle-chá-yǐwài 'shénmo-dōu-bù-hē.

tián  
tiánde

39. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-chī-tiánde.

40. Cù-shi-suānde.

guòjiǎng  
kèqi-huà

41. "Guòjiǎng" jiu-shi-kèqi-huà.

bǎo  
tài-bǎo-le

42. Wǒ-tài-bǎo-le.

43. Nǐ-'chībǎo-le-méi-you?

44. Fàn-tài-shǎo, wǒ-chībubǎo.

45. Zì-dōu-xiéhǎo-le-ma?

46. Wǒ-yíge-zhōngtóu xiěbuhǎo.

47. Zhèige-hǎo-shi-hǎo, kěshi-méi-yǒu-'nèige-nènmo-hǎo.

biàn-fàn  
hǎo-chī-shi-hǎo-chī

He doesn't drink anything but tea.

except for  
except for tea  
He doesn't drink anything but tea.

except for tea  
He doesn't drink anything but tea.

sweet  
sweet thing  
I don't like to eat sweet things.

sour  
Vinegar is sour.

you flatter me  
polite expression  
"You flatter me" is a polite expression.

full, satiated  
too full  
I'm too full.

eat until full  
Have you had enough to eat?

eat until full  
unable to eat until full  
There isn't enough food, I can't get filled.

good  
finish writing  
Did you finish writing all the characters?

finish writing  
unable to finish writing  
I can't finish writing it in an hour.

good all right  
not as good as that

This is good all right, but it's not as good as that.

plain food  
is appetizing all right

48. Biàn-fàn hǎo-chī-shi-hǎo-chī, kěshi-wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-chī.  
Plain food is appetizing all right, but I don't like to eat it.
- suíbiàn  
49. Wǒmen-'suíbiàn-zuò, hǎo-bù-hǎo?  
as one pleases  
Shall we sit as we please?
- suíbiàn  
kéyi  
50. 'Suíbiàn-shénmo-shíhou-kéyi.  
as one pleases  
all right  
Any time you please is all right.
- 'suíbiàn-shénmo-shíhou  
kéyi-lái  
51. Nǐ-'suíbiàn-shénmo-shíhou  
'dōu-kéyi-lái.  
any time you please  
may come  
You may come any time you please.
- jī  
52. Nǐ-xǐhuan-chī-jī-ma?  
chicken  
Do you like to eat chicken?
- he!  
53. He! Zěnmó-'zhènmó-duōde-rén-ne?  
my!  
My! How come there are so many people?
- yào  
yào-cài  
54. Wǒmen-zài-fànguǎr yàole-sānge-cài.  
want  
order dishes  
We ordered three dishes in the restaurant.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 19.1. Stative Verbs Expressing Manner (Note 1 below)

Pattern 19.1 a.

<u>duō/shǎo</u>	V	A	(O)
'more'/'less'	Verb	Amount	(Object)
Duō	hē	(yì)diǎr	chá.
'Drink a little more tea.'			
Shǎo	gěi	yíkuài	qián.
'Give a dollar less.'			

Pattern 19.1 b.

V	SV	<u>(yì)diǎr</u>
Verb	Stative Verb	'a little'
Zǒu	màn	yìdiǎr.
'Walk a little slower.'		



## Pattern 19.1 c.

	SV	<u>(yì)diǎr</u>	V
	Stative Verb	'a little'	Verb
	Màn	yìdiǎr	zǒu.
	'Walk a little slower.'		
1.	Nǐ-yīnggāi-'shǎo-yào-yìdiǎr.		You should order a little less.
2.	Qíng-ní-zǒu-'kuài-yìdiǎr.		Please walk a little faster.
3.	Nǐ-xiě-de-zì 'tài-xiǎo-le. Qíng-ni-zài-xiě-'dà-yìdiǎr.		The characters you've written are too small. Please rewrite (them) a little bigger.
4.	Qíng-ni 'duō-mǎi-yìxiē-bǐ.		Please buy a few more pens.
5.	'Duō-ná-diar-qián.		Take a little more money.
6.	Yào-kǎoshì-le. Wó-děi-'duō- niàn-yìdiǎr-shū.		I'm about to have exams. I'm going to study a bit more.
7.	Zhèizhāng-huà wó-děi-huà- 'hǎo-yìdiǎr.		I must do this painting a little better.
8.	Nǐ-shuō-de-huà tā-bù-dǒng. Nǐ-děi-'màn-yìdiǎr-shuō.		He doesn't understand what you say. You must speak a little slower.
9.	Wǒ-bù-hē-tāng. Wǒ-yào-duō- hē-diar-chá.		I'm not having soup. I want to drink a little more tea.
10.	Zài-'nèige-shūdiàn mǎile-yì- bēn-zìdiǎn. Tāmen-shǎo-yào- wǔmáo-qián.		I bought a dictionary in that bookstore. They reduced the price by fifty cents.
11.	Kuàizi-bù-róngyi-yòng. Wó- děi-'màn-diar-chī.		Chopsticks are not easy to use. I have to eat a little slowly.
12.	Nǐ-děi-'duō-géi-jǐkuài-qián.		You should give a few dollars more.
13.	Mǎi-zhèibēn-shū ní-kéyi- 'shǎo-géi-jǐmáo-qián.		(If) you buy this book you can take a few dimes off the price.
14.	Jīntian-wǒ-bìngle. 'Shǎo- niàn-yìdiǎr-shū.		I'm sick today. I'm going to study a little less.
15.	Wǒ-méi-dǒng. Qíng-ni shuō- 'màn-yìdiǎr.		I didn't understand. Please speak a little more slowly.

## Pattern 19.2. Progressive Action (Note 2 below)

## Pattern 19.2 a.

S	V	-zhe	(O)	<u>(ne)</u>
Subject	Verb	-zhe	(Object)	<u>(ne)</u>
Wǒ	chī	-zhe	fàn	ne.
'I'm eating.'				

Pattern 19.2 b.

S	V <sub>1</sub>	-zhe	(O)	V <sub>2</sub>	(O <sub>2</sub> )
Subject	Verb <sub>1</sub>	-zhe	(Object)	Verb <sub>2</sub>	(Object <sub>2</sub> )
Wǒ	chī	-zhe	fàn	kàn	shū.

'I read while eating.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Xiànzài-bù-néng-qù-le. Wǒ-gēn-péngyou shuōzhe-huà-ne.                                | I can't go now. I'm talking with a friend.   |
| 2. Tā-lái-zháo-wo-de-shíhou, wǒ-chīzhe-fàn-ne.  | When he came to visit me I was having dinner.  |
| 3. Wǒ-tīngzhe-lùyīn-ne, tā-jiào-wǒ-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr.                                    | (As) I was listening to recordings he asked me to go see a movie.                          |
| 4. Wǒ-huí-jiā-de-shíhou wó-mǔ-qin-zuòzhe-fàn-ne.  | When I returned home my mother was cooking dinner.   |
| 5. Zuótian wǒ-gēn-'Máo-Xiānsheng dào-túshūguǎn-qu. Zǒuzhe-lu shuōzhe-huà, hén-yǒu-yìsì. | Yesterday I went to the library with Mr. Mao. It was very pleasant to walk and talk.       |
| 6. Háizi-xǐhuan kànzhe-diànyǐngr-chī-dōngxì.  | Children like to eat things while seeing a movie.  |
| 7. Wǒmen-gēn-péngyou shuōzhe-huà-hē-chá.  | We drank tea while talking with friends.   |
| 8. Nèige-háizi nǎzhe-zhǐ, nǎzhe-bǐ, yào-xiě-zì.   | That child is holding paper and pen. He wants to write characters.                         |
| 9. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dàizhe-yíge 'hěnpiàoliangde-biǎo.                                       | Miss Gao is wearing a very attractive watch.   |
| 10. 'Wáng-Xiáojie nǎzhe-hěnduō-méiguì.  | Miss Wang is holding a lot of roses.   |
| 11. Nǐ-dào-túshūguǎn-lái, zuò-'chē-lái-de háishi-'zǒuzhe-lái-de?                        | When you came to the library, did you come by car or on foot?                              |
| 12. Zuótian-wǎnshang zài-fānguǎrchīzhe-fàn-de-shíhou, 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-lái-chī-fàn.   | Yesterday evening while I was eating in the restaurant, Mr. Wang also came to eat.         |
| 13. Zuótian-gēn-péngyou dào-túshūguǎn-qu. Zǒuzhe-lù, shuōzhe-huà, yìhuēr-jiu-dào-le.    | Yesterday I went to the library with friends. Walking and talking, we arrived in a moment. |
| 14. Wǒ-bìngzhe-ne hái-déi-kǎoshì.   | I'm sick (but) I still have to take the exam.  |
| 15. Tā-méi-yǒu-qián. Zuòzhe-shì niàn-dàxué.   | He doesn't have any money. He's working his way through college.                           |

## Pattern 19.3. A Special Type of 'if' Sentence (Note 3 below)

<u>bu</u>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>jiù</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
'not'	Verb <sub>1</sub>	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Bú	shi zhū-ròu	jiù	shi niú-ròu.
'(If) it isn't pork then it's beef.'			
Bú	(shi) chī-zhū-ròu	jiù	(shi) chī-niú-ròu.
'(If he) doesn't eat pork then (he) eats beef.'			

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒ-bù-zhīdào tā-shi-'něiguó-rén. Bú-shi-'Měiguó-rén jiù-shi-'Yīngguó-rén.                 | I don't know what country he's a native of. He's either American or English.                      |
| 2. Nèige-háizi hěn-yònggōng. Měitiān bú-shi-kàn-shū jiù-shi-xiě-zì.                          | That child works hard. Every day he either reads or writes characters.                            |
| 3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-měitiān bú-dào-shūdiàn jiù-dào-túshūguǎn.                                  | Every day if Mr. Gao doesn't go to the bookstore then he goes to the library.                     |
| 4. 'Máo-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-chī-chǎo-de-cài. Bú-shi-chī-chǎo-dòufu jiù-shi-chī-chǎo-báicài. | Mr. Mao likes to eat fried things. He has fried bean curd or fried cabbage, one or the other.     |
| 5. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu hén-xǐhuan-chī-ròu. Bú-shi-zhū-ròu jiù-shi-niú-ròu.                         | Professor Wanamaker likes to eat meat. If it isn't pork then it's beef.                           |
| 6. Wó-xiǎode-shíhou hén-xǐhuan-lǚxíng. Bú-shi-dào-Hángzhou jiù-shi-dào-Sūzhou.               | When I was young I was very fond of traveling. If I didn't go to Hangchow then I went to Soochow. |
| 7. Wó-měitiān bú-shi-tīng-lùyīn jiù-shi-xiě-zì.  | Every day I either listen to recordings or write characters.                                      |
| 8. Wó-xiě-zì bú-shi-yòng-'máobǐ jiù-shi-yòng-'gāngbǐ.  | In writing characters I use either a brush or a pen.  |
| 9. 'Máo-Xiānsheng bù-chī-'Zhōngguo-fàn jiù-chī-'Měiguó-fàn.                                  | If Mr. Mao doesn't eat Chinese food then he has American food.                                    |
| 10. Wǒ-bù-xué-kēxué jiù-xué-yǔ-yánxué.   | If I don't study science then I'll study linguistics.   |

## Pattern 19.4. A Special Type of 'although' or 'but' Sentence (Note 4 below)

V <sub>1</sub>	<u>yě/dōu</u>	<u>bù/méi</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
Verb <sub>1</sub>	'still'	'not'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Zhǎolái-zhǎoqu	yě	méi	zhǎodào.

'Although I searched and searched I still didn't succeed in finding (it).'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 'Wáng-Xiáojie xuéle-bànnián-Yīngwén yě-bù-huì-shuō-Yīngguo-huà.</p>                                | <p>Although Miss Wang studied English for half a year she can't speak it.</p>   |
| <p>2. Tā-shuōle-'hěn-duōde-huà, wó-yě-bù-dǒng.</p>   | <p>He talked a lot but I didn't understand (what he said).</p>  |
| <p>3. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng xiāng-zhǎo-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Tā-bù-rèn-shi-lù. Zhǎole-bàntiān dōu-méi-zhǎozhào.</p> | <p>Mr. Johnson wanted to visit Mr. White. He didn't know the way. Although he hunted for a long time [lit. half a day], he didn't succeed in finding (him).</p> |
| <p>4. Zhèige-zì-wǒ-wàngle. Xiǎng-lái-xiǎngqù dōu-xiǎngbuchūlái.</p>                                      | <p>I've forgotten this character. I've racked my brains but can't recall it.</p>  |
| <p>5. Wǒ-shuōle-'hǎoxie-cì, tā-yě-bù-dǒng.</p>   | <p>Although I said it a good many times, he didn't understand.</p>  |
| <p>6. Wó-děngle-bàntiān, tā-yě-méi-lái.</p>  | <p>I waited for a long time but he didn't come.</p>   |
| <p>7. Wó-zhǎo-ta-sì-wǔcì, ta-'dōu-bù-zài-jīā.</p>  | <p>I went to see him four or five times, but he wasn't at home.</p>   |
| <p>8. Wǒ-zài-dàxué xuéle-'èrnián-le, yě-bù-néng-xiě hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-zì.</p>                           | <p>Although I studied for two years in college I can't write very good Chinese characters.</p>  |
| <p>9. Wǒ-zuótian qu-kàn-'Wáng-Xiānsheng. Wó-děngle-bàntiān tā-yě-méi-chū-lai.</p>                        | <p>Yesterday I went to see Mr. Wang. I waited for a long time but he didn't come out.</p>   |
| <p>10. Wǒ-wàngle-wèn-Máo-Xiānsheng zài-'nǎr-zhù-le. Zhǎolái-zhǎo-qù dōu-zhǎobuzhào.</p>                  | <p>I forgot to ask Mr. Mao where he lives. I searched and searched but wasn't able to find (him).</p>   |

Pattern 19.5. Expressing 'besides, except for, apart from' (Note 5 below)

(chúle)	N/V	(yǐwài)
<u>chúle</u>	Noun/Verb	<u>yǐwài</u>
chúle	nǐ	yǐwài
	except for you, besides you'	
chúle	zǒu	yǐwài
	except for walking'	

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Zài-Měiguó chúle-chīdezháo-'Zhōngguo-fàn yě-chīdezháo-'Ribēn-fàn.</p> | <p>In America, besides being able to eat Chinese food, you can also eat Japanese food.</p> |
| <p>2. Chúle-'Máo-Xiānsheng-yǐwài, wǒmen-dōu-xǐhuan-chī-hóng-shāo-yú.</p>    | <p>Except for Mr. Mao, we all like to eat red-cooked fish.</p>                             |

3. Chúle-tiánde-yǐwài, wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-suānde.  
Besides sweet things I also like to eat sour things.
4. 'Wàn-Jiàoshou chúle-tèbié-xǐhuan-chī 'Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de-fàn, Zhōngguo-fàn tā-'bù-zěnmò-xǐhuan-chī.  
Professor Wanamaker, apart from a special liking for Mrs. Gao's cooking, isn't that fond of Chinese food.
5. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu xǐhuan-táng-cù-yú-yǐwài yé-xǐhuan-chī hóng-shāo-yú.  
Professor Wanamaker, besides liking sweet-and-sour fish, also likes [to eat] red-cooked fish.
6. Wǒ-chúle-tīng jiàoyuán-jiāo-'Zhōngwén, hái-měitiān tīng-lùyīn.  
In addition to listening to the teacher teach Chinese, I also listen to recordings every day.
7. Wǒmen-shuō 'Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de-cài-hǎo. Tā-chúle-shuō-"Guòjiǎng"-yǐwài, hái-shuō-hěn-duō-biéde-kèqì-huà.  
We said that the dishes Mrs. Gao made were excellent. Besides saying "You flatter me," she said a lot of other polite things.
8. Wǒ-xué-shuō 'Zhōngwén-yǐwài, yòu-xué-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì.  
Besides learning to speak Chinese, I'm also learning to write Chinese characters.
9. Tā-chúle yánjiu-'Zhōngguo-yǔyán-yǐwài, yě-yánjiu-'Rì-běn-yǔyán.  
Besides doing research on the Chinese language, he is also studying Japanese.
10. Chúle-tā-yǐwài biéde-xuésheng 'dōu-duì-wǒ-hén-hǎo.  
Apart from him, the rest of the students are all very nice to me.

Pattern 19.6. Concessive Construction (Note 6 below)

V <sub>1</sub>	<u>shi</u>	V <sub>1</sub>
Verb <sub>1</sub>	'is'	Verb <sub>1</sub>
lái	shi	lái
'came all right'		

1. Yòng-kuàizi-chī-fàn, nán-shi-nán, kěshi-chī-'Zhōngguo-cài 'bìděi-yòng.  
Eating with chopsticks is hard all right, but you have to use them when you eat Chinese food.
2. 'Zhōngguo-cài hǎo-chī-shi-hǎo-chī, jiù-shi-róngyì chīde-'tài-bǎo-le.  
Chinese food is delicious, to be sure. The only thing is, it's easy to overstuff oneself.
3. Shīzi-tóu dà-shi-dà kěshi-wóděi-chī-liǎngge.  
The lion's head is big all right, but I must eat two.
4. Wǒ-jīntian-qǐng-'Gāo-Xiáojie chī-biàn-fàn. Tā-chī-shi-chī-le, wǒ-xiǎng tā-méi-chībǎo.  
I invited Miss Gao to have some ordinary food today. She ate, to be sure, but I don't think she had enough to eat.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 5. Zuótiān wǒ-dào-' Gāo-Xiān-sheng-jiā qù-shì-qù-le, kěshì-méi-kànjian-ta. | I <u>did</u> go to Mr. Gao's home today, but I didn't see him.       |
| 6. Wǒ-gàosu-ta-shì-gàosu-ta-le. Tā-dǒng-bu-dǒng wǒ-jiù-bù-zhīdào-le.       | I told him, to be sure, but I don't know if he understood.           |
| 7. Jīntiān-' Wáng-Xiáojie lái-shì-lái-le. Zuò-yìhuǐr-jiù-zǒu-le.           | Miss King did come today. She stayed a while and then left.          |
| 8. Nèige-fànguǎrde-cài hǎo-shì-hǎo, kěshì-gěide-'hén-shǎo.                 | The food in that restaurant is good, yes—but the servings are small. |
| 9. Zhèiběn-shū wǒ-kàn-shì-kànguo-le. Xiànzài-'dōu-wàng-le.                 | I did read this book, but now I've forgotten it all.                 |
| 10. Shū-mǎi-shì-mǎi-le, kěshì-mǎicuò-le.                                   | I bought the book all right, but I bought the wrong one.             |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 16 sentences (Note 1)

(In the columns marked by asterisks, only items from the same row may be taken together: hē with tāng, gěi with qián, etc.)

	*		*
duō	hē	diar	tāng
shǎo	gěi	yìdiǎr	qián
	chī		táng
	mǎi		dòufu

II: 16 sentences (Note 1)

(One or the other, but not both, of the columns marked with asterisks may be used.)

*			*
chī	kuài	diar	chī
hē	màn	yìdiǎr	hē
zǒu			zǒu
zuò			zuò

## III: 55 phrases (Note 5)

_____	_____	shīzi-tóu	_____
chúle	chī	chǎo-dòufu	yǐwài
	zuò	hóng-shāo-yú	
		chǎo-báicài	
		táng-cù-yú	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (I)

This and similar exercises in subsequent lessons provide practice in the pronunciation of four-syllable expressions using vocabulary encountered in previous lessons. Items marked with asterisks have undergone a shift from third tone to second tone.

	0 0 0		1 0 0		2 0 0
1	tāmende-ne		kāi-chē-le-ma		tā-lái-le-ma
2	xuéguo-le-ma		nín-chīguo-le		nín-xuéguo-le
3	wǒmende-ne		wǒ-zhīdao-le		yǒu-fázi-ma
4	gàosu-le-ma		zuì-duōde-ne		zuì-nánde-ma
		3 0 0		4 0 0	
		1	dōngběide-ne		Gāo-Tàitai
		2	ná-wǒmende		méi-yìside
		3	yóu-hǎode-ma*		yǒu-xìngqu-ma
		4	kuài-hǎo-le-ma		tài-kèqi-le
	0 1 0		1 1 0		2 1 0
1	xiānsheng-shuō-le		tā-dōu-chī-le		tā-méi-shuōguo
2	róngyi-shuō-ma		shéi-dōu-zhīdao		hái-néng-chī-ma
3	nǐmen-chī-ba		wǒ-xiān-shuō-de		nǐ-cái-zhīdao
4	zhùzai-shānshang		zài-jiā-chī-ma		tài-nán-shuō-le
		3 1 0		4 1 0	
		1	tā-yǒu-shū-ma		tā-zhù-Sūzhou
		2	méi-yǒu-tāde		shéi-lù-yīn-ne
		3	hén-hǎo-chī-de*		nǐ-huì-shāo-ma
		4	yào-mǎi-shū-ma		mài-qìchē-ma

	0 2 0		1 2 0		2 2 0
1	tāde-fángzi		tā-shuō-shénmo		dāngrán-lái-le
2	biéde-fázi		shéi-chīwán-le		hái-méi-lái-ne
3	wōmen-míngbai		měitiān-lái-ma		hěn-nán-xué-ma
4	sìge-péngyou		dào-Xī-Hú-le		dà-bái-fángzi
		3 2 0		4 2 0	
		1	dōu-yǒu-fángzi		tā-jiào-shénmo
		2	shéi-yǒu-qián-ne		nín-yào-xué-ma
		3	ní-xiǎng-shénmo*		wǒ-jiù-lái-le
		4	zuì-yǒu-qián-le		màipiàoyuán-ne
	0 3 0		1 3 0		2 3 0
1	tāmen-mǎi-le		fēijī-hǎo-ma		tā-hái-yǒu-ma
2	nínde-mǔqin		shífēn-hǎo-ma		hái-néng-xiě-ma
3	wōmen-zǒu-ba		nǐ-jiā-yuǎn-ma		yǒu-rén-zhǎo-ta
4	tài-bu-hǎo-le		lùyīn-hǎo-ma		zuì-nán-mǎi-le
		3 3 0		4 3 0	
		1	dōu-hén-hǎo-ma*		tā-tài-hǎo-le
		2	shéi-xiáng-zǒu-le*		yídìng-zǒu-le
		3	ní-mái-bǐ-ma*		yě-yào-mǎi-le
		4	jiè-jíběn-le*		wàng-nèr-zǒu-ma
	0 4 0		1 4 0		2 4 0
1	chībuxià-le		fēijī-kuài-ma		tā-néng-huà-ma
2	shéide-fùqin		xué-shuō-huà-ma		shéi-ná-zhèige
3	zǎochen-qù-le		wǒ-chī-fàn-le		nǐ-néng-mài-ma
4	kànbujiàn-le		zuò-chē-kuài-ma		zuì-nán-mài-le
		3 4 0		4 4 0	
		1	tā-kǎoshì-le		chē-tài-dà-ma
		2	nín-yǒu-fùqin		nín-huì-huà-ma
		3	wó-yǒu-dìdi*		nǐ-wèn-mèimei
		4	yào-mǎi-sìge		Wàn-Jiàoshòude



## SENTENCE CONVERSION

I. From: Does he also want a little tea?

To: Give one dollar more.

1. Tā-yě-yào-yìdiǎr-chá-ma?
2. Tā-yě-yào-yìdiǎr-qián-ma?
3. Tā-yě-yào-yíkuài-qián-ma?
4. Tā-yé-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ma?
5. Tā-duō-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ma?
6. Nǐ-duō-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ma?
7. Nǐ-duō-gěi-yíkuài-qián-ba.

II. From: Who requested you all to come and borrow books?

To: I said they don't have any good friends.

1. 'Shéi-jiào-nǐmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū?
2. 'Shéi-jiào-tāmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū?
3. 'Shéi-shuō-tāmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū?
4. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen dōu-lái-jiè-shū.
5. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-lái-jiè-shū.
6. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-you-jiè-shū.
7. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-you-hǎo-shū.
8. Wǒ-shuō-tāmen 'méi-you-hǎo-péngyou.

III. From: Anyone can cook fried cabbage.

To: We don't like to eat in restaurants.

1. 'Shéi-dōu-huì-zuò chǎo-báicài.
2. Wǒmen-dōu-huì-zuò chǎo-báicài.
3. Wǒmen-bù-huì-zuò chǎo-báicài.
4. Wǒmen-bù-xǐhuan-zuò chǎo-báicài.
5. Wǒmen-bù-xǐhuan-chī chǎo-báicài.
6. Wǒmen-bù-xǐhuan-chī fànguǎr.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. 'Wàn-Jiàoshou chīde-hěn-duō. 'Bái-Xiānsheng chīde-'bù-duō. 'Shéi-chīde-tài-bǎo?

2. Bái-táng shi-tiánde, cù shi-suānde. 'Shénmo-shi-tiánde?
3. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng tèbié-xǐhuan-chī-yú. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu tèbié-xǐhuan-chī-ròu. Shéi-bù-xǐhuan-chī-yú?
4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-'Guǎngdong-rén. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng shi-'Shāndong-rén. Nèige-Guǎngdong-rén xìng-shénmo?
5. Shíge-rén yào-hē-tāng. Sìge-rén yào-hē-chá. Xǐhuan-hē-tāngde-rén-duō-ne, háishi-xǐhuan-hē-chá-de-rén-duō-ne?
6. Táng-shi-tiánde, cù-shi-suānde. Nǐ-shuō-'duì-bu-duì?
7. Fànguǎrde-cài méi-you-'Gāo-Tàitai zuòde-hǎo-chī. Shì-'fànguǎr-zuòde-hǎo háishi-'Gāo-Tàitai-zuòde-hǎo-ne?
8. Péngyou-shuō: " 'Gāo-Tàitai, nǐde-xiáojie yòu-piàoliang-yòu-cōngming." 'Gāo-Tàitai yīnggāi-duì-péngyou shuō-shénmo-kèqi-huà?
9. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu-hē-tāng, 'Bái-Xiānsheng-hē-chá. Hē-'tāng-de-rén shi-shéi?
10. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-bù-huì-zuò-fàn. 'Gāo-Tàitai-shuō Měiyīng-huì-zuò-fàn. Nǐ-shuō-ta-huì-zuò-fàn bú-huì-zuò-fàn?

## WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Imagine that you and a Chinese friend, Zhang, are having dinner in a restaurant.

You ask your friend what he would like to eat. He replies that he likes everything, and asks about your preference. You reply that you also like everything. Zhang then asks if it is O.K. to order two dishes and one soup. You say this is fine, and you tell him to speak up first. He says he'd like red-cooked meat. You say you want fried bean curd, and ask what soup to order. Your friend suggests that the two of you should order one cabbage soup. You say this is fine, as you are very fond of cabbage. Zhang remarks that the food in this restaurant is delicious. You say you think you should order one more dish. He asks you to say what more should be ordered. You ask if he likes sweet-and-sour fish. He says he does, but that he prefers to eat red-cooked things. You suggest that in that case you should order a red-cooked fish. To your friend's question whether you can use chopsticks or not, you reply that you can, but that you don't use them very well. He asks if you often eat Chinese food. You say you do, adding that the places where you eat are almost all Cantonese restaurants, and that this is the first time you've come to this restaurant. He suggests that hereafter when you eat Chinese food you should come here to eat.

## NOTES

1. When stative verbs are modified by expressions of amount ('more, a little,' etc.), the following patterns occur:

(a) Duō 'more' and shǎo 'less' come before the main verb, while yìdiǎr (or diar) 'a little' and number-measure-noun phrases (e.g. yíkuài-qíán 'one dollar') follow the main verb:

'Duō-gěi-ta-yìdiǎr.  
           or  
 'Duō-gěi-ta-diar. } 'Give him a little more.'  
 'Duō-gěi-ta-yíkuài-qíán. 'Give him a dollar more.'

(b) When yìdiǎr (or diar) is combined with kuài 'fast' or màn 'slow,' the phrase may appear either before or after the main verb:

Zǒu-'màn-yìdiǎr. (Zǒu-'màn-diar.)  
           or  
 'Màn-yìdiǎr-zǒu. ('Màn-diar-zǒu.) } 'Walk a little slower.'

(c) In other cases, the stative verb and yìdiǎr come after the main verb:

Nǐ-kéyì-zuò-'hǎo-yìdiǎr-ma? 'Can you do it a little better?'

2. The verb suffix -zhe forms expressions which correspond to certain -ing phrases in English. A main verb with -zhe attached, and frequently with the sentence particle ne at the end, means 'is (am, are) [doing]':

Wǒ-chīzhe-ne. 'I'm eating.'  
 Wǒ-kànzhe-shū-ne. 'I'm reading.'

A phrase consisting of two verbs, A and B, with -zhe attached to the first (A-zhe B) means '[The subject] while doing A, does B':

Wǒ-chīzhe-fàn kàn-shū. 'I read while eating.'  
 Wǒ-zuòzhe-chī-fàn. 'I eat sitting down.'

3. There is a sentence pattern for mentioning two alternative actions and indicating that if the first is not true, the second automatically is true. The pattern consists of two short verb expressions, the first negative; the second, which is affirmative, is introduced by jiù 'then, it follows (that)':

Tā-měitiān bù-chī-'Zhōngguó-cài jiù-chī-'Rìběn-cài. 'If he doesn't eat Chinese food every day, then he eats Japanese food.' [lit. 'He doesn't eat Chinese food every day, then (it follows that) he eats Japanese food.' (The implication is that he eats one or the other.)

Tā-bú-shi-'Zhōngguó-rén jiù-shi-'Rìběn-rén. 'If he isn't Chinese then he's Japanese.'

Often shi 'am, is, are' is added before the verbs if these are not themselves shi. Thus, shi can be added to the first of the two sentences just above, but not to the second:

Tā-měitiān bú-shi-chī-'Zhōngguó-cài jiù-shi-chī-'Rìběn-cài.

4. If the second of two related verbal clauses has a negative verb which is preceded by yě 'also' or dōu 'all,' the construction is equivalent to 'although... yet' or 'but' in English. Thus if you have lost a book and are hunting for it, you might say:

Wó-zhǎolái-zhǎoqù yé-zhǎobuzháo. or  
 Wó-zhǎolái-zhǎoqù dōu-zhǎobuzháo.  
 'I've looked and looked but can't find it.'

5. The expression chúle A yǐwài '[lit.] removing A apart,' in which A is a noun or verb expression, has two different meanings depending on what follows:

- (a) It means 'besides A' if the following clause contains hái, yě, or yòu, all meaning 'also':

Chúle-ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú. 'Besides meat I also like to eat fish.'

Chúle-Zhōngwén-shū-yǐwài wó-yé-yǒu-Yīngwén-shū. 'Besides Chinese books I also have English books.'

Chúle-tā-yǐwài yòu-yǒu-sānge-rén-lái-le. 'Besides him three other men came.'

Chúle-bù-xǐhuan chī-ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-bù-xǐhuan-chī-yú. 'Besides not liking to eat meat, I also don't like to eat fish.'

- (b) It means 'except for A' if the following clause contains the adverb dōu 'all' or some other expression meaning 'all' or 'more':

Chúle-tā-yǐwài wǒmen-dōu-shuō-Zhōngwén. 'Except for him, we all speak Chinese.'

Chúle-tā-yǐwài méi-yǒu-rén-huì-shuō-Zhōngwén. 'Except for him, there is no one who can speak Chinese.'

In this construction, either chúle or yǐwài may be omitted:

Chúle-ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú. or

Ròu-yǐwài wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú. or

Chúle-ròu wǒ-hái-xǐhuan-chī-yú.

'Besides meat I also like to eat fish.'

6. Repetition of a verb (or verb phrase), with shì 'be' inserted between the two occurrences, means '[verb] may be true' or '[verb] is true, to be sure.' The construction is often followed by a 'but' clause:

Nèige-nǚ-xuésheng piàoliang-shì-piàoliang, kěshì-ta-bènjíle. 'That girl (student) is beautiful all right, but she's awfully dumb.'

In this construction the second occurrence of the verb can take a suffix as an additional element:

Tā-lái-shì-lái-le, kěshì-wǒ-méi-zài-jiā. 'He came all right, but I wasn't at home.'

7. The expression náchu A lai 'bring out A' (or náchu A qu 'take out A') is ambiguous in that A may be the object of either ná 'take' or chu 'go out':

Náchu-shū-lai. 'Bring the books out.'

Náchu-fángzi-lai. 'Bring (them) out of the house.'

Náchu-shū-qu. 'Take the books out.'

Náchu-fángzi-qu. 'Take (them) out of the house.'

8. The postverb zhào meaning 'succeed in [do]ing' is used to form resultative verbs (see Lesson 14, Note 6, p. 217):

zhǎozhao 'succeed in finding'

mǎizhao 'succeed in buying'

zhǎobuzhào 'be unable to find' (= 'not succeed in finding')

9. The verb bǎo 'be full (in the stomach)' is used to form resultative compounds:

chībǎo 'eat until full, be satiated'

chībubǎo 'be unable to eat one's fill'

chídebǎo 'be able to eat one's fill'

10. The verb hǎo 'good' is used as an independent verb meaning 'finished' (fàn-hǎo-lē 'food's ready') and as a postverb to form resultative compounds meaning 'finish [do]ing':

zuòhǎo 'finish doing'

zuòbuhǎo 'be unable to finish doing'

zuòdehǎo 'be able to finish doing'

Observe the significance of the particle -de in distinguishing this construction from the otherwise identical one meaning 'do badly' (Lesson 10, Note 2, p. 136):

zuòbuhǎo 'be unable to finish doing'

zuòde-bu-hǎo 'do badly'

The parallel expressions meaning 'be able to finish doing' and 'do well' are distinguished in speech only by context (in our transcription, we set off -hǎo with a hyphen in the meaning 'do well'):

zuòdehǎo 'be able to finish doing'

zuòde-hǎo 'do well'

11. The verb xiàng 'resemble' has the extended meaning 'such as' (cf. English 'like'):

Wǒ-jiù-huì-xiě jǐge-jiǎndānde-zì, xiàng yī, èr, sān. 'I can write only a few simple characters, such as one, two, three.'

12. The expression bùdéliǎo, which we have encountered in the meaning 'awfully' after a stative verb (piàoliangde-bùdéliǎo 'awfully attractive'), is used independently as an exclamation having approximately the value of English 'My!' or 'Gosh!'

13. The expression suíbiàn, literally 'follow (one's) convenience,' is often

used with kéyi 'permit' or hǎo 'good' in the construction suíbiàn... dōu kéyi 'as you please':

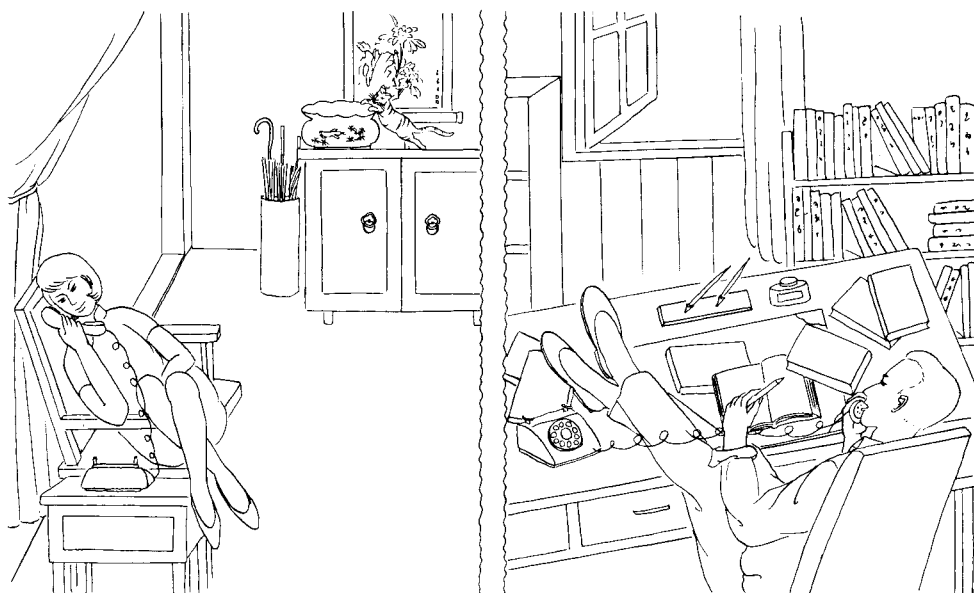
Suíbiàn-shénmo-dōu-kéyi. 'Anything will do.'

Suíbiàn-máobi-qiānbǐ dōu-hǎo. 'Either brush or pencil is O.K.'

14. The verb yào 'want' also means 'order (food, in a restaurant)':

Wǒmen-'zài-yào-yíge-cài. 'We are ordering another dish.'

## Lesson 20 CALLING A FRIEND



“Měiyīng, zěnmoyàng?”

Dialogue: Several months after his first visit to the Gaos', Mr. White, who has since been a frequent guest in their home, calls and speaks to Miss Gao.

Bái: Wai, shi-yī-liù-qī-bā-ma?

Hello, is this 1-6-7-8?

Gāo-Tàitai: Shì. Ní-zhǎo-shéi?

It is. Who are you calling?

Bái: Wǒ-shi-Wénshān-ne.\* Nín-shi-Gāo-Tàitai-ma? Nín-hǎo?

This is Vincent.\* Is this Mrs. Gao? How are you?

5

Gāo-Tàitai: Oh, Wénshān-a. Ní-hǎo-ma?

Oh, Vincent. How are you?

Bái: Hǎo, xièxie-nin. Měiyīng-zài-jiā-ma?

Fine, thank you. Is Meiying at home?

Gāo-Tàitai: Zài-jiā. Nǐ-yào-gēn-ta-shuō-huà-ma? 10

Yes. Do you want to talk to her?

\* Mr. White is now on sufficiently familiar terms with the Gaos so that he is addressed by them as Wenshan. (See Lesson 10, Note 10.) Note also that Miss Gao has dropped the formal nín for the more familiar nǐ in addressing him.

- Bái : Shì.
- Gāo-Tàitai : Hǎo. Qíng-ni-'děng-yiděng.
- Gāo-Xiáojie : Wai, Wénshān. Wǒ-yìcāi jiù-shì-nǐ. Wó-xiàng-nǐ-jīntian-zǎoshang yídìng-géi-wó-dǎ-diànhuà. 15
- Bái : Zhēn-cōngming. Nǐ-yìcāi jiù-cáiduì-le. Měiyīng, zěnmoyàng? Kǎowán-le-ma? Kǎode-'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 20
- Gāo : Hai, bié-tí-le. Yīngwén guówén kǎode-hái-hǎo, kěshì-shùxué kǎode-zāogāo-jíle. Wǒ-kàncuò-le-tímu. 25
- Bái : Zhèi-yě-shì-kǎoshì 'cháng-yǒu-de-shìqing.
- Gāo : Zài-kǎoshì de-shíhou wǒ-yìdiár-yě-bù-zhīdào shì-cuò-le. Kǎowán-le-yǐhòu, yíkàn-tímu cái-zhīdao-shì-cuò-le. 'Ní-kǎode-zěnmoyàng-ne? 30
- Bái : 'Yīngwén-kǎode wó-xiǎng-hái-kéyi. 'Zhōngwén-kǒngpà-bú-tài-hǎo. 35
- Gāo : Yǔyánxué-ne?
- Bái : Dàgài-yě-'bù-zěnmoyàng.
- Gāo : Xiànzài-wǒ-gàosu-nǐ-yíjiàn-shìqing. Zuótiān-wǒ-fùqīnmǔqīn-shuō-le, xiànzài-wǒ-fàngjià-le, xià-xīngqī jiào-wǒ-gēn-tāmen-yíkuài qu-lǚ-xíng. Nǐ-cāi wǒmen-dào-nǎr-qu. 40 45
- Bái : Dào-'Rìběn-qu.
- Gāo : 'Ní-zěnmó-zhīdao-ne?
- Bái : Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai tāmen-liǎngwèi-'dōu-xǐhuan-Rìběn-me. Suǒyi-nǐ-yìshuō-lǚxíng wǒ-jiù-zhīdao shì-dào-Rìběn-qu. 50
- Gāo : Nǐ-zhēn-cōngming.
- Bái : Qù-duōshao-shíhou? 'Shénmó-shíhou-huílai-ne? 55
- Yes.
- All right. Please wait a moment.
- Hello, Vincent. I guessed it was you right away. I thought you would surely call me this morning.
- You're really sharp. You guessed right on the first try. Meiyīng, how are things? Have you finished taking your exams? Did they go well?
- Gosh, don't bring that up. I did rather well in English and Chinese, but I messed up the math exam terribly. I misread a question.
- This is something that happens often in examinations.
- When I was taking the exam I wasn't at all aware of my mistake. After I finished [with the exam], as soon as I looked at the question I realized it was wrong. How did you make out?
- I think the English exam came off all right. I'm afraid the Chinese wasn't too good.
- How about linguistics?
- Most likely not so good either.
- I have something to tell you now. Yesterday my father and mother said that since I'm having vacation, next week I'm to go on a trip with them. Guess where we're going.
- To Japan.
- How did you know?
- Mr. and Mrs. Gao both like Japan, you see. So as soon as you mentioned a trip, I knew it was to Japan.
- You're really sharp.
- How long will you be gone? When are you coming back?



- Gāo: Wǒ-fùqīn-mǔqīn-tāmen-xiǎng  
zài-nèr-zhù-liǎngge-yuè,  
kěshì-wǒ-bù-gāoxìng zhù-  
'nènmò-duō-de-shíhòu. Wó- 60  
xiǎng-gēn-tāmen-shuō 'yíge-  
yuè-jiù-huílai.
- Bái: Hǎojíle. Nènmò-wó-déi-  
qíng-ni-chī-fàn.
- Gāo: Zěnmò-'nènmò-kèqi-ne? 65
- Bái: Nǐ-'shénmò-shíhòu yǒu-  
gōngfu? Wǒmen-yíkuài-  
chī-fàn. Chī-fàn-yǐhòu  
wǒmen-zài-qu-kàn-diàn-  
yǐngr, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 70
- Gāo: Hǎo. Wǒmen-yǐjīng-fàng-  
jià-le. Wó-něitiān-dōu-  
yǒu-gōngfu.
- Bái: Háishi-nǐ-shuō shénmò-  
shíhòu-hǎo. 75
- Gāo: Xīngqīsān 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Ní-  
yǒu-gōngfu-ma?
- Bái: Hǎo. Ní-xǐhuan-chī-shén-  
mò-ne?
- Gāo: Wǒ-'shénmò-dōu-xǐhuan-chī. 80  
'Zhōngguó-fàn 'wàiguó-fàn  
wǒ-'dōu-xǐhuan. Wó-xiáng-  
qilai-le—shūdiān-fùjìn yǒu-  
yíge-'běifāng-fànguǎr jiào-  
Wànnián-Fànguǎr. Nǐ-zhī- 85  
dao-ma?
- Bái: Zài-shūdiàn-něibiar?
- Gāo: Zài-shūdiàn-dōngbiar.
- Bái: Oh, nǐ-shuō-wó-xiángqilai-  
le. Kěshì-wǒ-méi-qu-chī- 90  
guo. Tīngshuō-nèrde-cài  
zuòde-hén-hǎo.
- Gāo: Wǒmen-dào-Wànnián-Fàn-  
guǎr chī-běifāng-cài 'hǎo-  
bu-hǎo? 95
- Bái: Hǎojíle. Wó-hén-xǐhuan  
chī-běifāng-fàn. Wǒmen-  
jiù-dào-nèr-qu-chī.
- Gāo: Hǎo-ba.
- Bái: Wǒmen-dào-nǎr kàn-diàn- 100  
yǐngr-qu-ne?
- Gāo: Tīngshuō Zhōngguó-Diàn-
- My father and mother plan to  
stay there for two months, but  
I'm not happy about staying that  
long. I'm going to tell them that  
I'd like to come back in one  
month.
- Fine. So I must ask you to din-  
ner.
- Why so polite?
- When are you free? Let's have  
dinner together and [after eat-  
ing] go see a movie, O.K.?
- Fine. We're already on vaca-  
tion. I'm free every day.
- It would be better for you to set  
a time.
- Is Wednesday all right? Are you  
free?
- Fine. What would you like to  
eat?
- I like (to eat) everything. Chi-  
nese food, foreign food — I like  
them both. It's just occurred to  
me—near the bookstore there's  
a Northern restaurant called the  
Ten Thousand Years Restaurant.  
Do you know it?
- On which side of the bookstore?
- East of the bookstore.
- Oh, I realized it as you were  
speaking. But I've never gone  
there to eat. I hear their food is  
very good.
- Shall we go to the Ten Thousand  
Years Restaurant and have  
Northern Chinese food?
- Fine. I like Northern food very  
much. So let's go there for din-  
ner.
- Fine.
- Where shall we (go) see a  
movie?
- I hear the movie being shown at

yīngryuàn yǎn-de-nèibù-piānzi bú-cuò. Shi-yíbù-lìshǐ-piānzi. Gùshi-xiěde-hǎo, yǎnyuán-yǎnde-hǎo. Ní-xǐhuan-lìshǐ-piānzi-ma?	105	the China Theater isn't bad. It's a historical movie. The story is well written, and the actors do their parts well. Do you like historical movies?
Bái: Wó-xǐhuan. Wǒmen-jiù-dào-Zhōngguo-Diànyīngryuàn qu-kàn-ba.	110	I do. So let's go to the China Theater.
Gāo: Tīngshuō-nèibù-piānzi hěnduō-rén-kàn. Pà-mǎibuzháo-piào-ba.		I hear a lot of people are seeing that movie. I'm afraid we may not be able to buy tickets.
Bái: Wǒ-xiān-qu-mǎi-piào. Wǒmen-kàn-jiúdiǎn-nèichǎng hǎo-ma?	115	I'll buy the tickets ahead of time. Let's take in the nine o'clock show, O. K. ?
Gāo: Kéyí.		O. K.
Bái: Xīngqīsān-wǎnshang liùdiǎn-zhōng wǒ-dào-fūshang-qu-jiē-ni.	120	I'll come to your home for you Wednesday at six.
Gāo: Hǎo, xièxie-ni.		Fine, thank you.
Bái: Yídìng-le.		That's definite.
Gāo: Yídìng. Zàijiàn.		Sure. Good-bye.
Bái: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.		Good-bye.

## VOCABULARY

běifāng	the North; northern region (PW)
bù	(measure for movies and sets of things, e.g. books)
cāi	guess (that), figure out (that) (TV)
chǎng	(measure for showings of movies)
dǎ	hit, strike (TV) (Note 3 below)
dǎkai	open (RV) [lit. strike open] (Note 3 below)
dàgài	likely, probable; probably, in all probability; approximately (MA) [lit. big outline]
diànhuà	telephone (N) [lit. electric speech]
diànyǐng(r)yuàn	movie theater (N) [lit. electric shadow hall]
fàngjià	have vacation (IV) [lit. release leave]
fùjìn	vicinity (PW) [lit. join near]
gāoxìng	be happy (SV) [lit. high spirits]
guówén	Chinese (N) [lit. national language] (Note 6 below)
gùshi	story, narrative (N) [lit. old matter]
hai	(sigh of dejection, regret, etc.)

jiàn	(measure for matters, tasks, etc.)
jiē	greet, meet; receive (guests, ships, letters) (TV)
kǒngpà	fear (that), be afraid (of), be afraid (to) (TV)
lìshǐ	history (N)
me	(particle indicating obviousness) (Note 8 below)
nánfāng	the South; southern region (PW)
pà	fear, be afraid of (V)
piānzi	reel, movie (N)
qǐlái	get up (IV) [lit. rise come] (Note 2 below)
shìqǐng	affair, matter (N)
shùxué	mathematics (N) [lit. number study]
tí	carry, lift, take, bring (up), mention (TV)
tímù	topic (N)
yǎn	act (in); put on (a performance) (TV)
yǎnyuán	actor (N) [lit. act person]
yí, yì	as soon as (AD) (Note 1 below)
zāogāo	messed up (SV) (Note 7 below)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| yì<br>wǒ-yì-tīng-ta-shuō-<br>huà<br>jiù-zhīdao ta-bú-shi-<br>Zhōngguo-rén | once, as soon as<br>as soon as I heard him<br>speak<br>then I knew he wasn't Chi-<br>nese |
| 1. Wǒ-yì-tīng-ta-shuō-huà, jiù-<br>zhīdao ta-bú-shi-'Zhōngguo-<br>rén.    | As soon as I heard him speak I<br>knew he wasn't Chinese.                                 |
| nǐ-yì-shuō<br>wǒ-cái-zhīdao   | as soon as you spoke<br>I only then knew  |
| 2. Nǐ-yì-shuō wǒ-cái-zhīdao.  | I only found out about [lit. knew<br>of] it when you mentioned it.                        |
| wǒ-yì-chī<br>zhēn-shi-Guǎngdong-fàn                                       | I took a taste<br>it really was Cantonese food  |
| 3. Wǒ-yì-chī zhēn-shi-Guǎng-<br>dong-fàn.                                 | I took a taste and sure enough it<br>really was Cantonese food.                           |
| gùshi<br>yì-tīng-tā-yào-shuō-<br>gùshi                                    | story<br>on hearing he was going to<br>tell a story                                       |
| 4. Yì-tīng-tā-yào-shuō-gùshi<br>háizi-'dōu-pǎolai-le.                     | As soon as they heard he was<br>going to tell a story the children<br>all came running.   |

- fàngjià  
dàxué-yí-fàngjià  
wǒ-jiù-huí-guó
5. Dàxué-yí-fàngjià wǒ-jiù-huí-guó.  
have a vacation  
as soon as college vacation starts  
I'll go back to my own country  
As soon as college vacation starts I'll go back to my own country.
- guówén  
gēn-Yīngwén
6. Guówén-gēn-Yīngwén yíyàng-nán-ma?  
Chinese (literature) and English  
Is Chinese as hard as English?
- pà  
xuésheng-dōu-pà-ta
7. Nèige-xiānsheng xuésheng-dōu-pà-ta.  
fear  
students all fear him  
The students are all afraid of that teacher.
- kǒngpà
8. Kǒngpà chībuwán-nènmo-duō-cài.  
fear or be afraid that  
I'm afraid we can't finish so many courses.
- qǐlai  
'shénmo-shíhou-qǐlai?
9. Ní-zǎochen-'shénmo-shíhou-qǐlai?  
get up  
get up at what time?  
When do you get up in the morning?
- ná  
náqilai
10. Wǒmen-yíkuài-náqilai-ba.  
grasp  
lift up  
Let's lift it together.
- náqilai  
náqi-shū-lai
11. Náqi-shū-lai-niàn-yíci.  
lift (up)  
take up your book  
Pick up your book and take a turn reading.
- náqilai  
nábuqilái
12. Nènmo-duōde-dōngxi wǒ-ná-buqilái.  
lift up  
unable to lift (up)  
I can't lift so many things.
- jiàn
- zhèijiàn-shì
13. Zhèijiàn-shì 'hěn-róngyì-zuò.  
(measure for matters, tasks, etc.)  
this task  
This job is easy to do.
- shì  
shìqing
14. Zhèijiàn-shìqing hěn-nán-zuò.  
affair, task  
affair, task  
This job is hard to do.
- diànyǐngr  
diànyǐngyuàn
- movie  
movie theater

15. Fànguǎr lí-diànyǐngyuàn-hěn-jìn.

dǎ

16. Bié-dǎ-ta.

diànhuà

dǎ-diànhuà

gěi-ta-dǎ-diànhuà

17. Wó-déi-gěi-ta-dǎ-diànhuà.

dǎ

dǎ-fànguǎr

18. Dǎ-fànguǎr-dào-shūdiàn yǒu-sānlǐ-lù.

dǎkai

19. Qíng-nǐmen-bǎ-shū-dǎkai.

dǎdao

fùjìn

20. Yíjīng-dǎdao-chéngde-fùjìn.

tímu

wèn-tímu

21. Xiānsheng-wèn-ni 'shénmo-tímu?

lìshǐ

xué-Zhōngguo-lìshǐ

22. Wǒmen-jīntian kāishǐ-xué Zhōngguo-lìshǐ.

bù

zhèibù-shū

23. Zhèibù-shū yígòng-yǒu-sān-běn.

piānzi

nèibù-piānzi

24. Nèibù-piānzi hǎode-bùdé-liǎo.

yǎn

yǎn-diànyǐngr

25. Wǒmen-xuéxiào jīntian-yǎn-diànyǐngr.

yǎnyuán

yǎnde-hén-hǎo

26. Nèige-yǎnyuán yǎnde-hén-hǎo.

chǎng

The restaurant is close to the movie theater.

hit, strike

Don't hit him.

telephone

make a phone call

call him on the phone

I have to phone him.

from

from the restaurant

It's three miles from the restaurant to the bookstore.

open

Please open your books.

fight up to

vicinity

The fighting has already reached the vicinity of the city.

topic, problem

pose a problem

What problem did the teacher put to you?

history

study Chinese history

Today we begin the study of Chinese history.

set (of books)

this set of books

Altogether there are three volumes in this set of books.

movie

that movie

That movie is terrific.

put on a performance

show a movie

Our school is showing a movie today.

actor

act very well

That actor performs very well.

showing of a movie

27. yǎnle-sānchǎng  
Nèibù-piānzi jīntian-yǎnle-  
'sānchǎng.  
shown three times  
That movie was shown three  
times today.
28. nèichǎng  
bādiǎn-nèichǎng  
Wǒmen-kàn 'bādiǎn-nèichǎng  
'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  
that showing  
the eight o'clock show  
How about our seeing the eight  
o'clock show?
29. dàgài  
dàgài-bù-lái  
Tā-míngtian dàgài-bù-lái.  
probably  
probably isn't coming  
He probably isn't coming tomor-  
row.
30. dàgài  
dàgài-yǒu-yīlǐ-lù  
Fànguǎn-lí-zhèr dàgài-yǒu-  
yīlǐ-lù.  
approximately  
about one mile  
The restaurant is about a mile  
from here.
31. cāi  
Nǐ-cāi tā-shi-'něiguó-rén.  
guess  
Guess what nationality he is.
32. shùxué  
Zhōngguó-rén duì-shùxué-  
hén-hǎo.  
mathematics  
Chinese are very good at mathe-  
matics.
33. tí  
tíqilai  
tíqilai-nèige-rén  
Nǐ-tíqilai-nèige-rén 'wó-yě-  
rènshi.  
lift, raise; mention  
mention  
mention that man  
(Now that) you mention that man,  
I also know him.
34. jiē  
Wó-děi-dào-chē-zhàn qu-jiē-  
ta.  
meet, greet  
I have to go to the bus station to  
meet him.
35. jiēdào  
Nǐ-jiēdào-le-nǐ-péngyoude-  
'xìn-méi-you?  
receive (a letter)  
Did you get a letter from your  
friend?
36. jiēzhào  
méi-jiēzhào  
Wǒ-lái-wǎn-le. Méi-jiēzhào-  
ta.  
succeed in meeting  
failed to meet  
I came late and missed him.
37. běifāng  
Wǒ-zuì-xǐhuan-chī-de shi-  
běifāng-cài.  
northern region  
What I like to eat most is North-  
ern cooking.
38. nánfāng  
Guǎngdong-rén dāngrán-shi-  
nánfāng-rén.  
southern region  
Cantonese of course are South-  
erners.
39. zāogāo  
Nèige-piānzi zāogāo-jíle.  
messed up, confused  
That movie was a mess.

hai  
40. Hai, wǒ-xuébuhuì-Zhōngwén.

(a sigh)  
Gosh, I can't learn Chinese.

me  
kāodeshàng

you see  
able to pass the entrance  
exams

tā-hěn-cōngming-me  
41. Wó-xiǎng tā-yídìng-kāode-  
shàng, yīnwei-tā-hěn-cōng-  
ming-me.

he's intelligent, you see  
I think he can certainly pass the  
entrance exams since he's in-  
telligent, you see.

gāoxìng  
gāoxìng-nín-néng-lái

42. Wó-hěn-gāoxìng nín-néng-  
lái.

happy  
happy that you can come  
I'm very happy that you can  
come.

### PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 20.1. Use of yí as an Adverb (Note 1 below)

S	<u>yí/yì</u>	V	(O)
Subject	<u>yí/yì</u>	Verb	(Object)
nǐ	yí	gàosu	ta

as soon as you tell him'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Nèige-xuésheng 'zhēn-cōng-<br/>ming. Shàng-kè-de-shíhou,<br/>xiānsheng-yī-jiāo tā-jiu-<br/>míngbai.</p> <p>2. Wǒ-xué-'Yīngwén, 'zěnmò-<br/>xué-yě-bù-huì. Wǒ-xué-<br/>'Zhōngwén 'yì-xué-jiù-huì-le.</p> <p>3. Wǒ-yí-kàn-biǎo, yǐjīng-bā-<br/>diǎn-zhōng-le. Kǒngpà-ta-bù-<br/>lái-le.</p> <p>4. Wó-mǔqīn-shuō-le, wǒ-yí-fàng-<br/>jià wǒmen-jiu-dào-Húnán-qu-le.</p> <p>5. Jīntian wǒ-yì-chūqu jiu-yùjian-<br/>'Bái-Xiānsheng-le.</p> <p>6. Nèizhī-bǐ wǒ-yí-kàn jiu-zhī-<br/>dao-shi-'Gāo-Xiǎojiede.</p> <p>7. Guǎngdong-cài tài-hǎo-chī-le.<br/>Wǒ-yì-chī jiu-chīde-tài-bǎo-le.</p> | <p>That student is really bright.<br/>When he goes to a class, as soon<br/>as the teacher teaches (some-<br/>thing) he immediately under-<br/>stands.</p> <p>I can't master English no matter<br/>how I study. But whenever I<br/>study Chinese, I get it right<br/>away.</p> <p>When I looked at my watch it was<br/>already eight o'clock. I'm afraid<br/>he isn't coming after all.</p> <p>My mother said that as soon as I<br/>go on vacation we will go to Hu-<br/>nan.</p> <p>Today I had no sooner gone out<br/>than I met Mr. White.</p> <p>As soon as I saw that pen I knew<br/>it was Miss Gao's.</p> <p>Cantonese food is too delicious.<br/>Whenever I eat it I overstuff my-<br/>self.</p> |
|--|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>8. 'Qián-Xiānshengde-nèi-jǐge-háizi 'hén-xǐhuan-tīng-gùshi. Wǒ-yí-qù tāmen-jiu-jiào-wǒ-shuō-gùshi.</p> <p>9. Zuótian kànjian-nèige-nǚ-háizi. Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta jiu-shi-Yīngguo-rén.</p> <p>10. 'Gāo-Tàitai-hǎojíle. Wǒ-yí-qù ta-jiu-qíng-wo zài-tā-jiā-chī-fàn. Pà-tài-máfan-ta-le.</p> <p>11. Wó-hén-xǐhuan yánjiu-kēxué. Wǒ-yí-dào-túshūguǎn jiu-kàn-kēxué-shū.</p> <p>12. 'Zhōngguo-zì hěn-nán-xiě. Wǒ-yì-xiě jiu-xiěcuò-le.</p> <p>13. Nèige-xuésheng-hěn-qíguài. Yì-kǎoshì tā-jiu-bìng.</p> <p>14. Wó-kǒngpà yòng-kuàizi-yòng-de-bú-tài-hǎo. Wǒ-yí-yòng-'kuàizi-chī-fàn, biéde-rén-dōu-kàn-wo.</p> <p>15. Wǒ-yì-chī, zhēn-hǎo-chī-jíle.</p> | <p>Mr. Qian's children love to listen to stories. Whenever I go there they ask me to tell a story.</p> <p>I saw that girl yesterday. I took one look and sure enough she was English.</p> <p>Mrs. Gao is very nice. Whenever I go (there) she invites me to eat at her home. I'm afraid it's too much trouble for her.</p> <p>I love to study science. Whenever I go to the library I read science books.</p> <p>Chinese characters are hard to write. Whenever I write them I do it wrong.</p> <p>That student is pretty queer. Whenever there are exams he gets sick.</p> <p>I'm afraid I don't use chopsticks too well. Whenever I eat with chopsticks everyone looks at me.</p> <p>I took a taste, and sure enough it really was delicious.</p> |
|--|---|

Pattern 20.2. Use of qilai as a Postverb (Note 2 below)

V	-qilai	
Verb	'up'	
ná	-qilai	'take up'
xiáng	-qilai	'recall'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Zuótian xiǎng-kàn-diànyǐng. Dào-le-diànyǐngyuàn cái-xiáng-qilai wàngle-ná-qián-le.</p> <p>2. Nèige-háizi 'hén-xǐhuan-huà-huà. Yì-náqi-bǐ-lai jiu-huà-huà.</p> <p>3. Kànqilai zhèijiàn-shìqing hěn-máfan.</p> <p>4. Yǔyánxué yánjiuqilai 'hén-yǒu-yìsi.</p> | <p>Yesterday I planned to go to a movie. Only after reaching the theater did I remember that I'd forgotten to bring any money.</p> <p>That child loves to draw. Whenever he picks up a pen he makes a drawing.</p> <p>On examination, this matter is quite a nuisance.</p> <p>Studying linguistics is very interesting.</p> |
|--|---|



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. Zuò-chē-hěn-jìn. Zóuqilai-hén-yuǎn.                                  | It's close if you go by car. It's quite far if you walk.  |
| 6. Nèige-rén wǒ-jiànguo, kěshi-wǒ-xiǎngbuqílái tā-xìng-shén-mo-le.      | I've seen that man, but I can't remember what his name is.  |
| 7. Shuōqilai wó-yé-déi-zǒu-le.  | Speaking (of it), I have to go too.   |
| 8. Shīzi-tóu hén-hǎo-chī. Kěshi-zuòqilai-hěn-máfan.                     | Lion's head is delicious. But making it is a lot of trouble.  |
| 9. Wó-xiǎngqilai-le. Jīntian shì-xīngqīliù. Wǒmen-děi-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr. | It has occurred to me that today is Saturday. We must go see a movie.                                   |
| 10. Nèige-zì wǒ-wàngle-niàn-shén-mo-le. 'Zěnmò-xiǎng yé-xiǎngbuqílái.   | I've forgotten how that character is read. No matter how (hard) I think of it, I still can't recall it. |
| 11. Nèiběn-shū wǒ-náqilai-yíkàn shì-yìběn-gùshi-shū.                    | I took up the book and glanced at it, and sure enough it was a story book.                              |
| 12. Zuò- Zhōngguo-cài xuéqilai-hěn-róngyì.                              | Learning how to cook Chinese food is very easy.   |
| 13. Nèige-háizi nǐ-yì-shuōqi-láohu-lai tā-jiu-pà.                       | As soon as you mention a tiger to that child, he gets scared.   |
| 14. Wǒ-nábuqi nèige-dōngxi-lai.   | I can't lift (up) that thing.   |
| 15. Nèige-háizi tài-xiǎo. Ta-nábuqi nèiběn-dà-shū-lai.                  | That child is too small. He can't lift that big book.   |

Pattern 20.3. Expressions with dǎ (note 3 below)

Pattern 20.3 a.

<u>dǎ</u>	Noun	
dǎ	mén	'knock on the door'
dǎ	diànhuà	'make a phone call'

Pattern 20.3 b.

<u>dǎ</u>	Place Word	
dǎ	zhèr	'from here'

Pattern 20.3 c.

<u>dǎ</u>	Verb	
dǎ	-kai	'open up'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Zuótiān wǒ-huí-jiā-dǎ-mén. Dǎle-yǒu-yíge-zhōngtóu, yě-méi-rén-kāi-mén. | Yesterday I returned home and knocked on the door. I knocked for an hour, but no one opened the door. |
|---|---|

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>2. Wǒ-'jiù-pà-wǒ-mèimei dǎ-diànhuà. Yì-dǎ jiu-shuō-liǎngge-zhōngtóu.</p>   | <p>The only thing I'm afraid of is my younger sister making a phone call. Whenever she calls she talks for a couple of hours.</p>                |
| <p>3. Shàng-kè-de-shíhou, jiàoyuán-shuō: "Qíng-nǐmen-bǎ-shū xiān-dǎkai."</p>  | <p>When we go to class, the teacher says: "Please first open your books."</p>  |
| <p>4. Zuótiān-'Gāo-Xiǎojie géi-wó-dǎle-'sāncì-diànhuà.</p>  | <p>Yesterday Miss Gao phoned me three times.</p>   |
| <p>5. Liǎngge-háizi dáqilai-le.</p>   | <p>The two children have begun to fight.</p>   |
| <p>6. Rén-'dōu-pǎo-le, yīnwei-yǐ-jing-dǎdào Nán-Hú-fùjìn-le.</p>  | <p>Everyone has fled, as the fighting has already reached the vicinity of South Lake.</p>  |
| <p>7. Nèige-jiàoyuán jiāo-shū-de-fázi 'zhēn-hǎo. Jiāo-lìshǐ-de-shíhou ta-bù-jiào-wǒmen-dǎkai-shū. Tā-xiān-wèn-wǒmen-tímu.</p> | <p>That teacher's method of teaching is really good. When teaching history he doesn't tell us to open our books. He first poses us problems.</p> |
| <p>8. Dá-Niǚyue-dào-Sānfánshì zuò-chuán bu-zhīdào-yào-jǐtiān.</p>   | <p>I don't know how many days it takes from New York to San Francisco by boat.</p>   |
| <p>9. Jīntiān wó-gěi-'Gāo-Xiǎojie dǎ-diànhuà. Dǎle-sìcì, ta-dōu-bù-zài-jiā.</p>   | <p>Today I called Miss Gao. I called four times, but she was never at home.</p>  |
| <p>10. Dǎ-zhèr wàng-béi-guǎi jiu-dào-'Gāo-Xiǎnsheng-jiā.</p>  | <p>Turn north from here and you'll get to Mr. Gao's home.</p>  |

Pattern 20.4. More Resultative Verb Compounds

V <sub>1</sub>	(bu/de)	V <sub>2</sub>
Verb <sub>1</sub>	(bu/de)	Verb <sub>2</sub>
tīng	bu	míngbai
'unable to understand (aurally)'		

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Bú-yào-shuō-huà. Qíng-nǐmen-bǎ-shū-dǎkai.</p>       | <p>Don't talk. Please open your books.</p>   |
| <p>2. Zhèige-mén kāibukāi-le. 'Zěnmò-dǎ yé-dǎbukāi.</p>   | <p>This door can't be opened. No matter how (hard) you try, you can't open it.</p> |
| <p>3. Wǒ-shuōle-bàntiān. Nǐ-tīng-'míngbai-le-méi-you?</p> | <p>I've been talking for a long time. Have you been understanding?</p>             |
| <p>4. Tā-hěn-cōngming. Yì-'xué-jiu-xuéhuì.</p>            | <p>He's very bright. As soon as he studies (something) he gets it.</p>             |

5. Wǒ-chīgòu-le. Bù-néng-duō-chī-le.  
I've eaten enough. I can't eat very much.
6. Nèige-xuésheng zhēn-bu-cōng-míng. 'Nèige-zì-dōu-méi-xiěduì.  
That student is really not very bright. He didn't write any characters correctly.
7. Nèige-xiānsheng cháng-bá-wǒ-de-míngzì xiěcuò-le.  
That teacher often writes my name wrong.
8. Qíng-ni bǎ-chē-mén-dǎkai.  
Please open the car door.
9. Xuéxiàode-fàn bù-hǎo-chī. Wóměitiān dōu-chībubǎo.  
The school food is unappetizing. Every day I can't get filled (up).
10. Ní-bá-wǒde-shìqing gēn-ta-'shuōhǎo-le-méi-you?  
Did you reach an agreement with him on that business of mine?
11. Tā-shuō wǒ-'zuótian-qu-kàndiànyǐngr-le. Tā-zhēn-cāi-duì-le.  
He said I went to the movies yesterday. He really guessed right.
12. Tā-shuō-de-huà wǒ-yìdiár-yě-tīngbumíngbai.  
I can't understand the least bit of what he's saying.
13. Kāi-qìchē 'zěnmò-xué wó-yě-xuébuhuì.  
No matter how (hard) I study driving, I can't learn.
14. Wó-hén-xǐhuan chī-Zhōngguó-fàn. Wó-'zěnmò-chī yě-chī-bugòu.  
I love [to eat] Chinese food. No matter how (much) I eat I can't eat enough.
15. Nèige-jiàoyuán-de-tímù hěntèbié. Ní-'zěnmò-cāi yě-cāi-buzháo.  
That teacher's questions are pretty peculiar. No matter how you guess you can't guess them.
16. Nǐ-wèi-'shénmò lái-wǎn-le-ne?  
Why have you come late?
17. Ní-xiǎng-wǒ-xué-Zhōngwén 'xuédehuì-xuébuhuì?  
Do you think I can learn Chinese?
18. Tā-jīntian dào-xuéxiào qùwǎn-le.  
He was late (in going) to school today.
19. Wǎnfàn 'liùdiǎn-zhōng 'zuò-dehǎo-zuòbuhǎo?  
Can you finish cooking dinner by six o'clock?
20. Wǒ-zuò-'qìchē-lái. Yídìng-láibuwǎn.  
I'm coming by car. I certainly can't be late.

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 48 phrases (Note 1)

jiàoyuán	yí	kànjian	wǒ
jiàoshòu		gàosu	nǐ
xiānsheng		wèn	tā
tàitai		jiào	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (II)

(Asterisks mark expressions which have undergone a change of third tone to second tone.)

0 0 1	1 0 1	2 0 1
1 tāmende-shū	tā-hē-de-tāng	tīng-xuésheng-shuō
2 xuéshengde-chē	nín-kāide-chē	nín-xuéde-duō
3 nǐmende-jiā	nǐ-chīde-jī	wǒ-náde-shū
4 màile-de-chē	tài-duōde-chē	zuì-róngyi-shuō

3 0 1	4 0 1
1 dōu-xǐhuan-chī	xiān-xiàle-shān
2 Húběide-duō	shéi-kànde-duō
3 wó-xiǎngbuchū *	wǒ-niànle-shū
4 tài-hǎode-shū	zuì-dàde-shān

0 1 1	1 1 1	2 1 1
1 tāmen-jiēhūn	yīnggāi-duō-chī	tā-huí-jiā-chī
2 shéide-shū-duō	nín-hē-sānbēi	Húnán-shān-duō
3 nǐmen-duō-chī	yǒu-sānqiān-duō	wǒ-méi-tīngshuō
4 niànde-zhēn-duō	dà-shān-zhēn-gāo	jiào-shéi-xiān-chī

3 1 1	4 1 1
1 tā-yě-tīngshuō	tā-niàn-gāozhōng
2 shídǎn-duō-zhōng	shéi-zuò-fēijī
3 wó-mǎi-sānzhī *	mǎi-lùyīnjī
4 bìděi-jiēhūn	zuì-huì-jiāo-shū

0 2 1	1 2 1	2 2 1
1 tāmen-hái-shuō	tā-dāngrán-hē	Zhōngwén-nán-shuō
2 xuésheng-méi-tīng	nín-xiān-lái-chī	shéi-néng-lái-chī
3 wǒmen-hái-chī	wǒ-gāi-huí-jiā	wǒ-xué-shítīān
4 wàngle-ná-shū	qìchē-shéi-kāi	zuò-chuán-huí-jiā

3 2 1	4 2 1
1 tā-qǐng-shéi-chī	tā-jiào-shéi-shuō
2 shéi-xiǎng-huí-jiā	shéi-zuì-néng-chī
3 ní-hěn-néng-chī *	nǐ-yào-ná-shū
4 zuì-hǎo-rén-duō	xiànzài-hái-chī

	0 3 1	1 3 1	2 3 1
1	shuōde-hěn-duō	tā-jiāo-Měiyīng	tā-néng-xiě-shū
2	tiánde-hǎo-chī	nín-kāishǐ-shuō	nín-méi-mǎi-zhōng
3	yǒude-yě-shuō	bǐ-jī-hǎo-chī	yǒu-rén-kǎo-shū
4	rènshi-hěn-duō	qìchē-hěn-duō	tèbié-hǎo-chī

	3 3 1	4 3 1
1	tā-xiáng-mǎi-shū *	tā-yào-mǎi-shū
2	hái-yóu-hěn-duō *	nín-zhù-wǔtiān
3	wó-hén-xiǎng-shuō *	yě-tài-jiǎndān
4	fàn-hén-hǎo-chī *	sìwàn-jiǔqiān

	0 4 1	1 4 1	2 4 1
1	tāmen-yào-chī	fēijī-zuì-duō	tā-méi-zài-jiā
2	fángzi-tài-gāo	cháng-shuō-yào-chī	nín-xué-sì tiān
3	nǐmen-huì-shuō	wǒ-gāi-lù-yīn	yǒu-rén-yào-chē
4	dàde-qìchē	dì-sānhào-chē	jiào-shéi-lù-yīn

	3 4 1	4 4 1
1	kāishǐ-niàn-shū	gōnggòng-qìchē
2	nín-yě-yònggōng	shéi-huì-lù-yīn
3	wó-xiǎng-mài-shū *	nǐ-yào-jiè-shū
4	sì-wǔ-liù-qī	jiàoshòu-kàn-shū

## A CONVERSATION

Translate the following conversation between Mr. White and Mr. Mao.

Máo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-ma? 'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn-le.

Bái: Oh, Máo-Xiānsheng, ní-hǎo. Wǒmen-'háojǐubújiànle.

Máo: Zěnmoyàng, tài-máng-ma?

Bái: Duì-le. Yǒu-yìdiǎr-máng.

Máo: Nín-yào-dào-nǎr-qu?

Bái: Wǒ-'búdàodǎr-qu. Wǒ-zàizhèrděngpéngyou.

Máo: Nín-děng-shéi?

Bái: Wó-děng-'Gāo-Xiáojie. Tā-jiào-wo-'sìdiǎnzhōng zàizhèrděngta.

Xiànzàiyǐjīng kuài-wúdiǎn-le. Tā-háiméiláine.

Máo : 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-tāmen yào-dào-'Rìběn-qu-le. Shì-ma?

Bái : Duì-le. Dàgài-tāmen xià-xīngqī jiu-zǒu-le.

Máo : 'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuì-gāoxìng dào-'Rìběn-qu-le. Tāmen-zài-'Rìběn yào-zhù-'duōshao-shíhou-ne?

Bái : Kǒngpà-yào-zhù 'yì-liǎngge-yuè-ba.

Máo : Kěshi-nín-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie yào-'háo-jiǔ-bu-jiàn-le.

Bái : Duì-le.

Máo : Nín-yǐhòu qǐng-'cháng-dào-shūdiàn-lai.

Bái : Wǒ-xiànzài yǐjīng-kāowán-le. Bú-tài-máng-le. Kéyi-cháng-dào-shū-diàn-qu. 'Máo-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn-ni. Zhè-fùjìn yǒu-diànhuà-ma? Wó-xiáng-gěi-Gāo-jia dǎ-ge-diànhuà, wènwen-'Gāo -Xiáojie yǐjīng-'chūlai-le-méi-you.

Máo : Gōngyuán-lǐbiar, wàng-'zuó-guǎi nèige-xiǎo-fángzi jiu - shi - dǎ - diàn-huà-de-dìfang.

Bái : Xièxie-ni.

Máo : Zàijiàn.

Bái : Zàijiàn.

#### ENGLISH TO CHINESE

Put yourself in the role of Mr. White narrating the following to a Chinese friend.

Our school has now begun its vacation. Vacation will last about two months. Some students have returned home, some have gone to other places on trips. I plan to do some more studying during vacation. When I left home, my father and mother hoped I would be a good student, so I must work hard. It will soon be almost a year since I've come to China. I've made a number of friends, and they have been very nice to me. Mr. and Mrs. Gao are awfully nice to me. Every time I go to their home they insist on my eating with them. Mrs. Gao knows I like red-cooked dishes. Then there's Miss Gao, who is also a good friend of mine. We often talk together, or study a little language and literature. She is both intelligent and attractive. They are going on a trip soon and I won't be able to see them for a month or two.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. 'Gāo-Xiáojie měi-yíge-xīngqī kàn-liǎngcì-diànyǐngr. 'Wàn-Xiáojie liǎngge-xīngqī kàn-yíci-diànyǐngr. 'Shéi-zuì-xǐhuan kàn-diànyǐngr?
2. Kǎoshì-de-shíhou, lìshǐ-tímu wǒ-yí-kàn-jiu-dǒng. Shùxué-tímu wǒ-kānle-bàntiān yě-méi-dǒng. Nǐ-shuō-'shénmo-róngyì?
3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yí-fàngjià jiu-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng suí-rán-fàngjià, 'háishi-kàn-shū-xiě-zì. Nǐ-shuō tāmen-liǎngge-rén 'shéi-shi-hǎo-xuésheng?
4. Zhèige-háizi xǐhuan-dǎ-rén. Nèige-háizi 'bù-dǎ-rén. Nǐ-shuō 'nèige-háizi-hǎo?
5. Yǎn-diànyǐngr shi-zài-'nár-yǎn-ne?
6. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-jiā lí-nǐ-jiā-hěn-jìn. Tā-fùjìn jiù-shi-túshūguǎn. Nǐ-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-yuǎn-ma?
7. Nǐ-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr. Nǐ-zhīdao-yǎn-diànyǐngr-de-rén jiào-shénmo?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng kàn-'wúdiǎn-nèichǎng-diànyǐngr. 'Máo-Xiānsheng kàn-'qīdiǎn-nèichǎng-diànyǐngr. Nǐ-shuō-shéi-'xiān-huí-jiā, shéi-'hòu-huí-jiā?
9. Rúguó-nǐ-péngyou 'sāndiǎn-zhōng zuò-chuán-dào-zhèr-lái, nǐ-'sìdiǎn-zhōng cái-qu-jiē-ta, nǐ-'jīēdezháo-jiēbuzháo?
10. Wǒmen-kàn-diànyǐngr zài-'nǎr-kàn? Shi-zài-'jiā-lǐtou-kàn-ma?

## NOTES

1. Yí or yí 'one' as an adverb means 'as soon as.' The second clause is commonly introduced by jiù 'then':

Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta jiu-zhīdao tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén. 'As soon as I saw him, I knew he was a foreigner.'

Or, the second clause may be introduced by cái 'then and only then,' 'then for the first time':

Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta cái-zhīdao tā-shi-'wàiguó-rén. 'As soon as I saw him, then (for the first time) I realized he was a foreigner [though I had previously thought he was the same nationality as myself].'

The connection between the second clause and the yí + verb in the first clause is often implied rather than stated:

Wǒ-yí-kàn, tā-'zhēn-shi-wàiguó-rén. 'The minute I saw him (I knew) he was a foreigner.'

2. The verb qǐlai 'get up' is also used as a postverb, in two separate senses. First, it can correspond to 'up' in expressions like náqilai 'take up.' The object of such a verb is either introduced by the coverb bǎ 'take,' or inserted between the parts of the combination:

Bǎ-shū-náqilai. 'Pick up your book.'

Náqi-shū-lai. 'Pick up your books.'

In a second sense, qǐlai as a postverb means 'begin to [do or be]':

Nèige-háizi chīqǐ-fàn-lai jiu-yào-shuō-huà. 'When that child begins to eat he immediately wants to talk.'

Cóng-nèige-shíhou wǒde-Zhōngwén jiù-hǎoqilaile. 'From that time my Chinese began to improve [lit. began to be good].'

Verbs compounded with qǐlai are resultative verbs:

xiánqilai 'recall'

xiǎngbuqílái 'unable to recall'

3. The basic meaning of dǎ is 'strike':

dǎ-mén 'knock on a door'

dáqilai 'begin to strike [each other]'—i.e. 'fight'

Dǎ in addition enters into phrases with nouns, with a variety of English equivalents:

dǎ-piào 'buy tickets'

dǎ-quán 'box' (i.e. 'have a boxing contest')

dǎ-diànhuà 'make a phone call'

Before a place word, dǎ means 'from,' synonymous here with cóng:

Dǎ-zhèr-dào-fànguǎr yǒu-duō-yuǎn? 'How far is it from here to the restaurant?'

Note also the following special combination:

dǎkai 'open [a book, box, etc.]—lit. 'hit open'

4. The stative verb duì 'correct, right' is used as a postverb to form resultative compounds:

shuōduì 'say correctly'

shuōbuduì 'unable to say correctly'

shuōdeduì 'able to say correctly'

The following sentences illustrate the last two forms given above:

Tā-hěn-bèn, yídìng-shuōbuduì. 'He's very stupid. He certainly can't say it right.'

Tā-hěn-cōngmíng. Yídìng-shuōdeduì. 'He's very bright. He can certainly say it right.'

Note the difference (in the written form only) between shuōdeduì 'able to say correctly' and shuōde-duì 'says correctly.' The former is a resultative verb, the latter a construction involving an adverb of manner (see Lesson 10, Note 2). A similar overlapping occurs when hǎo 'good' is used as a postverb:

shuōhǎo 'agree on (something)'

shuōbuhǎo 'unable to agree'

shuōdehǎo 'able to agree'



(Do not confuse shuōdehǎo with shuōde-hǎo 'speak well'; cf. Lesson 19, Note 10.)

5. Háishi . . . hǎo (see Dialogue, p. 338, lines 74–75) is the second part of the construction shì-A-hǎo háishi-B-hǎo? 'is A or B better?' (Lesson 7, Note 12); but the A is implied rather than expressed. Another example: if a friend who likes walking suggests going on foot to a movie some distance away, one might say—

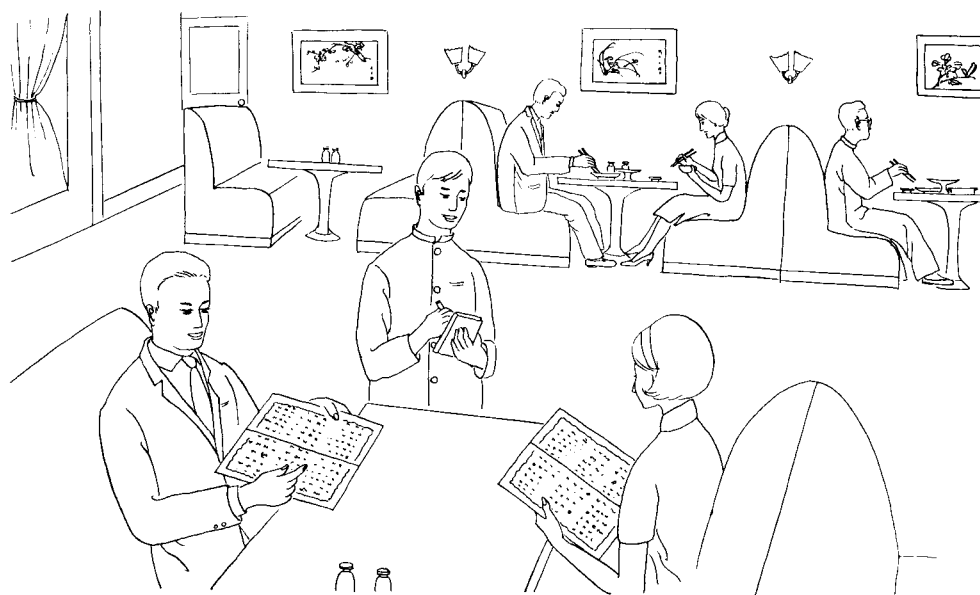
Háishi-zuò-chē-hǎo. 'It's better (to go) by car.'

6. Guówén 'national literature' means 'Chinese' [as an academic subject]. (See also Supplementary Lesson 20, Note 1)
7. The stative verb zāogāo 'confused, messed up' is also used as a mild exclamation comparable to English 'Darn!'
8. The sentence particle me has about the force of 'You see?' or 'Don't you see?':

Tā-'zěnmó-néng-mǎi nènmo-dàde-fángzi? 'How come he can buy such a large house?'

Tā-yǒu-qián-me! 'He has money, don't you see?'

## Lesson 21 EATING IN A RESTAURANT



“Qíng-ni-bāngzhu-wǒmen xiāng-liǎngge-cài.”

Dialogue: Mr. White takes Miss Gao out to dinner.

Huǒji: Xiānsheng, Xiáojie, liǎng-wèi-zuò-nǎr?

Sir, Miss, where would you like to sit?

Bái : Wǒmen jiù-zài-'zhèr-zuò-ba. Géi-wǒmen xiān-lái-yìhú-chá.

We'll sit right here. First bring us a pot of tea.

5

Huǒji: Shì, xiānsheng.

Yes, sir.

Bái : Qíng-bǎ-cài-'dār-nálai.

Please bring the menu.

Gāo : Wǒmen-jiǎndān-yìdiǎr-chī. Yàoburán diànyǐngr-gāi-wǎn-le.

Let's have a simple meal. Otherwise we're bound to be late for the movie.

10

Huǒji: Gěi-nín-cài-dār.

Here's the menu.

Bái : Qíng-ni-bāngzhu-wǒmen xiāng-liǎngge-cài.

Please help us order a couple of dishes.

Huǒji: Hǎo. Wǒ-jièshào-nín-jǐ-yàng wǒmen-zhèr-'zuì-hǎode-cài. Wǒmen-zhèr-hóng-shāo-yú, chǎo-xiārér, kǎo-yāzi, dǒu-hǎo. Yóuqíshi-nèige-kǎo-yāzi

Fine. I'll introduce you to a few of our best dishes. Our red-cooked fish, fried shrimp, and roast duck are all fine. The roast duck, in particular, we can say is the best in the whole

15

- dàgài-wǒmen-kéyi-shuō 20 country.  
shì-quán-guó-dì-yī-le.
- Bái : Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén yào-  
liǎngge-cài-yíge-tāng-chī-  
fàn. Nǐ-kàn 'gòu-chī-ba?  
Huǒji: Chàbuduō. Wǒmen-zhèrde-  
jiǎozi, chǎo-miàn yě-bú-  
cuò. Hái-yóu-chǎo-dòufu. 25  
Just about. Our dumplings and  
fried noodles are also not bad.  
We also have fried bean curd.
- Bái : Hǎo. Měiyīng, nǐ-yào-  
shénmo?  
Gāo : Wǒ-suíbiàn. 30  
Anything.
- Huǒji: Xiǎojie, wǒmen-zhèr-chǎo-  
xiārér hǎode-hěn. Nín-  
yào-ge-chǎo-xiārér-ba.  
Gāo : Kéyi. Wǒ-yào-chǎo-xiārér.  
Wénshān, 'nǐ-yào-shénmo? 35  
O.K. I'll order fried shrimp.  
Vincent, what would you like?
- Bái : Wǒ-yào hóng-shāo-yú.  
Huǒji: Liǎngwèi-lái-ge-shénmo-  
tāng-ne?  
Bái : Měiyīng, 'nǐ-shuō yào-  
shénmo-tāng-hǎo-ne? 40  
Meiying, what do you say to  
soup?
- Gāo : Niú-ròu-báicài-tāng 'hǎo-  
bu-hǎo?  
Bái : Hǎojíle. Géi-wǒmen-lái  
niú-ròu-báicài-tāng. Měi-  
yīng, wǒmen-zài-yào-diar-  
jiǎozi, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 45  
Excellent. Bring us some beef  
and cabbage soup. Meiying, how  
about our also ordering a few  
dumplings?
- Gāo : Wó-xiǎng-gòu-le. Yào-duō-  
le wǒmen-chībuliǎo.  
Bái : Huǒji, 'jiǎozi-zěnmō-yào?  
Mài-duōshao-qián? 50  
Waiter, how does one order  
dumplings? How much do they  
sell for?
- Huǒji: Jiǎozi nín-chī-duōshao  
jiù-yào-duōshao. Yíkuài-  
liǎngmáo-qián-shíge.  
Bái : Hǎo, wǒmen-bú-gòu-zài-  
shuō-ba. 55  
Dumplings you order by the  
number you eat. They're \$1.20  
for ten.
- Gāo : Chīwán-le wǒmen-yào-ge-  
'tián-diǎnxīn.  
Bái : 'Shénmo-tián-diǎnxīn?  
Gāo : Xìngrér-dòufu.  
Bái : Huǒji, xìngrér-dòufu-yǒu-  
ma? 60  
After we've finished we'd like a  
[sweet] dessert.  
What [sweet] dessert?  
Almond bean curd.  
Waiter, do you have almond bean  
curd?

- Huǒji: Duìbuqǐ, 'gāng-màiwán.  
Nín-yào-diar-biède-ba?  
I'm sorry, we're just sold out.  
Would you like something else?
- Gāo: Yǒu-xìngrér-chá-ma?  
Do you have almond tea?
- Huǒji: Yǒu. 65 Yes.
- Bái: Qǐng-lái-liángwǎn. . . .  
(Cài-lái-le.)  
Please bring two bowls. . . .  
(The food arrives.)
- Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ-kàn, cài-  
zuòde-bú-cuò.  
Meiying, look, the food's very  
nice.
- Gāo: Nǐ-kàn, zhèige-chǎo-  
xiārér duó-piàoliang. 70 See how attractive this fried  
shrimp is.
- Bái: Zhèige-hóng-shāo-yú yě-  
bú-cuò, kěshi-wǒ-chī-  
fànguārde-cài dōu-méi-  
you-fǔshangde-cài-hǎo-  
chī. 75 This red-cooked fish isn't bad  
either, but none of the food I've  
had in restaurants is as deli-  
cious as what I've had in your  
home.
- Gāo: Yīnwei-wǒ-fùqin-xǐhuan-  
chī, wó-mǔqin-yě-méi-  
shì-zuò, tā-měitiān jiù-  
yánjiu zěnmō-zuò-fàn. 80 Since my father likes to eat and  
my mother doesn't have a job,  
every day she experiments with  
(new ways of) cooking. She also  
says that [in the future] she's  
going to write a book about her  
experiences in cooking. There  
are no scientific procedures in  
cooking Chinese food, it's just a  
matter of experience.
- Tā-hái-shuō jiānglái tā-  
bǎ-zuò-fàn-de-jīngyan  
yào-xiě-yìběn-shū-ne. 85  
Zuò-'Zhōngguo-fàn méi-  
yǒu-kēxuéde-fāngfǎ, jiù-  
shì-yì zhǒng-jīngyan.
- Bái: "Hóng-shāo-yú" zhèige-  
míngzi wèi-shénmo-jiào-  
hóng-shāo-yú?  
Why is "red-cooked fish" called  
that?
- Gāo: Hóng-shāode jiù-shì-duō-  
fàng-jiàngyóu, shāo-de-  
'shíhou-cháng-yìdiǎr. 90 Red-cooking is just putting in a  
lot of soy sauce and cooking for  
a long time. [Because] red-  
cooked dishes are the color of  
soy sauce, so they're called red-  
cooked.
- Yīnwei-hóng-shāo-de-cài  
shì-jiàngyóu-yánse, suóyì-  
jiào-hóng-shāo-de. 95
- Bái: Zài-Měiguó-de-'Zhōngguó-  
fànguār chàbuduō-'dōu-shì-  
Guǎngdong-fànguār.  
Almost all the Chinese restau-  
rants in America are Cantonese  
restaurants.
- Gāo: Nǐ-xǐhuan-chī-Guǎngdong-  
cài-ma? 100 Do you like [to eat] Cantonese  
food?
- Bái: Wó-yé-xǐhuan, kěshi-wǒ-  
juéde háishi-běifāng-fàn  
bǐjiào-hǎo-'chī-yìdiǎr. 105 I [also] like it, but I think that  
Northern cooking is a little bet-  
ter. What kind of food do you  
like?
- 'Nǐ-dōu-xǐhuan-nǎrde-  
cài-ne?
- Gāo: Dāngrán-'wó-yé-xǐhuan  
chī-běifāng-cài-le. Wǒ-  
Naturally I also like Northern  
cooking. I don't much care for

- duì-ròu bú-dà-xǐhuan.  
Wǒ-tèbié-xǐhuan chī-yú,  
xiā, jī. 110  
meat. I especially like fish,  
shrimp, and chicken.
- Bái : 'Zhōngguo-fàn zhēn-hǎo-  
chī. Jiù-shì-zuòqilai-má-  
fan. Chinese food is really delicious.  
The only thing is that it's a both-  
er to cook it.
- Gāo : Yě-'bù-zěnmó-máfan. . . .  
Jīntian-cài hái-bú-cuò. 115  
It's not such a bother. . . . This  
food [lit. the food today] is not  
bad.
- Bái : Měiyīng, nǐ-chībǎo-le-  
ma? Zài-yào-diar-shén-  
mo? Meiying, have you had enough [to  
eat]? What else should we have?
- Gāo : Wǒ-chībǎo-le. 'Shénmó-  
yě-bú-yào-le. 120  
I'm stuffed. I don't want any-  
thing more.
- Bái : Zài-lái-diar-jiǎozi 'hǎo-  
bu-hǎo? How about ordering a few dump-  
lings?
- Gāo : Wǒ-chīde-'tài-bǎo-le. Jiù-  
shì-nǐ-yào wó-yě-bù-chī-  
le. 125  
I've eaten too much. Even if you  
order them I can't eat any more.
- Bái : Nènmó wǒmen-zài-hē-  
diar-chá. Huǒji, zài-lái-  
diar-chá. Then let's have a little more tea.  
Waiter, some more tea.
- Huǒji: Lái-le. Coming.
- Gāo : Bādiǎn-bàn-le. Wǒmen-  
gāi-zǒu-le. 130  
It's eight-thirty. We should be  
leaving.
- Bái : Huǒji, suàn-zhàng. Waiter, the bill.
- Huǒji: Shì. Yígòng-sìkuài-sān-  
máo-liù. Yes. Altogether, four thirty-  
six.
- Bái : Zhè-shì-wǔkuài. Bú-bì-  
zhǎo-le. Shèngxia-de géi-  
xiǎofèi-le. 135  
Here's five dollars. You don't  
need to make change. The rest  
is your tip.
- Huǒji: Xièxie-nín. Liǎngwèi-  
màn-zǒu. Zàijiàn. Thank you. Don't be in a hurry  
to leave. Good-bye.

## VOCABULARY

bāngzhu	help (TV) [lit. help assist]
bǐjiǎo, bǐjiào	relatively (AD) [lit, compare compare]
cháng	long (SV)
dān, dār	list, bill (N)
dǎsuan	plan to (V)

diǎnxin	dessert, pastry, cakes, etc. (N) [lit. bit heart]
duìbuqǐ	sorry, excuse me [lit. face not begin]
fàng	put (TV)
gāng(cái)	just (now), just a moment ago (AD)
hú	pot (N, M)
huǒji	waiter, clerk (N) [lit. partner plan] (See Supplementary Lesson 21, Note 1)
jiàngyóu	soy sauce (N) [lit. soy-sauce oil]
jiǎozi	dumplings (N)
jīngyan	experience (N, V) [lit. pass verify]
jiùshi	even (if) (MA) [lit. exactly is]
juéde	have the feeling that (TV)
kǎo	roast, cook by roasting (TV)
miàn	noodles (N)
quán	the whole
shèng(xia)	have left over, be left over (V)
suàn	reckon (as), calculate (TV)
wǎn	bowl, cup (N, M)
xiā	shrimp (N)
xiārér	shelled shrimp (N) [lit. shrimp kernel]
xiǎofèi	tip (N) [lit. small spend] (See Supplementary Lesson 21, Note 2)
xìngrér	almond (N)
yā(zi)	duck (N)
(yào)bùrán	otherwise (MA) (bùrán is more common)
yóuqí(shi)	especially, above all (MA)
zhàng	bill (N)
zhǒng	kind of, sort of, variety of (M)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| jiàngyóu                          | soy sauce                                |
| 1. Zhè mǎibuzháo-jiàngyóu.        | Soy sauce can't be bought here.          |
| fàng                              | put                                      |
| néng-fàng-ròu                     | can put in meat                          |
| 2. Zhèige-càilì néng-fàng-ròu-ma? | Is it possible to put meat in this dish? |
| fàng                              | put                                      |

fàngzài  
3. Bǎ-shū fàngzài-zhèr.

put (at)  
Put the books here.

fàng  
fàngxia  
4. Bǎ-dōngxi-fàngxia.

put  
put down  
Put the things down.

nǐ-yào-chī-shénmo?  
fàng-shénmo?  
5. Nǐ-yào-chī-shénmo jiù-fàng-shénmo.

what do you want to eat?  
put in what?  
Put in whatever you want to eat.

shéi-yào-yòng-máobǐ?  
shéi-jiù-mǎi-máobǐ?  
6. Shéi-yào-yòng-máobǐ shéi-jiù-mǎi-máobǐ.

who wants to use a brush?  
who then buys a brush?  
Whoever wants to use a brush (should) buy one.

xìngrér  
xìngrér-chá  
7. Wǒ-méi-hēguo-xìngrér-chá.

almond  
almond tea  
I've never had almond tea.

diǎnxin  
8. Nǐ-bù-chī-diǎnxin-ma?

dessert  
Aren't you eating any dessert?

xiǎofèi  
9. Xiǎofèi-suíbiàn-gěi.

tip  
Give whatever tip you want.

jiùshi  
jiùshi-tā-géi-wo  
wó-yě-bú-yào  
10. Jiùshi-tā-géi-wo wó-yě-bú-yào.

even, even if  
even if he gives it to me  
I still don't want it  
Even if he gives it to me I don't want it.

jiùshi  
jiùshi-lián  
11. Jiùshi-lián-tā-géi-wo wó-yě-bú-yào.

even, even if  
even, even if  
Even if he gives it to me I don't want it.

jiùshi-tā  
bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì  
12. Jiùshi-tā yě-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.

even he  
does not recognize this character  
Even he does not recognize this character.

xiā  
13. Nǐ-xǐhuan-chī-xiā-ma?

shrimp  
Do you like (to eat) shrimp?

xiārér  
14. Chǎo-xiārér hén-hǎo-chī.

shelled shrimp  
The fried shrimp is delicious.

hú  
sānhú-chá  
15. Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén hēle-sānhú-chá.

pot  
three pots of tea  
The two of us drank three pots of tea.

- hú  
 chá-hú  
 16. Zhèige-chá-hú shi-Rìběn-zuò-de.  
 pot  
 teapot  
 This teapot was made in Japan.
- zhàng  
 17. Zhèige-zhàng-cuò-le.  
 bill  
 This bill is in error.
- suàn  
 suàn-zhàng  
 18. Shūdiàn hái-méi-suàn-zhàng-ne.  
 reckon, figure  
 figure out a bill  
 The bookstore hasn't yet figured out the bill.
- suàn  
 suàn-hǎo  
 19. Tāde-'Zhōngwén bú-suàn-hǎo.  
 be reckoned as  
 be considered good  
 His Chinese can't be considered good.
- suàn  
 suàn-shi  
 20. Shīzi-tóu suàn-shi-běifāng-cài-ma?  
 reckoned as  
 reckoned to be  
 Is lion's head considered a Northern dish?
- suàn  
 dǎsuan  
 21. Wó-dǎsuan míngtiān-qu-kàn-ta.  
 reckon, plan to  
 plan to  
 I plan to go see him tomorrow.
- bǐjiǎo  
 22. Yīngwén bǐjiǎo-róngyi.  
 relatively  
 English is relatively easy.
- wǎn  
 liángwǎn-fàn  
 23. Wǒ-yíge-rén kéyi-chī-liáng-wǎn-fàn.  
 bowl  
 two bowls of rice  
 I can eat two bowls of rice by myself.
- wǎn  
 zhèige-wǎn  
 24. Zhèige-wǎn shi-'nár-mǎi-de?  
 bowl  
 this bowl  
 Where was this bowl bought?
- cháng  
 yìtiáo-bǐjiǎo-chángde-lù  
 25. Zhōngshān-Lù shi-yìtiáo-bǐjiǎo-chángde-lù.  
 long  
 a relatively long road  
 Sun Yatsen Avenue is a relatively long road.
- dān  
 kāi-yìzhāng-dān  
 26. Ní-bá-nǐ-yào-mǎi-de-dōngxi kāi-yìzhāng-dān.  
 list  
 make a list  
 Make a list of the things you want to buy.
- dān  
 cài-dān  
 27. Nǐ-néng-kàn 'Zhōngguo-cài-dān-ma?  
 list  
 menu  
 Can you read a Chinese menu?



- bāngzhu  
 bāngzhu-wo  
 28. Qíng-ni bāngzhu-wo-zhǎo-shū.  
 help  
 help me  
 Please help me find the book.
- yǒu-bāngzhu  
 duì-xué-yǔyán hén-yǒu-bāngzhu  
 29. Tīng-lùyīn duì-xué-yǔyán hén-yǒu-bāngzhu.  
 be helpful  
 be very helpful in studying languages  
 Listening to recordings is very helpful in studying languages.
- gāng  
 gāng-zǒu-le  
 30. 'Bái-Xiānsheng gāng-zǒu-le.  
 just (now)  
 has just left  
 Mr. White has just left.
- gāng  
 gāngcái  
 31. Wǒ-gāngcái-chīwán-le-fàn.  
 just (now)  
 just (now)  
 I've just finished eating.
- duìbuqǐ  
 32. Duìbuqǐ, wó-zhǎobuzháo-dǎr-le.  
 sorry, excuse me  
 I'm sorry, I can't find the list.
- dà  
 bú-dà-xǐhuan  
 33. Wǒ-bú-dà-xǐhuan-chī-xiā.  
 big  
 not much like  
 I don't much like [to eat] shrimp.
- lǎo  
 lǎo-kèqi  
 34. Ní-lǎo-zènmo-kèqi.  
 old; always  
 always polite  
 You are always so polite.
- bái  
 bái-lái-le  
 35. Tā-zuótian-bái-lái-le. Wǒ-méi-zài-jīā.  
 white; uselessly  
 come uselessly  
 He came in vain yesterday. I wasn't at home.
- yā  
 36. Yā-bǐ-jī-dà.  
 duck  
 Ducks are bigger than chickens.
- yāzi  
 37. Yāzi-méi-you-jī-hǎo-chī.  
 duck  
 Duck isn't as tasty as chicken.
- kǎo  
 kǎo-yāzi  
 38. Běifāngde-kǎo-yāzi 'tèbié-hǎo.  
 roast  
 roast duck  
 Northern roast duck is especially good.
- huǒji  
 39. Zhèxiē-huǒji jiù-huì-shuō-Guǎngdong-huà.  
 waiter  
 These waiters can speak only Cantonese.
- miàn  
 fàn  
 40. Nǐ-chī-fàn-chī-miàn?  
 noodles  
 rice  
 Are you having rice or noodles?

juéde  
41. Wǒ-juéde zhèige-cài-tài-suān.

feel (that), think (that)  
I think this dish is too vinegary.

jīngyan  
42. Wǒ-juéde tāde-jīngyan-bú-gòu.

experience  
I think he doesn't have enough experience.

quán  
quán-xuéxiào  
43. Wǒmen-quán-xuéxiào dōu-kǎo-shì.

the whole  
the whole school  
Our whole school is having exams.

zhǒng  
zhèizhǒng-cài  
44. Wǒ-juéde-'zhèizhǒng-cài bù-hǎo-chī.

kind of  
this kind of food  
I think this kind of food is unappetizing.

yóuqí  
yóuqíshi  
45. Wǒmen-dōu-chīde-hěn-duō,  
yóuqíshi-wǒ.

especially  
especially  
We all ate a lot, especially I.

yóuqíshi-děi  
46. Nǐmen-yóuqíshi-děi duō-tīng-lùyīn.

especially have to  
You especially have to listen to recordings more.

shèng  
shèngle-hěn-duō-cài  
47. Zuótiān shèngle-hěn-duō-cài.

be left over  
a lot of food was left over  
Yesterday a lot of food was left over.

shèng  
shèng-wǔmáo-qián  
48. Wǒ-jiù-shèng wǔmáo-qián.

have left over  
have fifty cents left  
I have only fifty cents left.

shèngxia  
shèngxia-hěn-duō-cài  
49. Jīntiān méi-shèngxia-hěn-duō-cài.

be left over  
a lot of food is left over  
There isn't much food left over today.

mài  
mài-'duōshao-qián?  
50. Zhèige-chá-hú mài-'duōshao-qián?

sell or sell for  
sell for how much?  
How much does this teapot sell for?

(yào)bùrán  
51. Kuài-zǒu-ba. (Yào)bùrán-wǎn-le.

otherwise  
Let's hurry. Otherwise we'll be late.

## PATTERN DRILLS

## Pattern 21.1. Repetition of Question Words (Note 1 below)

## Pattern 21.1 a.

V <sub>1</sub>	QW	<u>jiu</u>	V <sub>2</sub>	QW
Verb <sub>1</sub>	Question Word	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>	Question Word
Yào	shénmo	jiu	mǎi	shénmo.
'Buy whatever you want.'				

## Pattern 21.1 b.

QW	V <sub>1</sub>	(QW)	<u>jiu</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
Question Word	Verb <sub>1</sub>	(Question Word)	'then'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Shéi	yào-chī-fàn	shéi	jiu	chī-fàn.
'Whoever wants to eat, eat.'				

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Ní-xiǎng wǒ-chī-'shénmo-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-chī-shénmo jiu-'chī-shénmo.</p> <p>2. Zuótiān-wǒ-fùqīn-shuō wǒ-bìyè-yǐhòu 'xiǎng-dào-nǎr-niàn-shū jiu-dào-nǎr-niàn-shū.</p> <p>3. Wǒ-míngtiān-fàngjià-le. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-dào-'nǎr-qu-lǚxíng-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-dào-nǎr-qu jiu-dào-nǎr-qu.</p> <p>4. Wǒ-jīntiān shuō-huà-de-tímu bù-yídìng. Wǒ-'yào-shuō-shénmo jiu-shuō-shénmo.</p> <p>5. Wǒ-xiǎng-chī-jiǎozi. Nǐ-ne? . . . Nǐ-'chī-shénmo 'wǒ-jiu-chī-shénmo.</p> <p>6. Wǒ-fùqīn zuì-xǎohuān-wǒ-dìdile. Wǒ-dìdì-'yào-mǎi-shénmo tā-jiu-mǎi-shénmo.</p> <p>7. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-yào-'duōshao-jiǎozi-ne? . . . Nǐ-'chī-duōshao jiu-'yào-duōshao.</p> <p>8. Wǒ-yīnggāi gěi-duōshao-xiǎofèi-ne? . . . Zhè-bù-yídìng.</p> | <p>What do you think (it) would be best for me to eat? . . . Eat whatever you want.</p> <p>Yesterday my father said that after I graduate I'm to go anywhere I like, to study.</p> <p>I'm going on vacation tomorrow. Tell me where I should go on a trip. . . . Go anywhere you want.</p> <p>I have no definite topic to talk about today. I'll speak of whatever I want.</p> <p>I'd like to eat dumplings. What about you? . . . I'll eat whatever you eat.</p> <p>My father likes my younger brother best. Whatever my younger brother wants to buy he buys.</p> <p>Tell me how many dumplings I should order. . . . Order as many as you're going to eat.</p> <p>How much of a tip should I give? . . . There's no fixed amount.</p> |
|---|--|

- 'Yào-gěi-duōshao jiu-'gěi-duōshao.  
Give as much as you want to.
9. Zhèige-cài yào-fàng-'duōshao-jiàngyóu-ne? . . . Bù-yídìng. 'Yào-fàng-duōshao jiu-'fàng-duōshao.  
How much soy sauce should I put into this dish? . . . No fixed amount. Put in as much as you want.
10. Zhèige-tián-diǎnxīn hén-hǎochī. Wǒ-duō-chī-'yìdiǎr kényi-ma? . . . Kéyi. Nǐ-'yào-chī-duōshao jiu-'chī-duōshao.  
This sweet dessert is delicious. May I have a little more? . . . Yes. You may have as much as you want.
11. Zhèijiàn-shìqing nǐ-shuō-zěnmō-zuò-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-zěnmō-zuò jiù-zěnmō-zuò.  
What do you think would be the best way to do this? . . . Do it whatever way you want.
12. Zhèi-jíběn-shū nǐ-shuō wǒ-jiè-néiběn-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-jiè-néiběn jiu-'jiè-néiběn.  
Which of these books do you think it would be best for me to check out? . . . Take out whichever one you want.
13. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-kàn-něige-diànyíng-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-kàn-něige jiu-'kàn-něige.  
What movie would it be best for me to see? . . . See whichever one you want.
14. Nǐ-shuō wǒ-xué-Zhōngwén-hǎo-ne háishi-xué-lìshǐ-hǎo-ne? . . . Nǐ-'yào-xué-shénmō jiu-'xué-shénmō.  
Do you think it would be better for me to study Chinese or history? . . . Study whatever you want.
15. 'Shéi-huì-zuò-jiǎozi 'shéi-jiu-zuò-jiǎozi.  
Whoever knows how to make dumplings, do so.
16. 'Něige-hǎo jiu-'gěi-wo-něige.  
Give me whichever one is better.
17. Nǐmen-shéi-huì-shuō-'Zhōngwén jiu-shuō-'Zhōngwén. Rúguǒ-bú-huì-shuō-'Zhōngwén jiu-shuō-'Yīngwén.  
Those of you who can speak Chinese, do so. If you are not able to speak Chinese, then speak English.
18. Nǐ-yǒu-duōshao jiu-'gěi-wo-duōshao.  
Give me as much as you have.
19. Něiwèi-xuéde-zuì-hǎo jiu-bù-bì-kǎoshì.  
Whoever studies best doesn't need to take the exam.
20. Něige-xiānsheng-jiāode-hǎo wǒ-jiu-gēn-tā-xué.  
I'll study with whichever teacher is best.

Pattern 21.2. Sentences with jiùshi 'even (if)' (Note 2 below)

## Pattern 21.2a. (Sentences 1-10)

<u>jiùshi</u>	S <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	S <sub>2</sub>	<u>dōu/yě</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
<u>jiùshi</u>	Subject <sub>1</sub>	Verb <sub>1</sub>	Subject <sub>2</sub>	<u>dōu/yě</u>	Verb <sub>2</sub>
Jiùshi	nǐ	qù	wó	yě	bú qù.

'Even if you go, I'm not going.'

## Pattern 21.2b. (Sentences 11-15)

<u>jiùshi</u>	S	<u>dōu/yě</u>	V
<u>jiùshi</u>	Subject	<u>dōu/yě</u>	Verb
Jiùshi	tā	yě	qù.

'Even he is going.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nèiběn-shū wǒ-bù-xǐhuan.<br>Jiùshi-'ní-mǎi wó-yě-bù-mǎi.                        | I don't like that book. Even if you buy it, I'm not going to (buy it).                       |
| 2. 'Wǒ-'zui-bù-xǐhuan chī-xīngrér-dòufu. Jiùshi-nǐ-yào-le wó-yě-bù-chī.            | I very much dislike [eating] almond bean curd. Even if you ordered it I wouldn't eat it.     |
| 3. Nèijiàn-shìqing wǒ-shi-'bú-huì gàosu-bié-rén-de. Jiùshi-nǐ-shuō wǒ-dōu-bù-shuō. | I can't tell anyone about that matter. Even if you speak of it, I won't.                     |
| 4. Wǒ-jīntian-hěn-máng. Jiùshi-wǒ-'fùqin-lái wó-yě-bù-néng-qu-jīē.                 | I'm very busy today. Even if my father comes I won't be able to go and meet (him).           |
| 5. Nèige-xiǎo-chá-hú 'tài-xiǎo-le. Jiùshi-'ní-mǎi wó-yě-bù-mǎi.                    | That little teapot is too small. Even if you buy one, I'm not going to.                      |
| 6. Zhèijiàn-shìqing 'tā-yě-bù-zhīdào. Jiùshi-tā-zhīdao tā-yě-bú-huì-shuō.          | Even he doesn't know about this matter. Even if he knew, he wouldn't be able to speak of it. |
| 7. Wǒ-zuì-xǐhuan chī-chǎo-xiārér. Jiùshi-nǐ-bù-chī wó-yě-yào.                      | I like fried shrimp best. Even if you don't eat it I'm going to order some.                  |
| 8. Tā-shuō nèige-biáo-hén-hǎo. Jiùshi-nǐ-bù-jiào-wó-mǎi wó-yě-yào-mǎi.             | He said that watch is very good. Even if you tell me not to buy it I'm going to (buy it).    |
| 9. Zhèi-jǐtiān bù-xiǎng-kàn-shū. Jiùshi-'ní-kàn wǒ-dōu-bù-kàn.                     | For a few days now I don't plan to read. Even if you read I'm not going to.                  |
| 10. Tāde-nèige-chá-hú 'tài-  | That teapot of hers is awfully   |

- piàoliang-le. Jiùshi-nǐ-yào tā-yě-bù-géi-ni.
11. Zhèige-xuéxiào zhēn-nán-kǎo. Jiùshi-'dàxué-bìyè-de-xué-sheng yé-kǎobushàng.
12. Zhèiběn-shū hěn-nán-niàn. Jiùshi-wǒ-'fùqin yě-bù-dōu-dǒng.
13. Chǎo-xiārér hén-hǎo-chī. Jiùshi-'bù-xǐhuan-chī-yú-de-rén dōu-xǐhuan-chī.
14. Zhèige-xuéxiào jiāo-Zhōngwén jiāode-hén-hǎo. Jiùshi-lián-yìniánjíde-xuésheng dōu-néng-shuō hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà.
15. Wǒ-dìdi zì-xiěde-zhēn-hǎo. Jiùshi-'dà-xuéde-xuésheng yě-méi-yǒu-tā-xiěde-hǎo.
- pretty. Even if you asked for it she wouldn't give it to you.
- This school gives very tough exams. Even students who have graduated from college can't pass the entrance exams.
- This book is very hard to read. Even my father doesn't understand it all.
- Fried shrimp are delicious. Even people who don't like fish like [to eat] them.
- This school teaches Chinese very well. Even first-year students can speak very good Chinese.
- My younger brother writes characters very well. Even college students don't write as well as he does.

Pattern 21.3. Transformation of V-O to O-V (Note 3 below)

V	O	>	O	V
Verb	Object	>	Object	Verb
chī	fàn	>	fàn	chī
'eat food'		>	'food to eat'	

1. Nǐ-yìhuěr qǐng-wǒ-hē-chá, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? . . . Bié-tí-hē-chá-le. Yīnwei-méi-you-shuǐ, wǒmen-jīntian-'dōu-méi-chá-hē.
2. Wǒmen-méi-yǒu-jiàngyóu fàngzài-chǎo-cài-lǐtou.
3. Wó-yǐjīng-gēn-ta shuōle-hěn-duō-huà. Xiànzài méi-yǒu-huà-shuō-le.
4. Xiànzài xuéxiào-fàngjià-le. Dǎsuan-kàn-diar-shū. Kěshi-túshūguǎn shū-tài-shǎo, méi-shū-jiè.
5. Nèige-háizi shíwūsui-lé hái-
- How about inviting me to have some tea in a little while? . . . Don't mention drinking tea. Since we haven't any water, none of us has any tea to drink today.
- We don't have any soy sauce to put into the fried dishes.
- I've already talked a lot with him. Now I don't have anything more to say.
- School's gone on vacation now. I had planned to read some books. But there are too few books in the library, and there are no books to take out.
- That child is fifteen and has not

- méi-niàn-shū. Yīnwei-jiāli  
méi-yǒu-qián, suǒyì-méi-yǒu-  
shū-niàn.
6. Xiànzài fángzi-'tài-shǎo. Mǎi-  
buzháo-hǎo-fángzi-zhù.
7. 'Qián-Xiānsheng yǒu-chē-zuò.  
Bú-bì-zǒu-lù.
8. Qíng-ní-gěi-ta-wǔkuài-qián.  
. . . Wó-méi-qián-gěi-ta.
9. Wó-xiáng-mǎi-lùyīnjī. Yǒu-  
lùyīnjī-mài-ma?
10. Xiànzài rén-'tài-duō, shì-'tài-  
shǎo. Wó-zhǎobuzháo-shì-  
zuò.
- yet read any books. Since his  
family doesn't have any money,  
he has no books to read.
- Houses are in short supply now.  
One can't buy a good house to  
live in.
- Mr. Qian has a car [to travel by].  
He doesn't have to walk.
- Please give him five dollars. . . .  
I don't have any money to give  
him.
- I'm thinking of buying a record-  
er. Do you have any recorders  
to sell?
- Nowadays there are too many  
people, too few jobs. I can't find  
any work to do.

## Pattern 21.4 Stative Verbs as Adverbs

SV	V
Stative Verb	Verb
lǎo	chī
'always eat'	

1. Diànyǐngyuàn lí-zhèr-hěn-  
jìn. Wǒmen-zài-hē-yìdiǎr-  
chá-ba. Wǒmen-kéyì-màn-  
zǒu.
2. Wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-nèige-rén. Měi-  
tiān-'lǎo-shuō-huà.
3. Zhèitiáo-lù chē-bù-róngyì-zǒu.  
Qíng-nǐ-màn-kāi.
4. Nǐ-shuōde-huà wǒ-bù-dà-míng-  
bai.
5. Wǒmen-zhèr lí-chéng-'tài-  
yuǎn. 'Sháo-yǒu-rén-lái.
6. Zhèiběn-shū wǒ-bái-xué-le.  
Xiānsheng-méi-kǎo.
7. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng xǐhuan-chī-  
yāzi. Tā-'lǎo-chī-kǎo-yāzi.
- The movie theater is quite near  
here. Let's drink some more  
tea. We can take our time about  
leaving.
- I don't like that man. He jabs  
constantly [every day].
- Cars can't get over this road  
easily. Please drive slowly.
- I don't fully understand what  
you're saying.
- We're too far from the city here.  
People rarely come (here).
- I studied this book for nothing.  
The teacher didn't test (us on it).
- Mr. Zhang likes (to eat) duck.  
He's always eating roast duck.

8. Tā-yí-dào-fànguǎr jiu-dà-chī. Bú-shì-hóng-shāo-ròu jiù-shì-shīzi-tóu. Whenever he goes to the restaurant, he eats enormously. If it isn't red-cooked meat then it's lion's head.
9. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ-yào-kǎoshì-le. Wó-déi-'wǎn-huíqu. Sorry, I'm going to have an exam. I'll have to go back (home) late.
10. Wǒ-bú-dà-xǐhuan kàn-diàn-yǐngr. I don't much like to see movies.

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 36 sentences (Note 1)

(Identical items in the 'A' columns are to be used together; similarly for the 'B' columns.)

		A	B		A	B
wǒ	xiǎng	chī	duōshao	jiu	chī	duōshao
nǐ	yào	mǎi	shénmo		mǎi	shénmo
tā		gěi			gěi	

II: 48 sentences (Note 2)

(Only identical items in the asterisked columns may be used together.)

			*				*
jiùshi	nǐ	—	qù	wǒ	yě	—	qù
	tā	bù	lái		dōu	bù	lái
			gěi				gěi



## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (III)

(Asterisks indicate changes of third tone to second tone.)

	0 0 2	1 0 2	2 0 2
1	xiānshengde-qíán	tā-chīdewán	hē-chá-de-rén
2	lái-le-de-rén	nín-hē-de-chá	cóng-chéngli-lái
3	wǒmende-chá	děng-tāmen-lái	yě-róngyi-xué
4	zuòle-de-chuán	jiào-sānge-rén	tèbiéde-rén
		3 0 2	4 0 2
		1 dōu-xǐhuan-xué	tā-zuòdewán
		2 nín-xiědewán	Máo-Tàitai-lái
		3 wó-zhǎobuzháo *	nǐ-mài-de-chá
		4 tài-xiǎode-hú	jiào-tàitai-lái
	0 1 2	1 1 2	2 1 2
1	tāmen-chī-yú	xīngqī sǎn-lái	chī-tián-suān-yú
2	shíge-zhōngtóu	nín-yīnggāi-xué	shéi-xué-Yīngwén
3	wǒmen-dōu-lái	yǒu-sānbēi-chá	zhǎo-shéi-kāi-mén
4	dàde-gōngyuán	xià-xīngqī-lái	zuò-hóng-shāo-yú
		3 1 2	4 1 2
		1 tā-yǒu-sānmáo	dōu-niàn-Zhōngwén
		2 nín-xiě-Zhōngwén	yíngòng-sānmáo
		3 qíng-Měiyīng-lái *	yě-niàn-Yīngwén
		4 jiù-yǒu-sānshí	dàgài-tā-néng

0 2 2	1 2 2	2 2 2
1 tāmen-lái-wár	fēijī-méi-lái	shuō-nín-méi-lái
2 biéde-méi-ná	shéi-shuō-bié-ná	cóngqián-méi-xué
3 zěnmò-méi-lái	yǒu-sānmáo-qián	yě-xué-wénxué
4 wàngle-ná-qián	niàn-sānniánjí	kàn-shéi-néng-lái

3 2 2	4 2 2
1 tā-yě-néng-lái	tā-niàn-wénxué
2 nín-jǐniánjí	shéi-niàn-guówén
3 yóu-wǔmáo-qián *	kǒngpà-méi-lái
4 niàn-yǔyánxué	màipiàoyuán-néng

0 3 2	1 3 2	2 3 2
1 xiānsheng-yě-lái	tā-shuō-yǐqián	tā-xué-yǎnyuán
2 tímu-hěn-nán	rén-dōu-hěn-máng	bái-táng-hěn-tián
3 xǐhuan-lǚxíng	měitiān-mǎi-táng	yǎnyuán-yǒu-míng
4 nèige-xiǎo-hú	kàn-shū-yǐqián	jiàoyuán-dǎ-mén

3 3 2	4 3 2
1 dōu-hén-yǒu-míng *	chī-fàn-yǐqián
2 nín-yé-yǒu-qián *	hái-niàn-xiǎoxué
3 wó-yé-hěn-máng *	yě-qù-lǚxíng
4 lishí-hěn-nán *	dàgài-yě-lái

0 4 2	1 4 2	2 4 2
1 tāmen-tài-máng	tā-shuō-xìng-Máo	shū-shíkuài-qián
2 nínde-jiàoyuán	ná-sānkuài-qián	lái-xué-shùxué
3 xǐhuan-shùxué	wǒ-kāi-dà-mén	yě-néng-zuò-chuán
4 nèige-dà-chéng	dì-sāncì-lái	jiàoyuán-xìng-Máo

3 4 2	4 4 2
1 dōu-hěn-tèbié	tā-huà-dìtú
2 hái-qǐng-jiàoyuán	shéi-pà-shùxué
3 wó-mǎi-dìtú *	bǎ-cài-zuòwán
4 yìhuěr-jiù-lái	jiào-màipiàoyuán

## CHINESE MENU

This isn't exactly the way a Chinese menu would look, but the names of the dishes are authentic. Translate the names and practice them until you feel confident enough to order a full-course dinner for yourself and several friends.

CÀI DĀRTāng

zhū-ròu-tāng  
niú-ròu-tāng  
báicài-tāng  
dòufu-tāng  
jī-tāng  
báicài-jī-tāng

zhū-ròu-báicài-tāng  
báicài-dòufu-tāng  
zhū-ròu-báicài-dòufu-tāng  
niú-ròu-báicài-tāng  
zhū-ròu-dòufu-tāng

Chǎo-Cài

chǎo-dòufu  
chǎo-báicài  
chǎo-jī  
chǎo-xiārér  
chǎo-niú-ròu

niú-ròu-chǎo-dòufu  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-dòufu  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-báicài  
niú-ròu-chǎo-báicài  
chǎo-zhū-ròu

Fàn

bái-fàn  
chǎo-fàn  
jī-chǎo-fàn  
xiārér-chǎo-fàn

niú-ròu-chǎo-fàn  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-fàn  
niú-ròu-báicài-chǎo-fàn  
zhū-ròu-báicài-chǎo-fàn

Jiǎozi

xiārér-jiǎozi  
zhū-ròu-jiǎozi  
niú-ròu-jiǎozi

xiārér-zhū-ròu-jiǎozi  
zhū-ròu-báicài-jiǎozi  
niú-ròu-báicài-jiǎozi

Kǎo

kǎo-yāzi  
kǎo-jī

kǎo-zhū-ròu  
kǎo-niú-ròu

Hóng-Shāo

hóng-shāo-yú  
hóng-shāo-jī  
hóng-shāo-ròu  
hóng-shāo-yāzi

hóng-shāo-niú-ròu  
hóng-shāo-dòufu  
shīzi-tóu

Táng-Cù

táng-cù-yú  
táng-cù-báicài

táng-cù-ròu

Miàn

chǎo-miàn  
jī-chǎo-miàn  
xiārér-chǎo-miàn  
zhū-ròu-báicài-chǎo-miàn

niú-ròu-chǎo-miàn  
zhū-ròu-chǎo-miàn  
niú-ròu-báicài-chǎo-miàn

Diǎnxin

xìngrér-dòufu

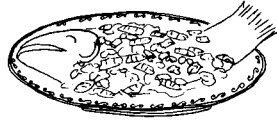
xìngrér-chá

Chá

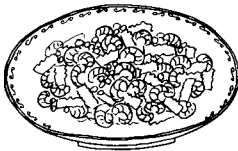
hóng-chá\*



(a) báicài tāng



(b) hóng shāo yú



(c) chǎo xiārér



(d) liángwǎn fàn

\* Hóng-chá, literally 'red tea,' is 'black tea' to speakers of English. Xìngrér-chá, literally 'almond tea,' is not tea at all, but a porridge-like dessert made of rice meal, almonds, sugar, and cinnamon.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Chīwánle-fànguǎr-yǐhòu, shèngde-qían-géi-huǒji, nà-jiào-'shénmo-qían?
2. Wáng-Xiānsheng kāi-chē-de-jīngyan-hěn-duō. 'Zhāng-Xiānshengde-jīngyan-bú-gòu. Shéi-kāi-chē-kāide-hǎo?
3. Máo-Xiáojie shèngde-hěn-duō-chǎo-xiārér. Máo-Xiānsheng bǎ-hóng-shāo-yú-'dōu-chīwán-le. Shéi-méi-shèng-cài-ne?
4. Rúguó-liǎngge-rén qù-chī-fàn, nǐ-yào-shīzi-tóu, chǎo-báicài, wǒ-yào-hóng-shāo-yú, kǎo-yāzi, nǐ-shuō-shèngdeliǎo-ma?
5. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng xǐhuan-chī-jiǎozi. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng xǐhuan-chī-chǎo-miàn. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén shéi-chī-jiǎozi?
6. 'Gāo-Xiáojie chī-chǎo-xiārér, 'Bái-Xiānsheng chī-hóng-shāo-yú. Nèige-cài-lǐtou fàng-de-jiàngyóu fàngde-duō?
7. Wǒmen-dào-fànguǎr chīwánle-fàn-yǐhòu, jiào-'shéi-lái géi-wǒmen-suàn-zhàng?
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-xìngrér-dòufu. Huǒji-shuō-gāng-màiwán. Nèige-fànguǎr hái-yǒu-xìngrér-dòufu-ma?
9. 'Máo-Xiáojie hěn-cōngming. Tā-dìdi-niàn-shū-niànde méi-tā-nènmohǎo. 'Máo-Xiáojie 'néng-bu-néng-bāngzhu-tā-ne?
10. Zhèige-xuéxiào jiàoyuán dōu-shi-nǚ-de, xuésheng dōu-shi-nǚ-xuésheng. Nǐ-shuō-quán-xuéxiào yǒu-'nán-de-méi-you?

## WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

Imagine that you and a friend, Mr. Johnson, are both talking with a waiter in a North Chinese restaurant in the United States. Make up an appropriate dialogue along the following lines:

The waiter greets the two of you and asks where you want to sit. You suggest a place, and Johnson agrees to it. The waiter asks if you would both like some tea; you say you would, and tell him to bring a pot. Johnson adds that he should bring a menu, too. You ask about the specialties of the house. The waiter wants to know whether you're eating dumplings or rice, and Johnson says he wants to study the menu.

The waiter says you both speak Chinese very well, and asks where you studied and whether you have ever been to China. You answer that you haven't been, adding that your Chinese was studied in America. You ask whether your Chinese is really good or whether he's just being polite. The waiter says he's telling the truth, not being polite.

You ask Johnson what should be ordered, and Johnson suggests ordering ten dumplings, pork and fried bean curd, and fried shrimp. The waiter asks

what soup you want, and Johnson asks for beef and cabbage soup. The waiter asks if you often eat Chinese food. You say you often do, that you like to very much, but that this is the first time you've come here.

Johnson asks the waiter if he's a Northerner. The waiter says all of them here are. Johnson wants to know how long the waiter has been in America, and the waiter tells him twenty-odd years. You say the food is not bad. The waiter hopes you will come often.

## NOTES

1. Question words in pairs have meanings like 'whatever,' 'whoever,' 'whichever,' etc. They occur in paired phrases the second of which usually contains the word jiù 'then':

Ní-xǐhuan-shénmo (ní-) jiù-'chī-shénmo. 'Eat whatever you like.'  
[lit. 'You like what, then eat what.']

Mǔqīn-zuò-shénmo nǚ-háizi-jiù-'zuò-shénmo. 'Girls do whatever their mothers do.'

If the subject is the same for both verbs, its mention before the second verb is optional (see also the first sentence above):

'Shéi-yào-lǚxíng 'shéi-jiù-qù-lǚxíng. or  
'Shéi-yào-lǚxíng jiù-qù-lǚxíng.

'Whoever wants to make a trip can go on a trip.'

Sometimes the question word in the second phrase occurs in a different usage from that of the first phrase. Thus in the following sentence the first néiběn is the subject of the sentence, and the second is the object:

'Néiběn-shū-róngyì-kàn wǒ-jiù-yào-'néiběn. 'I want whichever book is easiest to read.'

Sometimes the question in the second phrase is interchangeable with some other word:

'Shéi-huì-zuò-Zhōngguó-cài jiù-qǐng-shéi-zuò. or  
'Shéi-huì-zuò-Zhōngguó-cài jiù-qǐng-tā-zuò.

'Whoever can cook Chinese food is invited to do so.'

2. The adverbs yě 'also' and dōu 'all' are used in the patterns A yě B and A dōu B, in which B is a verb phrase and A is either a noun or a verb phrase. If A is a noun phrase, the construction means 'even A does B':

Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái. or  
Wáng-Xiānsheng dōu-bu-lái.

'Even Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

If A is a verb phrase, the construction means 'even if A (still) B':

Nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái. or  
Nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-dōu-bu-lái.

'Even if you come, Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

The 'even' meaning can be made more explicit by using lián (lit. 'join') or jiùshì (lit. 'precisely is') or jiùshì lián before A:

Lián-'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-lián-'Wáng-Xiānsheng yě-bu-lái.  
 'Even Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

Lián-nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái. or  
 Jiùshi-lián-nǐ-lái Wáng-Xiānsheng-yě-bu-lái.  
 'Even if you come, Mr. Wang isn't coming.'

3. The transformation of the verb-object sequence into the inverted order of object-verb changes the meaning from 'do X' to 'X to do':

Tā-chī-fàn. 'He eats food.'  
 Tā-méi-yǒu-fàn-chī. 'He has no food to eat.'  
 Tā-zuò-shì. 'He is working.'  
 Tā-méi-yǒu-shì-zuò. 'He has no work to do.'

Kéyì 'can' may be inserted between the two elements of these phrases:

Tā-méi-yǒu-fàn-kéyì-chī. 'He has no food (which he) can eat.'

The inverted phrase is most often used with a preceding yǒu or méi-yǒu, as in the examples above.

4. We have seen (Lesson 8, Note 1, p. 100) that some stative verbs combine with transitive verbs to form compound descriptive phrases, such as hǎo-chī 'good to eat.' Another of these is gòu 'enough':

Fàn-gòu-chī-ma? 'Is there enough food to eat?'

We have also seen (Lesson 13, Note 6, p. 188) that kuài 'fast' means 'soon' when used before another verb:

Wǒmen-kuài-zǒu-ba. 'Let's leave right away.'

Màn 'slow' in a similar usage means 'not (so) soon'; a common phrase màn-zǒu [lit. 'go not (so) soon'] is said to departing guests—'Don't be in a hurry to go.' Màn in this usage also means 'slow,' 'slowly,' according to the context:

màn-zǒu 'go slowly'  
 màn-kāi 'drive slowly'

Other stative verbs acquire further shades of meaning when used adverbially:

Lǎo 'old' becomes 'always':

Wó-lǎo-chī-'Zhōngguó-fàn. 'I always eat Chinese food.'

Dà 'big' becomes 'much' or 'very':

Wǒ-bu-dà-huì-shuō-Zhōngguó-huà. 'I can't speak Chinese very well.'

Bái 'white' becomes 'uselessly':

Wǒ-bái-qù-le. Tā-méi-zài-jiā. 'I went to no purpose. He wasn't at home.'

5. Shi 'be' is added to a number of expressions, especially adverbs, to make them more emphatic:

yóuqí or yóuqíshì 'especially'

tèbié or tèbiéshì 'especially'

hái or háishì 'still'

Wǒ-shuōle-hě'n-duō-cì. Tā-'háishì-bù-dǒng. 'I said it several times.  
He still didn't understand.'

6. The verb lái 'come' is also used in restaurants in the sense of 'cause to come, bring':

Lái-yìhú-chá-ba. 'Bring a pot of tea.'



Lesson 22 DISCUSSING CHINESE



“Nǐ-shuō-pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ 'zěnmó-hǎo-ne?”

Dialogue: Mr. Gao and Mr. White exchange views on Chinese.

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie dào-Rìběn-qù-lǚxíng-huīlai-yǐhòu, 'Bái-Xiānsheng lái-kàn-tāmen. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng hěn-gāoxìng, qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-tāmen-jiā-lǐ-tou chí-wǎnfàn, gēn-tā-tán guān-yú-Zhōngguó-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-de-yìxiē-wèntí.

(Bái-Xiānsheng-dǎ-mén.)

Gāo-Xiáojie: Shéi-a?

Bái: Shi-wǒ, Měiyīng.

(Měiyīng-kāi-mén.)

Gāo-Xiáojie: Wénshān, hǎo-ma? Ní-zǎochen-dǎ-diànhuà shuō-jīntian-lái wǒ-fùqīn-hěn-gāoxìng, dēngzhe-ní-lái-ne.

After Mr. and Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao return from traveling in Japan, Mr. White comes to see them. Mr. Gao is delighted, and invites Mr. White to have dinner at their home and to chat with him about some problems concerning Chinese language and literature.

(Mr. White knocks on the door.)

Who is it?

It's me, Meiyīng.

(Meiyīng opens the door.)

Vincent, how are you? When you called this morning and said you were coming today my father was very happy. He's been waiting for you [to come].

- Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ-zuò-shénmo-ne?  
Huà-huàr-ne, háishi-niàn-shū-ne? 20  
Meiying, what are you doing?  
Are you painting or reading?
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Yě-méi-huà-huàr yě-méi-niàn-shū. Bāngzhu-mǔ-qīn-zuò-fàn-ne.  
Neither. I'm helping my mother cook dinner.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wénshān, nǐ-lái-le. Hǎo-ma? 25  
Vincent, welcome [lit. you've come]! How are you?
- Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo? Jǐntian-méi-chūqu-ma?  
Hello, Mr. Gao. You haven't been out today?
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Méi-you. Qǐng-zuò. Wōmen-hē-chá, chī-diǎnxīn. Měiyīng, ná-diar-'Rìběn-diǎnxīn-lái. Zài-géi-wo-yībēi-chá. Wǒ-zài-Rìběn mǎile-jíbēn-guānyú-yǔyánxué-de-shū. Wǒ-kànguole, 'hěn-bú-cuò. Duì-ni-hén-yǒu-yòng. Sònggeini. 30  
No, I haven't. Sit down. Let's have some tea and cakes. Meiying, get some Japanese pastry. Give me a cup of tea too. In Japan I bought several books dealing with linguistics. I've read them. They're not bad at all. 35  
They'll be useful to you. I'm presenting them to you.
- Bái: Xièxie-nín.  
Thank you.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒ-zhèng-xīwang-nǐ-lái. Wōmen-tántan zhè-jíbēn-shū-lǐtóu guānyú-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué-de-wèntí. 40  
I was just hoping you would come. Let's talk about some problems in these books concerning language and literature.
- Bái: Hǎojíle. Nín-zài-Rìběn wárde-hěn-gāoxìng-ba?  
Excellent. I take it you were happy with your Japanese holiday.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Hén-hǎo. 'Rìběn-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Yuánlái-xiǎng 'duō-zhù-jǐtiān, Měiyīng-láo-xiǎng-huílai. 45  
It was fine. Japan is very interesting. I had originally planned to stay a few more days, but Meiying kept wanting to come back.
- Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ-zài-'Rìběn-huà-de-huàr náchulai-wǒ-kànkān. 50  
Meiying, bring out the paintings you did in Japan so I can see them.
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Nǐ-máng-shénmo? Děng-yìhuěr màn-mārde-kàn. Wó-yě-méi-huà-jǐzhāng. Měitiān-gēnzhe-fùqīn-mǔqīn-qu-wár. 55  
What's the hurry? Wait a while and take your time looking. I didn't make many paintings. Every day I went around with my father and mother having fun.
- Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-zài-Rìběn hái-tiāntiān-xiě-zì-ma?  
Mr. Gao, when you were in Japan did you still practice calligraphy every day?
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Méi-you. Měitiān-dōu-chūqu-wár. Nár-yǒu-gōngfu-xiě-zì-ne? Wōmen-zài-Rìběn-de-shíhou nǐ-dōu- 60  
No. I spent every day having a good time. Where would I find time to write characters? When we were in Japan what did you

- zuò-xiē-shénmo-ne? Kéyi-gàosu-wǒmen-ma?
- Bái: Wó-'nár-yě-méi-qù. Měitiān-kànkān-shū-zháozhao-péngyou, 65 kànle-'jǐcì-diànyǐngr, zài-gěi-fùqīn-mǔqīn-péngyou xié-xiè-xìn.
- Gāo: Nǐ-zhēn-shi-yíge-hǎo-xué-sheng. Zǐ-xiède-nènmo-hǎo, 70 huà-shuōde-sìshēng-nènmo-zhǔn. Rúguǒ-méi-hǎohāorde-xué nǎr-néng-'zhēnmo-hǎo-ne?
- Bái: Nín-guòjiǎng. 75
- Gāo: Xiànzài-wǒ-gàosu-ni wó-mǎide-nèi-jíběn-shū-lǐtōu yǒuyìběn shi-yíwèi-'Rìběnjiàoshòu Zhōngshān\*-Xiānsheng-xiě-de. Tándào-pīnyīn\*\*-gēn-Hànzide-wèntí. Nǐ-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén shi-'zěnmoxué-de-ne? Zài-Měiguoxuéxiàolǐ jiāo-de-fāngfǎ dōu-yíyàng-ma? 80 85
- Bái: Měiguoxuéxiàolǐtōu jiāode-fázi-bù-yíyàng. 'Yǒudekāishǐ-jiù-xué-Hànzì, 'yǒude-yòng-pīnyīn-xué.
- Gāo: Nǐ-juéde néizhǒng-fāngfǎ-hǎo? 90
- Bái: Wǒ-juéde pīnyīnde-fázi-bíjiào-hǎo.
- Gāo: Wó-xiǎng guānyú-Zhōngguoyǔyán wǒ-bù-xǐhuan-yòng-pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ. Rúguǒ-yòng- 95
- do all the time? Can you tell us?
- I didn't go anywhere. I read a bit and visited friends every day, saw a few movies, and wrote to my father and mother and friends.
- You really are a good student. You write so well, and speak with such accurate tones. If you hadn't studied so well how could you be so good?
- You flatter me.
- I want to tell you now that among the books I bought there's one written by a Japanese professor, Mr. Nakayama.\* It discusses the problem of alphabetic writing\*\* and Chinese characters. When you began to study Chinese how did you study? Is there a uniform method of teaching in American schools?
- The teaching methods in American schools are not uniform. Some begin with studying Chinese characters, some use transcription.
- Which method do you think is better?
- I think the transcription method is better.
- I don't think I like using a romanization in connection with the Chinese language. If you use

\* The characters for the Chinese name Zhōngshān, which means 'middle mountain,' are read by the Japanese as Nakayama (naka 'middle,' yama 'mountain'), so that the name Nakayama is the Japanese equivalent of Chinese Zhōngshān. (Nakayama is a common Japanese name, and this is why Sun Yat-sen adopted the corresponding Chinese name Zhōngshān—by which most Chinese know him—while he was a political exile in Japan. The practice of giving Chinese readings for Japanese words and expressions is a common one, and the reverse practice is common in Japan.)

\*\* The term pīnyīn [lit. 'spell sounds'] is used in two senses: (1) as a general term for transcription or romanization, and (2) as the designation for a specific system of transcription, that used in this book.

- pīnyīn-fāngfǎ nà-bù-shi-niàn-Yīngwén-le-ma? Nǎr-shi-xué-Zhōngwén-ne?
- Bái: Nín-bù-xǐhuan-pīnyīnde-fázi-ma? Wǒ-juéde yòng-pīnyīnde-fázi bíjiào-hǎo. Yǒu-kuài-yòu-róngyi. 100
- Gāo: Nǐ-shuō-pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ 'zěn-mo-hǎo-ne?
- Bái: Xiān-xué-huì-shuōle yǐhòu-zài-niàn-shū-xiě-zì jiù-bù-nán-le. 105
- Gāo: Nǐ-shuō-'zěnmobù-nán?
- Bái: Huì-shuō-le-yǐhòu zhīdao-tāde-yìsi-le, zài-niàn-shū jiù-bíjiào-róngyi-míngbailé. 110
- Gāo: Kěshi-nǐ-xué-pīnyīn bú-rènshi-Zhōngguo-zì, hái-děi-'zài-xué-Zhōngguo-zì. 115
- Bái: Kěshi-zìde-yìsi rúguó-yǐ-jing-xuéguo-le, xué-Hànzì-de-shíhou zhǐ-xué-Hànzì, jiù-bù-bì-xué-yìsi-le.
- Gāo: Nǐ-nènmo-yì-shuō huòzhě-pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ yé-yǒu-tāde-hǎochu. 120
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng-'shì-hén-hǎo. Yǔyán-shi-yǔyán, wénxué-shi-wénxué, shi-liǎng-bù-fen. 125
- Gāo: Nǐ-kāishǐ-xué yídìng-hěnyònggōng-le.
- Bái: Nèige-shíhou wó-hěnyònggōng. Měitiān-tīng-lùyīn, zìjǐ-gēn-zìjǐ-shuō-huà, liànxì-fāyīn, bá-měitiān-xué-de dōu-jìzhu. Yuè-xué-yuè-yǒu-xìngqu. 130
- Gāo: Nǐ-kāishǐ shi-xiān-xué-shuō-huà-ma? 135
- romanization isn't that reading English? Where is there any studying of Chinese?
- You don't like the transcription method? I think it's better to use this method. It's faster as well as easier.
- Tell me how transcription is better.
- (If you) first learn to speak and afterwards go on to reading and writing, then it is no longer difficult.
- How come it's not difficult?
- After mastering speech you've learned what it means and so in going on to reading it's relatively easier to understand.
- But in learning romanization you don't become familiar with Chinese characters, and you still have to study them.
- But if the meanings of the characters have been learned already, when you study characters you just study characters, and so it's no longer necessary to study meanings.
- From what you say, perhaps the transcription method has some advantages.
- I believe it is very good. Language is language, literature is literature, and they're two different things [lit. two parts].
- When you began your studies you must have been very diligent.
- At that time I did work hard. Every day I listened to recordings, carried on monologues, practiced pronunciation, and fixed in my memory all that we studied every day. The more I studied the more interested I became.
- At the beginning did you first study speaking?

- Bái: Shì, wǒ-xiān-xué-shuō-huà.  
 Gāo: Nǐ-xiān-xué-shuō-huà shì-zěnmó-xué-ne?  
 Bái: Wǒ-kāishǐ-xué-sìshēng gēn-qīngzhōngyīn, yǐhòu-xué-cér (bǐfang-shuō shū, tàitai jiù-shì-cér) gēn-duǎn-jùzi, zài-xué-huìhuà. 140  
 Gāo: Xué-yǔyán 'tèbié-yīnggāi-zhùyì-de shì-shénmo? 145  
 Bái: Tèbié-yào-zhùyì-de shì-fā-yīn-gēn-yúfǎ.  
 Gāo: Pīnyīn-duì-fāyīn yǒu-bāng-zhu-ba. 150  
 Bái: Pīnyīnde-fázi-duì-fāyīn hén-yǒu-bāngzhu. Zhōngguó-huà zuì-yào-zhùyì-de shì-sìshēng. Bǐfang-shuō tài-tai-zhèige-cér jiù-shì-liǎng-gē-yīnjié. Dì-yíge-yīnjié shì-yǒu-shēng-de, dì-sì-shēng. Dì-èrge-yīnjié shì-qīng-shēng, jiù-shì-méi-you-shēng. 155  
 Gāo: Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì 'duǎnchū-zài-nǎr? 160  
 Bái: Bǐfang-shuō tàitai-zhèige-cér. Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì-xiě, jiù-yòng-liǎngge-yíyàngde-zì. Yòng-Hànzì yě-bù-zhī-dào zhèi-liǎngge-zì zài-yíkuàr-niàn háishi-'bù-zài-yíkuàr-niàn. Shì-'jǐshēng yě-bù-zhīdào. Rúguǒ-liǎngge-zì yíyàng-niàn jiù-shì-tài-tài, nà-jiu-'bù-shì-shuō-huà-le. 170  
 Gāo: Nǐ-shuōde-yě-bù-cuò, kěshì-bù-'dōu-duì. Nǐ-yòng-Hànzì-xué yídìng-yǒu-ge-Zhōngguó-xiānsheng-jiāo-ní. Bù-rán-ní-'zěnmó-xué? Xiānsheng yídìng-gàosu-nǐ zěnmó-niàn. Tā-yídìng-gàosu-nǐ-niàn-tàitai. Tā-bù-huì-jiāo-nǐ-niàn-tài-tài. 175  
 Lesson 22. Discussing Chinese  
 Yes, I first learned to speak.  
 When you began with speech, how did you study?  
 I began by studying the four tones and stress. Afterwards I studied words (for example, shū and tàitai are words) and phrases, and then studied conversation.  
 In studying languages what must you pay special attention to?  
 What needs most attention is pronunciation and grammar.  
 I take it transcription is helpful in pronunciation.  
 The transcription method is very helpful in pronunciation. In Chinese what needs the most attention is the four tones. For example, the word tàitai is two syllables. The first syllable has a tone, the fourth tone. The second syllable is a neutral tone, that is, it has no tone.  
 If you use Chinese characters where are the disadvantages?  
 Take this word tàitai for example. If you write it in Chinese characters, you use two identical characters. If you use Chinese characters you don't know whether these two characters are read together or not. Neither can you tell what tones they are. If the two characters are read in the same way, it becomes tài tài, and that's no longer a spoken form.  
 Your ideas aren't bad, but they aren't entirely correct. If you study by means of Chinese characters you will certainly have a Chinese teacher to teach you. Otherwise how would you study? The teacher would certainly tell you how to read it. He would [certainly] tell you to read it tàitai. He couldn't tell you to read it tài tài.

Bái: Rúguō-yòng-Hànzì xué-  
Zhōngguo-yǔyán, méi-xué-  
guo-de-zì nǐ-méi-fázi zì- 185  
jǐ-huì-niàn. Xiàng-tā-  
zhèige-zì, zuǒbiār-shi-rén,  
yòubiār-shi-yě. Méi-yǒu-  
tā-zìde-yīn. Rúguō-zìjǐ-  
liànxi-de-shíhou wǒmen-yí- 190  
kàn-pīnyīn jiù-huì-niàn-le.  
Suóyī-pīnyīn shi-zuì-hǎode-  
fāngfǎ-le.

亻 + 也 = 他  
rén + yě ≠ tā

If you use Chinese characters to study the Chinese language, there is no way of knowing by yourself how to read a character which you have not previously studied. For example, the character for tā is rén on the left and yě on the right. There is no sound of the character tā. When we practice by ourselves, as soon as we see the transcription then we're able to read it. That's why a transcription is the best system.

Gāo: Néng-bù-néng Hànzì-gēn-  
pīnyīn yí-'kuàr-xué-ne? 195

Would it be possible to study Chinese characters together with the romanization?

Bái: Yòng-pīnyīnde-fázi-xué,  
kéyi-xiān-xué-fāyīn, cérde-  
yìsi, gēn-yúfǎ. Yǐhòu-zài-  
xué-Hànzì. Rúguō-tóngshí 200  
yòu-xué-fāyīn, cér, Hànzì,  
wénfǎ, xué-de-dōngxi-'tài-  
duō-le, jiù-xuéde-bíjiǎo-  
màn-le.

If you study using the transcription method, you can first study pronunciation, the meaning of words, and the grammar of the language. Later you also study characters. If you study pronunciation, vocabulary, characters, and grammar at (one and) the same time, there are too many things to learn, and so progress is relatively slow.

Gāo: Xué-Hànzì yé-bu-tài-nán-  
ne. Jiù-shi-duō-liànxi-me. 205

Learning characters is not too hard. It's just a matter of practicing more, of course.


Bái: Xué-Hànzì yóu-liǎngge-nán-  
chu. Yíge shi-wǒ-gāngcái-  
shuōguo méi-fázi-zhīdao-  
zěnmo-niàn. Yíge-shi-bì-  
děi-jìzhu zěnmo-xiě, yóu- 210  
jǐhuá. Bǐfang-tā-zhèige-zì  
yóu-wǔhuá, shi-liǎng-bùfen.  
Xiān-xié-zuǒbiār hòu-xiě-  
yòubiār. Bìděi-jìzhu xiěde-  
fázi. Nín-kàn xiān-xué- 215  
Hànzì bǐ-xiān-xué-pīnyīn  
nán-de-duō.

There are two difficulties in studying Chinese characters. One, as I've just mentioned, is that there is no way to know how to read them. Another is that one must memorize how to write them, how many strokes they have. For example, the character for tā has five strokes and consists of two parts. First you write the left and then you write the right. You must memorize how to write. You see that studying characters first is a lot harder than studying transcription first.

Gāo: Pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ hǎo-shi-hǎo,  
kěshi-kànqilai háishi-Hànzì-  
piàoliang.

220

Alphabetic writing is good, all  
right; but still to the eye the  
Chinese characters are more  
beautiful.



VOCABULARY

bǐfāng	example (N) (Note 12 below)
bùfen	section, part, member (M) [lit. section part]
cí, cér	word (N)
duǎn	short (SV)
duǎnchū	disadvantage, shortcoming (N) (Note 5)
fā	put out, emit (TV)
fāyīn	pronunciation (N) [lit. emit sound]
guānyú	concerning, regarding (CV)
Hàn	China, Chinese (N) (Note 13)
Hànzì	Chinese characters (N) (Note 14)
hǎochū	advantage (N) (Note 5)
huá, huà	stroke (in a character) (M)
huìhuà	dialogue, conversation (N) [lit. assembly speech]
jì(zhū)	remember, memorize (TV) (Note 5)
jùzì	sentence (N)
liànxì	practice, learn how to (TV) [lit. practice practice]
nánchū	difficulty (N) (Note 5)
pīn	spell (out), write in alphabetic script (TV)
pīnyīn	alphabetic writing, spelling, transcription, romanization (N)
qīng	light (in weight) (SV)
qīngzhòngyīn	stress (N) (Note 9)
shēng	sound, tone (N, M) (Note 10)
shēngyīn	noise, sound (N) (Note 5)
sìshēng	(four) tones (N) (Note 11)
sòng	escort, send, give (TV)
tóngshí	same time, simultaneously (TW) (Note 5)
wénfǎ	grammar (N) (Note 14)
wèntí	problem, question, theme (N) [lit. ask topic]
yīn	sound (N)

yīnjié	syllable (N) [lit. sound joint]
yúfǎ	grammar (N) (Notes 5, 14)
yuè	the more (AD) (Note 1)
zhèng	just (now), precisely, exactly (AD) (Note 11)
zhòng	heavy (SV)
zhǔn	accurate (SV)
zhùyì	pay attention to (TV) [lit. note idea]
zìjǐ	self (lit. self self)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Yuè-duō-yuè-hǎo.                           | the more . . . the more<br>The more the better.  |
| 2. Wǒ-yuè-chī-Zhōngguó-cài<br>yuè-xǐhuan-chī. | the more I eat Chinese food<br>the more I like to eat<br>The more I eat Chinese food the<br>more I like [to eat] it. |
| 3. Rén-yuè-lái-yuè-duō.                       | more and more<br>People are becoming more and<br>more numerous.  |
| 4. Nǐde-biǎo 'zhǔn-bu-zhǔn?                   | accurate<br>Is your watch accurate?  |
| 5. Zhōngwén yǒu-sìshēng.                      | sound, tone<br>four tones<br>Chinese has four tones.   |
| 6. Tā-shuō-huà yīn-hěn-duì.                   | sound, pronunciation<br>pronunciation quite correct<br>[In speaking] his pronunciation<br>is quite correct.          |
| 7. Zhèr-shēngyīn-tài-dà.                      | sound, noise<br>noise is too great<br>There's too much noise here.   |
| 8. Zhèige-yīn-zěnmo-pīn?                      | spell alphabetically<br>How is this sound spelled?   |
| 9. Pīnyīn hěn-róngyì-niàn.                    | spelling, alphabetic writing<br>Alphabetic writing is easy to<br>read.   |
| fā  | put out, emit  |



- fā-yīn  
10. Tā-fā-de-yīn hěn-duì.
- fāyīn  
fāyīn-bú-cuò  
11. Tā-shuō-Zhōngwén fāyīn-bú-cuò.
- zhùyì  
12. Kāishí-děi-zhùyì-fāyīn.
- liànxì  
13. Ní-děi-duō-liànxì-fāyīn.
- wèntí  
wèn-wèntí  
14. Wǒ-xiànzài wèn-nǐmen-jǐge-wèntí.
- hǎo  
hǎohāorde  
15. Ní-děi-hǎohāorde-niàn-shū.
- wén  
wénfǎ  
'Zhōngwénde-wénfǎ  
16. Zhōngwénde-wénfǎ gēn-Yīng-wénde-wénfǎ bù-yíyàng.
- yúfǎ  
17. 'Wénfǎ-gēn-yúfǎ yìsi-yíyàng.
- jùzi  
dì-sìge-jùzi  
18. Qíng-nǐ-niàn dì-sìge-jùzi.
- cér  
jǐge-cér?  
19. Zhèige-jùzili yóu-jǐge-cér?
- sòng  
sòng-péngyou  
sòng-péngyou-shàng-chuán  
20. Wǒ-míngtiān sòng-péngyou-shàng-chuán.
- sòng-qián  
sòng-ta-yìdiǎn-qián

utter sounds, pronounce  
The sounds he makes are quite correct.

pronunciation  
pronunciation is not bad  
(When) he speaks Chinese his pronunciation isn't bad.

pay close attention to  
At the beginning one must pay close attention to pronunciation.

practice  
You should practice pronunciation more.

problem, question  
ask a question  
Now I'll put several problems to you.

good, well  
well  
You must study well.

literature, language  
grammar  
grammar of Chinese  
Chinese grammar is not the same as English grammar.

grammar  
Wénfǎ and yúfǎ mean the same thing.

sentence  
the fourth sentence  
Please read the fourth sentence.

word  
how many words?  
How many words are there in this sentence?

see [a person] off  
see a friend off  
see a friend off on the boat

I'm seeing him off on the boat tomorrow.

send money  
send him a little money

21. Wǒ-míngtiān sòng-tā-yìdiǎr-qián.  
I'll send him a little money tomorrow.  
sòng-qián  
send money  
sòng-qián-gěi-tā  
send money to him
22. Wǒ-míngtiān sòng-qián-gěi-tā.  
I'll send him some money tomorrow.  
sònggei  
send to
23. Nǐ-míngtiān bǎ-qián-sònggei-tā.  
Send him the money tomorrow.  
yuè  
month  
yuèyuèr  
every month
24. Wǒ-yuèyuèr-qù-Hángzhou.  
I go to Hangchow every month.  
yíge-cér  
one word  
gègè-cér  
every word
25. Nǐ-gègè-cér dōu-shuōcuò-le.  
You've said every word wrong.  
rén  
person  
'rénrén  
everyone
26. 'Rénrén-dōu-děi-chī-fàn.  
Everybody has to eat.  
bú-shi-'rénrén  
it isn't everybody
27. Bú-shi-'rénrén dōu-xǐhuan-xué-Zhōngwén.  
Not everybody likes to study Chinese.  
qīng  
light (in weight)  
qīng-shēng  
neutral tone
28. Chūle-sìshēng-yǐwài hái-yǒu-qīng-shēng.  
Apart from the four tones there is also a neutral tone.  
zhòng  
heavy  
zhòng-yīn  
heavy sound, stress
29. Zhègè-cérde-zhòng-yīn zài-nǎ?  
Where is the stress in this word?  
qīngzhòngyīn  
stress
30. Xué-yǔyán děi-zhùyì-qīng-zhòngyīn.  
In studying a language one must pay attention to stress.  
bùfen  
part  
yíbùfen  
one part
31. Wǒde-shū yíbùfen-zài-Zhōngguo.  
Part of my books are in China.  
huá  
stroke (of a character)  
jǐhuá?  
how many strokes?
32. Zhègè-zì-yóu-jǐhuá?  
How many strokes are there in this character?  
duǎn  
short

hén-duǎnde-lù  
33. Nà-shi-yìtiáo hén-duǎnde-lù.

a very short road  
That is a very short road.

huìhuà  
liànxì-huìhuà  
34. Ní-déi-hǎohāorde-liànxì-huì-  
huà.

conversation  
practice conversation  
You must carefully practice con-  
versation.

Hàn  
Hàn-Yīng  
35. Xué-Zhōngwén déi-yǒu-Hàn-  
Yīng-zìdiǎn.

Chinese  
Chinese-English  
In studying Chinese one must  
have a Chinese-English diction-  
ary.

Hànzì  
36. Hànzì bù-róngyì-xiě.

Chinese characters  
Chinese characters are not easy  
to write.

zìjǐ  
wǒ-zìjǐ  
37. Fàn wǒ-zìjǐ-zuò zìjǐ-chī.

self  
I myself  
I make and eat the food by my-  
self.

guānyú  
guānyú-tāde-shìqing  
38. Guānyú-tāde-shìqing bié-gēn-  
wǒ-shuō.

regarding  
regarding his affairs  
Don't speak to me regarding his  
affairs.

yīnjié  
39. Zhèige-duǎn-jùzi yóu-jǐge-  
yīnjié?

syllable  
How many syllables are there in  
this phrase?

zhèng  
40. Wǒ-zhèng-xiě-zì-ne.

just now, at this moment  
I'm just now writing characters.

zhèng  
zhèng-zài  
41. Wǒ-zhèng-zài-xiě-zì-ne.

just now, at this moment  
just in the act of  
I'm just now writing characters.

duǎn  
duǎnchū  
42. Tāde-duǎnchū 'tài-duō-le.

short  
shortcoming, inadequacy  
He has too many shortcomings.

jì  
43. Hànzide-xiéfǎ hěn-nán-jì.

remember  
It's difficult to remember the  
way to write Chinese charac-  
ters.

jì  
jìzhu  
44. Xué-'Zhōngwén yào-jì-  
zhu-sìshēng.

remember  
fix in mind  
In studying Chinese one must fix  
the tones in mind.

bǐfang

example

zuò-ge-bǐfang  
45. Yòng-zhèige-zì zuò-ge-bǐ-fang.

make up an example  
Make up an example using this word.

máng  
máng-shénmo?  
46. Nǐ-máng-shénmo?

busy  
in a hurry over what?  
What are you in a hurry about?

tóngshí  
47. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén tóngshí-lái-le.

same time  
They both came at the same time.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 22.1. Expressing 'the more . . . the more . . .' (Note 1 below)

<u>yuè</u>	V <sub>1</sub>	<u>yuè</u>	V <sub>2</sub>
'the more'	Verb <sub>1</sub>	'the more'	Verb <sub>2</sub>
yuè	gāo	yuè	hǎo
'the higher the better'			

1. Wǒ-yuè-yánjiu-'Zhōngguo-yǐyán yuè-juéde-yǒu-xìng-qu.

The more I study the Chinese language the more interested I become.

2. Wǒ-yuè-chī-'Zhōngguo-cài yuè-juéde-hǎo-chī.

The more Chinese food I eat the more delicious I consider it to be.

3. Xué-pīnyīn-zì yuè-xué-yuè-róngyi.

When you study transcription, the more you study the easier it gets.

4. Měiguò-qìchē yuè-lái-yuè-duō.

American cars are becoming more and more numerous.

5. Zuótiān-wǒ-jiè-de-něiběn-shū, yuè-kàn-yuè-xiǎng-kàn.

That book I borrowed yesterday, the more I read the more I want to read.

6. Wǒ-'yuè-bu-xǐhuan-ta ta-yuè-gēn-wǒ-shuō-huà.

The more I dislike him the more he talks to me.

7. Nǐ-Zhōngwén yuè-lái-yuè-shuōde-hǎo.

You're speaking Chinese better and better.

8. 'Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-huà-de-huà yuè-huà-yuè-bù-hǎo.

Miss Gao says that the more paintings she does the worse they get.

9. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng yuè-gāoxìng yuè-xǐhuan-shuō-huà.

The happier Mr. Gao gets the more he likes to talk.

10. Kāishǐ-xué-sìshēng-de-shí-hou, yuè-xué-yuè-zhǔn.

When you first study the four tones, the more you study the more correct they become.

Pattern 22.2. Reduplicated Stative Verbs (Note 2 below)

SV <sub>1</sub>	SV <sub>1</sub>	(-r)	(-de)
hǎo	hǎo	-r	-de
= hǎohǎorde 'well'			

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Wó-déi-hǎohǎorde niàn-shū-le, bùrán-kāobushàng.                        | I must study hard, otherwise I can't pass the exam.   |
| 2. Nǐmen-jǐge-rén dōu-xǐhuan-chī-shīzi-tóu, xià-cì wǒ-duōduōrde-zuò-diar. | (Since) you all like to eat lion's head, next time I'll make a few more.                                  |
| 3. Wǒmen-děi-kuàikuārde-zǒu. Bùrán diànyǐngr-yào-kāi-yǎn-le.              | We must hurry. Otherwise the movie will have started.   |
| 4. Wó-yuǎnyuārde jiù-kànjiàn-ta wàng-zhèr-lái-le.                         | From far off I saw him coming here.   |
| 5. Rúguó-yǒu-yíge-wèntí děi-mànmārde-yánjiu.                              | If there is a problem you must take your time in studying it.   |
| 6. Nǐ-xiǎng-bǎ-'Zhōngwén shuō-de-hén-hǎo, děi-duō-duōrde-liànxi-fāyīn.    | If you want to speak Chinese very well, you must do a lot of practicing of pronunciation.                 |
| 7. Liànxi-xiě-'Zhōngguo-zì déi-hǎohǎorde-zhùyì xiě-de-fāngfǎ.             | In learning how to write Chinese characters, you must pay careful attention to the way of writing (them). |
| 8. Wǒ-chībǎo-le. Qǐng-nín-mànmārde-chī-ba.                                | I'm full. Please take your time eating.   |
| 9. Qǐng-nǐmen-bié-shuō-huà. Hǎohǎorde-tīng-lùyīn.                         | Please don't talk. Listen carefully to the recording.   |
| 10. Qǐng-nǐ-kuàikuār-gàosu-wo, zhèige-zì shi-shénmo-yīn.                  | Please tell me quickly how to pronounce this character.   |

Pattern 22.3. Reduplication of Measures (Note 3 below)

M	M
Measure	Measure (-r)
běn	běn/běnr
= bénběnr 'every volume'	

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng yǒu-sìge-háizi. Gèger dōu-nènmo-yònggōng-niàn-shū.         | Mr. King has four children. Each one studies so diligently.                                     |
| 2. 'Zhāng-Tàitai zuì-xǐhuan-lǚxíng. Tā-niánniár dōu-dào-biéde-dìfang-qu-yíci. | Mrs. Johnson likes most to travel. Once every year she goes somewhere [else].                   |
| 3. 'Máo-Xiānsheng zuótian-sònggei-wo-wúběn-shū. Běnběr-dōu-hǎo-kàn.           | Mr. Mao sent me five books yesterday. Every volume was beautiful.                               |
| 4. Xué-yǔyán děi-zhùyì-gègè-cérde-fāyīn.                                      | When you study a language, you must pay attention to the pronunciation of every word.           |
| 5. Wǒ-tiāntiār bāngzhu-wó-mǔqin-zuò-fàn.                                      | Every day I help my mother cook.  |
| 6. Wǒ-yuèyuèr dōu-qu-Niūyue-wár-yíci.   | I go to New York to have fun once every month.  |
| 7. Nèige-háizi hén-hǎo. 'Rén-rén dōu-xǐhuan-ta.                               | That child is very nice. Everyone likes him.  |
| 8. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-xué-'Zhōng-wén fāyīn, jùzi, wénfā yàngyàng-dōu-hǎo.        | In studying Chinese, Mr. King is good in every aspect of pronunciation, sentences, and grammar. |
| 9. 'Wáng-Xiǎojie-huà-de-huàr zhāngzhāngr-dōu-hén-hǎo.                         | Every one of the paintings that Miss Wang has painted is excellent.                             |
| 10. Nèige-dàxuéde-jiàoshòu gèger-dōu-hén-yǒu-míng.                            | Every one of the professors in that university is famous.                                       |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLES

I: 12 phrases (Note 1)

yuè	róngyì	yuè	—	hǎo
	nán		bu	
	duō			
	kuài			
	màn			
	lái			

## II: 36 sentences (Note 1)

(In the columns marked by asterisks, only items from the same row may be used together: chī with chī, hē with hē, etc.)

		*			*
wǒ	yuè	chī	yuè	xǐhuan	chī
nǐ		hē		xiǎng	hē
tā		kàn		yào	kàn
		mǎi			mǎi

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (IV)

(Asterisks mark forms which have undergone changes of third to second tone.)

	0 0 3	1 0 3	2 0 3
1	tāmende-jiǔ	tā-shuōde-hǎo	tā-huódeliǎo
2	máfande-hěn	Wáng-Xiānsheng-yǒu	ná-biède-bǐ
3	mǎile-de-zhǐ	jiǎndānde-hǎo	nǚ-háizi-xiǎo
4	kèrende-bǐ	wàng-xībiar-zǒu	yìzhíde-zǒu
	3 0 3	4 0 3	
	1 dōu-mǎibuliǎo	tā-zuòde-hǎo	
	2 nín-dǒng-bu-dǒng	nán-kàn-de-hěn	
	3 hén-hǎode-shuǐ *	wǒ-kànbudǒng	
	4 gèng-hǎode-jiǔ	tài-dàde-bǐ	
	0 1 3	1 1 3	2 1 3
1	bēizi-dōu-xiǎo	xīngqīyī-zǒu	jiānglái-dōu-mǎi
2	shénmo-fāngfǎ	shízhī-gāngbǐ	chá-shífēn-hǎo
3	nǐmen-xiān-qǐng	mǎi-sānzhī-bǐ	qǐng-shéi-hē-jiǔ
4	gùshi-shū-shǎo	yào-sānzhāng-zhǐ	zài-túshūguǎn
	3 1 3	4 1 3	
	1 tā-mǎi-qiānbǐ	tā-huì-hē-jiǔ	
	2 lí-wǒ-jiā-yuǎn	yíngòng-sānběn	
	3 wúdiǎnzhōng-zǒu *	bǐ-ròu-dōu-hǎo	
	4 jiù-yǒu-sānběn	kuài-dào-sāndiǎn	

0 2 3	1 2 3	2 2 3
1 bēizi-nán-mǎi	tīngshuō-hái-yǒu	tā-huǐ-Húběi
2 juéde-hái-hǎo	hóng-shāo-yú-hǎo	quán-guó-méi-yǒu
3 yǒude-méi-dǒng	kǎo-yā-méi-yǒu	yǎnyuán-méi-zǒu
4 tàitai-méi-mǎi	qìchē-nán-mǎi	jiàngyóu-hái-yǒu

3 2 3	4 2 3
1 tā-yǒu-chá-wǎn	chē-zài-mén-kǒur
2 érqǐě-nán-xiě	táng-cù-yú-hǎo
3 wó-yǒu-máobǐ *	kǒngpà-méi-yǒu
4 zhèiběn-hái-hǎo	hòu-dào-Húběi

0 3 3	1 3 3	2 3 3
1 tiānqi-hén-hǎo *	tā-chī-liángwǎn *	xiārér-yé-yǒu *
2 nǎzhe-bí-xiě *	ná-gāngbǐ-xiě *	cóngqián-yé-yǒu
3 běnzi-yé-yǒu *	wǒ-jiā-hén-yuǎn *	yǒu-qián-mái-bǐ *
4 zuòde-hén-hǎo *	cài-dār-hén-xiǎo *	jiàngyóu-hén-hǎo *

3 3 3	4 3 3
1 tā-yé-hén-lǎo *	zhōngjiār-yé-yǒu *
2 érqíe-hén-shǎo *	niú-ròu-yé-hǎo *
3 wó-yé-yóu-bǐ *	nǐ-wàng-béi-guǎi *
4 fàn-yé-hén-hǎo *	zhèiyàng-hén-hǎo *

0 4 3	1 4 3	2 4 3
1 Zhōngguo-lìshǐ	tā-chī-fànguǎr	tiāntáng-zài-nǎr
2 yánjiu-lìshǐ	lí-jiā-tài-yuǎn	wénxué-tài-hǎo
3 yǎnde-tài-hǎo	wǒ-chī-fànguǎr	yě-lí-zhèr-yuǎn
4 wàngle-dài-biǎo	yào-sān-sìběn	jiàngyóu-zài-nǎr

3 4 3	4 4 3
1 sāndiǎn-nèichǎng	tā-dào-fànguǎr
2 shéi-yǒu-zìdiǎn	Wáng-Jiàoshòu-hǎo
3 ní-děng-yìhuěr *	wǒ-niàn-lìshǐ
4 guòjiǎng-guòjiǎng	qù-kàn-diànyǐngr



## COMBINING FORMS

This exercise contains a number of expressions which are not included in the Vocabulary but are made up from the combining forms discussed in Note 5 below.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Wàiguo-rén-xué-Hànyǔ 'zuì-dàde-nánchu shi-xué-fāyīn.  | When foreigners study the Chinese language, the biggest difficulty is learning pronunciation.   |
| 2. Wǒ-zuì-dàde-duǎnchu shi-xué-yǔyán bù-tīng-lùyīn.  | My biggest shortcoming is that when I study a language I don't listen to recordings.  |
| 3. Zhōngwénde-'xiéǎ gēn-Yīngwénde-'xiéǎ bù-yíyàng. Zhōngwén shi-cóng-shàngtou-wàng-xià-xiě, Yīngwén shi-cóng-zuǒbiar-wàng-yòu-xiě. | The way of writing Chinese and the way of writing English are not the same. Chinese is written from top to bottom, English is written from left to right. |
| 4. Xué-wénxué bìdēi-xiān-xué-wénfǎ. Tóngyàngde xué-yǔyán bìdēi-xiān-xuě-yúfǎ.  | When you study literature, you must first learn the grammar. Similarly, when you study a language, you must first learn its grammar.                      |
| 5. Qǐng-wèn, zhèige-cérde-'niànfǎ shi-shénmo?  | I'd like to ask how this word is read.  |
| 6. Zhōngwén-gēn-Yīngwén shuōfǎ-bù-yíyàng.  | The way of speaking Chinese and English is not the same.  |
| 7. Lùyīnjīde-hǎochu shi-yíjù-huà keyi-'suíbiàn-tīng-jǐcì.  | The advantage of a recorder is that you can hear a sentence as many times as you please.  |
| 8. Xué-wénxué gēn-xué-shùxuéde-'xuéǎ bù-yíyàng.  | The way to study literature and mathematics is not the same.  |
| 9. Huà-shānshuǐ-de-fázi gēn-huà-rén-de-fázi huàǎ-bu-yíyàng.  | With respect to [the technique of] painting landscapes and [the technique of painting] portraits, the methods of painting are not the same.               |
| 10. 'Wáng-Xiānshèng màigei-wo-hěn-duō-shū. Dōu-hén-yǒu-yòngchu.  | Mr. King sold me a lot of books. They are all very useful.  |
| 11. Xièxie-ni. Qǐng-ní-bǎ-nèiběn-shū nǎgei-wo.   | [Thank you.] Please hand me that book.  |
| 12. Xué-Zhōngguo-yǔyán bá-měige-   | When you study the Chinese lan-   |

- cérde-sìshēng-jìzhu. Bié-shuōcuò.
13. Nǐ-shuō-tā-yóu-hěn-duō-chángchū. Tā-yìdiár-duǎn-chū-dōu-méi-yǒu-ma?
14. Nèijiàn-shìqing wǒde-kànfǎ gēn-nǐde-kànfǎ bù-yíyàng.
15. Nǐde-wènǎ-bú-duì.
16. Táng-cù-yú gēn-hóng-shāo-yú-de-zuǒfǎ bù-yíyàng.
17. Ní-bǎ-nèige-wǎn nǎzhù-le.
18. Ní-bǎ-nèijiàn-shìqing xiě-zai-běnzi shang. Yàoburán-jìbuzhù.
19. Wǒ-gàosu-nǐ-de-shìqing 'jì-dezhù-jìbuzhù?
20. Shuō-huà yídìng-děi-zhùyì-qīngzhòng-yīn. Yàoburán jiù-xiàng-niàn-shū-le.
21. Yíge-rén tóngshí-zuò-liǎng-jiàn-shìqing yídìng-zuòde-bu-hǎo.
22. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie gēn-'Qián-Xiǎojie tāmen-shi-tóngxué.
23. Xué-wénxué gēn-xué-yǔyán-xué tóngyàngde-nán.
24. 'Gāo-Xiǎnsheng 'Máo-Xiǎnsheng dōu-zài Sān-Yǒu-Shū-diàn-zuò-shì. Tāmen-shi-tóngshì.
25. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Gāo-Xiǎnsheng tāmen-liǎngwèi-tóngsuì.
- guage, fix in mind the tones of every word. Don't say them wrong.
- You say he has a lot of good points. Doesn't he have any shortcomings at all?
- In that matter, your way of looking at it and my way of looking at it differ.
- Your way of asking the question is not right.
- The way of making sweet-and-sour fish and red-cooked fish is not the same.
- Take a firm hold on that bowl.
- Write that business in your notebook. Otherwise you won't be able to remember it.
- Can you bear in mind that business I told you about?
- When you speak, you must be sure to pay attention to stress. Otherwise it will be like reading a book (aloud).
- If a person does two things at the same time he will certainly do them badly.
- Miss Gao and Miss Qian are fellow students.
- Studying literature and linguistics is equally difficult.
- Mr. Gao and Mr. Mao both work in the Three Friends Bookstore. They are fellow workers.
- Professor Wanamaker and Mr. Gao are both the same age.

## MONOLOGUE

Wǒ-shì-yíge-Měiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué-de-shíhou jiù-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán-le. Wó-hén-xiǎode-shíhou jiù-tīngshuō-Zhōngguó, suǒ-yì-jiù-xiǎng zhǎng-dà-le dào-'Zhōngguó-qu-niàn-shū. Zài-gāozhōng niàn-shū-de-shíhou wó-yǐjīng-shíjǐsuìle, yé-dǒngle-hěn-duō-de-shìqing. Wǒ-jiù-xiǎng rén-gēn-rén-zuò-péngyou bìdēi-yòng-yǔyán cái-néng-míngbai-liǎngge-rénde-yìsi. Wǒ-rúguǒ-dào-Zhōngguó-qu wǒ-jiù-děi-rènshi-'Zhōngguó-péngyou, nènmo-wǒ-bìdēi-xué-Zhōngguó-huà, suǒyì-zài-zhōngxué jiù-kāishǐ-xué. Suí-rán-méi-xuéhǎo kěshi-yòngle-bù-shǎode-gōngfu.

Zài-kāishǐ-xué-de-shíhou hěn-bu-róngyì, kěshi-wǒ-duì-ta hén-yǒu-xìng-qu. Wǒ-kāishǐ-xiān-xué-sìshēng, fāyīn, pīnyīn. Wàiguó-rén kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán duì-fāyīn shì-hěn-bu-róngyìde-yíjiàn-shì. Yīnwei-Zhōngguó-huà gēn-Yīngguó-huà-de-fāyīn yìdiár-yě-bù-yíyàng, suǒyì-hěn-bu-róngyì. Yǐhòu-mànmǎrde-liànxi bíjiǎo-róngyì-duō-le.

Wǒ-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-huà shì-yòng-pīnyīnde-fāngfǎ-xué-de. Zhèige-fázi-hǎojǐle. Xuéhuì-le-pīnyīn yí-kàn-jiù-huì-niàn-le. Yǒude-rén-shuō Zhōngguó-yǔyán bìdēi-yòng-Hànzì-xué, rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn xué-le-bàntiān háishi-bù-rènshi-Zhōngguó-zì; xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán-gēn-wénxué bìdēi-yòng-Hànzì-xué-cái-duì. Wǒ-juéde-shuō-de-bù-hěn-duì. Wó-xiǎng xiān-xuéhuì-le-pīnyīn, fāyīn, sìshēng yě-míngbai-tāde-yìsi-le yě-huì-shuō-yǐhòu, zài-kāishǐ-xué-Hànzì bíjiǎo-róngyìde-duō. Yàoburán Hànzì-shì-měige-yīnjié dōu-yǒu-shēng-de.

Rúguǒ yíge-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngguó-huà-de-wàiguó-rén jiù-yòng-Hànzì-xué nènmo-sìshēng-qīngzhòngyīn dōu-bù-zhīdào. Měige-yīnjié-fāyīn méi-yǒu-qīngzhòngyīn, dōu-yíyàng. Nà-nǎr-shì-shuō-huà-ne? Shì-niàn-zì-ne. Bǐfang-shuō-cér wǒmen-shuō-huà-shì-'yíge-yīnjié. Pīnchulai yě-shì-yíge-yīnjié. Hànzì shì-liǎngge-zì liǎngge-yīnjié, jiù-shì-cí, ér. Zhè-bù-shì-shuō-huà-ne. Zhè-shì-niàn-zì.

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Bái-Wénshān-dǎ-mén. Gāo-Xiáojie-kāi-mén. Shéi-dào-Gāo-jiā-lái-le?
2. Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai dōu-xǐhuan-zài-Rìběn-'duō-zhù-jǐtiān. Měiyīng-láo-xiǎng-huǐlai. Shéi-bu-xǐhuan zài-Rìběn-duō-zhù-ne?
3. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō xué-yǔyán zuì-hǎode-fázi shì-yòng-pīnyīnde-fázi.

- 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō pīnyīnde-fāngǎ-bù-hǎo. Shéi-xǐhuan-pīnyīnde-fāngǎ-ne?
4. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō Bái-Xiānsheng-sìshēng-hén-zhǔn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-de-Zhōngwén shuōde-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?
5. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō xué-Zhōngwén xiān-xué-Hànzi zuì - róngyi. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-shuō xiān-xué-pīnyīn zuì-róngyi. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng-shuō pīnyīn-zuì-róngyi háishi-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng-shuō pīnyīn-zuì-róngyi?
6. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō yīnggāi-xiān-liànxi-xiě-jùzi. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō xiān-xué-yúfǎ. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō yīnggāi-xiān-zuò-shénmo?
7. Qíng-ni-shuō nǐ-xiànzài-niànde-zhèige-jùzi shi-yòng-pīnyīn-xiě-de hái-shi-yòng-Hànzi-xiě-de?
8. Gāoxìng-zhèige-cér shi-jǐge-yīnjié?
9. Hànzi-de-Hàn shi-dì-jǐshēng?
10. Zìjǐ-zhèige-cér něige-yīnjié-shi-dì-sìshēng?

## NOTES

1. The adverb yuè 'more' is used twice, before successive verb expressions, to mean 'the more . . . the more . . .':

Diǎnxin-yuè-tián-yuè-hǎo. 'As for desserts, the sweeter the better.'  
Tā-yuè-shuō wǒ-yuè-bù-dǒng. 'The more he talks the less I understand.'

Similarly, yuè-lái-yuè means '(become) more and more':

Tā-yuè-lái-yuè-yònggōng. 'He's becoming more and more diligent.'  
Tā-yuè-lái-yuè chīde-duō. 'He's eating more and more.'

2. Stative verbs expressing manner (Lesson 10, Note 2) sometimes occur in reduplicated form (that is, doubled) before the verb. The second occurrence is always in the first tone (e.g. mànmǎn); the whole expression often has the Pekingese r suffix, which may modify the syllable to which it is attached (e.g. mànmǎr); and the suffix de is generally attached at the end (e.g. mànmǎrde). Here are some examples:

hǎo : hǎohǎorde 'well,' 'diligently,' 'carefully'  
kuài : kuàikuārde 'quickly'  
duō : duōduōrde 'in a large quantity'  
màn : mànǎrde 'slowly'

3. Measures are often reduplicated, with or without the suffix r at the end, to mean 'every [occurrence of the measure]':

tiāntiān 'every day'

bénběr 'every volume'

Wǒ-tiāntiān-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn. 'I eat Chinese food every day.'

Zhèixiē-shū bénběr-dōu-hěn-nán-niàn. 'Every one of these books is hard to read.'

The noun rén reduplicated means 'everyone, everybody':

Rénrén-dōu-xǐhuan-ta. 'Everybody likes him.'

Dōu 'all' is often used with these expressions, reinforcing the all-inclusive meaning.

4. Nearly all Chinese characters (zì) represent single syllables of Chinese speech. Because so many Chinese words are monosyllabic, zì is also often used in the meaning 'word' as well as 'syllable,' so that it overlaps in meaning with cí and cér, both of which mean 'word [monosyllabic or polysyllabic].'
5. The syllabic units of Chinese have varying degrees of freedom. Wǒ 'I' is a FREE FORM—for example, it can occur alone (as in answer to the question 'Who's there?'). The syllable mén in wǒmèn, on the other hand, is a COMBINING FORM—it never occurs by itself but is always suffixed to something, and is always neutral in tone. Both free forms and combining forms are used with a great deal of freedom to form compound words and phrases. In this lesson we see the following examples:

- (a) The combining form fǎ 'method' occurs as an initial syllable, with second tone, in fǎzì 'method'; it also occurs as a suffixed element, in third tone, in combinations:

fāngfǎ	'method'	wénfǎ	'grammar (of writing)'
huàfǎ	'way of painting'	wènfǎ	'way of asking'
kànfǎ	'way of looking (at something)'	xiéfǎ	'way of writing'
niànfǎ	'way of reading <u>or</u> studying'	xuéfǎ	'way of studying'
shuōfǎ	'way of speaking <u>or</u> saying'	yúfǎ	'grammar (of speech)'
		zuòfǎ	'way of doing'

(On the term fāngfǎ see also Supplementary Lesson 22, Note 1)

- (b) The combining form chū, a neutral-toned syllable, is suffixed to a few verbs, chiefly stative, to form related noun expressions:

hǎo 'good'	:	hǎochū 'benefit'
duǎn 'short'	:	duǎnchū 'shortcoming'
nán 'difficult'	:	nánchū 'difficulty'
cháng 'long'	:	chángchū 'advantage'
yòng 'use [verb]'	:	yòngchū 'use [noun]'

(On the term nánchū see also Supplementary Lesson 22, Note 2)

- (c) Gěi 'give' in its neutral form gei is suffixed to some verbs in the meaning 'to':

nágei	'bring to'
sònggei	'send to'
màigei	'sell to'

- (d) The neutral syllable zhu, which is derived from the free form zhù 'live (in a place),' is suffixed to verbs in the meaning 'firmly':

názhu 'hold firmly'  
jìzhu 'bear firmly in mind'

Expressions with zhu are resultative compounds:

nábuzhù 'unable to hold firmly'  
jìdezhu 'able to bear firmly in mind'

(Note that in these last forms the tone reappears on zhù.)

- (e) The syllable tóng 'same' is joined as a prefix to various elements to form special phrases:

with shí (short for shíhou) 'time' :

tóngshí 'at the same time'

with shì 'job' :

tóngshì 'co-worker'

with suì 'year of age' :

tóngsuì 'be of the same age'

with yàng 'kind' :

tóngyàng 'be similar,' '(be) equal (to)'

- (f) The syllable yǔ 'speech,' which we have encountered in yǔyán 'speech,' occurs also in the combination yúfǎ 'grammar (of speech)' and in the names of specific spoken languages:

Hànyǔ 'Chinese'  
Yīngyǔ 'English'

6. The suffix zi, which has the function of signaling a noun, is attached to a number of syllables, most of them combining forms. The following are the nouns we have had so far with this ending :

fázi	'method'	kuàizi	'chopsticks'
háizi	'child'	shīzi	'lion'
fángzi	'house'	piānzi	'movie'
běnzǐ	'notebook'	jiǎozi	'dumpling'
míngzi	'name'	yāzi	'duck'
bēizi	'cup'	jùzi	'sentence'

7. The Pekingese suffix r is attached to various kinds of words :

infrequently to verbs :

wán, wár 'have fun'

more often to measures :

běn, běr 'volume'

and most often to nouns :

mén, mér 'door'  
cí, cér 'word'  
dān, dār 'list'

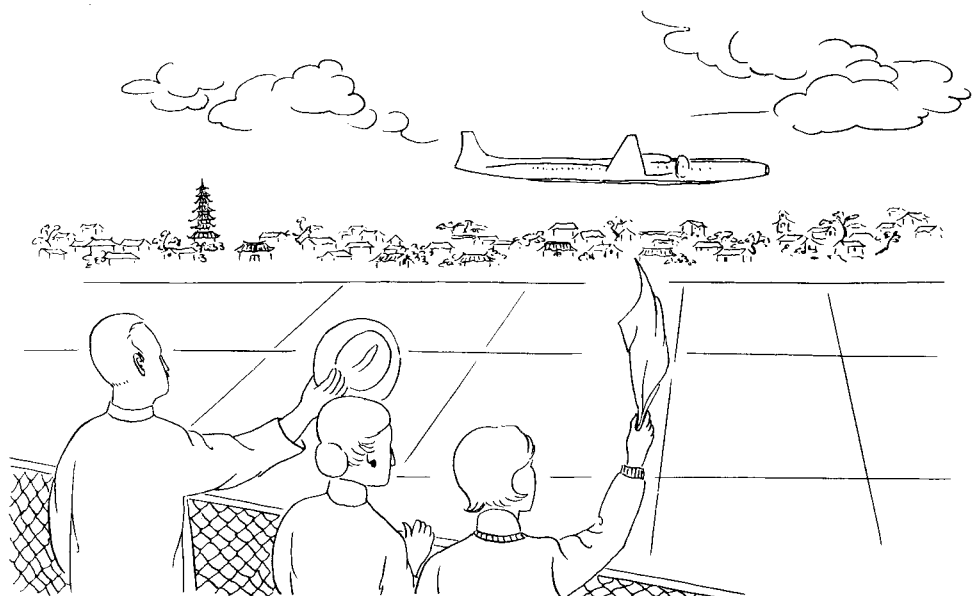
The process of suffixing an r often alters or modifies the spelling of a syllable. (See pp. xxvii–xxviii.)

8. Reduplication of xiě 'write' and zhǎo 'seek' results in the forms xiéxie 'write (a bit)' and zháozhao 'look (for a while),' in which the original third tone shifts to second under the influence of the second syllable—the latter also having been third tone originally but here occurring in the neutral tone. Another example of this sort of shift is fǎ becoming fá in fázi 'method.'
9. The term zhòng-yīn—literally 'heavy sound'—means '[a specific instance of] stress or emphasis'; qīngzhòngyīn, literally 'light and heavy sound,' means 'stress [in general, and of any degree].'
10. The term sìshēng, literally 'four tones,' refers either specifically to the four full tones of Chinese, or to the tones of the language in general.
11. The adverb zhèng 'just (now)' modifies verbs whose action is in progress at the time of speaking. Zhèng is often combined with zài 'at' and followed at the end of the sentence by the particle ne:
 

Wǒ-zhèng-chī-fàn-ne. 'I'm eating right now.'

Tā-zhèng-zài-kàn-shū-ne. 'He's [just in the act of] reading.'
12. Bǐfang 'example' combined with shuō 'say' results in the phrase bǐfang-shuō 'for example.'
13. From the Han dynasty (B.C. 206–220 A.D.), one of the periods of greatest Chinese grandeur, comes Hàn, a slightly more literary name for China and the Chinese than Zhōngguo. The phrase Zhōngguo-rén has a broader application than Hàn-rén: Zhōngguo-rén refers to a citizen of China of whatever national origin, while Hàn-rén refers specifically to a Chinese person (as against a Mongol or any other member of a minority nationality).
14. The expressions wénfǎ and yúfǎ, both meaning 'grammar,' are sometimes used in the senses 'grammar of the written language' and 'grammar of the spoken language' respectively. Many people use them synonymously, however, and that is the practice we have adopted in this textbook. In actual practice yúfǎ is used more often than wénfǎ.

Lesson 23 LEAVING CHINA



“Yílù-píng'ān!”

Dialogue: Mr. and Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao see Mr. White off at the airport.

'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-huí-guó-le.  
Tā-shì-zuò-fēijī-huìqu. Zǎo-  
chen Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai,  
Měiyīng sāngè-rén dōu-dào-Bái-  
Xiānsheng-zhù-de-dìfang qu-jiē-  
ta, bāngzhu-ta yíkuàr-dào-fēijī-  
chǎng-qu.

Bái: Zǎo! 'Tài-láojià-le. Zhēn-  
bùgǎndāng.

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Nārde-huà-ne. 10  
Wǒmen-yīnggāi-lái-de-me.  
Dōngxī dōu-shōushihǎo-le-  
ma?

Bái: 'Méi-shénmo-dōngxī-le. Wǒ-  
de-shū qián-jǐtiān yǒu-ge-  
péngyou-zuò-chuán-huìqu  
'dōu-ràng-ta-dàizǒu-le. 15

Mr. White is about to return to  
the United States. He is going  
back by plane. In the morning  
Mr. Gao, Mrs. Gao, and Meiyang  
all go to the place where Mr.  
White lives to meet him, help  
him, and go to the airport to-  
gether.

Good morning! I've put you to  
too much trouble. I really don't  
deserve this.

Nonsense. Of course we should  
come. Are your things all  
packed?

I don't have anything much left  
any more. A few days ago I had  
a friend who is returning by boat  
take all my books.



- Gāo-Tàitai: Zǒu-ba. Wǒmen-xiān-dào-fēijīchǎng-cāntīng zài-nèr-mànmǎrde-tán-ba. 20  
Let's go. Supposing we go to the airport cafeteria first and have a leisurely talk there.
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Dào-Rìběn-yào-'jǐ-ge-zhōngtóu?  
How many hours does it take to Japan?
- Bái: Dàgài-sān-sìge-zhōngtóu. Chàbuduō-xiàwǔ liángdiǎn-zhōng kényi-dào-le. Měiyīng, yíkuàr-dào-Měiguó-qu 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? 25  
About three or four hours. We will [lit. can] get there about two P.M. Meiying, how about our going to America together?
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Zènmo-máng nǐ-hái-shuō-xiàohuar.  
Even being in a hurry doesn't keep you from joking.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒmen 'zǎo-yì-diǎr-dào-fēijīchǎng-yé-hǎo. (Tāmen-zài-mén-kǒur-shàng-qìchē.) Nǐmen-sānge-rén zài-'hòubiār-zuò. Wǒ-zuò-qianbiār. 30  
It's not a bad idea for us to get to the airport a little early. (They get in the car at the door.) You three sit in back. I'll sit in front.
- Bái: Háishi-ràng-wǒ zài-qianbiār-zuò-ba.  
Let me sit in front.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Yíyàng, yíyàng.  
It's all the same.
- Gāo-Tàitai: Wénshān, zhè-jǐtiān-shòushi-dōngxi yídìng-mángde-bùdéliǎo. Hěn-lèi-ba. 40  
Vincent, you must have been terribly busy these days packing your things. I suppose you're very tired.
- Bái: Méi-shénmo. Wǒde-dōngxi-shǎo, suóyì-'hěn-róngyì-shòushi. 45  
Not particularly. I don't have many things, so it was quite easy to pack.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Xīwang-nǐ-míng-nián-bìyè-yǐhòu 'zài-dào-Zhōngguó-lái.  
I hope after you graduate next year you will come to China again.
- Bái: Wó-hěn-xīwang 'zài-huīlai.  
I hope very much to come back again.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Nǐ-huídào-Měiguó háishi-jìxué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-ma? 50  
When you return to America will you go on studying Chinese language and literature?
- Bái: Shì. Búdàn-'jìxué, wǒ-hái-děi hǎohāorde-xué-ne.  
Yes. I'll keep on with it, and I'll have to study hard too.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Xué-yìzhōng-xué-wen rúguǒ-xīwang-xuédehǎo, zuì-yào-jǐn-de shì-yào-yóng-yuǎn-xuéxia-qu. 55  
When you study anything [lit. any branch of learning], if you hope to [be able to] master it, the most important thing is to keep on studying all the time.
- Bái: Nín-shuōde-hěn-duì. Nínde-huà dōu-shì-yǒu-'jīngyan-de-huà. 60  
What you say is quite right. Your words are the words of experience.

- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Dào-'Rìběn dǎ-suan-zhù-jǐtiān-ne? How many days do you plan to stay in Japan?
- Bái: Dàgài-bú-dào-yíge-xīngqī. Zài-Dōngjīng-Dàxué wó-yǒu-yíwèi-lǎoshī wǒ-děi-qu-kànkān-ta. Nèi-wèi-lǎoshī shì-yíwèi-hén-yǒu-míng-de-yǔyánxuéjiā. Guānyú-yǔyánxué-zhèi-fāngmiàn wǒ-gēn-ta-dédào-bù-shǎo-de-xuéwen. 65 Perhaps less than a week. At Tokyo University I have a teacher I must see. He's a famous linguist. I've acquired quite a lot of knowledge from him about linguistics. 70
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Duì-le. Yīng-gāi-qu-kànkān-ta. That's right. You should go see him.
- Bái: Wǒ-zhèicì-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū, péngyoumen-duì-wǒ-dōu-hén-hǎo. Yóu-qíshì-nǐmen-liǎngwèi. Zhè-shì-wó-yóngyuǎn-bù-néng-wàng-de. 75 On this (occasion of my) coming to China to study, (my) friends have been very good to me. Especially you two. This is something I can never forget. 80
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Bié-kèqi. Don't mention it.
- Bái: Měiyīng-sòng-wǒ-de-nèi-zhāng Hángzhōu-shānshuǐ-huà, wǒ-dào-jiā-yǐhòu bǎ-ta-guàqilai, qǐng-wǒde-péngyoumen-kànkān. 85 That Hangchow landscape that Meiying presented to me—after I get back home I'm going to hang it up and invite my friends to take a look at it.
- Gāo-Xiǎojie: Déle, déle. Bié-guà. Huàde-bù-hǎo. [Enough, enough.] Don't hang it up. It's no good.
- Bái: 'Hén-hǎo. It's very good.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Cóng-'Rìběn jǐge-zhōngtóu-jiù-dào-Měiguó-le. Bǐ-zuò-chuán kuàide-duō. 90 From Japan you'll be getting to America in just a few hours. It's a lot faster than traveling by boat.
- Gāo-Tàitai: Wénshān, Gāo-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-lǚxíng. Shuōbudìng wǒmen-huòzhè-dào-Měiguó-qu-zhāo-ni. 95 Vincent, Mr. Gao loves to travel. Perhaps we might be going to America to see you.
- Bái: Nà-huānyíng-jíle. Wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin-tāmen 'hén-xīwang rěnshì-nǐmen-liǎngwèi. Wó-gěi-fùqin-mǔqin-tāmen-xiě-xìn, cháng-tídào-nǐmen-jǐwèi. Rúguǒ-jiàndào-nǐmen-jǐwèi tāmen-'yíding-huānyíngde-bùdéliǎo. 100 Then you'd be most welcome. My father and mother hope very much to get to know both of you. In (writing) letters to them, I have often spoken of you. If they did manage to see you they would welcome you most cordially. 105
- Gāo-Tàitai: Wénshān, jiānglái-nǐ-dìdi-mèimei yě-dào-'Zhōngguo-lái-niàn-shū-ma? Vincent, will your younger brother and sister also come to China later to study?

- Bái: Bù-zhīdào jiānglái-tāmen-xué-shénmo. Rúguǒ-tāmen-xué 'Dōngfāng-wénhuà tāmen-kěnéng-dào-Zhōng-guo-lái. 110 I don't know what they'll study [later]. If they study Oriental civilization there's a possibility that they will come to China.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Dào-le. Shíhou-zǎode-hěn. Wǒmen-xiān-dào-cāntīng. 115 Here we are. It's quite early. Let's go first to the cafeteria.
- Bái: Hǎo-ba. Very good.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wénshān, nǐ-chī-shénmo? 120 Vincent, what would you like to eat?
- Bái: Wǒ-shénmo-yě-bù-chī. Wó-yǐjing-chīguo-zǎofàn. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi-gēn-Měiyīng 'chī-diar-shénmo. I'm not having anything. I've already had breakfast. You two and Meiyang have something.
- Gāo-Xiānsheng: Wǒmen-chīguo-zǎofàn cái-dào-nǐ-nèr-qù-de. Nènmo-wǒmen 'dōu-hē-chá-ba. 125 We didn't go to your place until after we'd had breakfast. Then let's all have tea.
- (Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai kàn-jian-tāmende-lǎo-péngyou Wáng-Xiānsheng Wáng-Tàitai xià-fēijī, zǒuguoqu-gēn-tāmen-tán-huà.) 130 (Mr. and Mrs. Gao, seeing some old friends of theirs, Mr. and Mrs. Wang, getting off a plane, walk over and chat with them.)
- Bái: Měiyīng, nèi-liǎngwèi-shi-shéi? Meiyang, who are those two?
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Shi-Wáng-Xiānsheng Wáng-Tàitai. Tāmen-gēn-fùqīn-mǔqīn shi-lǎo-péngyou. Tāmen-qùnián-chūqu-lǚxíng. Xiànzài-bu-zhīdào cóng-'nǎr-huílai-le. 135 They're Mr. and Mrs. Wang. They're old friends of father and mother. They went on a trip last year. I don't know where they're coming back from now.
- Bái: Měiyīng, zài-zhèi-yìnián-lǐtou wǒmen-liǎngge-rén shì-zuì-hǎode-péngyou-le. Chàbuduō wǒmen-měi-xīng-qī dōu-yào-jiàndao liǎng-sāncì. Xiànzài-wǒmen-yào-hěn-'chángde-shíhou bú-jiàn-le. Xīwang-nǐ-cháng-géi-wo-xiě-xìn. 140 Meiyang, (in) this year the two of us have become very good friends. We've seen each other almost two or three times a week. Now we won't be seeing each other any more for a long time. I hope you will write me often.
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Dāngrán-géi-ni-xiě-xìn-le. 150 Of course I'll write you.
- Bái: Ní-'jítian géi-wo-xiě-yì-fēng-xìn? How often will you write me?
- Gāo-Xiáojie: Ní-géi-wo-xiě-xìn, wǒ-mǎshàng-jiù-géi-ni-huí-xìn. 155 Whenever you write me, I'll send you a return letter immediately.

Bái: Hǎo-ba.

Fine.

Gāo-Xiǎojie: Nǐ-gāngcái-shuō  
kěnéng-zài-huílai. Xī-  
wang-nǐ-'zhēnde-huílai. 160

You said a moment ago it was possible that you would come back again. I hope you really will come back.

Bái: Zhēnde. Wǒ-xīwang-bù-  
jiǔ jiu-huílai.

I really will. I hope I can come back before long.

(Gāo-Xiǎosheng Gāo-Tàitai huí-  
lai-le.)

(Mr. and Mrs. Gao return.)

Gāo-Xiǎosheng: Wénshān, shí-  
hou-chàbuduō-le. Gāi-  
shàng-fēijī-le. 165

Vincent, it's just about time. You should get on the plane.

Gāo-Xiǎojie: Nǐ-zài-dào-Zhōng-  
guo-lái shì-zuò-fēijī-shì-  
zuò-chuán? 170

When you come to China again, will you travel by plane or by boat?

Gāo-Xiǎosheng: Zhèi-háizi! Tā-  
hái-méi-zǒu-ne, nǐ-jiu-wèn-  
ta zuò-shénmo-huílai. Tā-  
xiànzài-'zěnmó-zhīdao-ne?  
Wénshān, xīwang-ni-zǎo-  
yìdiǎr-huílai. 175

This child! He hasn't left yet, and you ask him how he's returning. How could he know now? Vincent, I hope you will be coming back soon.

Bái: Hǎo.

Yes.

Gāo-Xiǎosheng: Zhù-ni-yílù-  
píng'ān.

I wish you a pleasant trip.

Bái: Xièxie. Zàijiàn. 180

Thank you. Good-bye.

Gāo-Tàitai: Yílù-píng'ān. Huí-  
jiā-wèn-hǎo.

Have a nice trip. When you get back home give my best.

Bái: Xièxie-nín.

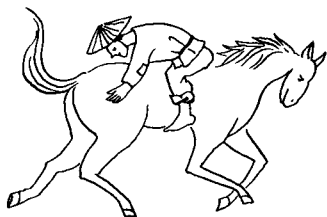
Thank you.

Gāo-Xiǎojie: Xiě-xìn. Zàijiàn.  
Yílù-píng'ān! 185

Write me. Good-bye! Bon voyage!

Bái: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.

Good-bye!



Wó-mǎshàng-jiu-lái!

## VOCABULARY

bùgǎndāng	(I'm) not equal to the honor, I don't deserve it (Note 12)
cāntīng	cafeteria (N) [lit. meal room]
dài	carry; take along (a thing or person) (TV)
dé	get, attain (TV) (Note 10)
Dōngfāng	Orient, the East (PW) [lit. east region] (See Supplementary Lesson 23, Note 1)
fāngmiàn	side (figurative), aspect (M) [lit. side face]
fēijīchǎng	airport, airfield (N)
fēng	(measure for letters, i.e. mail)
guà	hang (TV)
-jīng	capital (N) (Note 5)
jìxù	continue (doing something) (AV)
kěnéng	possible (SV) [lit. may able]
láojià	I've caused you trouble. Sorry to trouble you. (Note 13)
lǎoshī	teacher, tutor (N) [lit. old teacher] (Note 4)
lèi	tired; tiring (SV)
mǎshàng	immediately (AD) [lit. on horseback] (Mǎ is also a surname)
míngnián	next year (TW)
píng'ān	peaceful, at peace, safe (SV) [lit. even peace] (Note 11)
qiántian	day before yesterday (TW) [lit. front day]
ràng	let, request (TV); by (CV) (Note 7)
shōushi	straighten up, put in order, pack (TV) [lit. collect gather]
wénhuà	culture, civilization (N) [lit. literature change]
wǔ	noon (TW) (Note 8)
xiào	laugh (at) (V)
xiàohuà(r)	joke (N) [lit. laugh speech]
xíngli	baggage (N)
yàoǐn	important (SV) [lit. important urgent]
yónguǎn	forever, always (AD) [lit. eternal far]
zǎo	early (SV) (Note 9); long since (AD) (Note 9)
zhù	wish (someone something) (TV)

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Yì-gōngyuánde-rén dōu-zǒule.                 | the whole<br>the people in the whole park<br>Everyone in the park has left.                     |
| 2. Tā-yì-tiān-dào-wǎn zuò-shì.                  | the whole day<br>the whole day until late<br>He works all day long until late.                  |
| 3. Fēijīchǎng 'zěnmó-méi-yǒu-fēijī?             | airplane<br>airfield<br>How come there are no planes at the airfield?                           |
| 4. Yì-cāngtīngde-rén dōu-shì-wàiguó-rén.        | cafeteria<br>people in the whole cafeteria<br>Everyone in [the whole] cafeteria is a foreigner. |
| 5. Zhè-jǐtiān túshūguǎn yào-shōushi-shū.        | put in order<br>For these few days the library will be putting books in order.                  |
| 6. Wǒ-jǐntiān-yì-tiān shōushi-xínglǐ.           | baggage<br>put baggage in order, pack<br>I've been packing the whole day.                       |
| 7. Wó-xiǎng wó-yóngyuǎn-bù-huì-shuō Zhōngwén.   | forever<br>never able to speak<br>I think I shall never be able to speak Chinese.               |
| 8. Wó-xīwang-zuò-kēxuéjiā.                      | science<br>scientist<br>I hope to become a scientist.   |
| 9. Tāde-lǎoshī yòu-shì-kēxuéjiā yòu-shì-huàjiā. | teacher<br>is a scientist<br>is a painter<br>His teacher is both a scientist and an artist.     |
| 10. Háizimen 'dōu-xǐhuan-wán.                   | child<br>children<br>All children like to play.   |
| 11. Nǐ-xiào-shénmo?                             | laugh<br>What are you laughing at?  |
| xiào  | laugh   |

- xiàohua  
shuō-xiàohua  
12. Wǒde-lǎoshī hěn-huì-shuō-xiàohua.  
joke  
tell jokes  
My teacher is very good at telling jokes.
- wénhuà  
xīfāng-wénhuà  
13. 'Xīfāng-wénhuà méi-yǒu-  
'Dōngfāng-wénhuà nènmo-lǎo.  
culture  
Western civilization  
Western civilization isn't as old as Oriental civilization.
- kěnéng  
14. Zhèijiàn-shì hén-kěnéng.  
be possible  
This matter is quite possible.
- kěnéng  
zuò-huàjiā-de-kěnéng  
15. Wǒ-méi-yǒu zuò-huàjiā-de-kěnéng.  
possibility  
possibility of being an artist  
There's no possibility of my becoming an artist.
- jìxu  
16. Qíng-nǐ-jìxu-niàn.  
continue (to do something)  
Please continue reading (aloud).
- lèi  
17. Nǐ-yídìng-hěn-lèi-le-ba.  
tired  
You must be very tired.
- ràng  
18. Ràng-tā-zuò.  
let  
Let him do it.
- ràng  
ràng-wǒ  
19. Shū-ràng-wó-mǎilai-le.  
by  
by me  
The books were bought by me.
- ràng-tā  
ràng-tā-máizǒu  
ràng-tā-géi-máizǒu-le  
20. Shū-dōu-ràng-tā géi-máizǒu-le.  
by him  
bought by him  
bought by him  
The books were all bought by him.
- guà  
guàqilai  
21. Zhèizhāng-huà shì-'shéi-guàqilai-de?  
hang  
hang up  
By whom was the painting hung up?
- fēng  
zhèifēng-xìn  
22. Zhèifēng-xìn shì-'shéi-xiě-de?  
(measure for letters)  
this letter  
By whom was this letter written?
- dài  
dài-bǐ  
23. Zāogāo! Wǒ-wàngle-dài-bǐ-le.  
carry, bring, take  
bring a pen  
Darn! I forgot to bring a pen.
- zǎo  
early

- hén-záo-qǐlai  
24. Wǒ-tiāntian hén-záo-qǐlai. get up early  
I get up early every day.
- zǎo  
zǎo-huí -jiā-le  
25. Tāmen-dōu-zǎo-huí -jiā-le. long ago  
long since returned home  
They have all long since returned home.
- míngnian  
míngnian-kāishǐ-niàn  
26. Wǒ-míngnian kāishǐ-niàn-dàxué. next year  
begin studying next year  
I'll begin studying at the university next year.
- nán  
Nánjīng  
27. Nǐ-qùguo-Nánjīng-ma? south  
Nanking (southern capital)  
Have you ever been to Nanking?
- běi  
Běijīng  
28. Nánjīng-méi-you-Běijīng-dà. north  
Peking (northern capital)  
Nanking isn't as big as Peking.
- Běijīng  
Běijīng-huà  
29. Tāde-Běijīng-huà shuōde-hǎojíle. Peking  
Peking dialect  
He speaks excellent Pekingese.
- dōng  
Dōngjīng  
30. Xiànzài-Dōngjīng bí-Niǔyue-rén-duō. east  
Tokyo (eastern capital)  
There are now more people in Tokyo than New York.
- wǔ  
zhōngwǔ  
31. Wǒ-míngtian-zhōngwú-zǒu. noon  
noon  
I'm leaving at noon tomorrow.
- shàngwǔ  
32. Chuán shàngwǔ-shídiǎn-zhōng-kāi. forenoon, A.M.  
The boat leaves at ten A.M.
- xiàwǔ  
33. Qǐng-nín xiàwǔ-sāndiǎn-bàn-lái. afternoon, P.M.  
Please come at three-thirty P.M.
- wǔfàn  
34. Wǒmen-wǔfàn bù-chī-ròu. lunch  
We don't have meat at lunch.
- yàoǐn  
zuì-yàoǐnde  
35. Zuì-yàoǐnde shi-fāyīn. important  
the most important thing  
The most important thing is pronunciation.
- bú-yàoǐn  
36. Tā-'qù-bu-qù dōu-bú-yàoǐn. not important  
It doesn't matter whether he goes or not.



- zhù  
37. Zhù-ní-kǎo-dì-yī.  
wish, hope  
I hope you get first on the exams.
- píng'ān  
píng'ān-huí-jiā  
38. Xīwang-nǐ-píng'ān-huí-jiā.  
peaceful, safe and sound  
return home safe and sound  
I hope you return home safe and sound.
- fāngmiàn  
39. Zhèige-wèntí yóu-'liǎngfāng-miàn.  
side, aspect  
There are two sides to this question.
- jǐfāngmiàn  
40. Zhōngguo-wénhuà 'yóu-jǐfāng-miàn.  
several aspects  
There are several aspects to Chinese civilization.
- yìfāngmiàn  
duì-yǔyán-yìfāngmiàn  
41. Wǒ-duì-'yǔyán-yìfāngmiàn hén-yǒu-xìngqu.  
one aspect  
regarding the one aspect of language  
I am very much interested in the linguistic aspect.
- dé  
42. Èr-sì-dé-bā.  
get, obtain  
Two fours are eight.
- déle  
43. Fàn-déle-ma?  
finished, ready  
Is the food ready?
- déle  
xiědéle  
44. Ní-xiědéle-ma?  
finished  
finished writing  
Have you finished writing?
- dédào  
dédào-tāde-xìn  
45. Wǒ-zuótian dédào-le-tāde-xìn.  
obtain, receive, get  
receive a letter from him  
I received a letter from him yesterday.
- láojià  
46. Láojià ní-géi-wo mǎi-yìzhī-bǐ-lai.  
I trouble you  
May I trouble you to buy a pen for me?
- bùgǎndāng  
47. Xièxie-ni, wǒ-bùgǎndāng.  
I don't deserve it  
Thank you, I don't deserve it.
- qián  
qiántian  
48. Tā-shi-'qiántian-zǒu-de.  
front  
day before yesterday  
He left day before yesterday.
- 'qián-jǐtiān  
49. Tā-shi-'qián-jǐtiān-zǒu-de.  
a few days ago  
He left a few days ago.
- mǎshàng  
immediately

50. Wó-mǎshàng-jiù-lái.

I'm coming right away.

Dōngfāng

Orient

Dōngfāng-lìshǐ

Oriental history

51. Wǒ-xué-Dōngfāng-lìshǐ.

I'm studying Oriental history.

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 23.1. Use of yī 'one' as 'the whole' (Note 1 below)

<u>yī</u>	N/M	
'whole'	Noun/Measure	
yì	xuéxiào	'the whole school'
yì	tiān	'the whole day'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Yì-chéng-rén dōu-pǎo-le.                             | Everyone in the city has fled.                             |
| 2. Yì-fēijīchǎngde-rén dōu-shi-jiē-péngyou-de.          | Everyone in the airport is meeting friends.                |
| 3. Yì-cāntīngde-rén dōu-hē-chá chī-diǎnxin.             | Everyone in the cafeteria is having tea and dessert.       |
| 4. Yì-túshūguǎnde-rén 'dōu-shi-lái-kàn-shū-de-ma?       | Has everyone in the library come to read?                  |
| 5. Yì-fángzi-rén dōu-shi-bāng-zhu-ta shōushi-xíngli-de. | Everyone in the house is helping him pack.                 |
| 6. Wǒ-yì-tiān méi-chū-mér.                              | I haven't been out of the house [lit. door] the whole day. |
| 7. Yì-jiā-rén yóngyuǎn-nènmo-hǎo.                       | The whole family is always so nice.                        |
| 8. Tā-yì-bēizi-shuǐ 'dōu-hē-le.                         | He drank the whole cup of water.                           |
| 9. Yì-xuéxiàode-xuésheng dōu-zǒu-le.                    | All the students in the school have left.                  |
| 10. Yì-lùshangde-rén dōu-shi-dào-'gōngyuán-qù-de.       | Everyone on the avenue has gone to the park.               |
| 11. Wǒ-yì-nián yě-méi-zuò-shì-le.                       | I haven't worked all year.                                 |
| 12. Nèige-xuésheng yì-'xīngqī-dōu-méi-niàn-shū-le.      | That student hasn't studied all week.                      |
| 13. Wǒ-yì-tiān shénmo-shì-yě-bù-zuò 'jiù-kàn-shū.       | I do nothing but read the whole day long.                  |
| 14. Yì-chuán-de-rén yì-tiān-dōu-méi-chī-fàn-le.         | Everyone on the ship has gone all day without eating.      |

15. Yì-běnzide-zì dōu-shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-xiě-de.

All the characters in the notebook were written by Mr. White.

Pattern 23.2. Use of Suffixes jiā and men (Notes 2-3 below)

Pattern 23.2 a.

N	- <u>jiā</u>	
Noun	- <u>jiā</u>	
lìshǐ 'history'	-jiā	'historian'

Pattern 23.2 b.

N	- <u>men</u>	
Noun	- <u>men</u>	
háizi 'child'	-men	'children'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Tāde-lǎoshī shi-yíwèi 'zuì-yǒu-míngde-yǔyánxuéjiā.   | His teacher is a very famous linguist.   |
| 2. Tā-shi-yíge yánjiu-Dōngfāng-wénhuàde-lìshǐjiā.   | He is a historian who does research in Oriental civilization.  |
| 3. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng suírán-shi-yíge-hén-yǒu-míng-de-huàjiā-le, kěshi-tā-hái jìxué.             | Although Mr. Wang is a famous artist, he continues to study.   |
| 4. Nèiwèi-wénxuéjiā zuì-xǐhuan-shuō-xiàohua.  | That literary man delights in telling jokes.   |
| 5. Nèiwèi-kēxuéjiā zhēn-cōng-míng. Yánjiuchu-hěn-duō-dōngxi.                                  | That scientist is really brilliant. He has discovered [lit. searched out] a lot of things.   |
| 6. Nèige-háizi shùxué-hén-hǎo. Yóngyuǎn-shi-tā-kǎo-dì-yī. Jiānglái kěnéng-shi-yíge-shùxuéjiā. | That youngster is very good in math. He always scores first in exams. It's possible that in the future he will be a mathematician. |
| 7. Jīntian-wǒmen xià-kè-hén-zǎo. Xiānshengmen-yǒu-shì.  | Today we left class very early. The teachers had something to do.  |
| 8. Gēn-péngyoumen-zài-yíkuàr shi-'zuì-gāoxìngde-yíjiàn-shì.                                   | It is a great pleasure to be with friends.   |
| 9. Háizimen-zuì-xǐhuan tīng-rén-shuō-xiàohua.   | Children delight in hearing people tell jokes.   |
| 10. Xuéshengmen-'dōu-xǐhuan dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-kāi-de-nèige-shūdiàn qu-mǎi-shū.               | All the students like to go to the bookstore run by Mr. Gao to buy books.  |

Pattern 23.3. Passive with ràng and jiào (Note 7 below)

S	<u>ràng/jiào</u>	O	(gěi)	V	(le)
Subject	<u>ràng/jiào</u>	Object	(gěi)	Verb	(le)
Fàn	ràng	tā		chī	le.

'The food was eaten by him.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nǐ-sòng-wǒde-nèizhāng-huàr<br>ràng-tā-gěi-guàqilai-le.                      | That painting that you presented<br>to me was hung up by him.                    |
| 2. Xiǎo-háizi jiào-dà-háizi géi-<br>dǎ-le.                                     | The little child was beaten by a<br>big child.                                   |
| 3. Nèixiē-diǎnxin ràng-wǒ-dìdi<br>gěi-chī-le.                                  | Those cakes were eaten by my<br>little brother.                                  |
| 4. Nèifēng-xìn hěn-yàoǐn. Ràng-<br>ta-gěi-wàngle-sòng-le.                      | That letter is very important.<br>(And) he forgot to send it.                    |
| 5. Zhèiběn-shū shūdiànli zhí-<br>yǒu-zhèi-yìběn-le. Jiào-tā-<br>gěi-mǎilai-le. | The bookstore had only one copy<br>of this book (left). It was bought<br>by him. |
| 6. Nèixiē-shū jiào-'Wáng-Xiān-<br>sheng gěi-dàiqu-le.                          | Those books were carried away<br>by Mr. King.                                    |
| 7. Nǐde-bǐ jiào-'tā-náqu-le.   | Your pen was taken away by him.  |
| 8. Nèiběn-shū yǐjīng-ràng-yí-<br>ge-xuésheng jièqu-le.                         | That book has already been taken<br>out by a student.                            |
| 9. Nèisuǒr-fángzi záo-yǐjīng-<br>jiào-bié-rén mǎiqu-le.                        | That house has long since been<br>purchased by someone else.                     |
| 10. Nǐde-zìdiǎn ràng-wǒ-dìdi<br>gěi-názǒu-le.                                  | Your dictionary was taken away<br>by my [younger] brother.                       |

## SUBSTITUTION TABLE

I: 64 sentences (Note 7)

huàr	ràng	shéi	—	mǎiqu	le
shū	jiào	tā	gěi	jièqu	
				názǒu	
				dàiqu	

## PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

## Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (V)

(Asterisks indicate changes of third tone to second tone.)

0 0 4	1 0 4	2 0 4
1 tāmende-piào	tā-cāibudui	gēn-xuésheng-qù
2 róngyide-shì	shéi-shuōde-huà	nán-háizi-dà
3 nǐmende-huàr	nǐ-chīde-màn	nǐ-xuéde-kuài
4 kèqide-huà	tài-duōde-cài	tèbiéde-cài
	3 0 4	4 0 4
	1 tā-xiěde-xìn	shuō-kèqi-huà
	2 nín-zěnmoyàng	nín-suànde-zhàng
	3 ní-zěnmoyàng *	wǒ-kànbujiàn
	4 yào-wǔge-cài	yào-sìge-cài
0 1 4	1 1 4	2 1 4
1 tāmen-chī-fàn	tā-chī-zhū-ròu	chī-hóng-shāo-ròu
2 fángzi-zhōngjiàn	lí-Zhōngshān-Lù	nín-méi-cāidui
3 wǒde-dōu-duì	nǐ-gāi-shuō-huà	nǐ-lái-chī-fàn
4 shèngxia-sānkuài	xià-xīngqīliù	zuò-tián-suān-ròu
	3 1 4	4 1 4
	1 dōu-hěn-gāoxìng	tā-zài-zhōngjiàr
	2 érqǐě-dōu-huì	yíkuài-chī-fàn
	3 wó-yǒu-sānkuài *	yě-yòng-zhū-ròu
	4 liùdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn	kuài-dào-shūdiàn

0 2 4	1 2 4	2 2 4
1 xiānsheng-bié-wèn	tā-dōu-néng-zuò	dāngrán-néng-zuò
2 lán-de-shéi-yào	cháng-chī-báicài	cóngqián-cháng-qù
3 xǐhuan-niú-ròu	wǒ-shuō-nán-zuò	dǒng-Húnán-huà
4 kuàizi-nán-yòng	dào-Sānfánshì	shùxué-méi-niàn

3 2 4	4 2 4
1 chī-chǎo-báicài	gēn-huàr-yíyàng
2 méi-yǒu-shíkuài	yígòng-shíwàn
3 yé-hěn-qíguài *	wǒ-yào-báicài
4 zài-nǎr-tán-huà	xiànzài-lái-kàn

0 3 4	1 3 4	2 3 4
1 duōshao-xiǎofèi	fēijī-hěn-kuài	jiānglái-yě-zuò
2 yíngē-wǔcì	lí-jiā-hěn-jìn	bié-tí-kǎoshì
3 zǒude-hěn-màn	yǒu-sānlǐ-lù	zǒu-shílǐ-lù
4 zhèige-yǐwài	huà-shānshuǐ-huàr	dàxué-yǐwài

3 3 4	4 3 4
1 tā-yé-xiě-zì *	chī-fàn-yǐhòu
2 nín-láo-xiě-xìn *	lí-zhèr-hěn-jìn
3 wó-yóu-wǔkuài *	fǔshàng-jǐhào
4 bìdéi-kǎoshì *	dào-diànyǐngryuàn

0 4 4	1 4 4	2 4 4
1 xiānsheng-guìxìng	pīnyīn-huìhuà	guānyú-zhèijiàn
2 róngyi-huà-huàr	nín-jiā-fùjìn	nín-suíbiàn-zuò
3 wǒmen-fàngjià	yě-dōu-bìyè	qǐng-shéi-zuò-shì
4 nánchu-zài-zhèr	zài-shuō-sìcì	pà-Wáng-Jiàoshòu

3 4 4	4 4 4
1 tā-yě-fàngjià	jiē-Wàn-Jiàoshòu
2 nín-yě-bìyè	tí-zhèijiàn-shì
3 yé-děi-zhùyì *	hěn-huì-zuò-cài
4 fànguǎr-fùjìn	dàgài-zài-zhèr

## MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES

1. Zuótian-mǎi-de-diànyǐngr-piào wǒ-jìcuò-shíhou-le.  
Piào shì-'wúdiǎn-nèichǎng-de-piào. Wǒ-qīdiǎn-zhōng cái-qù.

I made a mistake about [lit. remembered incorrectly] the tickets I bought yesterday. The tickets were for the five o'clock show. I didn't go until seven o'clock.
2. Cóng-xiànzài-kāishǐ, wó-děi-jìxu-xiě Hànzì-le.

Beginning [from] now, I must keep on writing Chinese characters.
3. Guānyú-xué-Zhōngwén-yǐ-fāngmiàn, 'zuì-yàojǐnde shì-fāyīn.

With respect to studying Chinese, what is most important is pronunciation.
4. Wǒmen mǎshàng-zǒu-bā. Liángdián-chǎng-diànyǐngr kuài-kāi-yǎn-le.

Let's leave right away. The two o'clock show will start soon.
5. Wǒ-zuì-jìn duì-Rìběn-wénhuà-yìfāngmiàn hén-yǒu-xìngqu.

Quite recently I've become very interested in Japanese culture.
6. Qián-jǐtiān wǒ-dédào-le 'Wáng-Jiàoshòu géi-wǒ-de-yìfēng-xìn.

A few days ago I received a letter from Professor King.
7. Wǒ-yǐjīng-gēn-wǒ-fùqīn shuō-hǎo-le, míngnián-dào-Yīngguo-qu-niàn-shū.

I've already reached an agreement with my father to go to England next year to study.
8. Zuótian-'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-diànhuà-lǐtōu gēn-wǒ-shuōle-'hěn-duōde-shìqīng.

Yesterday Mr. Johnson discussed a lot of things with me on the telephone.
9. Zuótian-yí-xià-kè 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu mǎshàng-jiu-pǎo-dào-fēijīchǎng qu-jiē-péng-you.

As soon as he left class yesterday Professor Wanamaker immediately hurried to the airport to meet a friend.
10. Nèige-xuésheng hěn-huì-shuō-xiàohua. Tā-shuō-de-xiàohua 'zhēn-kě-xiào.

That student is awfully good at telling jokes. His jokes are really funny.
11. Nèige-lǎoshī bìngle-hén-jiǔ. Hǎobuliǎo-le. Tā-wán-le.

That teacher was sick for a long time. He couldn't get well. He died [lit. he's finished].
12. Zài-hén-záo-yǐqián Zhōngguo-jiu-kāishǐ yǒu-le-wénhuà.

Very early in the past China began to become civilized.
13. Rúguó-nǐ-zuì-hǎode-péng-you yóngyuǎn-kànbutiàn-le, nǐ-zěnmoyàng-ne?

If you could never see your best friend again, how would you feel?

14. Wǒ-zuótiān dài-wǒ-dìdì dào-fēijīchǎng-qu-kàn-fēijī.  
Yesterday I took my younger brother to the airport to see the planes.
15. Wǒ-zhèi-jǐge-yuè shì-'tài-duō-le. Mángde-bùdéliǎo. Suóyì-wǒ-lèijíle.  
These (past) few months I've had too much to do. I've been terribly busy. So I'm awfully tired.
16. Zhèrde-shānshuǐ 'duómopiàoliang! Wó-déi-bǎ-tà-huàxiālai.  
How beautiful the scenery here is! I must paint it [down].
17. Guòqude-yíge-xīngqī-lǐtōu wǒ-dōu-bāngzhu-péngyou shōushi-dōngxì.  
I've spent the whole of the past week helping a friend put things in order.
18. Guò-yì-liǎngtiān wó-děi-láojià-ni bāngzhu-wǒ-shōushi-xíngli.  
After a day or two I must trouble you to help me pack my baggage.
19. Tiān-bu-zǎo-le. Wǒmen-déizǒu.  
The day's getting on. We must go.
20. Zuótiān-nèige-háizi gēn-tā-fùqīn yào-wúkuài-qián-mǎishū.  
Yesterday that youngster asked his father for five dollars to buy a book.
21. Wǒde-yìsì-shì xiān-xué-xiě-zì, hòu-xué-niàn-shū. 'Nǐde-yìsì-zěnmoyàng?  
My idea is first to study writing and then to study reading. What do you think?
22. Wǒmen-zài-cāntīng-hē-chá-de-shíhòu tánde-hén-yǒuyìsì.  
We had a very interesting conversation while having tea in the cafeteria.
23. Tā-jiàole-bàntiānde-mén yě-méi-rén-kāi. Tā-háishi-jìxude-jiào.  
He knocked [lit. called] at the door for a long time but no one came. He continued to knock.
24. Zhèrde-shānshuǐ rúguǒ-huàchulai hěn-piàoliang.  
If you paint [lit. paint out] the landscape here it will be very beautiful.
25. Yīnwei-wǒmen-shì-lǎo-péngyou, bú-yòng-tài-kèqì. 'Suǐbiàn-chī-yìdiǎr.  
Since we're old friends, there's no need to be too formal. Let's have a little snack.
26. Wǒ-tài-máng. Zhí-háo-qǐng-péngyou bāngzhu-wǒ-shōushi-xíngli.  
I'm too busy. The only thing I can do [lit. only good] is to ask a friend to help me pack.
27. Wǒde-lǎoshī xiěle-yìběn shuō-Zhōngguó-wénhuà-de-shū.  
My teacher has written a book on Chinese culture.
28. Wǒ-ràng-cāntīngde-huǒji géiwǒ-ná-càidān-lai.  
I asked the waiter in the cafeteria to bring me a menu.
29. Wǒ-dào-'Rìběn-qu, kěnéng-bú-dào-'liǎngge-xīngqī jiùhuílai.  
I'm going to Japan, and it's possible I'll return in less than two weeks.



30. Wǒ-míngnián dào-'Zhōngguo-lǚxíng huílai-yǐhòu jiù-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén.

I shall begin the study of Chinese next year after I get back from my trip to China.

### MONOLOGUE

Miss Gao, shortly after leaving the airport, meets a friend and tells her about Mr. White.

Wǒ-gēn-fùqin-mǔqin gāng-cóng-fēijī chǎng-huílai. Shi-sòng-yíge-péngyou huí-guó. Zhèige-péngyou míngzi-jiào-Bái-Wénshān. Shi-Měiguó-rén. Tā-de-Zhōngwén hén-hǎo. Tā-shuō-de-Zhōngguo-huà gēn-Zhōngguo-rén-yíyàng. Nǐ-gēn-ta-zài-yíkuàr yídiár-yě-bù-juéde tā-shi-yíge-'wàiguó-rén. Wǒmen-kāishǐ-rènshi shi-zài-wǒmen-nèige-shūdiàn-lǐtou. Yǒu-yìtiān, wǒ-gēn-fùqin-mǔqin wǒmen-dào-shūdiàn-qu-le. Zhèng-yùjian-Bái-Wénshān 'yě-qu-mǎi-shū. Fùqin-jiù-gēn-ta-shuō-huà, érqíe-yě-jièshao-mǔqin-gēn-wǒ-rènshi-ta.

Yǒu-yíci fùqin-qīng-ta dào-wǒmen-'jiā-lǐtou-lái-chī-fàn. Zhèng-hǎo wǒ-zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshang yùjian-ta. Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén yíkuàr-huídào-jiā-lǐtou-lái. Cóng-zhèige-shíhou, wǒmen-mànmǎrde jiù-shi-hén-hǎode-péngyou-le.

Cóng-nèige-shíhou-kāishǐ, guānyu-'shùxué-yìfāngmiàn rúguó-wó-yǒu-wèntí huòzhě-bù-míngbai-de-dìfang, tā-'dōu-néng-gàosu-wo.

Tā-láidào-Zhōngguo-yìnián-le. Zài-zhèi-yìnián-lǐtou, qián-jǐge-yuè wǒmen-'bù-zěnmò-cháng-jiàn. Kěshi-yǐhòu měige-xīngqī wǒmen-dōu-jiàn-liǎng-sāncì. Yǒude-shíhou wǒmen-yíkuàr dào-túshūguǎn-qù-kàn-shū, huòzhě-yíkuàr qu-kànkān-diànyīng.

Tā-shi-yíge-hěn-yònggōng, érqíe yé-hěn-cōngming-de-rén. Fùqin-hén-xǐhuan-ta. Tā-'yí-dào-wǒmen-jiā-lǐtou-lái, fùqin-hěn-gāoxìng. Fùqin-hén-xǐhuan-gēn-tā-tán guānyu-'Zhōngguo-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-de-wèntí. Tóngshí-mǔqin duì-tā-yé-hén-hǎo. Tā-xǐhuan-chī-hóng-shāo-cài. Měici-dào-wǒmen-jiā, mǔqin-chàbuduō 'dōu-shi-zuò-hóng-shāo-cài gěi-ta-chī.

Xiànzài-tā-huí-guó-le. Yíge-'zuì-hǎode-péngyou-zǒu-le, ní-xiǎng shi-zěnmoyàng-ne? Tā-suírán-zǒu-de-shíhou-shuō tā-huíqu-bìyè-yǐhòu hái-huílai, kěshi-tā-shì-bu-shì 'zhēnde-néng-huílai-ne?

## ANSWERING QUESTIONS

1. Lǎoshī dōu-shi-lǎo-rén-ma? Yíge-èrshi-duō-suǐde-xiānsheng 'kéyī-bu-kéyī suàn-shi-lǎoshī?
2. Dài-biǎo-de-dài gēn-dài-dōngxi-de-dài yòng-Hànzì-xiě shi-bu-yíyàng-de. Rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn-xiě yíyàng-ma?
3. Zhōngguó yǒu-sānqiān-duō-niánde-wénhuà. Měiguó-ne?
4. Yíge-péngyou shi-sānhào-líkai-Dōngjīng liùhào-dàode-Niǔyue. Nǐ-shuō-shi-zuò-fēijī-lái-de háishi-zuò-chuán-lái-de-ne?
5. Rúguó-wǒ-shuō míngtiān shi-míngniánde-dì-yītiān, nènmo-jīntiān shi-jǐyuè-jǐhào?
6. Chuán shi-shàngwǔ-qīdiǎn-zhōng-kāi-de, xiàwǔ-sìdiǎn-zhōng-dào-de. Yígòng-zǒule-'jǐge-zhōngtóu?
7. Měiguó-zuì-dàde-chéng shi-Niǔyue. 'Rìběn-ne?
8. Rúguó-nǐ-yào-dài-hěn-duō-xíngli, shi-zuò-fēijī-hǎo háishi-zuò-chuán-hǎo?
9. Wǒde-xíngli ràng-yíge-péngyou gěi-shòushihǎo-le. Wǒ-yīngdāng-duì-ta-shuō "Nǐ-tài-kèqi" háishi-"Tài-láojià"-ne?
10. Zhèiběn-shū nǐ-kuài-yào-niànwán-le. Niànwán-le-yǐhòu, nǐ-hái-jìxuniàn-Zhōngwén-ma?

## NOTES

1. Yī 'one' is used before a noun or measure in the meaning 'the whole of.' In this meaning, the yī expression comes before the verb and is often accompanied by the adverb dōu 'all':

Yì-jīā-rén dōu-hěn-cōngmíng. 'The whole family is very intelligent.'  
Tā-yì-tiān jiùshi-niàn-shū. 'He does nothing but study the whole day long.'

2. The pluralizing suffix -men, which we have encountered attached to pronouns (as in wǒmen 'we'), is also attached to nouns relating to people:

háizimen 'children'  
péngyoumen 'friends'

The resulting form has a general collective meaning. Hence the suffix is never attached to a noun that is specifically quantified; note wǔshíge háizi 'fifty children.'

3. The suffix -jiā, derived from jiā 'house,' is attached to nouns, and more rarely to verbs, to form a noun relating to a profession:

lìshǐ 'history' : lìshǐjiā 'historian'  
shùxué 'mathematics' : shùxuéjiā 'mathematician'  
huà 'paint' : huàjiā 'painter'

4. The term lǎoshī, literally 'old teacher,' is applied to teachers of any age, but is a more honorific term than xiānsheng 'teacher.'
5. The syllable jīng 'capital' is a combining form which enters into the names of many capital cities:

Nánjīng 'Nanking' [lit. 'Southern Capital']  
 Běijīng 'Peking' [lit. 'Northern Capital']  
 Dōngjīng 'Tokyo' [lit. 'Eastern Capital']

The city known to English speakers as Peking or Peiping has been called Běijīng 'Peking' [Northern Capital] at various times when governments have designated it the capital: during the Ch'ing Dynasty (1644–1911); during the years 1912–1928 of the Republic of China; and since the establishment of the Chinese People's Republic in 1949. In 1928, Chiang Kai-shek's government established Nanking as the capital, renaming the former capital Běipíng 'Peiping' [Northern Peace]. In spite of political fluctuations, many fixed phrases—for example, Běijīng Dàxué 'Peking University'—have retained the original name continuously.

6. The verb ràng 'permit,' 'let,' like qǐng 'invite' and jiào 'tell,' can have a sentence as a direct object:

Wó-qǐng-ta-lái. 'I invited him to come.'  
 Wǒ-jiào-ta-lái. 'I told him to come.'  
 Wǒ-ràng-ta-lái. 'I let him come.'  
 Wǒ-ràng-ta-xiě-zì. 'I let him write characters.'

7. An active sentence of the pattern S-V-O (Subject-Verb-Object) can be transformed into a passive sentence of the pattern O-ràng-S-V, with ràng 'by' as the coverb of agent:

Wó-dǎ-ta-le. 'I hit him.'  
 Tā-ràng-wó-dǎ-le. 'He was hit by me.'

Ràng may here be replaced by jiào, and the main verb may be preceded by gěi 'give' (cf. English 'He was given a beating by me'). Hence, 'He was beaten by me' can be expressed in the following ways:

Tā-ràng-wó-dǎ-le.  
 Tā-ràng-wó-gěi-dǎ-le.  
 Tā-jiào-wó-dǎ-le.  
 Tā-jiào-wó-gěi-dǎ-le.

The passive is used most often to refer to completed (past) activity. In general, it is far less common in Chinese than in English.

8. The syllable wǔ 'noon,' a combining form, joins with shàng 'up,' xià 'down,' zhōng 'middle,' and fàn 'food' to make the following expressions:

shàngwǔ 'forenoon, morning, A.M.'  
 xiàwǔ 'afternoon, P.M.'  
 zhōngwǔ 'noon'  
 wǔfàn 'lunch'

9. The word zǎo is used as a stative verb meaning 'early,' as an adverb meaning 'long ago,' 'long since,' and as a conventional greeting meaning 'Good morning.'

10. The verb dé 'get' is used in reciting the multiplication table when the product is an expression of one syllable, as in sān-sān-dé-jiǔ 'three times three is nine.' With the perfective suffix le it becomes déle and means 'finished, ready,' as:

Fàn-déle. 'The food is ready.'

Déle is frequently used by itself:

Déle-ma? 'Ready?'

Déle. 'Finished.'

It also occurs by itself as a sort of exclamation, usually in answer to excessive praise ('Stop!' 'That's enough!'), as in the Dialogue (line 87); this usage is very informal, restricted to conversations between close friends.

11. Yílù-píng'ān, literally '(may things) be peaceful the whole way,' is a conventional expression equivalent to Bon Voyage!
12. Bùgǎndǎng, literally 'not dare undertake,' is a conventional response to praise. It means something like 'You do me too much honor' or 'I don't deserve (your praise, attention, etc.).'
13. Láojià is a conventional expression used when one has caused trouble to someone, or expects to do so. In the former case, it is about equivalent to English 'Sorry to have troubled you' or 'Much obliged.' In the latter, it has the force of 'Sorry to trouble you,' 'Excuse me,' 'May I trouble you?'
14. The conventional phrase nǎrde-huà 'where (is there any such) talk?' often corresponds to the phrase 'Not at all' as a response to expressions of thanks:
- A. Nǐ-tài-kèqi. 'You're too polite.' 'You're too kind.'
- B. Nǎrde-huà. 'Not at all.'
15. Shuōbùdìng has the form of a resultative verb phrase and means 'unable to say for sure'; but no corresponding form exists with de replacing bu. Besides its literal meaning, 'one can't say for sure,' it often means simply 'perhaps.'

16. The place word qián 'front' occurs in the following combinations:

qiántian 'day before yesterday'

qiánnian 'year before last'

qián-jǐtiān 'a few days ago,' 'the first few days'

qián-jǐge-xīngqī 'a few weeks ago,' 'the first few weeks'

qián-jǐge-yuè 'a few months ago,' 'the first few months'

qián-jǐnián 'a few years ago,' 'the first few years'

## Lesson 24 REVIEW

### PRONUNCIATION REVIEW

#### I. Sentences Distinguished Only by Context

In Chinese, as in English, sentences occur which are pronounced exactly alike but have different meanings. In isolation, such sentences are ambiguous; but people do not say things in isolation. The context of an utterance almost always makes its meaning clear.

The following sentences are examples. Invent suitable contexts for both members of each pair.

1. Nǐ-zuò-shénmo? (a) What are you doing?  
(b) What [conveyance] are you taking?
2. Nèige-hú-hěn-dà. (a) That lake is quite large.  
(b) That pot is quite large.
3. Wǒ-jiào-Měiyīng. (a) I'm calling Meiyīng.  
(b) I'm called Meiyīng.
4. Zhí-yǒu-sānzhāng. (a) There are only three sheets.  
(b) (Of) paper, there are three sheets.
5. Wǒ-míngtiān-sòng-tā. (a) I'll see him off tomorrow.  
(b) I'll present it to him tomorrow.
6. Tāmen-kǎode-zhēn-bú-cuò. (a) They roasted it really well.  
(b) They did really well in the exams.

#### II. Sentences Distinguished by Tonal Contrasts

In contrast to the sentences presented in the foregoing exercise, which are capable of two different interpretations as determined by context, the exercise below gives pairs of sentences which are almost identical, differing only with respect to a single tone. (The first pair, for example, are identical except for mǎi in the first and mài in the second.) A tone distinction like this is as significant to Chinese ears as a vowel or consonant difference is to ours: each pair below is as different as the English pair Bake the pie and Take the pie.

Practice the following by pronouncing ONE sentence from each pair, testing yourself by asking the Chinese teacher to identify what you think you said by

giving the English for what he thinks he heard. When you have had a perfect score on every sentence at least twice, reverse the process and try to identify the meanings of the sentences pronounced one at a time by the Chinese teacher.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Tāmen-mǎi-shū.<br>Tāmen-mài-shū.                | They buy books.<br>They sell books.                                     |
| 2. Wǒ-míngtiān-qu-jiē.<br>Wǒ-míngtiān-qu-jiè.      | I'm going to meet (him) tomorrow.<br>I'm going to borrow (it) tomorrow. |
| 3. Nǐmen-yǒu-tāng-ma?<br>Nǐmen-yǒu-táng-ma?        | Do you have soup?<br>Do you have sugar?                                 |
| 4. "Dōng-xī" zěnmoxiě?<br>"Dōngxi" zěnmoxiě?       | How do you write "East-West"?<br>How do you write "thing"?              |
| 5. Tāmen-bu-dǎ.<br>Tāmen-bu-dà.                    | They're not hitting.<br>They're not big.                                |
| 6. Tā-xiǎng-ta-fùqin.<br>Tā-xiàng-ta-fùqin.        | He's thinking of his father.<br>He resembles his father.                |
| 7. Tā-yào-nèizhāng-dìtú.<br>Tā-yào-'nèizhāng-dìtú? | He wants that map.<br>What map does he want?                            |
| 8. Tā-wán-le.<br>Tā-wǎn-le.                        | He's done for.<br>He's late.  |
| 9. Jiǔ-zài-zhèr.<br>Jiù-zài-zhèr.                  | The wine is here.<br>It's right here.                                   |
| 10. Yígòng-yǒu-shíwǎn.<br>Yígòng-yǒu-shíwàn.       | Altogether there are ten bowlfuls.<br>Altogether there are 100,000.     |
| 11. Chá-sānkuài-qián.<br>Chà-sānkuài-qián.         | The tea is three dollars.<br>(I'm) short three dollars.                 |
| 12. Wǒ-jiāo-Měiyīng.<br>Wǒ-jiào-Měiyīng.           | I'm teaching Meiyīng.<br>I'm calling Meiyīng.                           |

#### PATTERN REVIEW

Each of the patterns studied in this book is reviewed below, generally in a more complicated form and with different vocabulary than when first presented. If you have difficulty with any pattern, go back to the lesson in which it first appeared and review it. (For this purpose, each pattern is identified by lesson and drill number: 2.4, for example, means Lesson 2, Pattern Drill 4.

## Unit I

- 1.1. Xínglǐ-bú-tài-duō.  
 1.2. Wǒmen-dōu-chī-xìngrér-dòufu.  
 1.3. Fēijīchǎng bú-'tài-yuǎn-ma?  
 2.1. 'Zhāng-Jiàoshòu bú-shi-Nánjīng-rén-ma?  
 2.2. Wǒmen-yīngdāng-yánjiu-zhèijiàn-shì qing.  
 2.3. Nǐ-'huì-bu-huì yòng-kuàizi chī-Zhōngguo-fàn?  
 2.4. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shì-nǐde-lǎoshī-bu-shi?  
 3.1. Yìwǎn-fàn 'gòu-bu-gòu?  
 3.2. Zhèisuǒr-fángzi mài-'duōshao-qián?  
 3.3. Zhèi-sānzhang-huàr dōu-shi-'tā-huà-de.  
 5.1. Tāde-xuéwen yě-bú-cuò.  
 5.2. Zuì-cōngmingde-xuésheng shi-shéi?

## Unit II

- 7.1. Fànguǎr zài-túshūguǎn gēn-shūdiàn-de-zhōngjiār.  
 7.2. 'Zhāng-Xiānsheng zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué xué-kēxué.  
 7.3. Zài-tā-jiā-fùjìn yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-fēijī chǎng.  
 7.4. Zài-nèr-niàn-shū-de-rén chàbuduō-dōu-shi-'wàiguó-rén.  
 7.5. Wǒmen-xiě-Hànzì hái-shi-xiě-pīnyīn?  
 8.1 a. Tā-jiā-lí-fēijīchǎng 'tài-jìn.  
 8.1 b. Diànyīngyuàn lí-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn yǒu-yìlǐ-duō-lù.  
 8.2. Yóu-hěn-duō-yǎnyuán yǎnde-bù-hǎo.  
 8.3. Shīzi-tóu bù-róngyi-zuò.  
 8.4. Shi-'zìjǐ-zuò-hǎo hái-shi-qǐng-'biéde-rén-zuò-hǎo?  
 9.1. Wó-měitiān dào-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn-qu.  
 9.2 a. Wǒmen-'shénmo-shíhou qu-jiē-ta?  
 9.2 b. Tāmen-liùdiǎn-zhōng kàn-diànyīng-qu.  
 9.3. Tā-'xiàwǔ wúdiǎn-bàn cóng-túshūguǎn-lái.  
 9.4. Cóng-zhèr-yìzhí wàng-xībēi-zǒu-sānlǐ-lù jiù-dào-le.  
 9.5. Rúguó-wǒ-zuò-chuán-qù wǒ-jiu-zǎo-yìdiár-zǒu.  
 10.1. Zhèi-xīngqīde-piānzi bǐ-shàng-xīngqīde-hǎo.  
 10.2. Nǐ-shuōde-hěn-duì.  
 10.3 a. Nán-háizi bí-nǚ-háizi chīde-duō.  
 10.3 b. Tā-láide bí-wó-wǎn.  
 10.4. Tā-shuō-xiàohua shuōde-zhēn-hǎo.

- 10.5 a. Wǒ-kàn-diànyǐngr bǐ-tā-kànde-duō.  
 10.5 b. Tā-dài-xíngli dàide-bí-nǐ-duō.  
 11.1. Tā-dǎsuan míngnián-èryue-sānhào líkai-Zhōngguo.  
 11.2. 'Wáng-Xiānsheng shi-qùnián-liùyue bìyè-de.  
 11.3 a. Tā-shi-zài-'Rìběn nián-shū-de.  
 11.3 b. Wǒ-shi-zài-'fànguár-mǎi-de-chá.

## Unit III

- 13.1 a. Wó-bá-suóyǒude-xíngli dōu-shōushihǎo-le.  
 13.1 b. Zuótian-wǎnshang wǒmen-kàn-le-diànyǐngr-le.  
 13.2 a. Wǒmen-chīwánle-fàn jiù-qu-kàn-diànyǐngr.  
 13.2 b. Wó-'mǎile-shū jiù-huǐ-jiā-le.  
 13.3 a. Wǒ-chīde-tài-bǎo-le.  
 13.3 b. Xiànzài-yǐjing wǔyue-bá hào-le.  
 13.4 a. Wǒmen-yào-le-wǔge-cài yíge-tāng.  
 13.4 b. Wó-yǐjing-xiěle wǔfēng-xìn-le. Hái-yào-xiě-sānfēng.  
 13.5. Xiànzài tiānqi-nuǎnhuo-le.  
 13.6 a. Xué-kàn-shū-yǐqián děi-xiān-xué-shuō-huà.  
 13.6 b. Wǒ-zài-Zhōngguo-de-shíhou cháng-qu-kàn Zhōngguo-diànyǐngr.  
 13.7. Cóng-yī-jiǔ-liù-èr-nián-kāishǐ tā-jiù-bù-xué-Zhōngwén-le.  
 14.1. Wǒde-lǎoshī duì-Rìběn-lìshǐ hén-yǒu-yánjiū.  
 14.2 a. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-xiě-de-shū dōu-hěn-nán-dǒng.  
 14.2 b. Néng-yòng-Hànzì-xiě-xìn-de-wàiguó-rén hén-shǎo.  
 14.3 a. Nǐ-méi-tīngshuōguo zhèige-xiàohua-ma?  
 14.3 b. Wǒde-nèijiàn-shì tā-zuótian-tígou-le-ma?  
 14.4. Wǒ-yídìng-jìbuzhù nènmo-duō-Hànzì.  
 14.5 a. Měiguó-zuì-dàde-dàxué yóu-liǎngwàn-sānqiān-duō-xuésheng.  
 14.5 b. Nèige-túshūguǎn chàbuduō-yǒu-yìbái-wǔshi-wàn-běn-shū.  
 15.1. Wǒ-hái-děi-xué liǎngniánde-shùxué.  
 15.2. Cóng-Měiguó wǒ-zuòle-liǎngge-xīngqī-chuán cái-dào-'Rìběn.  
 15.3. Wǒ-shōushile-'liùge-zhōngtóude-xíngli-le, 'hái-méi-shōushihǎo.  
 15.4. Tāmen-zài-diànhuàli-shuō-huà yǐjing-yǒu-'yíge-duō-zhōngtóu-le.  
 15.5. Wǒ-kànle-liǎngcì 'Zhōngguo-diànyǐngr.  
 16.1. Xiǎo-háizi-guò-lù yào-zhùyì-chē.  
 16.2. Wó-měitiān qīdiǎn-zhōng-qīlai.  
 16.3. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-jīhui wǒ-yídìng shàng-Guǎngdong-qu-lǚxíng.



- 16.4. Wó-xiángqilai-zhèige-zìde-yìsi-le.  
 16.5. Qíng-nǐmen dōu-náqi-shū-lai.  
 16.6. Wǒde-xíngli dōu-nádao-nǎr-qu-le?  
 16.7. Bú-yào-bǎ-zhèijiàn-shìqing gào-su-ta.  
 16.8 a. Lián-wǒde-lǎoshī yě-bú-rènshi-zhèige-zì.  
 16.8 b. Zhèige-jùzi lián-yíge-zì wǒ-dōu-bú-rènshi.  
 16.9. Wó-xiáng-mǎi-zhèi-jíběn-shū sònggei-ta.  
 16.10. Jiǎozi yě-shi-nǐ-zuò-de-ma?  
 17.1. Zhōngguo-kuàizi gēn-Rìběn-kuàizi yíyàng-ma?  
 17.2. Guǎngdong-cài gēn-běifāng-cài yíyàng-hǎo-chī-ma?  
 17.3. 'Gāo-Xiǎojie méi-yǒu-tā-fùqin nènmo-xǐhuan-xiě-zì.  
 17.4. Nǐ-zuò-táng-cù-yú zuòde-gēn-tā-yíyàng-hǎo.  
 17.5. Wǒ-chī-jiǎozi-chīde yóu-nǐ-zhènmo-duō.  
 17.6. Wǒ-lèide-lián-fàn yě-bù-xiǎng-chī.

## Unit IV

- 19.1 a. Nǐ-yīngdāng duō-liànxi-xiě-Hànzì.  
 19.1 b. Wǒmen-zǒu-'kuài-yìdiǎr, yàoburán-wǒmen-qùwǎn-le.  
 19.1 c. Qíng-nǐ-míngtian zǎo-yìdiǎr-lái.  
 19.2 a. Tāmen-zài-cāngtīngli tánzhe-huà-ne.  
 19.2 b. Tā-dàizhe-xíngli shàng-chuán-qu-le.  
 19.3. Tā-bú-shi-'Hànren jiù-shi-'Rìběn-rén.  
 19.4. Tā-shuōle-hǎoxiě-xiàohuà yě-méi-yǒu-rén-xiào.  
 19.5. Chúlè-fāyīn-yǐwài tāde-'Zhōngwén-bú-cuò.  
 19.6. Tā-sìshēng liànxi-shi-liànxi, kěshi-hái-shuōde-bù-zhǔn.  
 20.1. Tā-yí-dào-fēijīchǎng jiù-shàng-fēijī-le.  
 20.2. Zhèizhāng-huàr nǐ-'shénmo-shíhou-guàqilai?  
 20.3 a. Wó-dǎle-bàntiān-mén dōu-méi-rén-kāi.  
 20.3 b. Dǎ-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā dào-fēijīchǎng yǒu-bǎilǐ-duō-lù.  
 20.3 c. Qíng-nǐmen-dākai-shū yíkuàr-niàn.  
 20.4. Zhèi-liǎngge-zì ní-xiěcuò-le.  
 21.1 a. Nǐ-'yǒu-duōshao jiu-'gěi-duōshao.  
 21.1 b. 'Shéi-yào-míngtian-qù 'shéi-jiu-míngtian-qù.  
 21.2 a. Jiùshi-nǐ-'bù-xiě-xìn wó-yé-xiě.  
 21.2 b. Jiùshi-'wàiguó-rén duì-Hànzì yé-yǒu-xìngqu.  
 21.3. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-qián wǒ-yídìng-gěi-ta, kěshi-wǒ-méi-yǒu-qián-gěi-ta.

- 21.4. Tā-tiāntian-dà-chī-dà-hē.  
 22.1. Wǒ-yuè-xué-Zhōngguo-huàde-fāyīn yuè-juéde-nán.  
 22.2. Ní-hǎohāorde tīng-wǒde-huà.  
 22.3. Ní-xiě-de-zì gèger-dōu-shi-cuò-de.  
 23.1. Yì-jiā-rén dōu-duì-wó-hén-hǎo.  
 23.2 a. Měiguó-wénxuéjiā bú-tài-zhùyì 'Zhōngguó-wénxué.  
 23.2 b. 'Zhōngguó-háizimen 'wàiguó-háizimen dōu-shi-yíyàngde-xǐhuan-wár.  
 23.3. Wǒde-shū ràng-'shéi-gěi-názǒu-le?

## FOREIGN CORRESPONDENCE

After returning to America, Mr. White starts corresponding with Miss Gao. Here is his first letter and her reply. Note the format of Chinese letters: salutation at the beginning, body of the letter, complimentary close set off as indicated, signature at the end, and date after the name.

Měiyīng:

Zhèi-shi-wó-géi-nǐ-de-dì-yīfēng-xìn. Wǒ-dàole-'Rìběn xiàle-fēijī jiù-qu-kàn-wǒde-lǎoshī. Tā-hěn-gāoxìng, qíng-wǒ-chīle-yí cì-fàn, hái-géi-wo-jièshaole liǎngwèi-'Rìběn-péngyou, yíwèi-'Měiguó-péngyou. Zhèi-sāngē-péngyou duì-wǒ-dōu-hén-hǎo. Wǒ-shi-dì-èrcì lái-'Rìběn-le. Wǒ-juéde-Rìběn hén-yǒu-yìsi. Nǐ-ne? Chúle-zhèige-yǐwài zài-'Rìběn yě-méi-yǒu-shénmo-tèbié-yǒu-yìside-shìqing gàosu-ni.

Wǒ-xiànzài yǐjīng-dào-le-jiā. Wǒ-kànjian-fùqīn-mǔqīn, bá-ni-sònggei-wǒde nèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huàr náchulai-gěi-tāmen-kàn. Fùqīn-mǔqīn-dōu-shuō nǐ-huà-de-hǎo. Wó-yě-gàosu-tāmen nǐ-shi-wǒ-zuì-hǎode-péngyou. Tāmen-dōu-hěn-gāoxìng, shuō-xīwang-nǐ-néng-dào-'Měiguó-lái. Wó-yé-bǎ-Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai duì-wǒ-nènmo-hǎo gàosu-tāmen. Fùqīn-mǔqīn dōu-shuō xièxie-tāmen-liǎngwèi.

Wǒ-líkai-jiā-yìnián. Fùqīn-mǔqīn hái-gēn-qùnnian-yíyàng, kěshi-dìdi-mèimei zhǎnggāo-le-hěn-duō. Dìdi-gēn-wǒ-yíyàng-gāo. Mèimei-yuè-zhǎng yuè-piàoliang. Fùqīn-mǔqīn yīnwei-wǒ-líkai-tāmen-yìnián-le wǒ-huǐlai-le tāmen-gāoxìngde-bùdéliǎo. Mǔqīn-měitiān zuò-hén-hǎode-cài géi-wǒ-chī.

Wó-yě-qu-kànguo-jǐge-péngyou. Dōu-gēn-yǐqián-chàbuduō. Wǒ-zhèi-jǐ-tiān-hěn-lèi. Guò-yì-liǎngtiān wǒ-dào-dàxué-qu-kànkàn 'shénmo-shíhou shàng-kè, yīnggāi-mǎi-'shénmo-shū yìxiē-wèntí. Wó-xiǎng-zài-zhèi-yìnián-lítou wǒ-bìdēi-yònggōng-niàn-shū.

Wǒ-cóng-shàng-fēiji dào-xiànzài dōu-hén-hǎo, kěshi-kànbujiàn-nǐ-le. Bù-zhīdào 'shénmo-shíhou wǒmen-zài-jiàn. Xīwang-nǐ-cháng-géi-wó-xiě-xìn. Zài-tán. Zhù-nǐ

Píng'ān

Wénshān

jiǔyue-báhào

Wénshān:

Zuótian-jiēdào-nǐde-xìn gāoxìng-jíle. Zhīdao-nǐ-yǐjīng píng'ān-huǐdào-jiā-le. Wó-bá-nǐ-zǒule-yǐhòu-de-yìxiē-shìqing gāosu-nǐ-yìdiǎr.

Qián-jǐtiān wǒ-dào-Yuǎn-Dà-qùguo-le. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī jiù-kāishǐ-shàng-kè-le. Wǒmen 'yìniánjǐde-xuésheng hái-děi-xué yìniánde-shùxué. Zāogāo! Wǒde-shùxué bú-tài-hǎo. Nǐ-shi-zhīdao-de. Érqǐě wǒde-shùxué-lǎoshī yǐjīng-huǐdào-hén-yuǎnde-Měiguó-le. Rúguó-wó-yǒu-wèntí, 'shéi-gāosu-wó? Wǒ-duì-shùxué-méi-xìngqu. Ràng-wǒ-zài-xué-yìnián-shùxué wǒ-zhēn-bù-gāoxìng-xué. Wǒ-bù-míngbai xué-wénxué wèi-shénmo hái-yào-xué-yìnián-shùxué-ne? Shì-bu-shi-měi-yíge-dàxué dōu-shi-yíyàng-ne?

Wó-xiǎng-shàng-kè-yǐhòu wǒ-bìdéi-hǎohāorde yònggōng-niàn-shū-le. Yóuqíshì-duì-'xiě-zì-yìfāngmiàn. Wó-xiěde-'tài-bù-hǎo-le. Fùqīn-cháng-jiào-wó-xiě-zì. Kěshi-láo-yě-méi-hǎohāorde yònggōng-xiěguo.

Qián-jǐtiān yǒu-yíwèi-péngyou ràng-wó-gěi-ta-huà-yìzhāng-huà. Xiǎng-lái-xiǎngqù gěi-ta-huà-'shénmo-hǎo-ne? Xiǎngqilai-le bǎ-túshūguǎn-huàxialai. Nǐ-kàn-túshūguǎn duómo-piàoliang-a! Huàxialai yídìng-'hén-hǎo-kàn. Nǐ-shuō-shì-bu-shi?

Nǐ-zǒule-yǐhòu fùqīn-mǔqīn-tāmen měitiān-tídao-ni. Tāmen-shuō nǐ-shi-cōngmingde-hǎo-xuésheng. Xīwang-bù-jiǔ nǐ-'zài-dào-Zhōngguó-lái.

Guòqude-yìnián-lǐtōu hén-yǒu-yìsi. Nǐ-duì-wǒ-de-shùxué bāngzhu-hěnduō. Wó-hěn-xièxie-ni. Wó-xiǎng-yǐhòu měi-xīngqīliù-xiě-xìn, bǎ-yíge-xīngqīde-shìqing xiěchulai. Nǐ-juéde-zěnmoyàng? Zhù Hǎo.

Měiyīng

jiǔyue shísān

## DIALOGUE SUMMARIES

The Dialogues are summarized below, lesson by lesson. They are told in narrative style here, and provided with background material and explanations, but do not exceed the vocabulary and grammar presented in the book.

## Unit I

## Dì-yīkè

'Gāo-Xiānsheng kāile-yíge-Sān-Yǒu-Shūdiàn, lí-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-bù-yuǎn.  
'Bái-Xiānsheng cóng-Měiguó-dào-Zhōngguó-yǐhou, zài-shūdiànli-mǎi-shū  
jiù-rènshi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-le. Tóngshí-yě-rènshi-le-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáo-  
jie. Yǒu-yìtiān 'Bái-Xiānsheng-chūqu suíbiàn-zài-lùshang-zóuzou, yùjian-  
le-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng zuì-jìn-hǎo-ma.  
'Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-wèn-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie dōu-hǎo-ma. Gāo-Xiān-  
sheng-xièxie-ta, gàoosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai-Gāo-Xiáojie dōu-hǎo.

## Dì-èrkè

Yǒu-yíci yíge-'Zhōngguó-rén qíng-hěn-duō-péngyou dào-ta-jiā-lǐtou qu-  
hē-chá. Tā-qǐng-de-péngyou-lǐtou yǒu-'Zhōngguó-rén yé-yǒu-'wàiguó-rén.  
'Bái-Xiānsheng gēn-'Qián-Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngge-rén zài-yíkuàr-zuòzhe.  
Yīnwei-rén-tài-duō yě-méi-yǒu-rén gěi-tāmen-liǎngge-rén-jièshao, 'Bái-  
Xiānsheng xiǎng-gēn-Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà, tā-jiù-wèn-Qián-Xiānsheng-  
guìxìng. Qián-Xiānsheng-gàoosu-tā-xìng-Qián. Kěshì 'Qián-Xiānsheng jìcuò-  
le. Tā-xiǎng-'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-  
'bú-shì-Wáng-Xiānsheng, tā-xìng-Bái. Qián-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn-ta shì-  
'Yīngguó-rén-bú-shì. Bái-Xiānsheng-yòu-gàoosu-ta 'bú-shì-Yīngguó-rén, ta-  
shì-Měiguó-rén. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-'Qián-Xiānsheng huì-shuō-'Yīngguó-  
huà-bú-huì. 'Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-bú-huì, zhǐ-huì-shuō-'Zhōngguó-huà.

## Dì-sānkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng xiáng-mái-jǐzhī-Zhōngguó-bǐ, suóyì-tā-jiù-dào Gāo-Xiān-  
shengde-shūdiàn-qu-le. Tā-kànjian-yǒu-yìběn-Zhōngguó-Wénxué. Shì-yíwèi-  
Yuǎn-Dà-jiàoshòu-xiě-de. Yīnwei-tā-yánjiu-Zhōngguó-wénxué ta-xiáng-mǎi,  
tā-jiù-wèn-shūdiànli mài-shū-de-rén 'Máo-Xiānsheng zhèiběn-shū-'duōshao-

qián. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta yíkuai-èrmáo-qián-yìběn. Tā - yào - mái - liángběn. Tā-juéde-zhèiběn-shū hén-hǎo. Tā-xiǎng-sònggei-péngyou - yìběn, suóyì-mái-liángběn.

Tā-yòu-wèn máobǐ-duōshao-qián-yìzhī. Tā-xiǎng-tā-niàn-Zhōngwén bì-déi-xiě-Hànzì. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-shuō liǎngmáo-qián-yìzhī. Tā-mǎile-wǔ-zhī-bǐ, liángběn-shū. Yígòng-yòngle wǔkuài-sìmáo-qián. Máihǎo-le-yǐhòu tā-názhe-shū-gēn-bǐ jiù-huíqu-le.

#### Dì-sìkè

Yuǎndōng-Dàxué yǐjing-shàng-kè-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yīnggāi mǎi-de-dōngxī hěn-duō, bǐfang-běnzǐ, dìtú, zìdiǎn, mòshuǐ, gāngbǐ, qiǎnbǐ tā-dōu-déi-mǎi. Tā-yòu-pǎodào-shūdiàn-qu. Tā-xiànzài gēn-'Máo-Xiānsheng jiànguó-hěn-duō-cì. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta yào-mǎi-shénmo-dōngxī. Tā-yào-mǎi-'hóng-mòshuǐ, kěshi-shūdiàn-lǐtou 'hóng-mòshuǐ-dōu-màiwán-le. Zhí-yǒu-'lán-mòshuǐ, 'hēi-mòshuǐ-le. Tā-mǎi-zìdiǎn, dìtú, gāngbǐ, qiǎnbǐ, zhǐ. Tā-bǎ-dōngxī-máihǎo-le-yǐhòu, Máo-Xiānsheng-gěi-ta-suànsuan-zhàng. Yígòng-shí-liùkuài-jiǔmáo-èrfēn-qián. Tā-gēn-Máo-Xiānsheng shuō-zàijiàn, názhe-dōngxī jiù-zǒu-le.

#### Dì-wǔkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng láidào-Zhōngguó yǐjing-chàbuduō-bànnián-le. Tā-cháng-dào-shūdiàn-qu-mǎi-shū, suóyì-cháng-kànjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Tā-gēn-Gāo-Xiānsheng mǎnmǎrde-jiù-shi-hén-hǎode-péngyou-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng tèbié-xǐhuan-ta. Gāo-Xiānsheng yǒu-yíwèi-Yīngguó-péngyou, 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu. Hén-záo-yǐqián Gāo-Xiānsheng jiù-xiáng-qǐng-'Wàn - Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-tāmen-jiā-lǐtou-chī-fàn, kěshi-Wàn-Jiàoshòu-tài-máng, lǎo-méi-gōngfu. Yǒu-yìtiān 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu xiàwǔ-sāndiǎn-duō-zhōng tā-gěi-Gāo-Xiānsheng-dǎ-diànhuà shuō-ta-jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu, kéyì-dào-Gāo-jia-chī-wǎn-fàn.

'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gěi-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-dǎle-diànhuà-yǐhòu, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng mǎshàng-jiù-gěi-Bái-Xiānsheng-dǎ-diànhuà, qǐng-ta-jīntian-wǎnshang lái-chī-wǎnfàn. Érqiě-gàosu-ta jīntian-wǎnshang hái-qǐngle-yíwèi-'Yīngguó-péngyou. Qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng wǎnshang-qīdiǎn-zhōng-yídìng-lái.

## Unit II

## Dì-qíkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng jīntian-'yòu-dào-shūdiàn-qu-le. Tā-bú-shi-qu-mǎi-shū. Tā-shi-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-qǐng-chī-fàn shi-zài-nǎr, shi-zài-shūdiàn shi-zài-ta-'jiā-lǐtou. Yīnwei-'Gāo-Xiānsheng gěi-ta-dǎ-diàn-huà-de-shíhou ta-wàngle-wèn, suóyī-ta-lái-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng. 'Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta shi-zài-jiāli. Yòu-gàosu-ta Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéng-'wàitou yíge-xiǎo-shānshang. Nèige-shānshang yǒu-sānsuǒr-fángzi. Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā shi-zhōngjiār-nèisuǒr-fángzi. Shān-xiàtou shi-Zhōngshān-Lù, fùjìn-hái-yǒu-yíge-hú, yǒu-gōngyuán. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-tīngmíngbaile-yǐhòu jiù-zǒu-le.

## Dì-bākè

'Bái-Xiānsheng gēn-'Máo-Xiānsheng wènle-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā-zài-nár-yǐ-hòu, ta-zǒu-le. Kěshi-ta-'yòu-xiángqilai-le. Ta-xiǎng ta-'xiān-dào-túshūguǎn-jiè-shū 'hòu-zài-dào-Gāo-jia-qu, yīnwei-ta-xiǎng-jiè-de-shū Yuǎn-Dàde-túshūguǎn-lǐtou-méi-yǒu. Zhède-túshūguǎn ta-yě-méi-qùguo, hái-shi-děi-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng. Yòu-huídào-shūdiàn.

Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta túshūguǎn-lí-shūdiàn-hén-yuǎn, lí-Gāo-jia-yě-bú-jìn. Máo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta yào-jiè-'shénmo-shū. Tā-shuō tā-yào-jiè liáng-běn-'Yīngwén-shū. Máo-Xiānsheng-hái-wèn-ta zài-dàxué-xué-shénmo. Tā-gàosu-'Máo-Xiānsheng Zhōngguo-wénxué Yīngguo-wénxué ta-'dōu-xué.

## Dì-jiūkè

Suírán-'Bái-Xiānsheng wènle-'Máo-Xiānsheng túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr, kěshi-ta-méi-'gàosu-Bái-Xiānsheng 'zěnmo-zǒu, wàng-'něibiar-zǒu. Bái-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn cóng-shūdiàn-dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmo-zǒu. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta wàng-nán-zǒu, zài-wàng-xī-guǎi, guò-báge-lù-kǒur jiù-shi-túshūguǎn. Túshūguǎnde-fángzi-hěn-dà, hěn-róngyì-kànjian.

Bái-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn zuò-'shénmo-chē. Yīnwei-shūdiàn-fùjìn yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn kéyì-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē-qu. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē, túshūguǎn-fùjìn yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn, xià-chē jiù-shi-túshūguǎn.

Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-wèn-'Máo-Xiānsheng dào-Gāo-jia-qu-yǒu-gōnggòng-qìchē-ma. Máo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta cóng-túshūguǎn-fùjìn-de-chē-zhànshàng-chē dào-Zhōngshān-Lù, zài-gōngyuán-mén-kǒu-xià-chē, shàng-yíge-xiǎo-shān jiù-dào-le.

## Dì-shíkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng wènwánle-Máo-Xiānsheng-yǐhòu, tā-jiù-zài-shūdiàn-fùjìn nèige-gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn shāng-le-chē yào-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-le. Nèige-gōnggòng-qìchēshangde-màipiàoyuán hěn-kèqi. Tā-ràng-Bái-Xiānsheng-mǎi-piào, kěshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng bù-zhīdào-duōshao-qián, jiù-wèn-ta. Tā-jiù-gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shuōqi-huà-lai-le.

Tā-yí-kàn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-yíge-'wàiguó-rén kěshi-shuō-nènmo-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà, ta-shuō-'Bái-Xiānshengde-Zhōngguo-huà shuōde-'zhēn-hǎo. Hái-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-'něiguó-rén, zuò-shì-háishi-niàn-shū. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta zài-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-niàn-shū. Tā-yòu-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng Yuǎn-Dàde-wàiguó-xuésheng 'duō-bu-duō. Ta-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Měiguoyǒu-méi-yǒu-'wàiguó-xuésheng. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta Měiguode-dàxué-lǐ-tou wàiguó-xuésheng-'gèng-duō.

Bái-Xiānsheng-wèn-màipiàoyuán dào-túshūguǎn dēi-'duōshao-shíhou. Mài-piàoyuán-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng chàbuduō-'èrshífēn-zhōng jiù-dào-le. Tā-wèn-Bái-Xiānsheng jiā-zài-nǎr. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta jiā-zài-Měiguó, jiā-lǐ-tou yǒu-fùqin-mǔqin dìdi-mèimei. Mài-piàoyuán yòu-wèn-Bái-Xiānsheng fù-qin-zuò-'shénmo-shì. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta fùqin-mǔqin-dōu-shì-'jiàoyuán.

Bái-Xiānsheng-yě-wèn-tā jiā-lǐ-tou-dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-rén. Mài-piàoyuán-shuō yǒu-tàitai hái-yǒu-liǎngge-háizi. Nán-háizi jiào-Láohu. Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde zhèige-míngzi-hěn-qíguài, kěshi-ta-méi-'shuō-shénmo. Nǚ-háizi jiào-Xiǎomèi. Mài-piàoyuán gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng nǚ-háizi 'yísuì-jīu-huì-zǒu-lù. Ta-zìjǐ-juéde yísuìde-háizi-huì-zǒu-lù-hěn-qíguài, kěshi-yísuìde-háizi-huì-zǒu-lù 'yìdiár-yě-bù-qíguài.

## Dì-shíyīkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng xiàle-gōnggòng-qìchē-yǐhòu jiù-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-le. Gāng-yí-jìnqu tā-tīngjian-yǒu-rén gēn-ta-shuō-huà. Yí-kàn jiù-shi-qián-jǐ-ge-yuè zài-péngyou-nèr-hē-chá-yùjian-de nèiwèi-'Qián-Xiānsheng. Qián-

Xiānsheng-wèn-ta shì-bu-shi-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-kàn-shū. Tā-gàosu-'Qián-Xiānsheng ta-'bú-kàn-shū, ta-xiǎng-'jiè-shū. Qián-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta dá-'nǎr-lái, shì-bu-shi-zuò-'chē-lái-de. Tā-gàosu-'Qián-Xiānsheng zuò-gōng-gòng-qì chē-lái-de. Qián-Xiānsheng-hái-wèn-ta shì-bu-shi-'cháng-lái-túshū-guǎn. Ta-gàosu-'Qián-Xiānsheng zhè-shi-dì-'yí cì. 'Qián-Xiānsheng suí-rán-'qián-jǐge-yuè 'jiànguo-Bái-Xiānsheng, kěshi-méi-jǐhui gēn-ta-'duō-tántan. Jīntian-zài-túshūguǎn-yùjian-le, jiù-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-lái Zhōngguo-de, zuò-'chuán-lái-de háishi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de. 'Bái-Xiānsheng-dōu-gàosu-ta-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yě-wèn-Qián-Xiānsheng 'shénmo-shíhou-líkai-túshūguǎn. Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-yǒu-yídiǎr-shì, ta-'jiù-yào-zǒu. Tā-hái-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng zhèrde-shū-hěn-duō, kèyì-suíbiàn jiè. Tā-hái-shuō yùjian-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta jīntian-wǎnshang qǐng-Bái-Xiānsheng-chī-fàn. Qián-Xiānsheng-shuō rúguó-wǎnshang Bái-Xiānsheng-yǒu-gōngfu, yé-qǐng-dào-ta-jiā-lǐtou 'zuòyizuò, yīnwei-ta-jiā lí-Gāo-jia hěn-jìn.

## Unit III

## Dì-shísānkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-túshūguǎn jièhǎo-le-shū-yǐhòu, yòu-dào-gōnggòng-qì-chē-zhàn-qu-děng-chē. Gāng-yí-shàng-qìchē kànjian-Gāo-Xiáojie zài-chēshang-ne. Tā-jiù-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō-huà.

Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta jīntian-xuéxiào-yǒu-shìqing, suóyì-huǐ-jiā wǎn-le-yídiǎr. Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta shì-bu-shi-dào-tāmen-jiā-lǐtou-qu. Tā-gàosu-Gāo-Xiáojie-shì. 'Bái-Xiānsheng hái-wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie zài-'nǎr-niàn-shū. Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta zài-'zhōngxue-niàn-shū, jīnnian-jiù-bìyè-le. Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta zài-dàxué-'jǐniánjí. Tā-gàosu-Gāo-Xiáojie tā-zài-'sānnián-jí. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén-shuōhǎo-le kǎoshì-yǐhòu 'Bái-Xiānsheng qǐng-'Gāo-Xiáojie kàn-diànyīng. Gāo-Xiáojie-zài-chēshang gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng ta-fùqīn-jīntian-wǎnshang hái-qǐngle-yíwèi-'Yīngguo-péngyou. Yīnwei-'Gāo-Xiānsheng méi-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng shì-nán-de-shì-nǚ-de, Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta shì-yíwèi-xiānsheng. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén zài-chēshang-tánde-hěng-gāoxìng.

## Dì-shísìkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie xuéxiào-lǐtou yǒu-'duōshao-xué-



sheng. Tóngshí-'Gāo-Xiáojie yě-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng Yuǎn-Dà-yǒu-duōshao-xuésheng. Tā-hái-wèn-Gāo-Xiáojie jiānglái-bìyè-yǐhòu xué-shénmo? Gāo-Xiáojie-kǒngpà zìjǐ-kǎobushàng-dàxué. Bái-Xiānsheng-xīwang-Gāo-Xiáojie 'yě-xué-wénxué, kěshi-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō rúguó-kǎobushàng-dàxué jiù-xué-huà, yīnwei-ta-duì-huà-huà hén-yǒu-xìngqu.

Tāmen-liǎngge-rén hái-tándào-xué-yǔyán-de-wèntí, yīnwei-Bái-Xiānsheng shi-xué-Zhōngguo-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-de. Gāo-Xiáojie-jiù-wèn-ta xué-yǔyán 'zěnmoxué. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta xué-yǔyán-de-'fāngfǎ, érqǐe-gàosu-ta xué-yǔyánxué shi-yòng-kēxuéde-fázi yánjiu-yǔyán. Tāmen-yòu-shuōdao xiě-'zì-yìfāngmiàn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng néng-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì. Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta xiànzài-'Zhōngguo-rén dōu-'bú-zěnmoxué-yòng-máobí-xiě-zì-le.

'Gāo-Xiānsheng zì-xiěde-hén-hǎo, kěshi-ta-měitiān 'háishi-jìxude-xiě-zì. Tā-xiěde-zì cháng-sònggei-péngyou. Yé-yóu-hěn-duō-rén gēn-ta-yào-ta-xiě-de-zì. Gāo-Xiānsheng-péngyou-'jiā-lǐtou, chàbuduō-dōu-guàzhe Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiě-de-zì.

#### Dì-shíwǔkè

'Gāo-Xiáojie cháng-tīng-ta-fùqin-shuō Bái-Xiānsheng-hěn-cōngmíng, shūniànde-bú-cuò. Tā-jīntian-gēn-Bái-Xiānsheng zài-chēshang-tánle-hěn-duō-huà zhīdao-'Bái-Xiānsheng 'shì-hén-hǎo, suóyī-tā-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng niàn-'duōshao-nián Zhōngguo-shū-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta yǐjīng-niànguowǔnián-le. Tā-hái-gàosu-'Gāo-Xiáojie zài-'zhōngxué-zěnmoxué, zài-'dàxué-zěnmoxué. Tā-hái-shuō xué-de-shíhou yòng-lùyìnjī tīng-lùyīn. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yòu-gàosu-'Gāo-Xiáojie xué-yǔyán shì-hén-yǒu-yìsi-de. Kāishǐ-nán, yǐhòu-jiù-bíjiǎo-róngyī-le.

Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta cóng-Měiguozěnmoxué-lái-de. Tā-shuō shì-cóng-Niǔyue-zuò-qìchē-dào-Sānfánshì, zuò-chuán-dào-'Rìběn, yǐhòu-zuò-fēijī dào-Zhōngguo-lái-de. Gāo-Xiáojie-gēn-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō ta-méi-zuòguo-fēijī. Fùqin-mǔqin-hén-xǐhuan-qù-Rìběn-wár. Huòzhě-ta-bìyè-yǐhòu gēn-ta-fùqin-mǔqin zuò-fēijī-dào-'Rìběn-qu. Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō huàjiā-bìdēi-dào-bié-de-dìfāng qu-kàn-shānshuǐ, duì-huà-huà hén-yǒu-bāngzhu.

#### Dì-shíliùkè

'Gāo-Xiáojie 'Bái-Xiānsheng tánde-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Zài-chēshang-yuǎnyuār-de jiù-kànjian-shānshang Gāo-jia-nèisuǒr-fángzi-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-yí-kàn

Gāo-jia-zhù-de-zhèige-dìfang hén-hǎo. Yǒu-shān-yóu-shuǐ. 'Gāo-Xiáojie gào-su-'Bái-Xiānsheng ta-fùqin-hén-xǐhuan-zhèige-dìfang, suóyī-tāmen jiù-zài-zhèr-zhù-le.

Liǎngge-rén xià-chē-le, zǒuzhe-lù-tánzhe-huà, yìhuěr-jiù-dào-le-Gāo-jia-mén-kǒur-le. Gāo-Xiáojie-jiù-jiào-mén. Gāo-Tàitai-chūlai-kāi-mén. Tā-kànjian-Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le hěn-gāoxìng. Zhèige-shíhou Gāo-Xiānsheng-yě-chūlai-le gēn-Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà hái-gěi-ta-jièshao zhèiwèi-Yīngguo-rén. Yīngguo-rén shì-yíwèi-jiàoshòu, shì-Gāo-Xiānshengde yíwèi-lǎopéngyou. Tāde-Zhōngguo-xuéwen hén-hǎo, érqǐ yě-néng-shuō 'hén-hǎode-Zhōngguo-huà. Gāo-Xiānsheng-juéde jīntian-hén-yǒu-yìsi. Suírán-qíng-liǎngwèi-'wàiguopéngyou lái-chī-fàn, kěshì-'dōu-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà.

Zhèige-shíhou 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng liǎngge-rén-tánqilai-le. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng shénmo-shíhou-láide, hái-tán-yìxiē-guānyú-xuéxiào-de-wèntí. Yòu-wèn-ta shì-xué-shénmo-de. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu shì-yíwèi-wénxuéjiā. Tā-xiěle-hěn-duō-shū. Tā-xiě-de-Zhōngguo-Wénxué-Yánjiu nèiběn-shū 'Bái-Xiānsheng yǐjīng-kànguo-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō tā-xiě-de-hǎo, tā-hěn-gāoxìng. Yīnwei-'Gāo-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-'Bái-Xiānsheng, tā-gào-su-'Bái-Xiānsheng Wàn-Jiàoshòude-xuéwen-hǎo, ràng-ta-yǐhòucháng-gēn-Wàn-Jiàoshòu zài-yíkuàr-'yánjiu-yánjiu.

'Bái-Xiānsheng zhīdao-'Gāo-Xiáojie néng-huà-huàr, suóyī-ta-xiǎng-kànkān. Kěshì-'Gāo-Xiáojie shì-yíge-nǚ-háizi, tā-bù-xiǎng-ràng-tāmen-kàn-tahuàde-huàr, suóyī-Gāo-Xiānsheng yídìng-jiào-ta-náchulai, qǐng-tāmen-kànkān. Tóngshí-'Gāo-Xiānsheng hái-gào-su-tāmen Gāo-Xiáojie hén-xiǎode-shíhou jiù-xǐhuan-huà-huàr. Tā-yě-méi-xué duōshao-shíhou. Huàr-lǐtou-yǒuyìzhāng Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-huàr. Hángzhoude-shānshuǐ shì-'hén-yǒu-míngde, suóyī-huàchulai hěn-piàoliang. 'Bái-Xiānsheng hén-xǐhuan-nèizhāng-huàr.

#### Dì-shíqīkè

Tāmen-zhèng-zài-kànzhe Gāo-Xiáojie-huàde nèizhāng-Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-huàr-de-shíhou, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng jiù-gào-su-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng tā-yuánlái-shì-'Hángzhou-rén, èrshíjǐsuì tā-líkai-tāde-lǎojiā-Hángzhou. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-shuō Hángzhou-yǒu-míng, Yīngguo-rén-dōu-zhīdao. Gāo-Xiānsheng-'gào-su-tāmen Hángzhou-yǒu-yíge-hú-jiào-Xī-Hú, hěn-piàoliang. Tā-shuō-cóngqián-yǒu-rén ná-Xī-Hú-bǐ-zuò-Xī-Shī. Xī-Shī zài-

Zhōngguo-lìshǐshang-xiěde shi-zuì-piàoliangde-nǚ-rén. Suírán-'Wàn-Jiàoshòu dàoquo-Zhōngguo-hěn-duō-cì, kěshi-tā-méi-qùguo-Hángzhou. 'Bái-Xiānsheng tīng-tāmen-bǎ-Hángzhou shuōde-nènmo-hǎo, suóyī-tā-shuō jiānglái rúguó-yǒu-jīhuì tā-yě-dào-Hángzhou-qu-lǚxíng.

'Bái-Xiānsheng kànjian-Gāo-Xiáojie-huà-de-nèizhāng-Hángzhou-huàr gēn-tāmen-xiànzài-zhù-de-dìfang-chàbuduō, tā-hěn-qíguài jiu-wèn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng. Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiào-le, gào-su-ta yīnwei-tā-xǐhuan-tāde-lǎo-jiā tā-kànjian-zhèige-dìfang hěn-xiàng-Hángzhou jiu-zài-zhèr mǎile-zhèisuǒr-fáng-zi-le.

'Bái-Xiānsheng tīng-rén-shuōguo Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-piàoliang tā-jiu-wèn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'duì-bu-duì. Wàn-Jiàoshòu-shuō-shi-zhēnde, hái-gào-su-ta Gāo-'Tàitai-shi-Sūzhou-rén, suóyī-Gāo-'Xiáojie-nènmo-piàoliang.

'Wàn-Jiàoshòu hén-xǐhuan-hē-jiǔ-huá-quán. Zhèige-shíhou tā-gēn-'Gāo-Xiānsheng huáqi-quán-lai-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yǐqián-méi-kànjianguo. Tā-kànle-bàntiān tā-hěn-qíguài wèi-shénmo-yíngle bù-hē-jiǔ-ne. Tā-kàn-tāmen-huále-jǐcì ta-cái-míngbai.

#### Unit IV

#### Dì-shíjiǔkè

'Gāo-Xiānsheng 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu zhèng-zài-huá-quán-de-shíhou, Gāo-Tàitai bǎ-fàn-zuòhǎo-le, ràng-tāmen-chī-fàn. Gāo-Tàitai zuòle-hěn-duōde-cài. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu shi-Gāo-Xiānshengde-lǎo-péngyou, 'Bái-Xiānsheng shi-xuésheng, suóyī-bú-yòng-zěnmò-kèqi. Tāmen-suíbiàn-zuòzhe suíbiàn-chī. Gāo-Tàitai-děi-zuò-cài, bù-néng-gēn-tāmen yíkuàr-chī-fàn. Kèren-dāngrán-déi-qǐng-Gāo-Tàitai-lái yíkuàr-chī-le.

Gāo-Tàitai-cài zuòde-zhēn-hǎo. 'Wàn-Jiàoshòu gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngge-rén, suírán-cháng-chī-Zhōngguo-fàn, kěshi-yǒude-cài tāmen hái-bù-zhīdao jiào-shénmo. Jī-zuòde-hén-hǎo-chī. Tāmen-wèn nèige-jī-shi-zěnmò-zuòde, jiào-shénmo-míngzi. Gāo-jia-jīntian-zuò-le wǔge-cài-yíge-tāng. Yóu-chǎo-báicài, shīzi-tóu, táng-cù-yú, chǎo-dòufu, hóng-shāo-jī, niú-ròu-tāng. Tāmen-'dōu-hén-xǐhuan-chī, érqǐè zhèi-liǎngwèi-wàiguopéngyou yòng-kuàizi-yòngde-hén-hǎo.

Jǐge-rén chīzhe-fàn tánzhe-huà, dōu-hěn-gāoxìng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie huì-zuò-'fàn-bú-huì. 'Gāo-Xiáojie dāngrán-shuō-ta-bú-huì-le, kěshi-Gāo-Tàitai-shuō tā-huì-zuò.

## Dì-èrshikè

Cóng-Gāo-jia-qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng chī-fàn-yǐhòu, Gāo-Xiáojie mǎnmār-de-gēn-'Bái-Xiānsheng tāmen-liǎngge-rén-hén-hǎo. Liǎngge-rén chàbuduō-měige-xīngqī dōu-jiàn-liǎng-sāncì. Érqiě 'Bái-Xiānsheng cháng-gěi-Gāo-Xiáojie-dǎ-diànhuà.

Liùyuede-kǎoshì-wánle-yǐhòu, yǒu-yìtiān 'Bái-Xiānsheng gěi-Gāo-Xiáojie-dǎ-diànhuà. Gāo-Xiáojie zài-diànhuà-lǐtou gàosu-Bái-Xiānsheng tā-zhèicì-kǎode-bú-dà-hǎo. Tā-yě-wèn-'Bái-Xiānsheng kǎode-zěnmoyàng. 'Bái-Xiānsheng dāngrán-yé-děi-shuō zìjǐ-kǎode-'bù-zěnmoyàng-le.

Gāo-Xiáojie-yòu-shuō fùqin-mǔqin yào-dài-ta dào-Rìběn-qu-lǚxíng-le. Tā-fùqin-mǔqin-xiǎng-zài-'Rìběn zhù-liǎngge-yuè-cái-huílai, kěshi-tā-bù-xiǎng-zhù-nènmo-jiǔ. Tā-xiǎng-gēn-fùqin-mǔqin-shuō zhù-'yíge-yuè-jiù-huílai. Bái-Xiānsheng-dāngrán-xīwang Gāo-Xiáojie-kuài-huílai-le.

Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō xiáng-qǐng-ta chī-fàn-kàn-diànyǐngr, wèn-tā-shénmo-shíhou-yǒu-gōngfu. Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō 'měitiān-dōu-kéyi, yīnwei-yǐjing-fàngjià-le. Bái-Xiānsheng-xiǎng háishi-ràng-'Gāo-Xiáojie shuō-yíge-shíhou bǐjiào-hǎo, suóyi-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō xīngqī sān. Tā-yòu-wèn-Gāo-Xiáojie xǐhuan-chī-shénmo. Gāo-Xiáojie-zhīdao Bái-Xiānsheng-yé-hén-xǐhuan chī-běifāng-fàn, tā-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng shūdiàn-fùjìn yǒu-ge-běifāng-fànguǎr, dào-nèige-fànguǎr-chī 'hǎo-bu-hǎo. 'Bái-Xiānsheng 'dāngrán-xǐhuan-qù-le.

Tāmen-yòu-yánjiu zài-nǎr-kàn-diànyǐngr. 'Gāo-Xiáojie tīng-biéde-péngyou-shuō Zhōngguo-Diànyǐngyuàn-yǎn-de-nèibù-piānzi bú-cuò, shi-yíbù-lìshǐ-piānzi. Tāmen-shuōhǎole chīle-wǎnfàn qù-kàn-'jiúdiǎn-nèi-yìchǎng. Kěshi-bìděi-xiān-qu-mǎi-piào, yīnwei-piānzi-hǎo, kàn-de-rén-tài-duō.

## Dì-èrshiyīkè

Bái-Wénshān-Xiānsheng xīngqī sān-xiàwǔ-liùdiǎn-zhōng jiù - dào - Gāo - jia qù-jiē-Gāo-Měiyīng-Xiáojie. Liǎngge-rén yíkuàr-dào-fànguǎr-qu-le. Dào-le-fànguǎr-yǐhòu huōji-guòlai wèn-tāmen-yào-chī-shénmo. 'Bái-Xiānsheng qíng-huōji bǎ-càidār-gěi-ta-náilai. Gāo-Xiáojie-gàosu-ta bú-yào-tài-duòde-cài, jiǎndān-yìdiǎr-chī, yàoburán diànyǐngr-kāi-yǎn-le, jiu-kànbutiān gùshide-kāishǐ-shi-shénmo. Huōji-'gàosu-tāmen zhèige-fànguǎr-zuì-hǎode-cài yǒu-shīzi-tóu, hóng-shāo-yú, kǎo-yāzi, chǎo-xiārér. Tā-hái-shuō yóuqíshitāmen-zhèrde-kǎo-yāzi shi-quán-guó-dì-yī-le.

Tāmen-liǎngge-rén xiǎng-yào-liǎngge-cài-yíge-tāng. Huōji-gēn-Gāo-Xiáo-

jie-shuō, tāmende-chǎo-xiārér-hǎojíle. 'Gāo-Xiáojie jiu-yàole-ge-chǎo-xiārér. 'Bái-Xiānsheng yào-yíge-hóng-shāo-yú. Tā-yòu-wèn-'Gāo-Xiáojie yào-shénmo-tāng. Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō yào-zhū-ròu-báicài-tāng. Bái-Xiānsheng-hái-xiǎng zài-yào-yìdiár-jiǎozi. Gāo-Xiáojie-juéde liǎngge-rén liǎngge-cài-yíge-tāng yídìng-gòu-chī-le. Tā-bú-ràng-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-yào-jiǎozi-le. Kěshi-'Gāo-Xiáojie xiǎng-chī-fàn-yǐhòu chī-diar-tián-diǎnxin. Tā-zhīdao-běifāng-fànguǎr chàbuduō-dōu-yǒu-xìngrér-dòufu. Yí-wèn huǒji-shuō-yǐjīng-màiwán-le.

Huǒji-bǎ-cài-nálai. Liǎngge-rén-yí-kàn zhèrde-cài zuòde-zhēn-piàoliang. Kěshi-Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde hái-shi-'Gāo-jiade-cài-hǎo-chī. Gāo-jiade-cài zuòde-hǎo-shi-zhēnde, yīnwei-Gāo-Tàitai tā-tiāntian-yánjiu-zuò-fàn. 'Gāo-Xiáojie gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng tā-mǔqin-xiǎng-bǎ-zuò-fàn-de-jīngyan xiě-yì-běn-shū-ne. Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde Zhōngguo-fàn hǎo-chī-shi-hǎo-chī, kěshi-zuòqilai-tài-máfan-le. Gāo-Xiáojie-juéde yě-bù-zěnmó-máfan.

Nèige-shíhou yǐjīng-bādiǎn-bàn-le. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén hēle-yìdiǎr-chá, ràng-huǒji-bǎ-zhàng-suàn-le, gěile-qían yé-gěile-huǒji-yìdiǎr-xiǎofèi, jiù-zǒu-le.

### Dì-èrshí'èrkè

Gāo-Xiānsheng, Gāo-Tàitai, Gāo-Xiáojie dào-Rìběn-lǚxíng-huílai-de-shíhou, suírán-'Bái-Xiānsheng dào-fēijīchǎng-qu-'jiē-tāmen, kěshi-méi-shuōhěn-duòde-huà. Dì-èrtián-zǎochen 'Bái-Xiānsheng gěi-Gāo-jia-dǎ-ge-diàn-huà, shuō-xiàwǔ dào-Gāo-jia-qu-'kàn-tāmen. Gāo-Xiānsheng-hěn-gāoxìng gàosu-Gāo-Tàitai ràng-'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-tāmen-jiā-lǐtou-chī-wǎnfàn.

Bái-Xiānsheng-'lái-de-shíhou, Gāo-Xiáojie-kāi-de-mén. Yí-kànjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng jiu-gàosu-ta Gāo-Xiānsheng-děng-ta-ne. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng tīngjian-'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le, yě-chūlai-le. Tā-ràng-Gāo-Xiáojie bǎ-Rìběn-mǎilai-de-diǎnxin náchulai, qǐng-Bái-Xiānsheng-chī.

'Gāo-Xiānsheng zài-Rìběn-jiu-xiǎng mǎi-yìdiǎr-dōngxī huílai-sònggei-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Tā-zài-shūdiàn-mǎi-shū kànjian-yìběn shuō-pīnyīn-gēn-Hànzì-wèntí-de-shū, tā-jiu-mǎi-le dǎsuan-huílai-jiù-sònggei-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Tā-jiànle-'Bái-Xiānsheng wèn-ta-zhèxiē-shíhou dōu-zuò-xiē-shénmo. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta 'nár-yě-méi-qù, tiāntian-kàn-shū, kànkān-péngyou, gěi-fùqin-mǔqin-péngyoumen-xiě-xìn, hái-kànle-jǐcì-diànyǐng.

Gāo-Xiānsheng-gàosu-'Bái-Xiānsheng Rìběn-jiàoshòu-Zhōngshān-Xiānsheng xiě-de-yìběn-shū-lǐtou shuō-guānyú-Hànzì gēn-pīnyīn-de-wèntí. Tā-wèn-

'Bái-Xiānsheng kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén shi-zěnmó-xuéde, Měiguó-xuéxiào-jiāo-Zhōngwén dōu-yòng-shénmó-fāngfǎ, jiào-Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta.

Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta měige-xuéxiào-bù-yíyàng. Kāishǐ-xuéde-shíhou yǒude-yòng-'Hànzì-jiāo yǒude-yòng-'pīnyīn-jiāo. Gāo-Xiānsheng-juéde xué-'Zhōngwén yīnggāi-yòng-'Hànzì-jiāo, rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn gēn-niàn-'Yīngwén-chàbuduō-le, nà-jiù-'bú-shi-xué-Zhōngwén-le.

Kěshi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-juéde yòng-pīnyīn-fázi-hǎo. Xiān-huì-shuō-le-yǐ-hou, zài-xué-Hànzì jiù-róngyi-le. 'Gāo-Xiānsheng-xiǎng 'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuōde-bú-duì. Tā-shuō xuéle-'bàntiānde-pīnyīn lián-'yíge-Zhōngguó-zì yě-bu-rènshi. Rúguǒ-niàn-Zhōngguó-shū hái-děi-zài-kāishǐ-xué-Hànzì. Bái-Xiānsheng-gēn-tā-shuō xiān-míngbai-le cǐr-gēn-jùzi-de-yìsi-yǐhou, zài-xué-Hànzì-jiù-róngyi-duō-le. Bú-bì-jì-yìsi-le, zhǐ-jì-Hànzì-jiù-kéyi-le.

'Gāo-Xiānsheng tīng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuōde yé-yǒu-yìdiǎr-duì tā-yòu-wèn Bái-Xiānsheng-kāishǐ-xué shi-zěnmó-xuéde. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta kāishǐ-xué shi-tīng-lùyīn zìjǐ-liànxi-fāyīn. Gāo-Xiānsheng-yòu-wèn-ta xué-shuō-huà shi-zěnmó-xué. Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta xiān-xué-sìshēng zài-xué-cǐr, jùzi, qīngzhòngyīn-zài-nǎr yǐhòu-zài-xué-huìhuà. Tā-shuō xué-yǔyán-zuì-yàojǐnde shi-zhùyì-fāyīn. Pīnyīn-duì-fāyīn yǒu-bāngzhu. Zuì-yàojǐnde-shi sìshēng-yào-zhǔn. Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō yòng-Hànzì-xué, nǐ-bú-rènshi-de-zì (bǐfang-shuō-zhèige-tā-zì), nǐ-jiù-méi-fázi zhīdao-zěnmó-niàn. Rúguǒ-yòng-pīnyīn yí-kàn-jiù-zhīdao tāde-yīn-shi-shénmó, jiù-huì-niàn-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng-juéde Bái-Xiānsheng-shuōde yé-yǒu-yìdiǎr-duì. Tā-méi-fázi-le. Zhí-hǎo-shuō pīnyīnde-fázi hǎo-shi-hǎo, kànqilai kěshi-méi-yǒu-Hànzì-piàoliang.

#### Dì-èrshisānkè

'Bái-Xiānsheng zài-Zhōngguó-niànle-yìnián-shū, xiànzài-yào-huídao-Měiguó-qu niàn-dàxué-sìniánjí. Gāo-Xiānsheng Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie zài-zǒude-nèi-yìtiān zǎochen-hén-zǎo jiù-dào-ta-zhù-de-dìfang-qù-le, bāngzhu-ta-shōushi-dōngxì, érqǐě xīwang-gēn-ta-duō-tán-yihuěr. Yǐhòu bù-zhīdào-shénmó-shíhou cái-néng-zài-kànjian-ta.

'Bái-Xiānsheng kànjian-tāmen-hén-zǎo-jiù-lái-le, hěn-'xièxiè-tāmen. Gāo-Tàitai-juéde yīnggāi-zǎo-yìdiǎr-dào-fēijīchǎng. Tāmen-zuòzhe-chē jiù-dào-fēijīchǎng-qù-le.

Gāo-Xiānsheng-tāmen dōu-hěn-xīwang Bái-Xiānsheng-'zài-huflai. Gāo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta huíqu-yǐhòu shì-bu-shi jìxù-xué-yǔyánxué-gēn-wénxué.

Bái-Xiānsheng-gàosu-ta hái-jìxu-xué. Tā-hái-yào-yònggōng-xué. Gāo-Xiānsheng-wèn-ta zài-Rìběn-zhù-'jǐtiān. Tā-dǎsuan-zài-nèr-zhù bú-dào-yíge-xīngqī jiù-huí-Měiguó. Tā-zài-Rìběn yào-qu-kàn-tāde-lǎoshī. Tā-zài-Měiguó-de-shíhou gēn-nèiwèi-lǎoshī dédao-bù-shǎo-de-xuéwen. Tā-gēn-Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō hěn-xièxie-Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai tāmen-duì-ta-nènmohǎo. Tāmen-zhèng-zai-cāntīng zuòzhe-hēchá-de-shíhou, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng kànjian-tāmende-péngyou Wáng-Xiānsheng-Wáng-Tàitai xià-fēijī. Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai gēn-tāmen-shuō-huà-qu-le.

Zhè-zhí-yǒu Bái-Xiānsheng-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie tāmen-liǎngge-rén-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jiù-gēn-Gāo-Xiáojie-shuō ta-zǒule-yǐhòu yǎo-hén-jiǔ-bú-jiàn-le, xīwang-Gāo-Xiáojie gěi-ta-duō-xiě-xìn. Gāo-Xiáojie-wèn-ta zǒule-yǐhòu, shì-bu-shi-'zhēnde-néng-huílai. Tā-shuō xīwang-'zhēnde-néng-huílai.

Tāmen-liǎngge-rén zhèng-shuōzhe-huà-ne, Gāo-Xiānsheng-Gāo-Tàitai huílai-le. Gāo-Xiānsheng-shuō shíhou-dào-le. 'Bái-Xiānsheng jiu-shàng-le-fēijī.

## Lesson 25 INTRODUCTION TO CHINESE CHARACTERS

- I. Introductory Remarks (p. 443)
- II. Evolution of mǎ 'horse' and yú 'fish' (p. 446)
- III. Examples of Chinese Characters (p. 447)
- IV. Explanations of Chinese Characters (p. 448)
- V. Stroke Order of Chinese Characters (p. 450)
- VI. The Numbers from One to Ten (p. 451)
- VII. Styles of Writing Chinese Characters (p. 452)
- VIII. The Art of the Character-Scroll (p. 453)

### I. Introductory Remarks

The earliest specimens of Chinese writing which have come down to us consist of characters written on bones, tortoise shells, and bronze vessels which were used in connection with certain ritual practices of the Shang Dynasty (about 1500–1028 B.C.). In the 3,500 years since then the characters have been modified and formalized, but the basic principles have remained unaltered, so that the contemporary Chinese script is more closely related to the literary past than any other writing system. One of the most stimulating aspects of the study of Chinese is the feeling of continuity and of contact with the past which is provided by a knowledge of the characters.

The evolution of the Chinese script through the past three and a half millennia is a fascinating but complicated subject. Relationships between the written symbols and the spoken words of the Chinese language present even more complex problems. Perhaps as your study of Chinese progresses, you will want to pursue some of these matters further. Here, we give you only a brief introduction to the Chinese characters.

Some contemporary Chinese characters are formalized pictographs whose origins can be traced back to antiquity. Two examples of these are the characters for mǎ 'horse' and yú 'fish,' for which we give below the evolution from the Shang Dynasty to the present. Some contemporary characters are obscure in origin and others have a complex history. A few characters with varied origins are illustrated below (III, "Examples of Chinese Characters"). In Section IV, "Explanation of Chinese Characters," a few notes are provided, including the modern pronunciation.

Although the characters with a clearly pictographic origin are perhaps of greatest interest, they now form only a small part of the total. As the Chinese script developed and became more complex, various new devices were intro-



duced into it. One device was to combine two or more characters to form a new one whose meaning was related to that of the original characters. No. 18 in the "Examples of Chinese Characters" illustrates this sort of character compounding. Another device was to assign additional extended meanings to a character; this is illustrated in the "Explanations" for character No. 14 (yīn). Hardly anyone reading the characters for yīnwei 'because' would now associate yīn with a man resting on a mat.

Indeed, sometimes there is no connection at all between the original significance of a character and a meaning it has subsequently acquired. Characters were often borrowed to represent sounds rather than meanings; an analogous English example would be to write the word 'too' with the figure '2.' Borrowings like these overloaded some characters to the point where it became necessary to suggest specific areas of meaning by adding another element, called a radical; thus, character No. 16 (mén 'door' or 'gate') is taken (in neutral tone) for its phonetic value and combined with a variant form of No. 2 (rén 'man'), to form a new character (No.17) which is pronounced mén and has a meaning connected with 'man' or 'person': it functions as the pluralizing suffix for personal pronouns, as well as a few nouns denoting persons.

All this would be complicated enough if this were the end of the story. The fact, however, is that in the past three and a half millenia, so many changes have occurred in the ways characters are pronounced and written that many of them are now inconsistent and ambiguous, and others are shrouded in mystery. The origin of No. 19 (yě 'also'), for example, is unknown; there is no indication in the symbol itself of its sound or its meaning. In the case of No. 20 (tā 'he'), although the left-hand part (a variant of rén 'man') tells us that the character probably has something to do with human beings, the right-hand part—a character which when used independently means 'also' and is pronounced yě—not only fails to identify a meaning more specifically but adds an element of confusion regarding pronunciation.

As a result of these factors, although it is a stimulating and pleasurable experience to learn some of the Chinese characters, learning many others involves a great deal of hard work.

One aspect of writing Chinese characters is learning the order in which the strokes are written. The general rule is: top before bottom, left before right, and inside before outside. There are so many exceptions to this, however, that we have provided a table entitled "Stroke Order of Chinese Characters" (Section V below) to show the sequence of strokes for each of the characters discussed in Section III, as well as for the numbers from one to ten.

If one does not write the strokes in the proper sequence, the characters will simply not look right. Pleasing appearance of characters is very important to the Chinese, who have elevated calligraphy to the rank of a fine art. Some Chinese, like Mr. Gao, practice calligraphy the way a musician practices his music. (This applies, of course, only to characters written with a brush; those written with a pencil or fountain pen, as in ordinary usage, lack altogether the aesthetic appeal of characters done with a Chinese writing brush.)

There are several styles of writing Chinese characters. In the regular style, each character is written deliberately and each stroke is made distinctly. In another style, the Running Hand, some of the strokes are run together, but the relationship of these characters to the regular forms is usually fairly clear. A still more cursive style, sometimes called Grass Writing or Grass Characters, departs widely from the original. It is in this latter form that Chinese writing has been most highly developed into an art in

which flow of line, relative thickness of strokes, and other elements give scope for the diverse talents of Chinese calligraphists.

Handwritten characters, in whatever style, differ in appearance from printed characters. There are also several styles of the latter, including some which are analogous to our italic, boldface, and even the distorted forms used in advertisements.

The various styles of writing Chinese, together with one printed version, are illustrated in this and the next lesson. In Lesson 26 (which repeats the contents of Lesson 1, so that you can study in characters the same material you learned the first time in transcription), the Dialogue is shown in a printed version and the rest in handwritten form. In the present lesson, the table "Styles of Writing Chinese Characters" (Section VII below) presents a group of characters each written in various styles; the regular form (written first with a fountain pen and again with a brush), the Running Hand, and the Grass Characters. The latter style also appears in "The Art of the Character-Scroll" (Section VIII below).\*

---

\* The brush-written characters in "Styles of Chinese Writing" below were done by Dr. John C. H. Wu, who—besides being a noted jurist—is also a poet and a calligraphist. Dr. Wu also contributed the character-scroll to illustrate this distinctively Chinese art form. The remaining characters in this lesson and the following one were written by Mrs. Teng Chia-ye. A former student of Professor Tung Tso-pin, one of China's leading authorities on the early script, Mrs. Teng also contributed to the analysis of the characters presented here.

II. Evolution of mǎ 'horse' and yú 'fish'

mǎ



yú



Shang Dynasty (about 1500–1028 B.C.). Earliest known form, found on bronze vessels and oracle bones.

About 200 B.C. "Small Seal" characters developed in the Ch'in Dynasty (221–206 B.C.)

About 200 B.C. A scribal script developed as a simplification of the "Small Seal" and other complex forms.

About 100 A.D. "Model Script," a standardized form which replaced the previous variety of styles and has continued in use to the present.

III. Examples of Chinese Characters

(The first form shown is the modern form; the second is the earliest known form.)

- |     |   |   |     |   |   |
|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|
| 1.  | 馬 | 𠩺 | 11. | 車 | 車 |
| 2.  | 魚 | 𩺰 | 12. | 上 | 二 |
| 3.  | 人 | 亼 | 13. | 下 | 冫 |
| 4.  | 大 | 大 | 14. | 因 | 囙 |
| 5.  | 天 | 天 | 15. | 黑 | 𠩺 |
| 6.  | 水 | 水 | 16. | 門 | 門 |
| 7.  | 山 | 山 | 17. | 們 |   |
| 8.  | 日 | 日 | 18. | 明 |   |
| 9.  | 月 | 月 | 19. | 也 |   |
| 10. | 中 | 中 | 20. | 他 |   |

## IV. Explanations of Chinese Characters

1. Mǎ 'horse.' Pictograph showing an eye, body and four legs, and a tail.
2. Yú 'fish.' Pictograph showing scales and flippers.
3. Rén 'man.' This is a sort of stick drawing of a man, showing only the two legs and a simple line for the rest of the body.
4. Dà 'big.' Drawing of a man with arms.
5. Tiān 'heaven; deity.' Drawing of a deity in the form of a man. From this comes the meaning 'heaven,' and from the latter the meaning of 'day.'
6. Shuǐ 'water.' Pictograph of flowing water.
7. Shān 'mountain.' Drawing of mountain peaks.
8. Rì 'sun.' Pictograph of the sun. The character is used to represent the first syllable of Rìběn 'Japan.'
9. Yuè 'moon' or 'month.' Early Chinese chronology was based on the lunar calendar. The solar calendar used in the West was officially adopted after the establishment of the Chinese Republic in 1911.
10. Zhōng 'middle.' Picture of a target being pierced by an arrow.
11. Chē 'cart, vehicle.' Bird's-eye view showing two wheels, the axle, and the body.
12. Shàng 'above.' A somewhat more abstract pictograph showing the earth as a straight line and a dot or stroke above it.
13. Xià 'below.' Based on the same principle as No. 12.
14. Yīn. Pictograph of a man lying sprawled on a square mat. The character had an original meaning of 'rest upon.' From this come the extended meanings 'rely on; based on, owing to, because of.' The character is used to represent the first syllable of yīnwei 'because.'
15. Hēi 'black.' Pictograph of a man with face and body covered with spots, perhaps black war paint.
16. Mén 'door, gate.' Pictograph reminiscent of the doors in old-style saloons of America's West.
17. Mén. Pluralizing suffix for pronouns. The right-hand part, mén 'gate,' is used here for its phonetic value. The left-hand part, a variant form of rén 'man,' indicates that the character has to do with human beings.
18. Míng 'bright.' Compounded from the pictographs for rì 'sun' and yuè 'moon' to represent the somewhat more abstract idea of 'bright.' As in

the corresponding English word, míng has acquired a figurative meaning in addition to its literal one. It is used to represent the first syllable of míngbai 'understand, be clear about' and the second syllable of cōng-míng 'bright, clever.'

19. Yě 'also.' Origin unknown.
20. Tā 'he, she.' Character compounded from rén on the left and yě on the right. The pronunciation tā is related to neither of the components.

V. Stroke Order of Chinese Characters

- |       | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1. 馬  | 一 | 二 | 三 | 肆 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬 | 馬  |    |    |
| 2. 魚  | ノ | 夕 | 夕 | 夕 | 夕 | 魚 | 魚 | 魚 | 魚 | 魚  | 魚  | 魚  |
| 3. 人  | ノ | 人 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 4. 大  | 一 | ナ | 大 |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 5. 天  | 一 | 二 | 天 | 天 |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 6. 水  | ノ | 才 | 水 |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 7. 山  | ノ | 山 | 山 |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 8. 日  | 一 | 日 | 日 | 日 |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 9. 月  | ノ | 月 | 月 | 月 |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 10. 中 | ノ | 口 | 中 |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 11. 車 | 一 | 車 | 車 | 車 | 車 | 車 |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 12. 上 | ノ | 上 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 13. 下 | 一 | 下 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 14. 因 | ノ | 因 | 因 | 因 | 因 |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 15. 黑 | ノ | 黑 | 黑 | 黑 | 黑 | 黑 | 黑 | 黑 | 黑 | 黑  | 黑  | 黑  |
| 16. 門 | ノ | 門 | 門 | 門 | 門 | 門 |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 17. 們 | ノ | 們 | 們 | 們 | 們 | 們 | 們 | 們 | 們 | 們  | 們  | 們  |
| 18. 明 | ノ | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明 | 明  |    |    |
| 19. 也 | ノ | 也 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 20. 他 | ノ | 他 | 他 | 他 | 他 |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |

VI. The Numbers from One to Ten

		1	2	3	4	5
1.	一	一				
2.	二	一	二			
3.	三	一	二	三		
4.	四	一	二	三	四	四
5.	五	一	二	三	四	五
6.	六	一	二	三	四	五
7.	七	一	二			
8.	八	一	二			
9.	九	一	二			
10.	十	一	二			



## VII. Styles of Writing Chinese Characters

Columns 1 and 5. Regular characters written with a fountain pen.

Columns 2 and 6. Regular characters written with a brush.

Columns 3 and 7. Running Hand characters written with a brush.

Columns 4 and 8. Grass characters written with a brush.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
馬	馬	馬	馬	車	車	車	車
魚	魚	魚	魚	上	上	上	上
人	人	人	人	下	下	下	下
大	大	大	大	因	因	因	因
天	天	天	天	黑	黑	黑	黑
水	水	水	水	門	門	門	門
山	山	山	山	們	們	們	們
日	日	日	日	明	明	明	明
月	月	月	月	也	也	也	也
中	中	中	中	他	他	他	他

VIII. The Art of the Character-Scroll

The following example of Grass Characters illustrates how they might appear on a scroll hung on a wall for decorative purposes.

長  
不  
惟  
君  
子  
為  
善  
百

祥  
集  
賢  
以  
淡  
暉

樹  
及  
時  
結  
古  
如  
實

德  
範  
克  
先  
生  
正

四  
明  
吳  
德  
書



## Lesson 26 LESSON 1 IN CHARACTER FORM

### VOCABULARY

#### I. Transcription

The following transcriptions represent the sounds of the characters as they occur in actual usage in Lesson 1. Those in parentheses show their sounds as spoken in isolation, when this is different.

- |        |              |                   |                 |
|--------|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a   | 7. jiàn      | 13. nín           | 19. xiáo (xiǎo) |
| 2. bái | 8. jie (jiě) | 14. sheng (shēng) | 20. xiè, xie    |
| 3. dōu | 9. ma        | 15. tā            | 21. yě          |
| 4. gāo | 10. men      | 16. tài           | 22. zài         |
| 5. hǎo | 11. ne       | 17. wǒ            |                 |
| 6. hěn | 12. nǐ       | 18. xiān          |                 |

#### II. Stroke Order

- |      | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1. 啊 | 丨 | 凵 | 口 | 叮 | 吓 | 吓 | 吓 | 吓 | 吓 | 吓  | 吓  | 啊  |
| 2. 白 | 丿 | 丨 | 白 | 白 | 白 |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 3. 都 | 一 | 丨 | 土 | 𠂇 | 耂 | 耂 | 耂 | 耂 | 耂 | 都  | 都  |    |
| 4. 高 | 丶 | 亠 | 亠 | 古 | 古 | 高 | 高 | 高 | 高 | 高  |    |    |
| 5. 好 | 丨 | 女 | 女 | 好 | 好 | 好 |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 6. 很 | 丨 | 彳 | 彳 | 彳 | 彳 | 很 | 很 | 很 | 很 | 很  |    |    |
| 7. 見 | 丨 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 月 | 見 |   |   |   |    |    |    |
| 8. 姐 | 丨 | 女 | 女 | 姐 | 姐 | 姐 | 姐 | 姐 |   |    |    |    |
| 9. 嗎 | 丨 | 凵 | 口 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 𠂇 | 嗎 | 嗎 | 嗎 | 嗎  | 嗎  | 嗎  |

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
10. 們	丿	丨	自	伊	伊	伊	伊	伊	們	們	們	
11. 哪	、	ㄩ	口	叮	叨	呀	哪	哪	哪	哪		
12. 你	丿	丨	你	你	你	你	你					
13. 您	丿	丨	你	你	你	你	你	您	您	您	您	
14. 生	丿	丨	牛	牛	生							
15. 他	丿	丨	他	他	他							
16. 太	一	ナ	大	大	太							
17. 我	丿	二	手	手	我	我	我					
18. 先	丿	丨	牛	牛	先	先						
19. 小	丿	丨	小	小								
20. 謝	丿	二	言	言	言	言	言	言	言	言	言	言
			謝	謝	謝	謝						
21. 也	丿	丨	也	也								
22. 再	一	丨	再	再	再	再						

## DIALOGUE

白: 高先生, 您好啊?

高: 我很好, 你呢?

白: 好, 謝謝您。高太太, 高小姐也好嗎?

高: 他們都好, 謝謝。

白: 再見, 高先生。

高: 再見, 再見。

## SENTENCE BUILD-UP

你  
好  
1. 你好

您  
好  
2. 您好

你  
們  
3. 你們好?

好  
啊?  
4. 你好啊?

好  
嗎?  
5. 你好嗎?

白  
先  
生  
6. 白先生, 您好嗎?

高  
先  
生  
7. 高先生, 您好嗎?

小  
姐  
8. 高小姐, 您好嗎?

太  
太  
9. 高太太, 您好嗎?

謝  
謝  
10. 謝謝你。

我  
們  
11. 我們謝謝你。

他  
們  
12. 他們謝謝你。

很  
好  
13. 我很好。

也  
也  
14. 他也很好。

都  
都  
15. 他們都高嗎?

我  
好  
你  
哪  
16. 我好, 你哪?

再  
見  
再  
見  
17. 再見高太太。

PATTERN DRILLS

Pattern 1.1.

- |        |               |
|--------|---------------|
| 1. 好   | 6. 也很高。       |
| 2. 很好  | 7. 他們都好       |
| 3. 也好  | 8. 他們都很高      |
| 4. 我好  | 9. 高小姐也好      |
| 5. 我很好 | 10. 白先生白太太都很高 |

Pattern 1.2.

1. 我謝謝他
2. 他謝謝我
3. 他謝謝你
4. 我也謝謝他
5. 他們都謝謝你

Pattern 1.3.

1. 你好嗎?
2. 他們都高嗎?
3. 白先生也好嗎?
4. 白太太白小姐都好嗎?
5. 你們都好嗎?

SUBSTITUTION TABLES

	I					II	
你	好	……	白	先生	……	好	……
您		啊	高	太太	你		啊
你們		嗎		小姐	您		嗎
			III				
	白	先生	謝	我	……		
	高	太太	謝	你	們		
		小姐		他			
			IV				
	白	先生	也	好	……		
	高	太太	很	高	嗎		
		小姐					

BOY MEETS GIRL

白 高小姐你好？  
 高 好，您好嗎？  
 白 很好，高先生，高太太都好嗎？  
 高 都好，謝謝您。  
 白 再見，再見。  
 高 再見，白先生。

**SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIALS AND INDEXES**



## MEMORIZATION EXERCISES (CHINESE)

The following exercises consist of Basic Sentences, some but not all of which are identical with the pattern sentences, and Dialogues, which consist chiefly of excerpts from the dialogues in the text. The two types of exercises together include all of the new structural patterns and vocabulary introduced in each lesson. Hence these exercises, despite their brevity, are of fundamental importance and should be thoroughly memorized to the point where the student has complete mastery over the material and can recite it with near-perfect pronunciation and fluency.

Tape recordings of these exercises are available from the Institute of Far Eastern Studies, Seton Hall University.\* The dialogues are recorded four times: once at ordinary conversational speed; once with pauses for repetition; once to present the part of speaker A, followed by pauses in which the student responds with the part of speaker B; once with the roles reversed so that the student takes the part of speaker A in the pauses provided for this purpose and the recording takes the part of speaker B. In the English versions of the dialogues, given below, the two parts are separated to facilitate the dialogue between the student and the tape recorder.

### LESSON 1

#### Basic Sentences

1. Tā-hén-hǎo.
2. Xièxie-ni.
3. Nǐ-yé-hǎo-ma?

#### Dialogue

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo-a?

Gāo: Wó-hén-hǎo. Nǐ-ne?

Bái: Hǎo, xièxie-nin. Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiáojie yé-hǎo-ma?

Gāo: Tāmen-'dōu-hǎo, xièxie.

Bái: Zàijiàn, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng.

Gāo: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.

---

\* In South Orange, New Jersey, 07079.

## LESSON 2

## Basic Sentences

1. Tā-shì-'Yīngguo-rén.
2. Tā-huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà.
3. Tā-shì-bu-shì-'Yīngguo-rén?
4. Tā-shì-'Yīngguo-rén-bu-shì?

## Dialogue

Bái: Qǐng-wèn-Xiānsheng, 'nín-quìxìng?

Qián: Wǒ-xìng-Qián. Nín-shì-'Wáng-Xiānsheng-ba?

Bái: Bú-shì. Wǒ-xìng-Bái.

Qián: Oh, nín-shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Nín-shì-'Yīngguo-rén-ma?

Bái: Bú-shì. Wǒ-shì-'Měiguó-rén. Qǐng-wèn, nín-huì-shuō-'Yīngguo-huà-bu-huì?

Qián: Wǒ-'bú-huì. 'Jiù-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguo-huà.

## LESSON 3

## Basic Sentences

1. Yībēn-shū-'duōshao-qián?
2. Zhèibēn-shū wǔkuài-èrmáo-qián.
3. Zhèi-sānbēn-shū yígòng-liǎngkuài-sì.

## Dialogue

Máo: Xiānsheng, nín-mǎi-shénmo?

Bái: Wǒ-yào-mǎi-shū. 'Nèibēn-shū 'duōshao-qián?

Máo: 'Néibēn?

Bái: Nèibēn-'Zhōngguo-shū.

Máo: 'Zhèibēn-shū shì-liǎngkuài-èrmáo-qián.

Bái: Hǎo, wó-mái-'liángběn.

Máo: Nín-'hái-yào mǎi-shénmo-ne?

Bái: Nǐmen-mài-'máobǐ-bu-mài?

Máo: Mài. Nín-yào-mái-jǐzhǐ-bǐ?

Bái: Sān-sìzhǐ.

## LESSON 4

## Basic Sentences

1. Zhèizhāng-zhǐ-liùfēn-qián.
2. Shíge-bēnzi-jiǔmáo-bā.
3. Tā-yǒu-'qīběn-Zhōngwén-zìdiǎn, jiù-yǒu-'yīběn-Yīngwén-zìdiǎn.
4. 'Zhōngguo-dìtú, 'wàiguó-dìtú wǒmen-'dōu-mài.
5. Wǒmen-yé-yǒu-shū, yé-yóu-bǐ. Shū, bǐ wǒmen-'dōu-yǒu.

## Dialogue

- Bái: Yǒu-'mòshuǐ-ma?
- Máo: Nín-mǎi-'shénmo-yánse-mòshuǐ?
- Bái: Yǒu-'hóng-mòshuǐ-ma?
- Máo: 'Méi-yǒu. Yǒu-'hēi-mòshuǐ, 'lán-mòshuǐ.
- Bái: Yǒu-'qiānbǐ-méi-you?
- Máo: Qiānbǐ, gāngbǐ, máobǐ—wǒmen-'dōu-yǒu.
- Bái: Nǐmen-yǒu-dìtú-ma?
- Máo: Yǒu. Nín-mǎi 'něiguó-dìtú?
- Bái: Wó-mǎi-'Zhōngguo-dìtú.
- Máo: 'Zhèige-dìtú-hén-hǎo. Nín-'mǎi-yīzhāng-ba.
- Bái: Hǎo. Wǒ-hái-yào-yīběn-Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn.

## LESSON 5

## Basic Sentences

1. Wáng-Xiānsheng-de-shū dōu-shi-Zhōngwén-shū.
2. Zhèi-shi-hén-hǎo-de-shū.
3. Tā-yě-shi-wó-hén-hǎo-de-péngyou.
4. Zhèiběn-shū-bú-shi-tāde, shi-wǒde.

## Dialogue

- Gāo: Wai! Wai! Ní-nǎr? Shi-'Bái-Xiānsheng-jiā-ma?
- Bái: Shì. Nín-zháo-'něiwèi-shuō-huà?
- Gāo: Qǐng-'Bái-Xiānsheng-shuō-huà.
- Bái: Wǒ-jiù-shì. Qǐng-wèn, 'nín-shi-shéi?
- Gāo: Wǒ-xìng-Gāo.

Bái: Oh, 'Gāo-Xiānsheng, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. 'Nín-hǎo-ma?

Gāo: 'Hén-hǎo. 'Jīntian-wǎnshang ní-yǒu-gōngfu-ma? Wó-xiǎng qíng-ni-chī-fàn. 'Qīdiǎn-zhōng-kéyī-ma?

Bái: Qǐng-wèn, xiànzài-shi-'shénmo-shíhou?

Gāo: Xiànzài-'sīdiǎn-zhōng.

Bái: Hǎo. Xièxie-nin. Qīdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn.

## LESSON 7

### Basic Sentences

1. Tā-zài-Húběi hái-shi-zài-Húnán?
2. Nǐ-zài-'nǎr-chī-fàn?
3. Zài-Dōngběi-yǒu-dà-shān-ma?
4. Tā-yòubiārde-nèiwèi-xiānsheng shi-'Shāndong-rén, tā-zuǒbiār-de-shi-'Shānxi-rén.

### Dialogue

Bái: 'Gāo-Xiānsheng jīntian-wǎnshang qíng-wǒ-chī-fàn. Nǐ-'zhīdao-bu-zhīdao shi-zài-zhèr-ne hái-shi-zài-ta-jiā-ne?

Máo: Zài-ta-'jiā-chī-fàn.

Bái: Tā-jiā-zài-nǎr? Shi-zài-chéng-lǐtòu hái-shi-zài-chéng-wàitòu?

Máo: Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā zài-chéngwài, jiù-zài-zhèitiáo-lùde-běibiār, yíge-xiǎo-shānshang.

Bái: Zài-nèige-shānshang yóu-'jísuǒr-fángzi?

Máo: Nèr-yígòng jiù-yǒu-'sānsuǒr-fángzi. Xībiār yǒu-yīsuǒr-'dà-fángzi. Dōngbiār yǒu-yīsuǒr-'xiǎo-fángzi. Zhōngjiārde-fángzi jiù-shi-Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā. Nánbiār-shānxià shi-Zhōngshān-Lù. Zhōngshān-Lù-qíánbiār yǒu-yíge-dà-gōngyuán. Shān-hòutou yǒu-yíge-xiǎo-hú.

## LESSON 8

### Basic Sentences

1. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma?
2. Túshūguǎn-lí-zhèr-yǒu-sānlǐ-lù.
3. Tā-zài-túshūguǎn-kàn-shū.
4. Zhōngguo-zì-tài-nán-xiě. Wǒ-jiù-néng-xiě hén-jiǎndānde-zì.
5. Shi-'nǐ-duì hái-shi-'tā-duì?

## Dialogue

- Bái: 'Zhèr-yǒu-túshūguǎn-méi-yǒu?
- Máo: Yǒu. Zhèrde-túshūguǎn hěn-dà, shū-bù-shǎo. Měitiān yǒu-hěn-duō-xuésheng zài-nèr-kàn-shū. Nín-yào-jiè-shū-ma?
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng-jiè-'Zhōngwén-shū.
- Máo: Nín-zài-dàxué xué-shénmo?
- Bái: Wǒ-niàn-wénxué.
- Máo: Nín-xǐhuan-'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma?
- Bái: Wó-hén-xǐhuan-'Zhōngguo-wénxué.
- Máo: 'Zhōngguo-wénxué-róngyi hái-shì-'Yīngguo-wénxué-róngyi-ne?
- Bái: 'Dōu-hěn-nán-xué. Túshūguǎn-zài-nǎr? Lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma?
- Máo: Túshūguǎn-hén-yuǎn.
- Bái: Lí-zhèr-duó-yuǎn?
- Máo: Lí-zhèr-yǒu-qīlǐ-duō-lù.
- Bái: Oh, qī-bālǐ-lù bú-'tài-yuǎn.
- Máo: Yě-bú-jìn.

## LESSON 9

## Basic Sentences

1. Wǒ-xiān-dào-túshūguǎn, hòu-dào-nǐ-jiā-qu.
2. Wǒ-míngtiān-zuò-chē-qu-kàn-ta.
3. Cóng-zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn-'zěnmō-zǒu?
4. Cóng-gōngyuán-mén-kǒur-wàng-béi-guǎi.
5. Qǐng-nín-'zài-shuō.

## Dialogue

- Bái: Cóng-shūdiàn-dào-túshūguǎn 'zěnmō-zǒu?
- Máo: Nín-cóng-zhèr wàng-nán-yìzhí-zǒu, wàng-xī-guǎi, guò-báge-lù-kǒur, jiù-shì-túshūguǎn.
- Bái: Cóng-zhèr-dào-túshūguǎn-nèr yǒu-'shénmō-chē-kéyì-zuò-ne?
- Máo: Gōnggòng-qìchē diànchē 'dōu-yǒu. Nín-xiǎng-zuò-'shénmō-chē-ne?
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē-qu. Gōnggòng-qìchē-zhàn-zài-nǎr?
- Máo: Lí-shūdiàn-bù-yuǎn.
- Bái: Zuò-'jǐhào-chē-ne?
- Máo: Zuò-'sānhào-chē. Yìzhí-jiù-dào-túshūguǎn.

Bái: Cóng-túshūguǎn dào-'Gāo-Xiānsheng-jiā 'zěnmò-zǒu?

Máo: Nín-shàng-chē dào-Zhōngshān-Lù. Zài-gōngyuán-mén-kǒur-xià-chē.

Bái: Xièxie-ni.

Máo: Nín-míngtian-'lái-bu-lái?

Bái: Huòzhě-wǒ-míngtian-'hái-lái-mǎi-shū.

## LESSON 10

### Basic Sentences

1. Mài piàoyuán-bí-wǒ-gāo-yìdiǎr, ní-bǐ-tā-'gèng-gāo.
2. Xiànzài-chābuduō-bādiǎn-sānkè. Wó-jiúdiǎn-chà-wǔfēn jiù-yào-zuò-chē dào-Yuǎndōng-Dàxué-qu.
3. Tā-mǎi-shū mǎide-bí-wǒ-duō.
4. Tāmen-zài-gōnggòng-qìchēshang-tán-huà.

### Dialogue

MPY: Nín-Zhōngwén-shuōde-'zhēn-hǎo.

Bái: Wǒ-shuōde-'bù-hǎo. Shuōde-tài-màn. Yóu-hěn-duō-wàiguó-rén shuōde-bí-wó-hǎo-de-duō.

MPY: Nín-jiāli dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-rén?

Bái: Wǒ-jiāli-yǒu-fùqin-mǔqin, hái-yǒu-yíge-dìdi, yíge-mèimei.

MPY: Nín-fùqin-zuò-'shénmo-shì?

Bái: Wǒ-fùqin shì-'zhōngxué-jiàoyuán. Mǔqin shì-'xiǎoxué-jiàoyuán. 'Nǐ-jiāli dōu-yǒu-'shénmo-rén?

MPY: Wó-yǒu-tàitai, hái-yóu-liǎngge-háizi.

Bái: Nán-háizi hái-shì-nǚ-háizi-ne?

MPY: Yíge-'nán-háizi, yíge-'nǚ-háizi.

Bái: Tāmen-duó-dà?

MPY: Nán-háizi-qīsuì, nǚ-háizi-liǎngsuì.

Bái: Tāmen-míngzi-dōu-jiào-shénmo?

MPY: Nán-háizi-jiào-Láohu. Nǚ-háizi-jiào-Xiǎomèi.

### Song

Sāngeláohu,  
Sāngeláohu,  
Pǎodekuài,  
Pǎodekuài.

Yígeméiyouběiba,  
Yígeméiyouběiba,  
Zhēnqíguài,  
Zhēnqíguài.

## LESSON 11

## Basic Sentences

1. Wǒ-shi-zuótian-wǎnshang-bādiǎn-bàn 'yùjian-tā-de.
2. Tā-shi-jīnnian-èryue-sānhào líkāi-de-Měiguó.
3. Shéi-gàosu-ni wǒ-bú-shi-zài-jiā-chī-de-wǎnfàn?
4. Nǐ-zài-'nǎr-kànjian-ta-de?

## Dialogue

Qián: Nín-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn-lái-ma?

Bái: Bù. Wǒ-jīntian shi-dì-yìcì-lái. Nín-ne?

Qián: 'Wó-yě-bù-cháng-lái. Nín-shi-'shénmo-shíhou dào-Zhōngguó-lái-de?

Bái: Wǒ-shi-qùnian-báyue-qīhào-lái-de.

Qián: Nín-zuò-'chuán-lái-de háishi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de?

Bái: Wǒ-dào-Rìběn shi-zuò-chuán, cóng-Rìběn-dào-Zhōngguó shi-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de.

Qián: 'Chuán-zǒude-hěn-màn-ba.

Bái: Suǐrán-hěn-màn, kěshi-zuò-chuán hén-yǒu-yìsi. Kéyì-rènshi hěn-duō-péngyou.

Qián: Rúguǒ-nín-jīntian-wǎnshang yǒu-gōngfu, qǐng-dào-wǒ-jiā-lái zuòyizuò-tántan.

Bái: Hǎo. Xièxie-nín. Rúguó-wǎnshang-yǒu-gōngfu, wǒ-'yíding-dào-fùshang-bàifang.

Qián: Xīwang-nín-wǎnshang 'yíding-néng-lái.

## LESSON 13

## Basic Sentences

1. Nǐ-chīle-fàn-le-ma?
2. Wǒmen-chīle-zǎofàn-jiù-zǒu-le.
3. Tā-xiànzài-'hǎole-méi-you?
4. Wǒ-jīntian-yǐjīng-kànle-'liángběn-shū-le. Wǒ-bú-zài-kàn-le.
5. Wǒmen-xià-xīngqī 'yòu-kǎo-shū-le.

## Dialogue

Bái: Nǐ-cóng-xuéxiào huí-jiā-hén-wǎn-ne.

Gāo: Yīnwei-xià-kè-yǐhòu wǒmen-xuéxiào-yǒu-yìdiǎr-shì, suǒyì-'wǎn-le-yìdiǎr. Jīntian-wǎnshang wǒ-fùqīn-qǐng-nín-chī-fàn, 'duì-bu-duì?

- Bái: Duì-le. Tài-'máfan-nǐmen-le.
- Gāo: 'Bù-máfan. Huānyíng-nín-lái.
- Bái: Wǒ-hái-bu-zhīdào nǐ-zài-'něige-xuéxiào-niàn-shū-ne.
- Gāo: Wǒ-zài-Dì-'yī-Zhōngxué-niàn-shū.
- Bái: 'Jǐniánjí?
- Gāo: Gāozhōng-'sānniánjí. Jǐnnián-wǒ-jiù-bìyè-le.
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng nǐ-'yíding-hěn-cōngming.
- Gāo: Wǒ-'bù-cōngming.
- Bái: Nǐ-kèqi-ne. Nǐ-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐngr-ma? Nǐ-kǎoshì-yǐhòu, wó-qíng-ni-kàn-diànyǐngr, hǎo-ma?
- Gāo: Xièxie-nín. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, qǐng-wèn xiànzài-'jídìǎn-zhōng-le? Wó-zǎochen-hěn-máng. Chīle-zǎofàn-jiù-zǒule, wàngle-dài-biǎo-le.
- Bái: Xiànzài chà-yíkè-qīdiǎn.

## LESSON 14

## Basic Sentences

1. Tā-xiěde-nèiběn-shū nǐ-kànguo-le-ma?
2. Nǐ-chīguo-'Zhōngguo-fàn-méi-you?
3. Tā-Zhōngguo-huà-'dōu-tīngdedǒng, yě-shuōde-shífēn-hǎo.
4. Wàn-Xiānsheng-duì-nǐ-shuōde-huà nǐ-'dōu-tīngdedǒng-ma?
5. Yīhuěr-wǒ-jiu-kéyi-kànjian nǐ-huàde-huàr-le.

## Dialogue

- Gāo: Nǐmen-Yuǎn-Dà yǒu-'duōshao-xuésheng?
- Bái: Yǒu-'sānqiān-wúbǎi-duō-rén. 'Gāo-Xiáojie, nǐ-zhōngxué-bìyè-yǐhòu xiāng-xué-shénmo-ne?
- Gāo: Wó-xiǎng-xué-wénxué, kěshi-wó-xiǎng wǒ-yíding-kǎobushàng-dàxué. Rúguó-wó-kǎobushàng-dàxué wǒ-jiù-xué-huà-huàr. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, 'nín-shi-xué-shénmo-de?
- Bái: Wǒ-yuánlái shi-xiǎng-xué-'kēxué-de, kěshi-wǒ-duì-'wàiguó-huà hén-yǒu-xìngqu, 'gèng-xǐhuan-Zhōngguo-huà, suóyi-wǒ-zài-Měiguó jiù-xué-Zhōngguo-huà, niàn-Zhōngguo-shū. Xiànzài-wǒ-dào-Zhōngguo-lái-xué-Zhōngguo-wénxué, yě-xué-yǔyánxué.
- Gāo: Xué-yǔyánxué-'zěnmo-xué-ne?
- Bái: Xué-yǔyánxué shi-yòng-'kēxuéde-fāngfǎ yánjiu-yǔyán.
- Gāo: Nín-xǐhuan-xiě-Zhōngguo-zì-ma? Nín-yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě-xīnxiědeliǎo-xiěbuliǎo?



Bái: Suírán-xièdeliǎo, kěshi-xiě-de-bu-hǎo. Wó-gěi-Zhōngguo-péngyou-xiě-xìn xǐhuan-yòng-Zhōngwén-xiě. Nǐ-fùqin-zì xiěde-hén-hǎo.

Gāo: Tā-chàbuduō-měitiān-xiě-zì.

Bái: Nǐ-méi-tīngshuō-ma:

Huó-dào-lǎo,  
Xué-dào-lǎo,  
Hái-yóu-sānfēn  
Xuébudào.

Gāo: Bù-zhī-yǒu-'sānfēn-ba!

## LESSON 15

### Basic Sentences

1. Wǒ-xiànzài-gāi-zǒu-le, kěshi-nǐ-bú-bī-zǒu.
2. Wǒ-jīntian-děi-kànwán-zhèiběn-shū.
3. Wǒ-dāngrán-yīngdāng-gēn-ta-yíkuàr-qù-yíci.
4. Wǒ-xué-Zhōngwén yǐjīng-yǒu-sānnián-le. Hái-yào-xué liǎng-sān-niánde-Zhōngwén.
5. Tā-kànle-yíge-zhōngtóude-shū-le.

### Dialogue

Gāo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐn-xuéle-'jǐniánde-Zhōngwén-le?

Bái: Wǒ-niàn-'Zhōngwén chàbuduō-yǐjīng-yóu-'wǔnián-le.

Gāo: Suǒyi-nǐnde-Zhōngwén-nènmo-hǎo-ne. Nǐn-zài-Měiguó-xué-Zhōngwén 'zěnmó-xué-ne?

Bái: Wǒmen-kāishǐ-'xué-de-shíhou měitiān-shàng-'yíge-zhōngtóude-kè. Jiào-yuán-jiāo-wǒmen-shuō. Xià-kè-yǐhòu wǒmen-jiu-tīng-lùyīnjīde-lùyīn.

Gāo: Nǐn-dào-Zhōngguó zuò-'fēijī háishi-zuò-'chuán-lái-de-ne?

Bái: Wǒ-xiān-cóng-Niùyue zuò-qìchē-dào-Sānfánshì. Wǒ-zuòle-'liùtiān-de-qìchē cái-dào-ner. Zài-Sānfánshì-zhùle-bātiān. Wǒ-yòu-zuòle-shítīānde-chuán dào-Rìběn. Zài-Rìběn-zhùle-yíge-xīngqǐ, jiù-zuò-fēijī-dào-'Zhōngguó-lái-le.

Gāo: Wǒ-hái-méi-zuòguo-fēijī-ne. Yǒu-jīhui wó-děi-'zuò-yíci.

Bái: Jiānglái nǐ-bìyè-yǐhòu yīnggāi-zuò-fēijī dào-bíede-dìfang-qu-wárwar.

Gāo: Wǒ-fùqin-mǔqin dōu-qùguo-Rìběn. Tāmen-zài-nèr zhùle-liǎngge-duō-yuè-ne, hái-mǎile-hěn-duō Rìběn-dōngxi.

## LESSON 16

## Basic Sentences

1. Yǒude-shì-zài-'Hángzhōu-mǎide, yǒude-shì-zài-'Sūzhou-mǎide.
2. 'Shéi-dōu-shuō tā-hén-yǒu-xuéwen.
3. Ní-bǎ-zhèi-jǐge-dōngxī dōu-nájin-fángzi-qu.
4. Wǒ-nèiren-búdàn-huì-shuō-Zhōngguo-huà, érqǐě-shuōde-shífēn-hǎo.
5. Lián-wǒ-dōu-méi-fázi-gēn-tā-shuō-huà-le.

## Dialogue

Bái: Fǔshang-zhèige-difang hén-hǎo-a.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Suóyì-wǒ-fùqīn 'měitiān-dōu-yào-chūqu-zóuzou. Lián-xīngqītiān tā-méi-shì dōu-yào-chūqu. Chūqu-huílai dōu-shì-zóu-lù.

Bái: Nǐ-fùqīn 'yé-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-ma?

Gāo-Xiáojie: Tā-'zuì-xǐhuan-lǚxíng-le. . . . Dào-le. Mā! Kāi-mén! 'Kèren-lái-le.

Bái: Gāo-Tàitai, 'háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Nín-hǎo?

Gāo-Tàitai: Oh, 'Bái-Xiānsheng-lái-le. 'Háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Ní-hǎo-ma?

Bái: Gāo-Xiānsheng, nín-hǎo?

Gāo-Xiānsheng: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, hǎo-ma? Lái-lái. Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi-'jièshao-jièshao. Zhèiwèi-shì-Wàn-Jiàoshòu. Zhèiwèi-shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng.

Bái: Jiúyǎng.

Wàn: Ní-hǎo. . . . Gāo-Xiáojie cōngmíng-piàoliang. Shū-niànde-hǎo, huà-de-hǎo.

Bái: Duī-le. 'Gāo-Xiáojie, wǒmen-děi-'kànkān-nǐde-huà-le.

Gāo-Xiáojie: Bié-kàn-le. Wǒ-huà-de-bù-hǎo.

Bái: Qǐng-ní-bǎ-huà-dōu-náchulai wǒmen-kànkān.

Gāo-Xiānsheng: Měiyīng, bá-nǐ-'suóyǒu-de-huà dōu-náchu-lai. Qǐng-tāmen-liǎngwèi-kànkān.

Bái: Zhèizhāng-shānshuǐ-huàr-'zhēn-hǎo. Huà-de-shì-nǎr-a?

Gāo-Xiáojie: Zhèi-jiu-shì-Hángzhou-a.

Bái: Oh, zhè-jiu-shì-Hángzhou-a. 'Zhēn-piàoliang.

Wàn: Zhōngguo yǒu-yíjù-huà-shuō:

'Shàng-yǒu-tiāntáng,  
'Xià-yǒu-Sū-Háng.

Shuōde-yī-'diár-yě-bú-cuò.

## LESSON 17

## Basic Sentences

1. Jǐntiānde-tiānqì méi-yǒu-zuótiānde-nènmo-nuǎnhuò.
2. Zhèiyàngde-chá gēn-nèiyàngde-yíyàng-hǎo.
3. Yóu-hǎoxiē-jiàoshòu dōu-bǎ-ta-kànzùè sīniánjǐde-xuésheng.
4. Nèisuǒ-fángzi-dàde-bùdeliǎo, dàde-méi-rén-yào-mǎi.
5. Wǒ-měiyuè-de-qián shǎode-bùdeliǎo, bú-gòu-mǎi-fángzi.
6. Zhèixiē-Zhōngguó-xuésheng shuō-Yīngwén shuōde-gēn-Měiguó-rén-yíyàng-hǎo.

## Dialogue

- Bái: Gāo-Xiǎojie shì-'Sūzhou-rén-a?
- Wàn: Lǎo-Gāo zài-Sūzhou-rènshì-de-Gāo-Tàitai. Tāmen-liǎngge-rén zài-'Sūzhou-jiēhūn, Gāo-Xiǎojie shì-zài-'Sūzhou-shēng-de. Gāo-'Xiǎojie-zhǎngde gēn-Gāo-'Tàitai-yíyàng-piàoliang.
- Bái: Oh, suǒyì-Gāo-Tàitai Gāo-Xiǎojie nènmo-piàoliang-ne!
- Wàn: Hángzhou-shānshuǐ-yǒu-míng. Sūzhou-nǚ-rén-yǒu-míng. . . . Zhèi-jiǔ-'zhēn-hǎo.
- Bái: Shì-shénmo-jiǔ-a?
- Gāo: Shì-Méiguì-Lù. Lǎo-Wàn, zěnmoyàng, wǒmen-hēle-zhèibēi huá-'quán-hǎo-bu-hǎo? . . . 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-kàn. Yǒu-yìsi-ma?
- Bái: 'Hén-yǒu-yìsi. Wó-hěn-qíguài wèi-shénmo-'yíng-de-rén bu-hē-jiǔ-ne?
- Gāo: Nǐ-'děng-yīhuěr jiù-míngbai-le.

## LESSON 19

## Basic Sentences

1. Tā-zuòde-táng-cù-yú bú-shì-tài-tián jiù-shì-tài-suān.
2. Wó-hén-xiǎng-duō-hē-yìdiǎr-niú-ròu-tāng, kěshì-wó-yǐjīng-chī-bǎo-le.
3. Tāmen-chīzhe-fàn-shuō-huà.
4. Chúlè-shuō-"Guòjiǎng"-yǐwài tā-hái-shuō-shénmo-ne?
5. Kuàizì-zài-nǎr? Wó-zhǎolai-zhǎoqù-dōu-zhǎobuzháo.
6. Hóng-shāo-zhū-ròu gēn-hóng-shāo-yú wǒ-chī-shì-chīguó, kěshì-wǒ-bù-xǐhuan.

## Dialogue

- Bái: He! Bùdeliǎo! Zěnmò-'zhènmò-duōde-cài-a!

- Gāo: Biàn-fàn, 'méi-yǒu-shénmo-cài. Nǐmen-liǎngwèi suíbiàn-zuò, suíbiàn-chī.
- Bái: 'Zhèige-cài-shi-shénmo?
- Gāo: Zhèi-shi-chǎo-báicài.
- Bái: Zhèige-ne?
- Gāo: Zhèi-shi-hóng-shāo-jǐ.
- Bái: 'Zhèige-wǒ-zhīdao. Shi-chǎo-dòufu.
- Gāo: 'Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-zài-Měiguó yě-cháng-chī-'Zhōngguó-cài-ma?
- Bái: Cháng-chī.
- Gāo: Měiguó-de-Zhōngguó-cài hǎo-chī-ma?
- Bái: Zài-Měiguó-de-'Zhōngguó-fànguǎr chàbuduo-dōu-shi-Guǎngdong-fànguǎr. Tāmen-zuò-de hǎo-shí-hǎo, kěshi-méi-yǒu-Gāo-Tàitai-zuò-de zhènmo-hǎo-chī. Shǐzi-tóu-zài-Měiguó chūle-Sānfánshì-Niǔyue jǐge-dà-chéng-yǐwài, jiu-chībuzháo.

## LESSON 20

## Basic Sentences

1. Nǐ-yì-géi-wó-dǎ-diànhuà wǒ-jiu-gāoxìng-jíle.
2. Tā-shi-běifāng-rén shi-nánfāng-rén wǒ-dōu-cāibuzháo.
3. Kǒngpà-nènmo-dàde-dōngxì tā-nábuqǐlái.
4. Tā-Zhōngwén-zěnmò-shuōde-nènmo-hǎo-a? . . . Tā-shēngzài-Zhōngguó-me.
5. Xiānsheng-dàgài-bú-yào-wǒmen-bǎ-shū-dākai.
6. Wǒ-xiángqǐlai-le, wǒ-jǐntian-bìděi-dào-chē-zhàn-qu jiē-Gāo-Xiānsheng.

## Dialogue

- Bái: Měiyīng, zěnmoyàng? Kǎowán-le-ma? Kǎode-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?
- Gāo: Hai, bié-tí-le. Yīngwén Zhōngwén kǎode-hái-hǎo, kěshi-shùxué kǎode-zāogāo-jíle. Wǒ-kàncuò-le-tímu.
- Bái: Zhèi-yě-shi-kǎoshì 'cháng-yǒu-de-shìqing.
- Gāo: Xiànzài-wǒ-gàosu-ni-yíjiàn-shìqing. Xiànzài-wǒmen-fàngjià-le, wǒ-fùqīn-mǔqīn jiào-wǒ-gēn-tāmen-yíkuàr-dào-Rìběn-qu.
- Bái: Nènmo-wó-déi-qíng-ni-chī-fàn. Chī-fàn-yǐhòu wǒmen-zài-qu-kàn-diànyǐng, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Nǐ-xǐhuan-chī-shénmo-ne?
- Gāo: Wǒ-'shénmo-dōu-xǐhuan-chī. Wó-'xiángqǐlái-le—shūdiàn-fùjìn yǒu-yíge-běifāng-fànguǎr jiào-Wànnián-Fànguǎr. Nǐ-zhīdao ma?
- Bái: Nǐ-shuō-wó-'xiángqǐlái-le. Wǒmen-jiu-dào-nèr-qù-chī. Wǒmen-dào-nàr-kàn-diànyǐng-qu-ne?

Gāo: Tīngshuō Zhōngguó-Diànyǐngyuàn yǎn-de-nèibù-piānzi bú-cuò. Shì-yí bù-lìshǐ-piānzi. Gùshì-xiède-hào, yànyuán-yǎnde-hào.

Bái: Wǒmen-kàn-jiúdiǎn-nèichǎng-hǎo-ma?

Gāo: Kéyi.

## LESSON 21

### Basic Sentences

1. Nǐ-dǎsuan-mái-'néizhōng-chá-wǎn jiù-mái-'néizhōng.
2. Tā-lǎo-shuō-wǒde-jīngyan-bú-gòu, kěshì-wǒ-juéde wǒde-jīngyan-bǐ-tā-duōde-duō.
3. Zěnmó-méi-yǒu-jiàngyóu fàngzài-chǎo-cài-lǐtōu?
4. Nǐ-gāngcái-mǎide-nèige-chá-hú jiùshì-zài-Zhōngguó-yě-mǎibudào.
5. Wǒ-bú-dà-xǐhuan kàn-hěn-chángde-piānzi.
6. Nǐ-duō-gěi-ta-yìdiǎr-qián, yàoburán-tā-bú-mài.

### Dialogue

Huǒji: Gěi-nín-cài-dār.

Bái: Qǐng-ni-bāngzhu-wǒmen xiáng-liǎngge-cài.

Huǒji: Hǎo. Wǒ-jièshao-nín-jiǎyàng wǒmen-zhèr-'zuì-hǎode-cài. Wǒmen-zhèr hóng-shāo-yú, chǎo-xiā-rér, kǎo-yāzi, dōu-hǎo. Yóuqǐshì-nèige-kǎo-yāzi dàgài-wǒmen-kéyi-shuō shì-quán-guó-dì-yī-le. Wǒmen-zhèrde-jiǎozǐ, chǎo-miàn yě-bú-cuò.

Bái: 'Jiǎozǐ-zěnmó-yào? Mài-duōshao-qián?

Huǒji: Jiǎozǐ nín-chī-duōshao jiù-yào-duōshao. Yíkuài-liǎngmáo-qián-shíge.

Bái: Hǎo, wǒmen-bú-gòu-zài-shuō-ba. Chīwán-le wǒmen-yào-ge-'tián-diǎnxīn. Xīngrér-dòufu-yǒu-ma?

Huǒji: Duìbuqǐ, 'gāng-màiwán. Nín-yào-diar-biède-ba?

Bái: Yǒu-xīngrér-chá-ma?

Huǒji: Yǒu.

Bái: Qǐng-lái-liángwǎn. . . . Huǒji, suàn-zhàng.

Huǒji: Shì. Yígòng-sikuài-sānmáo-liù.

Bái: Zhè-shì-wǔkuài. Bú-bì-zhǎo-le. Shèngxia-de-géi-xiǎofèi-le.

Huǒji: Xièxie-nín. Liǎngwèi-mǎn-zǒu. Zàijiàn.

## LESSON 22

## Basic Sentences

1. “Shēngyīn”-de-“shēng”-zì yóu-jǐhuá?
2. Guānyu-nèige-wèntí, wǒ-zhèng-zài-yánjiu-ne.
3. Rénrén-dōu-zhīdao, rúguǒ-tóngshí-yòu-xué-fāyīn, yòu-xué-Hànzì, yòu-xué-wénfā, nánchū-duō-hǎochū-shǎo.
4. Yíge-jùzi yīnjié-yuè-duō yuè-nán-shuō.
5. Zhèixiē-shū yíbùfen-sònggei-nǐ, yíbùfen-sònggei-tā.
6. Ní-déi-hǎohāorde-xué-sìshēng. Sìshēng-bù-zhǔn, Zhōngwén-yídìng-shuōde-bù-hǎo.

## Dialogue

Gāo: Zài-Měiguó-xuéxiàolǐ jiāo-de-fāngfǎ-dōu-yíyàng-ma?

Bái: Měiguó-xuéxiào-lǐtóu jiāo-de-fázi-bù-yíyàng. 'Yǒude-kāishǐ-jiù-xué-Hànzì, 'yǒude-yòng-pīnyīn-xué.

Gāo: Nǐ-kāishǐ-xué yídìng-hěn-yònggōng-le.

Bái: Nèige-shíhou wó-hěn-yònggōng. Měitiān-tīng-lùyīn, zìjǐ-gēn-zìjǐ-shuō-huà, liànxi-fāyīn, bá-měitiān-xué-de dōu-jìzhu. Yuè-xué-yuè-yǒu-xìngqu.

Gāo: Nǐ-kāishǐ shi-xiān-xué-shuō-huà-ma?

Bái: Shì, wǒ-xiān-xué-shuō-huà. Wǒ-kāishǐ-xué-sìshēng gēn-qīngzhòngyīn, yǐhòu-xué-cér (bǐfang-shuō shū, tàitai jiù-shi-cér) gēn-duǎn-jùzi, zài-xué-huīhuà.

Gāo: Xué-yǔyán 'tèbié-yīnggāi-zhùyì-de shi-shénmo?

Bái: Tèbié-yào-zhùyì-de shi-fāyīn-gēn-yúfǎ.

Gāo: Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì 'duǎnchū-zài-nǎr?

Bái: Rúguǒ-yòng-Hànzì xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán, méi-xuéguó-de-zì nǐ-méi-fázi-zìjǐ-huī-niàn.

Gāo: Xué-Hànzì yé-bu-tài-nán-ne. Jiù-shi-duō-liànxi-me.

## LESSON 23

## Basic Sentences

1. Míngnián-wó-xiǎng yìnián-dōu-yánjiu-Dōngfāng-wénhuà-nèi-fāngmiande-dōngxì.
2. Qíng-bǎ-zhèifēng-xìn mǎshàng-sònggei-Wáng-Lǎoshī.
3. Qiántian-zhōngwǔ péngyoumen-sòng-wǒ-dào-Dōngjīngde-fēijichǎng.
4. Déle! Déle! Zhèizhāng-huàr-huàde-bù-hǎo. Bié-guà.

5. Tā-shuōde-xiàohuà-hěn-néng-ràng-rén-xiào.  
6. Shū kěnéng-dōu-ràng-tā-gěi-názǒu-le.

## Dialogue

- Bái: Zǎo! 'Tài-láojià-le. Zhēn-bùgǎndāng.  
Gāo: Nǎrde-huà-ne. Wǒmen-yīnggāi-lái-de-me. Dōngxi dōu-shōushihǎo-le-ma?  
Bái: 'Méi-shénmo-dōngxi-le. Wǒde-shū qián-jítīān yǒu-ge-péngyou-zuò-chuán-huìqu 'dōu-ràng-ta-dàizǒu-le.  
Gāo: Zǒu-ba. Wǒmen-xiān-dào-fēijīchǎngde-cāntīng zài-nèr-mànmǎrde-tán-ba. Nǐ-huìdào-Měiguó háishi-jìxù-xué-Zhōngguó-yǔyán gēn-wénxué-ma?  
Bái: Shì. Búdàn-'jìxù-xué, wǒ-hái-děi hǎohāorde-xué-ne.  
Gāo: Xué-yìzhǒng-xuéwen rúguǒ-xīwang-xuédehǎo, zuì-yào-jǐn-de shì-yào-yóngyuǎn-xuéxiàqu. Wénshān, jiānglái-nǐ-dìdi-mèimei yě-dào-'Zhongguo-lái-nián-shū-ma?  
Bái: Bù-zhīdào jiānglái-tāmen-xué-shénmo. Rúguǒ-tāmen-xué-'Dōngfāng-wénhuà tāmen-kěnéng-dào-Zhōngguo-lái.  
Gāo: Wénshān, shíhou-chàbuduō-le. Gāi-shàng-fēijī-le.  
Bái: Hǎo.  
Gāo: Zhù-ni-yí-lù-píng'ān.  
Bái: Xièxie. Zàijiàn, zàijiàn!

MEMORIZATION EXERCISES (ENGLISH)

LESSON 1

Basic Sentences

1. He's very well.
2. Thank you.
3. Are you also well?

Dialogue A

Bai: . . .  
Gao: I'm fine. And you?  
Bai: . . .  
Gao: They're both well, thanks.  
Bai: . . .  
Gao: See you again.

Dialogue B

Bai: Mr. Gao, how are you?  
Gao: . . .  
Bai: Fine, thank you. And how are Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao?  
Gao: . . .  
Bai: Good-bye, Mr. Gao.  
Gao: . . .

LESSON 2

Basic Sentences

1. He is an Englishman.
2. He can speak English.
3. Is he an Englishman?
4. Is he an Englishman?



## Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Qian: My name is Qian. I take it you're Mr. King?

Bai: . . .

Qian: Oh, you're Mr. White. Are you English?

Bai: . . .

Qian: No. I can only speak Chinese.

## Dialogue B

Bai: May I ask your name, Sir?

Qian: . . .

Bai: No, my name is White.

Qian: . . .

Bai: No, I'm American. [May I ask] do you speak English?

Qian: . . .

## LESSON 3

## Basic Sentences

1. How much is one book?
2. This book is \$5.20.
3. These three books are \$2.40 in all.

## Dialogue A

Mao: . . .

Bai: I'd like to buy (some) books. How much is that book?

Mao: . . .

Bai: That Chinese book.

Mao: . . .

Bai: Fine, I'll buy two copies.

Mao: . . .

Bai: Do you sell Chinese writing brushes?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Three or four.

## Dialogue B

Mao: What will you have, sir?

Bai: . . .

Mao: Which one?

Bai: . . .

Mao: This book is two dollars and twenty cents.

Bai: . . .

Mao: What else do you want to buy?

Bai: . . .

Mao: Yes. How many brushes do you want?

Bai: . . .

## LESSON 4

## Basic Sentences

1. This sheet of paper is six cents.
2. Ten notebooks are ninety-eight cents.
3. He has seven Chinese dictionaries (but) only one English dictionary.
4. We sell both Chinese and foreign maps.
5. We have books and also have pens. We have both books and pens.

## Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Mao: What color ink do you want?

Bai: . . .

Mao: No. We have black ink and blue ink.

Bai: . . .

Mao: Pencils, fountain pens, writing brushes—we have them all.

Bai: . . .

Mao: What country do you want a map of?

Bai: . . .

Mao: This map is excellent. I suggest you buy one.

Bai: . . .

## Dialogue B

Bai: Do you have any ink?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Do you have red ink?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Do you have pencils?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Do you have any maps?

Mao: . . .

Bai: I'd like to buy a map of China.

Mao: . . .

Bai: O.K. I'd also like to buy a Chinese-English dictionary.

## LESSON 5

## Basic Sentences

1. Mr. Wang's books are all Chinese books.
2. This is an excellent book.
3. He's also a very good friend of mine.
4. This book isn't his; it's mine.

## Dialogue A

Gao: . . .

Bai: Yes. Who are you calling?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Speaking. Who's calling, please?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Oh, Mr. Gao, I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Could you tell me, please, what time is it now?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Fine. Thank you. See you at seven o'clock.

## Dialogue B

Gao: Hello, hello. Who's this? Is this Mr. White's home?

Bai: . . .

Gao: I'd like to speak to Mr. White.

Bai: . . .

Gao: This is Gao.

Bai: . . .

Gao: I'm fine. Are you free this evening? I'd like to ask you to dinner. Can (you manage it) at seven o'clock?

Bai: . . .

Gao: It's now four o'clock.

Bai: . . .

## LESSON 7

### Basic Sentences

1. Is he in Hupeh or Hunan?
2. Where do you eat?
3. Are there big mountains in Manchuria?
4. That gentleman on his right is a Shantungese, the one on his left is a native of Shansi.

### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Mao: The dinner is at his home.

Bai: . . .

Mao: Mr. Gao's home is outside the city, south of this road, on a small hill.

Bai: . . .

Mao: There are only three houses [in all] there. To the west there's a big house. To the east is a small house. The house in between is Mr. Gao's home. To the south below the hill is Sun Yatsen Road. In front of Sun Yatsen Road is a big park. Behind the hill is a small lake.

### Dialogue B

Bai: Mr. Gao asked me to dinner this evening. Do you know whether it's here or at his home?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Where is his home? Is it inside the city or outside the city?

Mao: . . .

Bai: How many houses are there on the hill?

Mao: . . .

## LESSON 8

### Basic Sentences

1. Is the library far from here?
2. The library is three (Chinese) miles from here.
3. He's reading in the library.
4. Chinese characters are too hard to write. I can write only very simple characters.
5. Are you right or is he right?

### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Mao: Yes. The library here is pretty big and has quite a few books. Every day there are a lot of students reading there. Do you want to borrow some books?

Bai: . . .

Mao: What are you studying in college?

Bai: . . .

Mao: Do you like Chinese literature?

Bai: . . .

Mao: Which is easier, Chinese or English literature?

Bai: . . .

Mao: The library is quite far.

Bai: . . .

Mao: It's seven-odd (Chinese) miles from here.

Bai: . . .

Mao: It's not close either.

### Dialogue B

Bai: Is there a library here?

Mao: . . .

Bai: I'm planning to take out some Chinese books.

Mao: . . .

Bai: I'm studying literature.

Mao: . . .

Bai: I like Chinese literature very much.

Mao: . . .

Bai: Both are very difficult to study. Where is the library? Is it far from here?

Mao: . . .

Bai: How far is it from here?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Oh, seven or eight miles isn't too far.

Mao: . . .

### LESSON 9

#### Basic Sentences

1. I'm going first to the library and then to your home.
2. I'm going by car to see him tomorrow.
3. How does one get from here to the library?
4. Turn north from the entrance of the park.
5. Please say it again.

#### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Mao: You go straight south from here, turn west, pass eight intersections, and there's the library.

Bai: . . .

Mao: There are both busses and streetcars. What would you like to take?

Bai: . . .

Mao: Not far from the bookstore.

Bai: . . .

Mao: Take a No. 3 bus. It goes directly to the library.

Bai: . . .

Mao: You get on the bus and go to Sun Yatsen Avenue. Get off the bus at the park gate.

Bai: . . .

Mao: Are you coming tomorrow?

Bai: . . .

#### Dialogue B

Bai: How do I get from the bookstore to the library?

Mao: . . .

Bai: From here to the library what car do I take?

Mao: . . .

Bai: I'd like to go by bus. Where's the bus stop?

Mao: . . .

Bai: What [number] bus do I take?

Mao: . . .

Bai: How do I go from the library to Mr. Gao's home?

Mao: . . .

Bai: Thanks.

Mao: . . .

Bai: Perhaps I'll come again tomorrow to buy some books.

## LESSON 10

### Basic Sentences

1. The ticket-seller is a little taller than I am. You're even taller than he is.
2. It's now almost 8:45. At five minutes of nine I'm going by car to Far Eastern University.
3. He buys more books than I do.
4. They're chatting on the bus.

### Dialogue A

MPY: . . .

Bai: I don't speak it well. I speak too slowly. There are lots of foreigners who speak much better than I do.

MPY: . . .

Bai: In my family there's my father and my mother, and also a younger brother and a younger sister.

MPY: . . .

Bai: My father's a high-school teacher. My mother is a grade-school teacher. Who's in your family?

MPY: . . .

Bai: Boys or girls?

MPY: . . .

Bai: How old are they?

MPY: . . .

Bai: What are their names?

MPY: . . .

#### Dialogue B

MPY: You speak Chinese really well.

Bai: . . .

MPY: What family do you have?

Bai: . . .

MPY: What does your father do?

Bai: . . .

MPY: I have a wife and two children.

Bai: . . .

MPY: One boy, one girl.

Bai: . . .

MPY: The boy is seven, the girl two.

Bai: . . .

MPY: The boy is called Tiger, the girl is called Little Sister.

#### Song

Three tigers,	One's without a tail,
Three tigers,	One's without a tail,
Running fast,	Really strange,
Running fast.	Really strange.

### LESSON 11

#### Basic Sentences

1. I encountered him yesterday at 8:30 in the evening.
2. He left the United States on February third of this year.
3. Who told you I didn't have dinner at home?
4. Where did you see him?

#### Dialogue A

Qian: . . .

Bai: No. Today is the first time I've come. How about you?

Qian: . . .

Bai: I came on August seventh of last year.

Qian: . . .



Bai: I came by boat to Japan, and by plane from Japan to China.

Qian: . . .

Bai: [Although] it was very slow, but traveling by boat is quite interesting. One can make a lot of friends.

Qian: . . .

Bai: How nice. Thank you. If I have time this evening I'll certainly stop in at your home to visit.

Qian: . . .

#### Dialogue B

Qian: Do you come to the library often?

Bai: . . .

Qian: I don't come often either. When was it that you came to China?

Bai: . . .

Qian: Did you come by boat or by plane?

Bai: . . .

Qian: I suppose the boat traveled very slowly.

Bai: . . .

Qian: If you have time this evening I'd like to invite you to drop in at my home to sit a while and chat.

Bai: . . .

Qian: I hope you really will be able to come this evening.

### LESSON 13

#### Basic Sentences

1. Have you eaten?
2. After eating breakfast, we left.
3. Is he well now?
4. I've already read two books today. I'm not going to read any more.
5. We're having another exam next week.

#### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Gao: After class we had something to do at school, so I'm a little late. My father invited you to dinner this evening, isn't that so?

Bai: . . .

Gao: It's no trouble; we're glad you're coming.

Bai: . . .

Gao: I'm studying at No. 1 Middle School.

Bai: . . .

Gao: Third year higher middle. I'll be graduating this year.

Bai: . . .

Gao: No, I'm not.

Bai: . . .

Gao: Thank you. Mr. White, [may I ask] what time is it? I left right after breakfast and forgot to wear my watch.

Bai: . . .

#### Dialogue B

Bai: You're returning home from school very late, (aren't you)?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Yes. It puts you to too much trouble.

Gao: . . .

Bai: [I still don't know] at what school are you studying?

Gao: . . .

Bai: What year?

Gao: . . .

Bai: [I think] you must be very bright.

Gao: . . .

Bai: You're being polite. Do you like to see movies? After your exams may I invite you to see a movie?

Gao: . . .

Bai: It's now quarter of seven.

#### LESSON 14

##### Basic Sentences

1. Have you read the book he's written?
2. Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
3. He understands everything in Chinese, and also speaks it very well.
4. Do you understand everything that Mr. Wan says to you?
5. In a little while I'll be able to see the paintings you've done.

## Dialogue A

Gao: . . .

Bai: There are over 3,500. Miss Gao, what do you plan to study after graduating from middle school?

Gao: . . .

Bai: I originally planned to study science, but I'm very much interested in foreign languages, especially Chinese, so in America I studied (spoken) Chinese and read Chinese books. Now I've come to China to study Chinese literature, and also to study linguistics.

Gao: . . .

Bai: [Studying] linguistics is analyzing languages by scientific means.

Gao: . . .

Bai: I can [do so], but I write badly. (When) I write letters to Chinese friends, I like to write in Chinese. Your father writes [characters] very well.

Gao: . . .

Bai: Haven't you heard it said:

Live to old age,  
Study to old age,  
There's still three-tenths  
That one can't learn.

Gao: . . .

## Dialogue B

Gao: How many students do you have at Far Eastern?

Bai: . . .

Gao: I'd like to study literature, but I'm sure that I can't pass the college exams. If I can't pass the exams for college, then I'll study painting. What are you studying, Mr. White?

Bai: . . .

Gao: How does one study linguistics?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Do you like to write Chinese characters? Can you use Chinese in writing letters?

Bai: . . .

Gao: He practices calligraphy almost every day.

Bai: . . .

Gao: It's not just three-tenths!

## LESSON15

## Basic Sentences

1. I have to go now, but you don't need to go.
2. I have to finish reading this book today.
3. Of course I should go with him once.
4. I've [already]been studying Chinese for three years. I'll study another two or three years of Chinese.
5. He's been reading for an hour.

## Dialogue A

Gao: . . .

Bai: I've been studying Chinese for almost five years.

Gao: . . .

Bai: At the beginning we went to class one hour a day. The teacher taught us to speak. After leaving class we listened to recordings on a tape recorder.

Gao: . . .

Bai: First I went by car from New York to San Francisco, arriving there after a six-day drive. I stayed in San Francisco for eight days. Then I traveled for ten days by boat to Japan. I stayed in Japan for a week, and then came to China by plane.

Gao: . . .

Bai: In the future after you graduate you should take a plane somewhere and go have fun.

Gao: . . .

## Dialogue B

Gao: Mr. White, how many years have you been studying Chinese?

Bai: . . .

Gao: That's why your Chinese is so good. How did you study Chinese in America?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Did you come to China by plane or by boat?

Bai: . . .

Gao: I haven't been on a plane yet. If I have a chance I must take one once.

Bai: . . .

Gao: My father and mother have both been to Japan. They stayed there for more than two months, and bought a lot of Japanese things.

## LESSON 16

## Basic Sentences

1. Some were bought in Hangchow, some [were bought] in Soochow.
2. Everyone says he's very learned.
3. Carry all these things into the house.
4. Not only can my wife speak Chinese, but she speaks it very well.
5. Even I have no way of speaking to him.

## Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Miss Gao: That's why my father likes to go out for a walk every day. Even on Sundays when he doesn't have to work he always goes out. [Going and returning] he always walks.

Bai: . . .

Miss Gao: He likes nothing better than traveling. . . . Here we are. Mom! Open the door. The guest has come.

Bai: . . .

Mrs. Gao: Oh, Mr. White, you're here. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Bai: . . .

Mr. Gao: Mr. White, how are you? Come (in), come (in). I'll introduce the two of you. This is Professor Wanamaker. This is Mr. White.

Bai: . . .

Wan: Pleased to meet you. . . . Miss Gao is intelligent and attractive. She studies well, she paints well.

Bai: . . .

Miss Gao: Don't look (at them). I paint badly.

Bai: . . .

Mr. Gao: Meiying, bring all your paintings out. Let [both of] them have a look.

Bai: . . .

Miss Gao: Why, this is Hangchow.

Bai: . . .

Wan: China has a saying:

Above is heaven,  
Below are Soochow and Hangchow.

The saying is not at all an exaggeration.

## Dialogue B

- Bai: The area around your home is very nice.  
 Miss Gao: . . .  
 Bai: Does your father also like to travel?  
 Miss Gao: . . .  
 Bai: Mrs. Gao, haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?  
 Mrs. Gao: . . .  
 Bai: Mr. Gao, how are you?  
 Mr. Gao: . . .  
 Bai: Pleased to meet you.  
 Wan: . . .  
 Bai: That's right. Miss Gao, we must look at your paintings.  
 Miss Gao: . . .  
 Bai: Please bring out all the paintings for us to look at.  
 Mr. Gao: . . .  
 Bai: This landscape painting is really nice. What place is it?  
 Miss Gao: . . .  
 Bai: Oh, so this is Hangchow. It's really attractive.  
 Wan: . . .

## LESSON 17

## Basic Sentences

1. The weather today isn't as warm as yesterday's.
2. This kind of tea is as nice as that kind.
3. There are a good many professors who compare him (as equal) to a fourth-year student.
4. That house is awfully big, so big that no one wants to buy it.
5. My monthly salary is very small, not enough (for me) to buy a house.
6. These Chinese students speak English as well as Americans do.

## Dialogue A

- Bai: . . .  
 Wan: [Old] Gao met Mrs. Gao in Soochow. They were married in Soochow, and Miss Gao was born there. Miss Gao has grown up to be as attractive as Mrs. Gao.

Bai: . . .

Wan: Hangchow is famous for its scenery, and Soochow is famous for its women. . . . This wine is really nice.

Bai: . . .

Gao: It's Rose Dew. [Old] Wan, what do you say, after this cup shall we play 'guess-fingers'? . . . Mr. White, what do you think, is it interesting?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Wait a moment and you'll understand.

#### Dialogue B

Bai: Is Miss Gao a native of Soochow?

Wan: . . .

Bai: Oh, so that's why Mrs. Gao and Miss Gao are so attractive!

Wan: . . .

Bai: What is it?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Very interesting. I'm puzzled as to why the winner doesn't drink.

Gao: . . .

### LESSON 19

#### Basic Sentences

1. The sweet-and-sour fish that she makes is either too sweet or too sour.
2. I'd like very much to have some more beef soup, but I'm already full.
3. They're talking while eating.
4. Apart from saying "You flatter me," what did he say?
5. Where are the chopsticks? I've looked everywhere but can't find them.
6. Red-cooked pork and fish I've eaten, to be sure, but I don't like them.

#### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Gao: It's plain food, nothing in particular. [Both of you] sit and eat as you please.

Bai: . . .

Gao: This is fried cabbage.

Bai: . . .

Gao: This is red-cooked chicken.

Bai: . . .

Gao: Mr. White, did you often have Chinese food in America too?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Is the Chinese food in America good?

Bai: . . .

#### Dialogue B

Bai: My! There's no end (of food). How is it that there are so many courses!

Gao: . . .

Bai: What is this dish?

Gao: . . .

Bai: And what about this?

Gao: . . .

Bai: This I know. It's fried bean curd.

Gao: . . .

Bai: I often did.

Gao: . . .

Bai: The Chinese restaurants in America are almost all Cantonese restaurants. Their cooking is good all right, but it isn't as good as Mrs. Gao's. Apart from a few big cities (like) San Francisco and New York, lion's head just can't be had in America.

### LESSON 20

#### Basic Sentences

1. As soon as you called me I was delighted.
2. I can't guess whether he's a northerner or a southerner.
3. I'm afraid he can't lift such a heavy thing.
4. How come he speaks Chinese so well? . . . (Because) he was born in China, of course.
5. The teacher probably doesn't want us to open our books.
6. I've (just) remembered, I have to go to the station today to meet Mr. Gao.

#### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Gao: Gosh, don't bring that up. I did rather well in English and Chinese, but I messed up the math exam terribly. I misread a question.



Bai: . . .

Gao: I have something to tell you now. We're having vacation now, and my father and mother are having me go with them to Japan.

Bai: . . .

Gao: I like to eat everything. It just occurred to me—near the bookstore there's a Northern restaurant called the Ten Thousand Years Restaurant. Do you know it?

Bai: . . .

Gao: I hear the movie being shown at the China Theater isn't bad. It's a historical movie. The story is well written, and the actors do their parts well.

Bai: . . .

Gao: O.K.

#### Dialogue B

Bai: Meiyang, how are things? Have you finished taking your exams? Did they go well?

Gao: . . .

Bai: This is something that happens often in examinations.

Gao: . . .

Bai: So I must ask you to dinner. After eating let's also go see a movie, O.K.? What would you like to eat?

Gao: . . .

Bai: I remembered it as you were speaking. So let's go there for dinner. Where shall we go see a movie?

Gao: . . .

Bai: Let's take in the nine o'clock show, O.K.?

Gao: . . .

#### LESSON 21

#### Basic Sentences

1. Buy whatever kind of teacups you planned to.
2. He's always saying I don't have enough experience, but I feel I have a lot more experience than he has.
3. How come there's no soy sauce to put into the sautéed dish?
4. That teapot you've just bought can't be bought even in China.
5. I don't care much for [seeing] very long movies.
6. Give him a little more money, otherwise he won't sell.

## Dialogue A

Waiter: . . .

Bai: Please help us order a couple of dishes.

Waiter: . . .

Bai: How does one order dumplings? How much do they sell for?

Waiter: . . .

Bai: Fine. If we don't have enough, we'll speak up again. After we've finished we'd like a [sweet] dessert. Do you have almond bean curd?

Waiter: . . .

Bai: Do you have almond tea?

Waiter: . . .

Bai: Please bring two bowls. . . . Waiter, the bill.

Waiter: . . .

Bai: Here's five dollars. You don't need to make change. The rest is your tip.

Waiter: . . .

## Dialogue B

Waiter: Here's the menu.

Bai: . . .

Waiter: Fine. I'll introduce you to a few of our best dishes. Our red-cooked fish, fried shrimp, and roast duck are all fine. Our dumplings and fried noodles are also not bad.

Bai: . . .

Waiter: Dumplings you order by the number you eat. They're \$1.20 for ten.

Bai: . . .

Waiter: I'm sorry, we're just sold out. Would you like something else?

Bai: . . .

Waiter: Yes.

Bai: . . .

Waiter: Yes. Altogether, four thirty-six.

Bai: . . .

Waiter: Thank you. Don't be in a hurry to leave. Good-bye.

## LESSON 22

## Basic Sentences

1. How many strokes are there in the character shēng of shēngyīn?
2. With regard to that problem, I'm just in the process of investigating it.
3. Everyone knows that if one simultaneously studies pronunciation, Chinese characters, and grammar, the disadvantages will outweigh the advantages.
4. The more syllables there are in a sentence the more difficult it is to say.
5. I'm presenting a portion of these books to you, and a portion to him.
6. You must thoroughly master the four tones. If the [four] tones are not accurate, you certainly won't (be able to) speak Chinese well.

## Dialogue A

Gao: . . .

Bai: The teaching methods in American schools are not uniform. Some begin with studying Chinese characters, some use transcription.

Gao: . . .

Bai: At that time I did work hard. Every day I listened to recordings, carried on monologues, practiced pronunciation, and fixed in my memory all that we studied every day. The more I studied the more interested I became.

Gao: . . .

Bai: Yes, I first learned to speak. I began by studying the four tones and stress. Afterwards I studied words (for example, shū and tàitai are words) and phrases, and then studied conversation.

Gao: . . .

Bai: What needs most attention is pronunciation and grammar.

Gao: . . .

Bai: If you use Chinese characters to study the Chinese language, there is no way of knowing by yourself how to read a character which you have not studied previously.

Gao: . . .

## Dialogue B

Gao: Is there a uniform method of teaching in American schools?

Bai: . . .

Gao: When you began your studies you must have been very diligent.

Bai: . . .

Gao: At the beginning did you first study speaking?

Bai: . . .

Gao: In studying languages what must you pay special attention to?

Bai: . . .

Gao: If you use Chinese characters where are the disadvantages?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Learning characters is not too hard. It's just a matter of practicing more, of course.

## LESSON 23

### Basic Sentences

1. Next year I plan to spend the whole year studying [things of] Oriental culture [that aspect].
2. Please give this letter to Teacher Wang right away.
3. Yesterday noon friends saw me off at the Tokyo airport.
4. Enough! Enough! This painting is badly done. Don't hang it up.
5. The jokes he tells are very funny.
6. It's possible that all the books have been carried off by him.

### Dialogue A

Bai: . . .

Gao: Nonsense. Of course we should come. Are your things all packed?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Let's go. Supposing we go to the airport cafeteria first and have a leisurely talk there. When you return to America will you go on studying Chinese language and literature?

Bai: . . .

Gao: When you study any branch of learning, if you hope [to be able] to master it, the most important thing is to keep on studying all the time. Vincent, will your younger brother and sister also come to China later to study?

Bai: . . .

Gao: Vincent, it's just about time. You should get on the plane.

Bai: . . .

Gao: I wish you a pleasant trip.

Bai: . . .

### Dialogue B

Bai: Good morning! I've put you to too much trouble. I really don't deserve this.

Gao: . . .

Bai: I don't have anything much left any more. A few days ago I had a friend who is returning by boat take all my books.

Gao: . . .

Bai: Yes. I'll keep on with it, and I'll have to study hard too.

Gao: . . .

Bai: I don't know what they'll study [later]. If they study Oriental civilization there's a possibility that they will come to China.

Gao: . . .

Bai: Yes.

Gao: . . .

Bai: Thank you. Good-bye!

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

LESSON 1

New Vocabulary

lǎo	old (chiefly of animate things) (SV)
xiǎo	small, little, young (SV)
tóngzhì	comrade (N) [lit. same determination] (See Note 1)
lǎoshī	teacher (N) [lit. old teacher] (See Note 1)

Exercises

- |                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| tóngzhì                          | comrade                     |
| 'Gāo-Tóngzhì                     | Comrade Gao                 |
| 1. 'Gāo-Tóngzhì, ní-hǎo-ma?      | Comrade Gao, how are you?   |
| lǎoshī                           | teacher                     |
| 'Xiè-Lǎoshī                      | Teacher Xie                 |
| 2. 'Xiè-Lǎoshī, ní-hǎo-a?        | Teacher Xie, how are you?   |
| 3. Gāo: 'Xiè-Tóngzhì, nín-hǎo-a? | Comrade Xie, how are you?   |
| Xiè: Hǎo. Nín-ne, 'Gāo-Tóngzhì?  | Fine. And you, Comrade Gao? |
| Gāo: Wó-yé-hǎo.                  | I'm fine too.               |
| 4. Bái: 'Xiè-Lǎoshī hén-lǎo-ma?  | Is Teacher Xie quite old?   |
| Gāo: Tā-hén-lǎo.                 | He's very old.              |
| 5. Gāo: Nǐmen dōu-hǎo-ma?        | Are you all well?           |
| Bái: Wǒmen dōu-hén-hǎo.          | We're all fine. And you?    |
| Nǐmen-ne?                        |                             |
| Gāo: Wǒmen yě-dōu-hén-hǎo.       | We're also all well.        |
| Bái: Zàijiàn, 'Gāo-Lǎoshī.       | Good-bye, Teacher Gao.      |
| Gāo: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.           | Good-bye.                   |
| 6. Xiè: Lǎo-Gāo, ní-hǎo-ma?      | How are you, (Old) Gao?     |
| Gāo: Hǎo.                        | Fine.                       |

- Xiè: Xiǎo-Bái yé-hǎo-ma?                      And how's (Young) Bai?  
 Gāo: Tā-yé-hǎo.                                      He's fine too.
7. Bái: 'Xiè-Lǎoshī, nín-hǎo-a?                      Teacher Xie, how are you?  
 Xiè: Wó-hén-hǎo. Nǐ-ne?                              I'm fine. And you?  
 Bái: Wó-yé-hǎo. Zài jiàn, 'Xiè-Lǎoshī.                      I'm fine too. Good-bye, Teacher Xie.  
 Xiè: Zài jiàn, zài jiàn.                                      See you again.
8. 'Bái-Xiānsheng, 'Gāo-Tóngzhī                      Mr. White and Comrade Gao are both  
 'dōu-hěn-gāo. 'Xiè-Lǎoshī yé-                      quite tall. Teacher Xie is also quite  
 hěn-gāo.    tall.

## Note

1. The problem of forms of address, a traditionally complex matter in Chinese (as indeed it is in most languages), has acquired an added dimension of complexity and uncertainty owing to the rapid but uneven changes that have been taking place in the People's Republic of China. There are considerable variations stemming from differences in age, in dialect, in nationality (i.e., Chinese versus non-Chinese), and in individual preferences for one or another form of address. In general the tendency is in the direction of greater simplicity, but the present situation, which is likely to last for some time, is one of transition, and it is therefore difficult to prescribe simple clear usage for all situations.

In the PRC among Chinese themselves the Government has expressed official preference for the generalized use of tóngzhī 'Comrade,' as in Gāo Tóngzhī 'Comrade Gao,' a form which is used in reference to both men and women. Many Chinese, however, prefer to be addressed by terms expressing their position or status, such as 'Delegation Head Gao, Party Secretary Gao,' etc. Some of the older forms of address still persist, especially among older people and in rural areas (where traditional linguistic usages are particularly persistent) or in special situations. Xiānsheng is still used as a respectful designation for important people (non-Party members, famous professors and writers, etc.). Even more than xiānsheng, the terms tàitai and xiǎojié have fallen into disfavor in general usage in the PRC since they are considered to reflect respect for the élite status of the former privileged classes.

Chinese men and women sometimes address each other by their full names (e.g., Gāo Měiyīng), that is surname plus given name, without the use of any title. A more familiar form of address is to precede the surname with Xiǎo (literally 'small') when addressing a smaller or younger person or Lǎo (literally 'old') when addressing an older person, though considerations of relative size or age are not strictly followed. These terms, which are used for both men and women, should not be translated literally since they merely convey a degree of familiarity similar to English usage of personal name or surname, e.g., Hi, John! Hi, Smith!

Among some Chinese in the PRC the term àirén, literally 'loved person,' is used for both 'wife' and 'husband' and for 'fiancé' and 'fiancée.'

Coming now to usage between Chinese and non-Chinese, the situation is complicated by the fact that contacts between the two are seldom very extensive, at least rarely so extensive as to reach the degree of intimacy that non-Chinese, especially Americans, are accustomed to in their social contacts. Thus the familiarity with which the American student White greets his Chinese friend Gao in Lesson 1 is more likely to characterize situations in Chinese communities outside the PRC than in it.

In the PRC Chinese still often address foreigners by using xiānsheng for males and xiáojié for unmarried women. More rarely, tàitai is sometimes used in reference to foreign married women. A more common familiar usage is to address both men and women by the Chinese equivalent of their surname plus given name.

Insofar as foreigners addressing Chinese is concerned, perhaps the safest procedure is to call them by their titles of position or rank, such as 'Delegation Head Gao.' Tóngzhì may sometimes be used by foreigners in addressing Chinese who are their social equals, but the term should be handled with caution, as some Chinese may resent its indiscriminate use by foreigners. However, the term can be used widely for information or help, as illustrated in Supplementary Lesson 3 and subsequent lessons. In some situations foreigners may also use the title xiānsheng, but careful attention should be paid as to whether the usage is appropriate in the given situation.

In situations of great familiarity, but only in such situations, foreigners may address Chinese by using their surname plus given name (e. g., Gāo Měiyīng) or only their given name (e. g., Měiyīng) or by prefixing Xiǎo or Lǎo to the surname (e. g., Lǎo-Gāo, Xiǎo-Bái). The latter would be particularly appropriate among students who are on quite friendly and familiar terms.

The term àirén has struck the fancy of many Western observers, but it should be used by non-Chinese only with the greatest caution, as it involves delicate problems of degree of familiarity. It should never be used as a title. Special care should also be exercised in using it in speaking with Chinese outside the PRC since it retains for them its original connotation of an extra-marital lover or mistress.

Students will have frequent contact with Chinese teachers and can address them (both in the PRC and elsewhere) as lǎoshī 'teacher.'

In addressing Chinese outside the PRC, which will probably be the situation in which students of the language will most often find themselves, the older forms of address can of course still be used (unless of course the Chinese in question are visitors from the PRC). It would usually not be appropriate to use such terms as tóngzhì and àirén in speaking with Chinese not connected with the PRC.

The respectful pronoun nín 'you' is used by many Chinese in the PRC among themselves and in addressing foreigners and can be used by foreigners in addressing Chinese, though some of the latter disapprove of it as being overly polite.



In view of the fact that usage in these matters is not yet completely standardized, students are advised to take careful note of what is said in specific situations in which they find themselves. In classroom situations the best procedure would be to observe the preference of one's teacher as to forms of address. They should not hesitate to ask what forms they as foreigners should use in a given situation. Indeed this approach should be generalized to language usage in general. In view of the wide variations in individual language usage, students are particularly cautioned to observe specific language usage themselves and not to accept uncritically such sweeping statements as "We always say such-and-such" or "We never say so-and-so."

## LESSON 2

## Exercises

1. Nín-shì-bu-shì 'Qián-Tóngzhì?      Are you Comrade Qian?
2. 'Wáng-Lǎoshī shì-'Měiguó-rén-bú-shì?      Is Teacher Wang an American?
3. Xiǎo-Gāo-Lǎo-Bái dōu-huì-shuō-'Yīngguó-huà. Wǒ-bú-huì.      (Little) Gao and (Old) Bai can both speak English. I can't.
4. 'Xiè-Tóngzhì wèn-tāmen: "Nǐmen 'dōu-shì-Měiguó-rén-ma?" Tāmen-shuō tāmen-'dōu-shì-Měiguó-rén.      Comrade Xie asked them: "Are you all Americans?" They said they were all Americans.
5. Qián: Qǐng-wèn, nín-guìxìng?      May I ask your name?  
Gāo: Wǒ-xìng-Gāo. Nín-ne?      My name is Gao. And you?  
Qián: Wǒ-xìng-Qián.      My name is Qian.
6. Bái: Nín-shì-'Gāo-Tóngzhì-ma?      Are you Comrade Gao?  
Qián: Bú-shì. Wǒ-xìng-Qián.      No. My name is Qian.
7. Qián: Nín-shì-'Gāo-Lǎoshī-ba?      I take it you're Teacher Gao?  
Wáng: Bú-shì. Wǒ-xìng-Wáng.      No, my name is Wang.
8. Gāo: Qǐng-wèn-Tóngzhì, 'nín-guìxìng?      May I ask, Comrade, what is your name?  
Xiè: Wǒ-xìng-Xiè. Nín-ne?      My name is Xie. And yours?  
Gāo: Wǒ-xìng-Gāo. Zàijiàn, 'Xiè-Tóngzhì.      My name is Gao. Good-bye, Comrade Xie.  
Xiè: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.      Good-bye.

## Note

1. There are differences of opinion among PRC informants regarding the use of the polite expression Nín-guixǐng? 'What is your (honorable) surname?' Some speakers have abandoned it for the more straightforward Nín (or Nǐ)-xìng-shénmo?, literally 'You are surnamed what?' (An exercise on this is provided in Lesson 3, where shénmo? 'what?' is introduced.) However, the polite form is still widely used in conversations involving non-Chinese.

## LESSON 3

## New Vocabulary

yuán	yuan; dollar (M) (See Note 1)
jiǎo	dime (M) (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1. Gāo:   | Ní-yóu-'jǐzhǐ-bǐ?                        | How many pens do you have?                            |
| Bái:  | Wǒ-jiù-yǒu 'yìzhǐ-bǐ.                    | I have only one pen.                                  |
| 2. Máo:   | Qǐng-wèn, nín-guixǐng?                   | May I ask, what is your name?                         |
| Qián:   | Wǒ-xìng-Qián. 'Nín-xìng-shénmo?          | My name is Qian. What is your name?                   |
| Máo:  | Wǒ-xìng-Máo.                             | My name is Mao.                                       |
| 3. 'Wáng-Lǎoshī-shuō tā-yào-'zhèi-liǎngzhǐ-máobǐ. |  | Teacher Wang says he wants these two writing brushes. |
| 4. Wáng:  | Tā-wèn nǐ-huì-bu-huì-shuō 'Zhōngguó-huà? | He asks whether you can speak Chinese.                |
| Bái:  | Huì. Tā-'hái-wèn-wǒ-shénmo?              | I can. What else is he asking?                        |
| Wáng:   | Tā-'hái-wèn nǐ-shì-bu-shì-Měiguó-rén?    | He also asks whether you are an American.             |
| 5. Máo:   | Nǐ-'hái-yào-mǎi-shénmo?                  | What else would you like to buy?                      |
| Bái:  | Wǒ-'hái-yào-mǎi-bǐ.                      | I also want to buy a pen.                             |
| Máo:  | Yào-mǎi-'jǐzhǐ?                          | How many do you want to buy?                          |
| Bái:  | 'Yìzhǐ                                   | One.  |
| Máo:  | Yìzhǐ liǎngkuài-qián.                    | One (is) two dollars.                                 |
| 6. Xiè:   | Tóngzhǐ, zhèizhǐ-máobǐ mǎi-duōshao-qián? | Comrade, how much does this writing brush sell for?   |
| Qián:   | Mǎi-yíkuài-èr.                           | It sells for a dollar twenty.                         |

- Xiè: Hǎo, wó-mái-liǎngzhǐ. Fine, I'll buy two.  
 Qián: Hǎo. O. K.
7. Máo: Nín-mǎi-shénmo? What would you like to buy?  
 Bái: Wǒ-yào-mǎi-shū. Nèiběn- I'd like to buy a book. How much is  
 shū duōshao-qián? that book?  
 Máo: Zhèiběn-shū liǎngyuán- This book is \$2.40.  
 sìjiǎo.  
 Bái: Hǎo, wó-mǎi-yībēn. Fine, I'll buy one.

## Note

1. On banknotes and in other printed materials the written equivalent of kuài is yuán and ōf máo is jiǎo. In the PRC these forms are beginning to enter into the spoken language, especially in Common Speech as spoken by Southerners, but kuài and máo are still used more frequently in everyday speech. (Some readers may prefer to render kuài and yuán as 'yuan' instead of as 'dollar' in order to avoid confusion with American currency.)

## LESSON 4

## Exercises

1. 'Yán-Lǎoshī yào-mǎi yíge- Teacher Yan wants to buy a Chinese  
 Zhōngguo-dìtú, yìzhǐ-gāngbǐ, map, a pen, and two pencils. He also  
 liǎngzhǐ-qiānbǐ. Hái-yào-mǎi wants to buy fifty sheets of paper.  
 wǔshízhāng-zhǐ.
2. 'Wáng-Tóngzhì yào-mǎi-máobǐ. Comrade Wang wants to buy a Chinese  
 'Zhāng-Tóngzhì yào-mái-běnzi. pen. Comrade Zhang wants to buy a  
 notebook.
3. Bái: Nǐ-yóu-jǐge-běnzi? How many notebooks do you have?  
 Lán: Wǒ-jiù-yǒu zhèi-yībēn. I have only this one.
4. Máo: Nǐmen-mǎi shénmo- What color ink are you buying?  
 yánse-de-mòshuǐ?  
 Xiè: Wó-mǎi-'hóng-mòshuǐ. I'm buying red ink. He's buying blue  
 Tā-mǎi-'lán-mòshuǐ. ink.
5. Bái: Zhèige-dìtú mài-duōshao- How much is this map?  
 qián?  
 Máo: Liǎngkuài-èr. Two-twenty.  
 Bái: Liǎngkuài-èr bú-guǐ. Wó- Two-twenty isn't expensive. I'll buy  
 mǎi-yìzhāng. one.
6. Xiè: 'Lán-Tóngzhì, nín-hǎo- How are you, Comrade Lan?  
 ma?

- Lán: Hǎo. Nǐ-ne, Xiǎo-Xiè? Fine, and you, (Little) Xiè?
- Xiè: Hǎo. Zàijiàn, 'Lán-Tóngzhì. Fine. Good-bye, Comrade Lan.
- Lán: Zàijiàn, zàijiàn. Good-bye.
7. Bái: Zhèiběn-Yīngwén-shū How much does this English book sell  
mài-duōshao-qián? for?
- Máo: Liǎngyuán-qījiǎo. \$2.70.
- Bái: Zhèiběn-Zhōng-Yīng- And this Chinese-English dictionary?  
zìdiǎn-ne?
- Máo: Bāyuán-èrjiǎo. \$8.20
- Bái: Hǎo, wó-mǎi-yībēn. Good, I'll buy one.

## LESSON 5

## New Vocabulary

shíjiān (period of) time (N) [lit. time interval] (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- | shíjiān   | time   |
|---|--|
| yǒu-shíjiān   | have time  |
| 1. Nǐmen-xiànzài dōu-yǒu-shíjiān-ma?  | Do you all have time now?  |
| 2. Xiè-Lǎoshī-shuō zhèige-Zhōngguo-dìtú hén-hǎo, yě-bù-hěn-guǐ, jiù-mài-wǔmáo-qián. | Teacher Xie says this map is very good, and it's not very expensive, selling for only fifty cents. |
| 3. Qián: Tóngzhì, yǒu-shénmo-yánse-de-zhǐ?  | What color paper do you have, Comrade?   |
| Máo: Jiù-yǒu-hóng-zhǐ.  | We just have red paper.  |
| 4. Xiè: Zhāng-Lǎoshī huì-shuō-wàiguó-huà-bú-huì?                                    | Can Teacher Zhang speak a foreign language?  |
| Wáng: Huì. Tā-huì-shuō-Yīngwén.   | Yes. He can speak English.   |
| 5. Bái: Wai, wai, nín-nǎr? Shì-'Gāo-jiā-ma?   | Hello, hello. Who's this? Is this the Gao home?  |
| Gāo: Shì. Qǐng-wèn, nín-shì-něiwèi?   | Yes. Who's this, please?   |
| Bái: Wǒ-shì-Bái-Wénshān.  | I'm Vincent White.   |

6. Gāo: Nǐ-wǎnshàng yǒu-shíjiān-ma? Wó-xiǎng-qǐng-nǐ chī-fàn. Are you free this evening? I'd like to ask you to dinner.
- Bái: Hǎo. Xièxie-nǐ. 'Jídiǎn-zhōng? (How) nice. Thank you. At what time?
- Gāo: 'Qīdiǎn keyi-ma? Is seven o'clock O. K.?
- Bái: Kéyi, kéyi. Fine.
7. Lán: Zhèzhǐ-gāngbǐ shì-shéi-de? Shì-Qián-Lǎoshī-de-ma? Whose pen is this? Is it Teacher Qian's?
- Bái: Bú-shì. Gāngbǐ shì-Zhāng-Tóngzhǐ-de. Qiānbǐ shì-Qián-Lǎoshī-de. No. The pen is Comrade Zhang's. The pencil is Teacher Qian's.

## Note

1. In the PRC the expression Nǐ-yǒu-gōngfu-ma? for 'Do you have time?' or 'Are you free?' is considered by some speakers as too colloquial. They prefer instead Nǐ-yǒu-shíjiān-ma?

## LESSON 6

## Exercises

1. Xiè: Xiànzài jídiǎn-zhōng? Bái: Zhèzhǐ-'hóng-bǐ.  
Bái: Xiànzài qīdiǎn-zhōng. Xié: Shì-'Lán-Tóngzhǐ-de.
2. Qián: Zhèzhǎng-dìtú mài-duōshao-qián? 5. Zhè shì-shénmo-shū? Shì-Zhōng-Yīng-zìdiǎn-ma? Mài-duōshao-qián? Mài - liǎngkuài - qián - ma? Liǎngkuài-qián-bú-guǐ. Hǎo, wó-mǎi-yībēn. Wǒ-hái-yào-mǎi yīzhǐ-gāngbǐ. Nǐmen-bú-mài-gāngbǐ-ma?
3. Yán: Wai! Wai! Nǐ-nǎr? Shì-Wáng-Tóngzhǐ-jiā-ma? Wáng: Shì. Nǐ-shì-něiwèi?  
Yán: Wǒ-xǐng-Yán. 6. Zhāng-Lǎoshī wèn-wǒ jīntiān-wǎnshàng yǒu-méi-yǒu-shíjiān. Tā-shuō tā-xiǎng-qǐng-wǒ-chī-fàn. Wǒ-shuō-yǒu-shíjiān. Tā-bādiǎn-zhōng qǐng-wǒ-chī-fàn.
4. Bái: Zhè-shì-shéi-de-bǐ? Xié: 'Něizhǐ-bǐ?

## LESSON 7

## New Vocabulary

xiǎode know (V) [lit. know get] (See Note 2)

## Exercises

1. Zhāng: Nǐ-yào-shénmo-yánse-de-bǐ? What color pen do you want?  
 Wáng: Wǒ-yào yìzhī-hóng-gāngbǐ, yìzhī-lán-qiānbǐ. I'd like a red pen and a blue pencil.
2. Bái: Fángzi-wàibiār-de-nèige-rén shì-shéi, nǐ-'xiǎode-bu-xiǎode? Who's that person outside the house, do you know?  
 Xiè: Shì-'Gāo-Tóngzhì. It's Comrade Gao.
3. Lán: Zhè-shì-nǐde-zhǐ-ma? Is this your paper?  
 Xiè: Bú-shì. No.  
 Lán: Zhèzhāng-dìtú-ne? What about this map?  
 Xiè: Yě-bú-shì-wǒde. It's not mine either.
4. Wáng: Nǐ-jiā-zài-nǎr? Zài-chénglǐ háishi-zài-chéngwài? Where is your home? Is it inside or outside the city?  
 Zhāng: Zài-chéngwài. It's outside the city.  
 Wáng: 'Gāo-Lǎoshī-jiā-ne? How about Teacher Gao's home?  
 Zhāng: Wǒ-bù-xiǎode. I don't know.
5. Gāo: Nǐ-jīntiān-wǎnshàng yǒu-shíjiān-ma? Wó-xiǎng qíng-nǐ-chī-fān. Are you free this evening? I'd like to ask you to dinner.  
 Bái: Xièxie-ni. Yǒu-shíjiān. Shénmo-shíhou? Thank you. I'm free. At what time?  
 Gāo: Qīdiǎn. Seven.  
 Bái: Hǎo. Qīdiǎn-zhōng-jiàn. Fine. See you at seven.
6. Xiè: 'Zhāng-Tóngzhì jiā-zài-nǎr, nǐ-'xiǎode-bu-xiǎode? Where is Comrade Zhang's home, do you know?  
 Bái: Zài-zhèitiáo-lù-de-dōng-biār. Jiù-zài-Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán-de-hòubiār. It's to the east of this road. It's behind Sun Yatsen Park.
7. Wáng: Fángzi-wàitou-de-nèi-sānge-rén shì-shéi, nǐ-xiǎode-ma? Who are those three people outside the house, do you know?  
 Máo: Zài-zuǒbiār-de shì-'Xiè-Lǎoshī, zài-yòubiār-de shì-'Qián-Lǎoshī. Zhōng-jiàn-de shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng. The one on the left is Teacher Xie, the one on the right is Teacher Qian. The one in the middle is Mr. White.

8. Bái: Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán zài- nǎr, nǐ-xiǎode-bu-xiǎode? Do you know where Sun Yatsen Park is?
- Zhāng: Wǒ-bù-xiǎode. I don't know.

## Notes

1. In the Common Speech of the PRC the suffixed placeword bian or biar occurs more often than tou, which is more typical of the Peking dialect. Thus lǐbian or lǐbiar is used more often than lǐtou, and shàngbian or shàngbiar more often than shàngtou, etc. However, the forms with tou do occur in Common Speech and are presented in PRC materials along with the forms bian and biar.
2. The Central China and rather colloquial expression xiǎode 'know' is entering into Common Speech along with zhīdao, though the latter is still more widely used.

## LESSON 8

## New Vocabulary

xuéxí study (N/V) [lit. study practice] (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| xuéxí          | study         |
| xuéxí-Zhōngwén | study Chinese |
1. Wǒmen-xuéxí-Zhōngwén. We are studying Chinese.
  2. Wǒ-hěn-xǐhuan-Zhōngwén. Wǒ-xiànzài néng-shuō-Zhōngwén, néng-kàn jiǎndānde-Zhōngwén-shū, yě-huì-xiě Zhōngguo-zì. I like Chinese a lot. I can speak Chinese now, can read simple Chinese books, and can also write Chinese characters.
  3. Xiè: Nín-zài-dàxué xué-shénmo? What are you studying in college?  
 Bái: Wǒ-xué-wénxué. I'm studying literature.  
 Xiè: Nín-xué-'Zhōngguo-wénxué-ma? Are you studying Chinese literature?  
 Bái: 'Zhōngguo-wénxué, 'Yīngguo-wénxué wǒ-'dōu-xuéxí. I'm studying both Chinese and English literature.
  4. Máo: Zhōngguo-wénxué nán-xué-ma? Is Chinese literature hard (to study)?  
 Xiè: Hěn-nán-xué. It's very hard (to study).  
 Máo: Yīngguo-wénxué-ne? How about English literature?  
 Xiè: Yé-hěn-nán-xué. It's also hard (to study).

5. Bái: Fángzi-qiántou-de-nèige-rén shi-shéi? Who is that man in front of the house?
- Gāo: Shi-'Zhāng-Tóngzhì. It's Comrade Zhang.
- Bái: Tā-shì-bu-shi 'Dōngběi-rén? Is he a Northerner?
- Gāo: Bú-shi. Tā-shi-'Shāndong-rén. No. He's from Shantung.
6. Xiè: Qíng-nǐ-kàn-wǒ-xiè-zì. Please watch me write characters.
- Máo: Wǒ-xiànzài méi-shíjiān. I don't have time now.
- Xiè: Wǎnshang yǒu-shíjiān-ma? Will you have time (this) evening?
- Máo: Wǎnshang-yǒu. Yes.
7. Bái: Nǐ-fángzi-nánbiar-de-nèitiáo-lù shi-Dōng-Hú-Lù-ma? Is that street south of your house East Lake Road?
- Xiè: Bù. Shi-'Xī-Hú-Lù. No. It's West Lake Road.
8. Wáng: Nín-zài-'něige-dàxué-xuéxí? At what college are you studying?
- Qián: Wǒ-zài-Zhōngshān-Dàxué-xuéxí. I'm studying at Sun Yatsen University.
9. Bái: Túshūguǎn zài-nǎr, ní-xiǎode-ma? Where is the library, do you know?
- Máo: Lí-zhèr hén-yuǎn. Zài-Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán-hòubiār-ne. It's quite far from here. It's behind Sun Yatsen Park.
10. Wáng: Zhōngguó-zì 'tài-nán-xiě. Chinese characters are too difficult (to study).
- Zhāng: Nǐde-huà hěn-duì. You're quite right.
11. Gāo: Nǐ-wǎnshang jídiǎn-zhōng chī-fàn? At what hour do you eat in the evening?
- Bái: Wó-měitiān-wǎnshang qīdiǎn-zhōng chī-fàn. Nǐ-ne? I eat at seven (in the evening) every day. And you?
- Gāo: Wǒ-liùdiǎn-zhōng-chī. I eat at six.

## Note

1. In the PRC xuéxí is in common use for the generalized concept of 'to study' and xué or xuéxí are used in reference to studying specific subjects. (Note that xué is generally used with an object.) These terms have largely displaced niàn, which is now mainly used in its original meaning 'read aloud.'



For silent reading, especially for pleasure (i.e., not in the sense of 'studying'), the verb kàn is used, as in kàn shū 'to read [a book].' Note the following usages:

Tā-xuéxí	'He studies' (i.e., is studying rather than working at a job).
Tā-xué-wénxué	} 'He is studying literature.'
Tā-xuéxí-wénxué	
Tā-zài-dàxué-xuéxí	'He is studying at the university.'

The term xuéxí is derived from a classical expression meaning 'learn and often practice.' It thus suggests one of the constant themes in the PRC, namely that study should involve a combination of theory and practice.

## LESSON 9

## New Vocabulary

yéxǔ probably (MA) [lit. also permit] (Xǔ is also a surname) (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| yéxǔ              | perhaps               |
| yéxǔ-míngtiān-lái | perhaps come tomorrow |
1. Tāmen-yéxǔ-míngtiān-lái. Perhaps they'll come tomorrow.
  2. Zhāng: Tā-shuō shénmo? What did he say?  
Wáng: Tā-shuō zài-chéng-mén-nèr xià-chē. He said to get off (the bus) at the city gate.
  3. Xǔ: Zhèiběn-shū 'guì-bu-guì? Is this book expensive?  
Máo: Bù-hěn-guì. Yíkuài-qián. It's not very expensive. One dollar.
  4. Gāo: Nǐ-xiǎng-xué-shénmo? What are you thinking of studying?  
Bái: Wó-xiǎng-xué 'Zhōngguó-wénxué huàzhě-'Yīngguó-wénxué. I'm thinking of studying Chinese or English literature.  
Gāo: 'Měiguó-wénxué-ne? What about American literature?  
Bái: 'Yé-xiǎng-xué. I'm also thinking of studying (it).
  5. Máo: Wǒmen-něitiān qù-kàn-Qián-Tóngzhì? What day shall we go see Comrade Qian?  
Gāo: Huàzhě-jīntiān huàzhě-míngtiān 'dōu-kéyì. Either today or tomorrow are (both) O. K.
  6. Wáng: Qǐng-wèn, cóng-zhèr dào-túshūguǎn zěnmo-zǒu? May I ask, how does one get from here to the library?  
Qián: Nǐ-cóng-zhèr yìzhí-wàng-béi-zǒu. You go straight north from here.

- Wáng: Shūdiàn-ne?  
 Qián: Yě-yìzhí-wàng-béi-zǒu.  
 Lí-túshūguǎn-bù-yuǎn.  
 What about the bookstore?  
 Also go straight north. (It's) not far from the library.
7. Bái: Hào-zì zěnmó-xiě?  
 Wáng: Bù-xiǎode. Wǒ-hái-méi-yǒu-xuéxí xiě-zì.  
 How is the character for "number" written?  
 (I) don't know. I haven't studied writing characters yet.
8. Xiè: Nǐ-xìng-shénmo?  
 Xǔ: Wǒ-xìng-Xǔ.  
 Xiè: Nǐ-shì-'Yīngguó-rén shì-Měiguó-rén?  
 Xǔ: Wǒ-shì-'Měiguó-rén.  
 What is your name?  
 My name is Xu.  
 Are you English or American?  
 I'm American.
9. Máo: Nǐ-huì-kàn 'Zhōngwén-shū-ma?  
 Bái: Wǒ-jiù-huì-kàn hén-jiǎndān-de-shū.  
 Can you read Chinese books?  
 I can only read very simple books.
10. Bái: Qǐng-wèn, cóng-zhèr dào-túshūguǎn zuò-jǐlù-chē?  
 Xiè: Zuò-liùlù-jǐlù 'dōu-kéyi.  
 Bái: Bálù-chē-ne?  
 Xiè: Bù-xiǎode. Yéxǔ 'yé-kéyi.  
 Excuse me, what bus (or car) do I take from here to the library?  
 You can take either Route 6 or Route 9.  
 What about Route 8?  
 I don't know. Perhaps it's also O. K.
11. Wáng: Zhèitiáo-lù-shang-de-chē 'tài-duō. Guò-lù hěn-nán.  
 Zhāng: Nǐde-huà hěn-duì.  
 There are too many cars on this street. It's hard to cross the street.  
 You're quite right.
12. Gāo: Nǐ-xǐhuan zuò-diànchē-ma?  
 Bái: Wǒ-hén-xǐhuan. Zuò-diànchē hén-yǒu-yìsi.  
 Do you like to ride streetcars?  
 I like to very much. Riding streetcars is very interesting.
13. Bái: Zhōngshān-Gōngyuán zài-chénglǐ háishi-zài-chéngwài?  
 Máo: Zài-chéngwài. Lí-chéng-mén-bù-yuǎn.  
 Is Sun Yatsen Park inside or outside the city?  
 It's outside the city. It's not far from the city gate.
14. Bái: Zhè-shì-'jǐlù-chē?  
 Xiè: Shì-'wǔlù-chē.  
 What route is this bus?  
 It's Route 5.

## Notes

- In the PRC yéxǔ is competing with huòzhě in the meaning 'perhaps,' as in  
Tā-yéxǔ-míngtīan-lái. 'Perhaps he'll come tomorrow.'
- In the PRC the designation for the number of a bus line uses lù 'road, route' in place of hào 'number.'  
Sānlù-chē 'Route 3 bus, No. 3 bus'

## LESSON 10

## New Vocabulary

- shòupiàoyuán      ticket-seller (N) [lit. sell-ticket person] (See Note 1)  
gōngzuò            work (N/V) [lit. work do] (See Note 2)

## Exercises

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| shòupiàoyuán  | ticket-seller   |
| shòupiàoyuán-tóngzhì  | comrade ticket-seller   |
| 1. Tā-shì-shòupiàoyuán-tóngzhì.                                 | He's the (comrade) ticket-seller.   |
| gōngzuò   | work  |
| shénmo-gōngzuò?   | what work?  |
| 2. Tā-zuò-shénmo-gōngzuò?                                       | What work does he do?   |
| 3. Bái: Shòupiàoyuán-tóngzhì xìng-shénmo, ní-'xiǎode-bu-xiǎode? | What's the comrade ticket-seller's name, do you know?                     |
| Xiè: Tā-xìng-Wáng.  | His name is Wang.   |
| Bái: Tā-míngzi jiào-shénmo?                                     | What's his given name?  |
| Xiè: Wǒ-bù-xiǎode.  | I don't know.   |
| 4. Bái: Nǐ-fùqīn yě-gōngzuò-ma?                                 | Does your father also work?   |
| Xiè: Tā-yě-gōngzuò.   | Yes, he does.   |
| Bái: Tā-zuò-shénmo-gōngzuò?                                     | What work does he do?   |
| Xiè: Tā-shì-shòupiàoyuán.                                       | He's a ticket-seller.   |
| 5. Bái: Nín-dào-gōngyuán-qù, zuò-chē háishi-zǒu-lù?             | In going to the park, will you go by bus (or streetcar) or will you walk? |
| Qián: Wó-xiǎng zuò-chē-qu.                                      | I'm thinking of going by a vehicle.                                       |
| Bái: Nín-zuò-diànchē háishi-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē?                 | Will you take the streetcar or the bus?                                   |

- Qián: Wó-yéxǔ zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē. Perhaps I'll take the bus.
6. Bái: Tāmen-zài-nèr zuò-shénmo? What are they doing there?
- Gāo: Tāmen-zài-nèr-tántan. They're talking there.
7. Xiè: 'Xǔ-Lǎoshī jiā-zài-nǎr, ní-xiǎode-ma? Where is Teacher Xu's home, do you know?
- Gāo: Tā-jiā zài-zhèitiáo-lù-de-dōngbiar wǔhào. His home is on the eastern side of this street, No. 5.
- Xiè: Shì-bu-shi dōngbiar-nèige-dà-mén? Is it that big house (lit. gate) to the east?
- Gāo: Shì. Yes.
8. Bái: Nèige-nǚ-tóngzhì zuò-shénmo-gōngzuò? What kind of work does that woman comrade do?
- Máo: Wǒ-bù-xiǎode. I don't know.
9. Bái: Zhōngguode-shùpiàoyuán 'dōu-shi-nán-de-ma? Are all the ticket-sellers in China men?
- Xiè: Bù-'dōu-shì. Yǒu-bù-shǎo shì-'nǚ-tóngzhì. Not all are. There are quite a few who are women (comrades).
10. Xǔ: Nǐ-cóng-nǎr-lái? Where are you coming from?
- Máo: Wǒ-cóng-jiālǐ-lái. I'm coming from home.
- Xǔ: Nǐ-jiā zài-nǎr? Where is your home?
- Máo: Wǒ-jiā zài-gōngyuán-hòutou. My house is behind the park.
- Xǔ: Lǐ-zhèr yuǎn-bu-yuǎn? Is it far from here?
- Máo: Bù-yuǎn. Guò-sānge-lù-kǒu. Not far. Go past three intersections.
11. Wáng-Tóngzhì yǒu-liǎngge-háizi, yíge-nán-háizi, yíge-nǚ-háizi. Nán-háizi 'qīsuì, nǚ-háizi 'liùsuì. Liǎngge-háizi dōu-zài-xiǎoxué-xuéxí. Comrade Wang has two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven, the girl six. Both children study in elementary school.

## Notes

1. The syllable shòu 'to sell,' once used mainly in the written style, is now entering more and more into Common Speech. Thus shùpiàoyuán is preferred over màipiàoyuán for 'ticket-seller.' (The previously used suffix yuán is increasingly appended to the names of certain types of workers to form somewhat more respectful designations. The contrast is somewhat like that represented by English janitor versus custodian.)

2. The expression zù-shì 'to work, to make a living' implies earning money and has therefore acquired a somewhat pejorative connotation in the PRC. On the other hand, gōngzù 'work' (used as a noun or a verb), has a more positive connotation in that it implies providing a service or working for the benefit of others. It is therefore preferred over zù-shì in Common Speech.

Nǐ-xuéxí-ne háishi-gōngzù-ne? 'Are you studying or working?'

## LESSON 11

## Exercises

1. Gāo: Rúguó-wǎnshàng yǒu-shíjiān qǐng-dào-wǒ-jiā-lai zúyizuò-tántan. If you're free this evening please come to my home to (sit a while and) talk.
- Xiè: Hǎo. Xièxie-ni. Rúguó-yǒu-shíjiān yíding-dào-nǐ-jiā-qù kàn-ni. O.K. Thank you. If I have time I'll certainly go to your home to see you.
2. Zhāng: 'Xiè-Tóngzhì-de-jiā zài-nǎr, ní-xiǎode-ma? Where is Comrade Xie's home, do you know?
- Máo: Wǒ-fùqin-rènshi-ta. Nǐ-zhào-wǒ-fùqin, tā-yíding-gàosu-ni. My father knows him. Ask (lit. seek) my father, he'll certainly (be able to) tell you.
- Zhāng: Duì! Wǒ-dào-nǐ-jiā wèn-nǐ-fùqin. Right! I'll go to your home to ask your father.
3. Qián: 'Wáng-Xiānsheng, nǐ-shí-shénmo-shíhou líkai-Měiguó-de? Mr. King, when did you leave the United States?
- Wáng: Wǒ-shí-jīnnián-báyue. August of this year.
- Qián: Nǐ-shí-zuò-fēijī-lái-de, háishi-zuò-chuán-lái-de? Did you come by plane or by boat?
- Wáng: Wǒ-zuò-fēijī-lái-de. I came by air.
- Qián: Nǐ-dào-zhèr-lái-xuéxí háishi-gōngzù? Did you come here to study or to work?
- Wáng: Wǒ-shí-lái-xuéxí. I've come to study.
- Qián: Nǐ-Zhōngwén shuōde-hén-hǎo. Nǐ-huì-xiě-Zhōngguó-zì-ma? You speak Chinese very well. Can you write Chinese characters?
- Wáng: Xiě-Zhōngguó-zì hěn-nán. Wǒ-jiù-huì-xiě jiǎndānde-Zhōngguó-zì. Writing Chinese characters is very difficult. I can only write simple Chinese characters.
4. Bái: 'Máo-Lǎoshī, nín-cháng-dào túshūguǎn lái-kàn-shū-ma? Teacher Mao, do you often come to the library to read?

- Máo: Shì. Wǒ-chàbudoō-měitiān dōu-dào-túshūguǎn-lái.  
Yes. I come almost every day (to the library).
- Bái: Nín-xǐhuan-kàn-shénmo-shū?  
What books do you like to read?
- Máo: Wǒ-xǐhuan-kàn wénxuéde-shū.  
I like reading literary works.
- Bái: Nín-jiā-lí-túshūguǎn 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn'?  
Is your home far from the library?
- Máo: Bù-hén-yuǎn. Rúguó-yǒu-shíjiān qǐng-dào-wǒ-jiā-lái-tántan.  
Not very far. If you have time please come to my home for a chat.
- Bái: Hǎo. Wǒ-yǒu-shíjiān yíding-qù-bàifang.  
Fine. (If) I have time (I will) certainly go and call (on you).
5. 'Wáng-Tóngzhì jǐnnián sānshisuì. Tā-shì-gōnggòng-qìchē-shang-de-shòupiàoyuán. Tā-suǐrán-měitiān-gōngzúò, kěshì tā-měitiān-wǎnshang hái-xuéxí. Tā-jiā lí-túshūguǎn-bù-yuǎn. Tā-yě-cháng-dào-túshūguǎn-qù jiè-shū, zài-jiāli-kàn.  
Comrade Wang is thirty years old this year. He is a ticket-seller on a bus. Although he works every day, he still studies every evening. His home is not far from the library. He also often goes to the library to borrow books to read at home.

## Note

1. The honorific expression fúshang 'your home' is no longer popular in the PRC, where it has been superseded by nǐ-jiā. On the other hand the very polite form bàifang 'to visit' is still used, though kàn 'see' is used more often.

## LESSON 12

## Exercises

1. Máo: Nǐ-suǐrán-shì-'wàiguórén, Zhōngwén-shuōde-'hén-hǎo.  
Bái: Wǒ-shuōde-'bù-hǎo.
2. Xǔ: Nǐ-shénmo-shíhou líkai-zhèr?  
Xiè: Wǒ-míngtiān jiù-líkai-zhèr, dào-Rìběn-qù.  
Xǔ: Nǐ-zuò-'jǐdiǎn-zhōng-de-fēijī?  
Xiè: Wǒ-zuò-'sāndiǎn-zhōng-de-fēijī.
3. Qián: Zhèiběn-shū duōshao-qián?  
Máo: Zhèiběn-shū sānkuài-jiǔ-máo-qián.  
Qián: Wǒ-mǎi-yībēn. Nǐmen-yǒu-Zhōngguó-dìtú-ma?  
Máo: Yǒu. Nǐ-yào-'dà-zhāng-de, yào-'xiǎo-zhāng-de?  
Qián: Wǒ-yào-'dà-zhāng-de.  
Máo: Dà-zhāng-de liǎngkuài-èr.
4. Xiè: Cóng-zhèr dào-Zhōngshān-Lù yǒu-diànchē-ma?

- Bái: Gōnggòng-qìchē, diànchē dōu-yǒu. Nǐ-yào-zuò-gōng-gòng-qìchē, hái-shì-yào-zuò-diànchē?
- Xiè: Bù-yídìng. Yéxǔ zuò-gōng-gòng-qìchē, yéxǔ zuò-diànchē.
5. Lán: Zhèiběn-shū mài-duōshao-qián?
- Xǔ: 'Néiběn-shū?
- Lán: Zhèiběn-'Zhōngwén-shū.
- Xǔ: Oh! Nèiběn-Zhōngwén-shū mài-liǎngyuán-wújiǎo.
- Lán: Wǒ-yào-yībēn.
- Xǔ: Nǐn-hái-mǎi-shénmo?
- Lán: Wǒ-hái-mǎi-máobǐ.
- Xǔ: Nǐn-yào-jǐzhǐ-máobǐ?
- Lán: Wó-mái-liǎngzhǐ.
6. Zuótiān wǒ-qù-bàifāng-Lǎo-Zhāng, kànjian-tāde-dà-nán-háizi. Tāde-dà-nán-háizi-rènshi-wǒ. Tā-gào-su-wǒ, tā-fùqīn-bú-zài-jiā.

## LESSON 13

## Exercises

1. Dài: Nǐ-zài-nǎr-xuéxí? Where are you studying?
- Gāo: Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué-xuéxí. Nǐ-ne? I'm studying in middle school. And you?
- Dài: Wó-yě-shàng-zhōngxué. I'm also going to middle school.
2. Máo: Nǐ-shàng-dàxué-'jǐniánjí? What year of college are you in?
- Wáng: Wǒ-shàng-'èrniánjí. Nǐ-ne? I'm in the second year. How about you?
- Máo: Wǒ-shàng-'sānniánjí. I'm in the third year.
3. Bái: Nǐ-xǐhuan-kàn-diànyǐng-ma? Do you like to see movies?
- Gāo: Wó-hén-xǐhuan. I like to very much.
- Bái: Kǎoshì-yǐhòu wǒmen-qu-kàn diànyǐng, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? Let's go see a movie after the exams, O. K.?
- Gāo: Hǎojíle. Fine.
4. Zhāng: Qián-Lǎoshī, wǒmen-jīntian xué-dì-jǐkè? Teacher Qian, what lesson are we studying today?
- Qián: Wǒmen-jīntian yào-xué-dì-sānkè-le. We'll study lesson three today.
5. Bái: Wǒmen-lí-nǐ-jiā hái-yǒu-duō-yuǎn? How much farther is it to your home?
- Gāo: Yǐjīng-kuài-dàole. Hái-yóu-liǎng-sānfēn-zhōng. We'll soon be there, in another two or three minutes.

6. Qián: Dài-Tóngzhì zhēn-cōng-ming Tā-shíbāsui dàxué-jiù-bìyè-le.  
Comrade Dai is very bright. He graduated from college at eighteen.
- Máo: Tā-fùqin yě-shi-shíbā-jiǔ-sui dàxué-bìyè-de.  
His father also graduated from college at eighteen or nineteen.
7. Dài: Xiè-Lǎoshī, háo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn. Nǐn-dào-nǎr-qu?  
Teacher Xie, haven't seen you for a long time. Where are you going?
- Xiè: Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu-jiè-shū. Nǐ-xiànzài zài-nǎr-xuéxí?  
I'm going to the library to borrow (some) books. Where are you studying now?
- Dài: Wǒ-bìyèle. Wǒ-xiànzài-gōngzuò.  
I've graduated. I'm working now.
8. Wáng: Máo-Tóngzhì, nǐ-dào-nǎr-qù?  
Comrade Mao, where are you going?
- Máo: Wǒ-dào-shūdiàn-qù mǎi-qiānbǐ, gāngbǐ, zhǐ. Nǐ-dào-'nǎr-qù?  
I'm going to the bookstore to buy (some) pencils, pens, and paper. Where are you going?
- Wáng: Wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qù-jiè-shū, jièle-shū jiù-huí-jiā.  
I'm going to the library to borrow (some) books, (and) after borrowing the books I'll return home.
- Máo: Kǎoshìle-yǐhòu yǒu-shíjiān dào-wǒ-jiā-lái-tántan.  
After exams if you have time come to my home for a chat.
- Wáng: Hǎo. Zàijiàn.  
Fine. Good-bye.
9. Xiè: Lán-Tóngzhì, nǐ-xiànzài-zài-'nǎr-xuéxí?  
Comrade Lan, where are you studying now?
- Lán: Wǒ-zài-Zhōngshān-Dàxué-xuéxí. Nǐ-xiànzài-gōngzuò-ne, háishi-xuéxí-ne?  
I'm studying at Sun Yatsen University. Are you working or studying now?
- Xiè: Wǒ-xiànzài-bù-xuéxí-le. Wǒ-xiànzài-shì-yíge-shòupìàoyuán.  
I'm not studying any longer now. I'm a ticket-seller now.
10. Máo: Bì-Lǎoshī, xīngqī-wú-wǎnshàng wó-qǐng-nǐn-chī-fàn, yǒu-shíjiān-ma?  
Teacher Bi, Friday evening I (would like to) invite you to dinner. Do you have time?
- Bì: Nǐ-tài-kèqi. Tài-máfan-le.  
You're too kind. It's too much trouble.
- Máo: Bù-máfan. Hén-jiǎndān.  
No trouble. It will be very simple.
11. Wáng: Yán-Tóngzhì, Zhāng-Tóngzhì-láile-yǐhòu wǒ-men-dào-túshūguǎn-qù xuéxí-jǐntian-de-kè, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  
Comrade Yan, after Comrade Zhang comes let's go to the library to study today's lesson, O.K.?



Yán: Yīnwei-Zhāng-Tóngzhì-  
shuō tā-lái-de-hén-wǎn,  
wǒmen-bù-néng-zài-  
xuéxí-le.

Because Comrade Zhang says he will  
be very late in coming, we won't be  
able to study anymore.

## LESSON 14

## New Vocabulary

gǎn           to feel (emotion) (V) (See Note 1)  
gǎn-xìngqu   be interested (in) (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- | gǎn  | feel   |
|--|--|
| gǎn-xìngqu   | be interested (in)   |
| 1. Tā-duì-wénxué hén-gǎn-xìngqu.   | He is very much interested in literature.  |
| 2. Wáng: Nǐ-duì-huà-huàr gǎn-xìngqu-ma?  | Are you interested in painting?  |
| Zhāng: Wǒ-duì-huà-huàr bù-gǎn-xìngqu.  | I'm not interested in painting.  |
| 3. Gāo: Wǒ-duì-yǔyánxué hén-gǎn-xìngqu. Nǐ-ne?   | I'm greatly interested in linguistics. What about you?   |
| Xiè: Wó-yé-hén-xǐhuan yǔyánxué. Yánjiū-yǔyánxué hén-yǒu-yìsi.  | I also like linguistics. Studying (lit. researching) linguistics is very interesting.                                      |
| 4. Máo: Lǎo-Wàn, tīngshuō nǐ-duì-yǔyánxué hén-yǒu-yánjiū.  | (Old) Wan, I hear you've done a lot of research in linguistics.  |
| Wàn: Méi-yǒu. Wǒ-yuánlái shì-xué-kēxué-de. Yīnwei wǒ-duì-yǔyánxué gǎn-xìngqu, suǒyǐ yǐhòu xuéxí-yǔyánxué-le. | No, I haven't. I originally studied science. Because I became interested in linguistics, afterwards I studied linguistics. |
| 5. Xiè: Dài-Tóngzhì, nǐ-'rènshì-bu-rènshì Gāo-Sīcōng?  | Comrade Dai, are you acquainted with Gao Sicong?   |
| Dài: Wǒ-rènshì-ta. Tā-shì-wǒde-péngyou.  | I know him. He's my friend.  |
| Xiè: Hǎojīe. Nǐ-yǒu-shíjiān géi-wǒ-'jièshào-'jièshào 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  | Wonderful. (When) you have time introduce (him) to me, O.K.?   |

- Dài: Wǒ-míngtiān-zǎochén-jiǔ-diǎn-zhōng yǒu-shíjiān. I have time tomorrow morning at 9:00.
- Xiè: Míngtiān-zǎochén-jiǔdiǎn-zhōng wǒmen-qu-bàifāng-ta kényǐ-ma? Can we go call on him tomorrow morning at 9:00?
- Dài: Kéyǐ. (We) can.
6. Máo: Zhèiběn-shū shì-shéide? Whose book is this?
- Bái: Shì-Bì-Tóngzhǐ-de. It's Comrade Bi's.
- Máo: Máfān nǐ, qǐng-nǐ-gàosu Bì-Tóngzhǐ tāde-shū-zài-zhèr. Could I trouble you to inform Comrade Bi that his book is here.
7. Xiè: Nǐ-shì-shénmo-shíhòu líkai-Měiguó-de? When did you leave the United States?
- Máo: Wǒ-shì-jiǔyuè-báohào líkai-de. I left on September ninth.
- Xiè: Nǐ-shì-zuò-'fēijī-lái-de, shì-zuò-'chuán-lái-de? Did you come by plane or by boat?
- Máo: Wǒ-shì-zuò-'chuán-lái-de. I came by boat.
- Xiè: Zuò-chuán bú-shì-hěn-màn-ma? Isn't traveling by boat very slow?
- Máo: Zuò-chuán-suǐrán-hěn-màn, kěshì-shífēn-yǒu-yìsi. Although traveling by boat is quite slow, it's very interesting.
- Xiè: Nǐ-dào-zhèr-lái xuéxí-shénmo? What did you come here to study?
- Máo: Wǒ-lái-xuéxí Zhōngguó-yǔyán. I've come to study Chinese language and literature.
- Xiè: Jīntiān-wǎnshàng-liùdiǎn-zhōng wó-qǐng-nǐ-chī-fàn 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? This evening at 6:00 I'd like to ask you to dinner. Can you manage it?
- Máo: Xièxie, nǐ-tài-kèqi. Thank you, you're too kind.
8. Lǎoshī: Zhèiběn-shū yǐjīng-xuéxí-shíwǔ-kè-le. We've already studied fifteen lessons in this book.
- Xuésheng: Zhèige-xīngqī shì-bu-shì-yào-kǎoshì? Will we have an exam this week?
- Lǎoshī: Bù. Xià-xīngqī wǒmen-kǎoshì. No. We'll have an exam next week.
9. Wǒ-shì-yíge dàxué-sìniánjí-de-xuésheng. Yīnwei wǒ-míngnián jiù-yào-bìyè-le, suǒyǐ wǒ-xiànzài-hěn-máng. I'm a senior in college. Because I'll be graduating next year, I'm very busy now.

## Note

1. In Common Speech both duì . . . gǎn-xìngqū and duì . . . yǒu-xìngqū are used for 'to be interested in . . .' The former is somewhat closer to the written style.

## LESSON 15

## New Vocabulary

xiǎoshí	hour (N/M) [lit. little time] (See Note 1)
bìxū	must, have to (AV) [lit. must must] (See Note 2)
Jiùjīnshān	San Francisco (PW) [lit. old gold mountain] (Jīn is also a surname) (See Note 3)

## Exercises

xiǎoshí	hour
liǎngge-xiǎoshí	two hours
1. Wó-měitiān xué-liǎngge-xiǎoshíde-Zhōngwén.	I study Chinese two hours every day.
bìxū	must
bìxū-kànwán	must finish reading
2. Wǒ-jīntiān bìxū-kànwán-zhèiběnshū.	I must finish reading this book today.
jiāo-kè	teach (classes)
jiāo-yíge-xiǎoshí-de-kè	teach one hour (of classes)
3. Wǒ-xiànzài yào-jiāo-yíge-xiǎoshí-de-kè.	I will teach for one hour now.
jiāo-sìge-xiǎoshí-kè	teach for four hours
jiāole-sìge-xiǎoshí-kè	taught for four hours
4. Wǒ-zuótiān jiāole-sìge-xiǎoshí-kè.	I taught for four hours yesterday.
5. Xiè: Wǒ-míngtiān děi-jiāo-sìge-xiǎoshí-de-kè. Nǐ-ne?	I have to teach four hours tomorrow. How about you?
Bái: Wó-yě-bìxū-jiāo-sìge-xiǎoshí.	I also have to teach four hours.
6. Máo: Nǐ-dào-Jiùjīnshān shi-zuò-fēijī háishi-zuò-chuán-qù-de?	When you went to San Francisco did you go by plane or by boat?
Wáng: Wǒ-shi-zuò-fēijī-qù-de.	I went by plane.

7. Gāo: Nǐ-xià-kè-yǐhòu zuò-shénmo?  
 Bái: Xià-kè-yǐhòu wǒ-jiù-tīng-lùyīn.  
 Gāo: Tīng-duōshao-shíjiān-lùyīn?  
 Bái: Wó-měitiān tīng-yī-liǎngge-xiǎoshí.  
 8. Gāo: Bái-Xiānsheng, nǐ-xuéle jǐniánde-Zhōngwén-le?  
 Bái: Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué jiù-kāishǐ-xué-Zhōngwén. Gāozhōng-'èrniánjí wǒ-jiù-xué-Zhōngwén-le.  
 Gāo: Nǐ-Zhōngwén xuéde-zhēn-bú-shǎo-le.  
 Bái: Wǒ-xué-Zhōngwén chàbuduō yǐjīng-yóu-'wǔnián-le.  
 9. Xiè: Nǐ-zài-nǎr-gōngzù?  
 Bái: Wǒ-zài-Zhōngshān-Dàxué-gōngzù, jiāo-Zhōngguo-xuésheng-Yīngwén.  
 10. Wáng: Jiùjīnshān-lí-Niǔyue 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?  
 Qián: 'Hén-yuǎn. Cóng-Niǔyue-dào-Jiùjīnshān zuò-fēijī yào-wǔge-xiǎoshí.  
 Wáng: Cóng-Jiùjīnshān-dào-Rìběn yě-yào-wǔge-xiǎoshí, shì-bu-shí?  
 Qián: Bù. Yào-bā-jiǔge-xiǎoshí.  
 11. Gāo: Nǐmen-měitiān shàng-jǐge-xiǎoshíde-kè?  
 Bái: Wǒmen-měitiān shàng-wǔge-xiǎoshíde-kè.  
 Gāo: Xīngqìliù yě-shàng-kè-ma?  
 Bái: Xīngqìliù méi-yǒu-kè.  
 12. Xiè: Nǐ-dào-Jiùjīnshān-yǐhòu zài-dào-nǎr-qù?
- What do you do after class?  
 After class I listen to tape recordings.  
 How long do you listen (to tape recordings)?  
 I listen one or two hours every day.  
 Mr. White, how many years have you been studying Chinese?  
 I began studying Chinese in high school. I began to study Chinese in the second year of senior high school.  
 You've really studied a lot of Chinese.  
 I've already been studying Chinese for almost five years.  
 Where do you work?  
 I work at Sun Yatsen University. I teach English to Chinese students.  
 Is San Francisco far from New York?  
 Quite far. It takes five hours by plane from New York to San Francisco.  
 It's also five hours from San Francisco to Japan, isn't that so?  
 No. It takes eight or nine hours.  
 How many hours of class do you have every day?  
 We attend classes five hours every day.  
 Do you also attend classes on Saturday?  
 We don't have classes on Saturday.  
 After going to San Francisco where else are you going?

- Bái: Wǒ-zài-dào-Niúyue-qù. I'll also go to New York.
13. Dài: Nǐ-jia lí-zhèr-yuǎn-ma? Is your home far from here?  
 Yán: Bù-yuǎn. Zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē bànge-xiǎoshí jiù-kéyi-dào-le. Not far. You can get there in half an hour by bus.
- Dài: Zǒu-lù-ne? And on foot?  
 Yán: Zǒu-lù yào-liǎng-sānge-xiǎoshí. If you walk it will take two or three hours.
14. Xiè: Tīngshuō Jiùjīnshān Zhōngguo-rén-hěn-duō. Shi-zhēnde-ma? I hear there are a lot of Chinese in San Francisco. Is that true?  
 Bái: Jiùjīnshān Zhōngguo-rén zhēn-bù-shǎo. There really are a lot of Chinese in San Francisco.  
 Xiè: Shi-Jiùjīnshānde-Zhōngguo-rén-duō hái-shi-Niúyuede-Zhōngguo-rén-duō? Are there more Chinese in San Francisco or in New York?  
 Bái: Háishi-Niúyuede-Zhōngguo-rén-duō. There are more Chinese in New York.
15. Dài: Nǐ-jīntian tīng-lùyīn-le-méi-yǒu? Have you listened to tape recordings today?  
 Bái: Tīngle-yíge-duō-xiǎoshí. I've listened for over an hour.  
 Dài: Nǐ-hái-xiǎng-tīng-ma? Do you plan to listen some more?  
 Bái: Wǒ-hái-xiǎng-tīng bànge-xiǎoshí. I plan to listen for another half hour.
16. Bái: Nǐ-měitiān jiāo-jǐge-xiǎoshíde-kè? How many hours do you teach each day?  
 Bì: Xīngqiyī, sān, wǔ jiāo-sānge-xiǎoshí. Xīngqièr, sì jiāo-liǎngge-xiǎoshí. On Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays I teach three hours. On Tuesdays and Thursdays I teach two hours.  
 Bái: Xīngqiliù yǒu-méi-yǒu-kè? Do you have classes on Saturday?  
 Bì: Xīngqiliù méi-yǒu-kè. I don't have classes on Saturday.
17. Zhāng: Nèige-Yīngguo-rén huì-shuō-Zhōngwén-ma? Can that Englishman speak Chinese?  
 Wáng: Huì-shuō. Tā-yǐjīng-xuéxí-le sānnián-le. Yes. He's already studied it for three years.  
 Zhāng: Tā-zài-'nǎr-xuéxí-de? Where did he study?  
 Wáng: Tā-zài-'Yīngguo-xuéxí-de. He studied in England.
18. Gāo: Zuótiān Jīn-Xiānsheng māile-yīzhāng-huà. Yesterday Mr. Gold bought a painting.

- Xiè: Tīngshuō nèizhāng-huàr hěn-guǐ. I hear that painting was very expensive.
- Gāo: Shì. Tīngshuō wúbǎikuài-qian. Yes. I hear it was \$500.
19. Bì: Nǐ-jiānglái zhōngxué-bìyè-yǐhòu xuéxí-shénmo? In the future after graduating from middle school what will you study?
- Dài: Wǒ-duì-huà-huàr hén-gǎn-xīngqū. Wó-xiǎng-xué-huà-huàr. Nǐ-ne? I'm very much interested in painting. I think I'll study painting. How about you?
- Bì: Wǒ-duì-yǔyánxué hén-gǎn-xīngqū. Yéxú yánjiū-yǔyánxué. I'm very much interested in linguistics. Perhaps I'll study (lit. research) linguistics.
20. Jīn: Lǎo-Xiè, nǐ-kànjian-Wàn-Tóngzhī-le-ma? (Old) Xie, have you seen Comrade Wan?
- Xiè: Wó-háo-jiǔ-méi-kànjian-ta. Tīngshuō tā-xiànzài-bù-xuéxí-le, yǐjīng-gōngzuò-le. I haven't seen him for a long time. I hear he's not studying anymore, he's already working.
- Jīn: Tā-yīnggāi zài-túshūguǎn-gōngzuò. He should work in a library.
- Xiè: Tā-gōngzuò 'shì-zài-túshūguǎn. His work is in a library.
21. Zuótiān-wǒ-dào-shūdiàn-qu géiwó-liǎngge-háizi-mǎi-shū. Zàilùshang yùjian-Yán-Xiānsheng. Tā-shuō tā-xià-xīngqī bīxū-dào-Jìhǎnjīnshān-qu, yīnwei tā-mǔqīnbīng. Jīntiān-wǎnshang yīngdāng-dào-xuéxiào-qu, kěshì-tā-méi-shíjiān, suóyǐ tā-bù-néng-qù-le. Today I went to the bookstore to buy some books for my two children. On the street I met Mr. Yan. He said next week he has to go to San Francisco, as his mother is sick. This evening (he) should go to school, but he doesn't have time, so he can't go.

## Notes

1. In Common Speech xiǎoshí 'hour' appears to be gaining ascendancy over zhōngtóu. It appears to be increasingly used as a noun, i. e., with a measure, but it also occurs without: yí(ge) xiǎoshí 'one hour.'
2. In Common Speech bīxū 'must' is used more often than bīděi. However, the single syllable děi 'must' is still widely used.
3. In the PRC Jìhǎnjīnshān is preferred over Sānfánshì for 'San Francisco.' The latter is considered typical of overseas and Kuomintang usage.
4. In expressions of teaching for certain lengths of time, the form jiāo . . . kè appears to be somewhat more frequently used than jiāo . . . shū in the PRC:

Wǒ-jīntiān-jiāole wǔge-xiǎoshí (de)-kè. 'I taught for five hours today.'

## LESSON 16

## New Vocabulary

àirén husband, wife, fiancé, fiancée; lover (N) [lit. loved person] (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- |          |                      |
|----------|----------------------|
| àirén    | husband (or wife)    |
| wǒ-àirén | my husband (or wife) |
1. Wǒ-àirén shì Sūzhōu-rén. My husband (or wife) is from Soochow.
  2. Lián: Wàn-Lǎoshī, nín jiā zài zhèitiáo-lù-de dōngbiān háishi-xībiān? Teacher Wan, is your home on the east or west side of this road?

Wán: Zài dōngbiān. On the east side.

Lián: Wǒ-jīntiān xiàwǔ dào nín jiā-qu bàifāng-nín. I'd like to go to your home this afternoon to call on you.

Wán: Nǐ-tài-kèqi. You're too kind.

Lián: Yīnggāi-de. I should.

Wàn: Zuì-hǎo nǐ-míngtiān-qu, yīnwei jīntiān wǒ-àirén-bú-zài-jīā. It would be best if you went tomorrow, as my wife (or husband) is not at home today.
  3. Gāo: Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi 'jièshào-jìeshào. Zhèiwèi shì-'Wàn-Jiàoshou. Zhèiwèi shì-'Bái-Xiānsheng. Let me introduce the two of you. This is Professor Wan. This is Mr. White.

Bái: Ní-hǎo. Pleased to meet you.

Wàn: Ní-hǎo. How do you do.
  4. Xuésheng: Nín-kàn-wó-xiěde-zì 'duì-bu-duì? Would you look to see if the characters I've written are right or not.

Lǎoshī: Nǐ-zhēn-cōngmíng. You're very smart. You've written them with no mistakes at all.

Xuésheng: Zhèige-xīngqī kényǐ-xuéxí dào-dì-èrshí-kè-ma? Will be we able to study up to the twentieth lesson this week?

Lǎoshī: Xuéxí-bu-dào dì-èrshí-kè. Yéxǔ kényǐ-xuéxí dào-dì-shíjiǔ-kè. We won't be able to study up to the twentieth lesson. Perhaps we'll be able to study up to the nineteenth lesson.

5. Zuótiān-wǒ-jìn-chéng. Dàole-chéng-lǐtōu-yǐhòu, wǒ-jiù-dào-Qián-Tóngzhì-jiā-qù-le. Tā-jiā-zhèige-dìfang hén-hǎo, yòu-yǒu-shān yòu-yóu-shuǐ. Wǒ-jìn-chéng-yǐhòu Qián-Tóngzhì gēn-wǒ-tán-de-hén-yǒu-yìsi, chàbuduō dào-liùdiǎn-zhōng-le. Tā-shuō qǐng-wǒ-zài-tā-jiāli chī-wǎnfàn. Wǒ-shuō tài-máfan. Tā-shuō hén-jiǎndān-bú-kèqi.
- Yesterday I went into the city. After I arrived in the city, I went to Comrade Qian's home. This area around his home is very nice, there are hills and water. After I entered the city Comrade Qian and I had a very interesting talk until almost six o'clock. He said he wanted to invite me to have dinner at his home. I said it was too much trouble. He said (dinner) was very simple and not to be polite.
6. Wǒ-jiānglái yào-dào-dàxué yánjiu-yǔyán. Wǒ-yīngdāng-mǎi yíge-lùyīnjī, yīnwei-xué-yǔyán bìxū-yǒu yíge-lùyīnjī. Wǒde-péngyou Lián-Dàwén tā-yǒu-liǎngge-lùyīnjī. Tā-shuō wǒ-bù-yòng-mǎi, kényǐ-gēn-tā-jiè-yíge.
- In the future I want to go to the university to study languages. I should buy a tape recorder, for in studying languages one should have a recorder. My friend Lian Dawen (he) has two tape recorders. He says I don't need to buy any, I can borrow one of his (lit. with him borrow one).
7. Māma, mèimei-gēn-wǒ cóng-Niūyue dào-Rìběn-qù-lǚxíng. Wǒmen cóng-Niūyue dào-Jiùjīn-shān shì-zuò-fēijī. Cóng-Jiùjīn-shān dào-Rìběn shì-zuò-chuán. Zài-chuán-shang yǒu-hěn-duō-shíjiān-xuéxí.
- Mama, younger sister, and I took a trip from New York to Japan. We went by plane from New York to San Francisco and by boat from San Francisco to Japan. On the boat there was a lot of time to study.
8. Shàng-xīngqī wǒmen-kǎoshìle-yǐhòu, wǒ-gēn-Biān-Tóngzhì, Lián-Tóngzhì wǒmen-sānge-rén yào-dào-gōngyuán-qù. Gōngyuán lí-zhèr-hén-yuǎn, bìxū-kāi-chē-qù. Nèitiān shì-Biān-Tóngzhì-kāi-chē. Yīnwei wǒ-gēn-Lián-Tóngzhì wǒmen-liǎngge-rén dōu-bù-huì-kāi-chē, suǒyǐ Biān-Tóngzhì-yíge-rén kāile-sāngge-xiǎoshí-chē, cái-dào-gōngyuán. Nèige-gōngyuán-de-shānshuǐ piàoliang-jíle. Wǒmen-zài-gōngyuán-lǐtōu chàbuduō-yǒu-sìge-xiǎoshí, cái-líkai-gōngyuán.
- Last week after exams I and Comrade Bian and Comrade Lian (we three people) wanted to go to the park. The park was very far from here and it was necessary to go by car. On that day it was Comrade Bian who drove. Because neither I nor Comrade Lian knew how to drive, Comrade Bian drove for three hours all by himself and only then did we reach the park. The scenery in that park was very beautiful. We were in the park for almost four hours, and only then left the park.

## Notes

1. In the PRC the expression nèiren is no longer used in referring to one's own wife. It has been partially replaced, especially among urban intellectuals, by àirén. This, as mentioned in Supplementary Lesson 1, Note 1, is used in referring to both husband and wife (or fiancé and fiancée), but it should be used by non-Chinese only with the greatest caution.



2. In the PRC the honorific expression Jiúyǎng 'Pleased to meet you' is no longer used. When people are introduced to each other they often simply acknowledge the introduction with Ní-hǎo or Nín-hǎo. A more elaborate acknowledgment of an introduction is Hěn-gāoxìng-rènshi-nín-le 'Very happy to have made your acquaintance.' (See Supplementary Lesson 20, Exercise 4.)

## LESSON 17

## Exercises

1. Lán: Nǐde-lùyīnjī gēn-wǒde-yíyàng-ma? Is your tape recorder the same as mine?  
 Yán: Bù-yíyàng. Wǒde méi-yǒu-nǐde-nènmo-hǎo. (It's)not the same. Mine isn't as good as yours.
2. Bái: Zhèige-dìfang gēn-Háng-zhou-yíyàng-hǎo-ma? Is this place as nice as Hangchow?  
 Gāo: Méi-yǒu-Hángzhou-nènmo-piàoliang. It's not as beautiful as Hangchow.
3. Xiè: Bái-Xiānsheng xuéde-zěnmoyàng? How is Mr. White as a student?  
 Gāo: Tā-hěn-yònggōng. Tā-gēn-Zhōngguo-xuésheng yíyàng-yònggōng. He's very hard-working. He's as studious as Chinese students.  
 Xiè: Tā-xué-wénxué xué-de-hǎo-bu-hǎo? How does he do in literature?  
 Gāo: Tā-xué-wénxué xué-de-gēn-Zhōngguo-xuésheng-yíyàng-hǎo. He's as good as Chinese students (in studying literature).
4. Xuésheng: Zhèige-zì hěn-nán-xiě. This character is hard to write.  
 Lǎoshī: Zhèige-zì nǐ-rènshi-ma? Do you recognize this character?  
 Xuésheng: Wǒ-rènshi. I know it.  
 Lǎoshī: Shì-shénmo? What is it?  
 Xuésheng: Shì-jiēhūn-de hūn. It's the hūn of jiēhūn.  
 Lǎoshī: Bú-cuò. Right.
5. Māma-gàosu-wǒ, wǒ-shi-zài-Jiùjīnshān-zhǎng-dà-de, kěshi-shēng-zài-Zhōngguo. Wǒ-shēng-zài-Sūzhou. Zuótiān Lán-Xiānsheng-lái-shuō tā-hěn-xīwang dào-Zhōngguo-lǎo-jiā-qù-kàn. Mama told me I grew up in San Francisco but was born in China. I was born in Soochow. Yesterday Mr. Lan came to say he hopes very much to go on a visit to (lit. see) his old home in China. I said I hoped as much as he

- Wǒ-shuō wǒ-gēn-tā-yíyàng-xīwang dào-Zhōngguo-qù. did to go to China.
6. Zuótiān wǒ-qù-bàifāng Zhāng-Lǎoshī, tā-bú-zài-jiā, suǒyǐ wǒ-méi-jìnqu. Yesterday I went to call on Teacher Zhang, (but) he wasn't at home, so I didn't go in.
7. Zuótiān Dài-Tóngzhì géi-wǒ-jièshào-le yíwèi-wàiguó-péngyou. Wǒ-tīng nèiwèi-wàiguó-péngyou-shuō-de-Zhōngwén gēn-Zhōngguo-rén-shuō-de-yíyàng-hǎo. Yesterday Comrade Dai introduced me to a foreign friend. (I heard that) the Chinese that that foreign friend spoke is as good as that spoken by a Chinese.
8. Xīngqītiān wǒ-gēn-wǒ-àirén cóng-Sūzhou zuò-huǒchē dào-Hángzhou-qù-lǚxíng, yùjianle-Lián-Tóngzhì yě-gēn-tā-àirén lái-lǚxíng. Wǒ-men-sìge-rén-zài-yíkwàr yìbiān-tántan yìbiān-kàn-shānshuǐ, hényōu-yìsi. Wǒ-àirén gēn-Lián-Tóngzhì-de-àirén liǎngge-rén duì-huà-huàr hén-gǎn-xìngqu. Wǒ-àirén gēn Lián-Tóngzhì-àirén-shuō, huí-jiā-yǐhòu bǎ-Hángzhoude-shānshuǐ huàchulai. Sunday my wife and I took a trip by train to Hangchow and met Comrade Lian who was coming on the trip with his wife. The four of us on the one hand (lit. side) chatted and on the other gazed at the scenery. It was very interesting. My wife and Comrade Lian's wife are both very much interested in painting. My wife and Comrade Lian's wife said that on returning home they would do some paintings of the Hangchow scenery.

## Notes

1. The game of huá-quán 'guess-fingers' is said by some strait-laced PRC informants to be out of favor, but others report that it is still being played in the PRC, even in public places.
2. Some PRC informants have expressed a preference, in Pattern Drills 17.1, 17.2, and 17.4, for the use of gēn rather than xiàng in combination with yíyàng. E.g.,

Dàxué bù-gēn-zhōngxué-yíyàng. 'College isn't like middle school.'

Diànchē bù-gēn-gōnggòng-qìchē yíyàng-kuài. 'Streetcars aren't as fast as buses.'

Tā-kǎoshǐ kǎo-de-gēn-wǒ-yíyàng-máng. 'He's as busy with exams as I am.'

However, xiàng . . . zhèiyàng and xiàng . . . nèiyàng are still preferred.

## LESSON 18

## Exercises

1. Qián: Wǒ-bú-zài-Niǔyue-xuéxí.  
Xǔ: Nǐ-bú-zài-Niǔyue-xuéxí zài-'nǎr-xuéxí?  
Qián: Wǒ-zài-Jiùjīnshān-xuéxí.
2. Lán: Nǐ-zuótiān xuéxíle-jǐge-xiǎoshí?  
Bái: Wǒ-zuótiān xuéxíle-wǔge-xiǎoshí.

- Lán: Zhāng-Lǎoshī-shuō wǒmen-měitiān-yīngdāng-xuéxí bāge-xiǎoshí.
3. Yán: Wǒ-duì-kēxué bù-gǎn-xìngqu.
- Wàn: Nǐ-duì-kēxué bù-gǎn-xìngqu duì-shénmo-gǎn-xìngqu?
- Yán: Wǒ-duì-yǔyánxué gǎn-xìngqu.
4. Bái: Wáng-Dàwén zài-dàxué xuéxíguo-ma?
- Zhāng: Tā-xuéxíguo, kěshi méi-bìyè.
5. Xiè: Qǐng-wèn, zhèiběn-shū mài-jǐkuài-qián?
- Dài: Mài-liǎngyuán-wújiǎo. Nín-yào-mǎi-yībēn-ma?
- Xiè: Wó-mǎi-yībēn.
- Dài: Nín-zài-dàxué xuéxí-shénmo?
- Xiè: Wǒ-bù-xuéxí.
- Dài: Nǐ-bù-xuéxí zuò-shénmo?
- Xiè: Wǒ-gōngzuò.
6. Bái: Qǐng-wèn, jīntian jǐhào?
- Yán: Jīntian èryue-qīhào.
- Bái: Oh! Wǒ-chà-yìdiǎr-wàngle. Jīntiān-wǎnshang bǐxū-qù-bàifang-Wàn-Lǎoshī.
- Yán: Tā-jiā-zài-nǎr?
- Bái: Tā-jiā zài-Zhōngshān-Lù-bēibiar.
- Yán: Nǐ-zuò-shénmo-chē-qù?
- Bái: Wó-xiǎng-zuò-diànchē.
- Yán: Nǐ-yīnggāi-zuò gōnggòng-qìchē. Diànchē-zǒude-màn.
- Bài: Wó-yéxǔ-zuò-gōnggòng-qìchē.
- Yán: Wǒ-jiā lí-Wàn-Lǎoshī-jiā bù-yuǎn, yě-zài-Zhōngshān-Lù. Nǐ-kéyǐ-dào-wǒ-jiā-qu zuò-yǐhuǐr.
- Bái: Wó-yǒu-shíjiān yíding-dào-nǐ-jiā-qu.
7. Wǒ-gēn-wǒ-àirén jiēhūn-yinián. Wǒmen-shēngle-yíge-nǚ-háizi. Zhèige-nǚ-háizi zhǎng-de-gen-wǒ-àirén-yíyàng. Xīwang-jiānglái zhèige-nǚ-háizi zhǎng-dà-yǐhòu yònggōng-xuéxí.

## LESSON 19

## New Vocabulary

nálǐ, náli where?, You flatter me [lit. what inside] (See Note 1)

## Exercises

nálǐ

where?

nálǐ, náli

You flatter me

1. "Nálǐ, náli" jiu-shi-kèqi-huà.

"You flatter me" is a polite expression.

2. Wàn: Nǐ-zuò-de-cài bǐ-fànguǎnde-cài-dōu-hǎo.

Your dishes are better than any restaurant's.

Gāo: Nálǐ, náli.

You flatter me.

Wàn: Shi-zhēnde!

It's the truth!

3. Dài: Tīngshuō zài-Zhōngguó  
Guòjiǎng-zhèige-kèqi-huà  
xiànzài-bú-yòng-le.  
Yán: Duì-le.  
Dài: Bù-shuō-Guòjiǎng xiànzài-  
shuō-shénmo?  
Yán: Xiànzài-shuō-náilǐ.
- I hear that in China the polite expres-  
sion Guòjiǎng is no longer used now.  
That's right.  
(If one) doesn't say Guòjiǎng what does  
one say now?  
One says náilǐ.
4. Xiè: Bái-Wénshān, nǐ-zài  
Měiguó xuéxíle-jǐnián?  
Bái: Wǒ-zài-Měiguó-dàxué  
xuéxíle-wǔnián. Wǒ-shi-  
yìbiān-gōngzuò yìbiān-  
xuéxí.
- Vincent White, how many years did  
you study in America?  
(When) I was at the university in  
America, I studied for five years. I  
worked while I studied.
5. Wàn: Nín-shi-Qián-Jiàoshòu-ma?  
Qián: Shi, wǒ-xìng-Qián. Nín-  
guìxìng?  
Wán: Wǒ-xìng-Wàn. Yán-Tóngzhǐ  
jièshào-wǒ-lái-kàn-nín.  
Qián: Oh! Nín-shi-Wàn-Tóngzhǐ.  
Wǒ-gēn-Yán-Tóngzhǐ shi-  
lǎo-péngyou. Qǐng-jìnlái-  
zuò. Suǒbiàn-zuò.  
Wàn: Xièxie-nín. Wǒ-jīntian  
jiùshi-lái-bàifang-nín gēn-  
nín-tántan.
- Are you Professor Qian?  
Yes, my name is Qian. And your name  
is . . . ?  
My name is Wan. Comrade Yan sug-  
gested that I (lit. introduced me to)  
see you.  
Oh! You're Comrade Wan. I and Com-  
rade Yan are old friends. Please  
come in (and) sit down. Sit down as  
you please.  
Thank you. Today I've just come to  
call on you and have a chat with you.
6. Yán: Ní-xiěde-zì zhēn-hǎo.  
Xiè: Náilǐ, náilǐ.  
Yán: Nǐ-xué-xiě-zì xuéle-jǐnián?  
Xiè: Wǒ-xuéle-yìnián.  
Yán: Ní-xiǎode-bu-xiǎode zhèr-  
yǒu-rén néng-jiāo-xiě-zì-  
ma?  
Xiè: Wǒ-bù-xiǎode. Nǐ-yào-  
xuéxí xiě-zì-ma?  
Yán: Shì, wǒ-yào-xuéxí yòng-  
máo-bǐ-xiě-zì.
- The characters you've written are  
really nice.  
You flatter me.  
How many years did you study writing  
characters?  
I studied for one year.  
Do you know whether there is anyone  
here who can teach writing charac-  
ters?  
I don't know. Do you want to study  
writing characters?  
Yes, I want to learn to write charac-  
ters with a brush.
7. Wǒ-māma shi-Sūzhou-rén, kěshi  
bú-huì-shuō-Sūzhou-huà, yīnwei  
liǎngsuǐ-de-shíhou jiù-líkǎile-
- My mother is a native of Soochow but  
can't speak the Soochow dialect, be-  
cause at two years of age (she) left

Sūzhou, zài-Guǎngdong-zhǎng-dà-de, suóyǐ jiù-huì-shuō-Guǎngdong-huà.

Soochow and grew up in Canton, so (she) can only speak Cantonese.

8. Wǒ-fùqīn shì-yíge-gōnggòng-qìchē-shàng-de shòupiàoyuán. Wǒ-jiāli yíqòng-yǒu-sìge-rén, fùqīn, mǔqīn, wǒ, hái-yǒu-yíge-dìdi. Jīntian yīnwei-wǒ-bīngē, suóyǐ shǎo-xuéxí-yìdiǎr. Huíjiā gēn-dìdi dào-shūdiàn-qu mǎi-gāngbǐ, qiānbǐ, zhǐ, běnzi. Jīnle-shūdiàn, kànjian-Lián-Lǎoshī yě-zài-nèr mǎi-shū. Tā-wèn-wǒ hǎo-yìdiǎr-ma? Wǒ-shuō-hǎole-yìdiǎr, míngtian kényǐ-shàng-kè-xuéxí. Lián-Lǎoshī-shuō wǒ-shì-ge-hǎo-xuésheng. Wǒ-shuō: “Nálǐ, nálǐ.”

My father is a ticket-collector on a bus. There are altogether four people in my family—father, mother, I, and also a younger brother. Today because I wasn't feeling well, I left school a little early (lit. studied a little less). After returning home, together with younger brother I went to the bookstore to buy some pens, pencils, paper, and notebooks. On entering the bookstore, I saw Teacher Lian who was also buying books there. He asked me whether I was a bit better. I said I felt a little better and could go to class and study tomorrow. Teacher Lian said I was a good student. I said: “You flatter me.”

9. Wǒ-zhèicì cóng-Měiguó-huīlái-yǐhòu, Lián-Guóshū qīng-wǒ zài-yíge-fànguǎn chī-fàn. Tā-yàole yíge-hóng-shāo-jī, yíge-hóng-shāo-yú, yíge-zhǔ-ròu-báicài-tāng. Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén chī-de-hén-bǎo. Nèige-fànguǎn-de cài zhēn-bú-cuò. Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén yìbiār-chī yìbiār-tán. Lián-Guóshū wèn-wǒ zài-Měiguó néng-bu-néng-chīdào-Zhōngguó-cài. Wǒ-shuō zài-Měiguó chūle-néng-chīdào-Zhōngguó-cài, yě-néng-chīdào-Rìběn-cài. Tā-hái-wèn-wǒ Měiguó-rén 'xǐhuan-bu-xǐhuan chī-Zhōngguó-cài? Wǒ-shuō xiànzài hén-duō-Měiguó-rén xǐhuan-chī-Zhōngguó-cài. Tā-yòu-wèn-wǒ, Měiguó-rén chī-Zhōngguó-cài huì-bu-huì-yòng-kuàizi. Wǒ-gàosu-tā Měiguó-rén xiànzài hén-duō-huì-yòng-kuàizi chī-Zhōngguó-cài. Měiguó-rén yòng-kuàizi-chī-fàn nán-shí-nán, kěshì chī-Zhōngguó-cài bixū-yòng-kuàizi.

After I returned from America this time, Lian Guoshu invited me to eat in a restaurant. He ordered a red-cooked chicken, a red-cooked fish, and a beef and cabbage soup. The two of us ate until we were quite stuffed. The food in that restaurant was really not bad. The two of us ate and talked. Lian Guoshu asked me if it was possible to get to eat Chinese food in America. I said it was possible to eat Chinese food in America, and Japanese food as well. He also asked whether Americans liked to eat Chinese food. I told him nowadays a lot of Americans like to eat Chinese food. He also asked me whether Americans can eat Chinese food with chopsticks. I told him that many Americans can eat Chinese food with chopsticks now. Although it is true that for Americans to eat Chinese food with chopsticks is difficult, nevertheless Chinese food should be eaten with chopsticks.

#### Note

1. The expression Gubǐjiǎng ‘You flatter me’ spoken in reply to a compliment has been replaced in Common Speech by nálǐ or náli (often repeated: nálǐ,

náilǐ), Nín-tài-kèqi 'You're too kind (lit. polite),' and other expressions. (The suffix lǐ is a more formal equivalent of the suffix r in zhèlǐ 'here,' nàlǐ 'there,' nǎlǐ 'where?'.)

## LESSON 20

## New Vocabulary

yǔwén language and literature (N) [lit. language literature] (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- | yǔwén   | language and literature  |
|---|--|
| <u>Zhōngguó-Yǔwén</u>   | <u>Chinese Language and Literature</u>                                       |
| 1. Dàxué-túshūguǎn yǒu <u>Zhōngguó-Yǔwén</u> -ma?   | Does the university library have <u>Chinese Language and Literature</u> ?    |
| 2. Bái: Nǐ-yǔwén kǎode-'hǎo-bu-hǎo?   | How were the exams in Chinese?   |
| Gāo: Wó-xiǎng kǎode-hái-hǎo.  | I think I did rather well.   |
| Bái: Shùxué-ne?   | How about math?  |
| Gāo: Kǎode-zāogāo-jǐle.   | I messed it up badly.  |
| 3. Lán: Nǐ-zuótian-kàn-de-nèi-chǎng-diànyǐng 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?   | How was that movie you saw yesterday?  |
| Xiè: Hén-hǎo, hén-yǒu-yìsi. Yǒu-jīhuì zài-qù-kàn-yíci.  | Fine, very interesting. If I have an opportunity I'll see it (once) again.   |
| 4. Wàn: Wó-géi-nǐmen-liǎngwèi 'jièshao-jièshao. Zhèiwèi shi-Qián-Lǎoshi. Zhèiwèi shi-Bái-Wénshān. | Let me introduce the two of you. This is Teacher Qian. This is Vincent White |
| Bái: Hěn-gāoxìng-rènshi-nín-le.   | Very happy to have made your acquaintance.                                   |
| Qián: Wó-yé-hěn-gāoxìng.  | Same here.   |
| 5. Bái: Wǒmen-dào-fànguǎn chī-běifāng-cài, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?   | Let's go to the restaurant and have Northern Chinese food, O.K.?             |
| Gāo: Hǎojǐle. Wó-hén-xǐhuan chī-běifāng-cài.  | Great. I like (to eat) Northern food very much.                              |
| Bái: Wǒmen yě-qù-kàn-diànyǐng, 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?   | Let's also go see a movie, O.K.?   |
| Gāo: Hǎo-ba.  | Fine.  |
| Bái: Diànyǐngyuàn lí-nǐ-jiā 'yuǎn-bu-yuǎn?  | Is the theater far from your home?   |

- Gāo: 'Hén-yuǎn. Wǒmen-zuì-hǎo zuò-chē-qù. Quite far. It would be best if we went by bus (or streetcar).
6. Bì: Wó-qǐng-wèn-nǐ-yíge-wèntí. I'd like to ask you a question.
- Xiè: Shénmo-wèntí? What question?
- Bì: Xiànzài-Zhōngguó, tīng-shuō kèqì-huà-de-guòjiǎng xiànzài-bù-shuō-le. Nǐ-xiǎode-shuō-shénmo? In present-day China, I hear the polite expression guòjiǎng is no longer said now. Do you know what is said?
- Xiè: Shuō-nálǐ huòzhě-shuō-nálǐ, nálǐ. (They) say nálǐ or nálǐ, nálǐ.
7. Zhāng: Wā! Nǐ-zhǎo-shéi? Hello, who are you calling?
- Yán: Wó-qǐng-Zhāng-Tóngzhì-shuō-huà. I'd like to speak to Comrade Zhang.
- Zhāng: Wǒ-xìng-Zhāng. Nǐ-shi-Yán-Tóngzhì-ma? This is Zhang. Are you Comrade Yan?
- Yán: Shì. Nǐ-shi-shénmo-shíhou cóng-Rìběn-huílái-de? Yes. When did you come back from Japan?
- Zhāng: Wǒ-dào-Rìběn-qù-le ní-zěnmo-xiǎode-de? How did you know I went to Japan?
- Yán: Lán-Tóngzhì gàosu-wǒ-de. Nǐ-shénmo-shíhou-yǒu-shíjiān, wǒ-qù-bàifang-ni. Comrade Lan told me. Whenever you have time, I'd like to go and call on you.
- Zhāng: Něitiān-'dōu-yǒu-shíjiān. (I) have time any day.
8. Máo: Nǐ-shēng-zài-nǎr? Where were you born?
- Dài: Wǒ-shēng-zài-Sūzhou, zài-Hángzhou-zhǎng-dà. I was born in Soochow and grew up in Hangchow.
- Máo: Nǐ-dàxué zài-nǎr-bìyè-de? Where did you graduate from college?
- Dài: Wǒ-dàxué zài-Guǎngdong-bìyè-de. I graduated from college in Canton.
- Máo: Nǐ-shi-xué-shénmo-de? What did you study?
- Dài: Wǒ-zài-zhōngxué xuéxí-shùxué, zài-dàxué xuéxí-lìshǐ. I studied mathematics in middle school and history in college.
- Máo: Nǐ-zài-nǎr-jiēhūn-de? Where did you get married?
- Dài: Wǒ-zài-Hángzhou-jiēhūn-de. I was married in Hangchow.
9. Zuótiān wǒ-gēn-Xǔ-Dàwén, Yán-Wénshān, hái-yǒu-Yán-Wénshān-de-yíge-péngyou wǒmen-sìge-rén dào-fànguǎn-qu-chī-fàn. Yesterday I and Xu Dawen, Yan Wenshan, and a friend of Yan Wenshan's (the four of us) went to a restaurant to eat. We ordered three dishes and a

Wōmen-yàole-sānge-cài yíge-tāng. Sānge-cài shi-chāo-jī, chāo-dòufu, hóng-shāo-yú. Tāng shi-niú-ròu-tāng. Chī-de-hén-bǎo. Wōmen-sìge-rén suǐbiàn-chī, suǐbiàn-tán. Yán-Wénshān-de-péngyou wǒ-cóngqian-bú-rèn-shi, bù-xiǎode tā-shi-Zhōngguo-rén shi-Rìběn-rén. Jīntian yì-tīng-tā-shuō-huà jiù-xiǎode tā-bú-shi-Zhōngguo-rén shi-Rìběn-rén.

soup. The three dishes were fried chicken, fried beancurd, red-cooked fish. The soup was beef soup. We ate until we were quite stuffed. The four of us ate and talked informally. I wasn't previously acquainted with Yan Wenshan's friend and didn't know if he was Chinese or Japanese. Today on hearing him speak I realized he wasn't Chinese but Japanese.

10. Wǒ-gēn-Lán-Dàwén liǎng-sān-nián bú-jiàn-le. Zuótiān wǒ-dào-tā-jiā-qu-kàn-ta. Yuánlái-wó-dǎcuòle-mén. Wó-dǎ-mén-de-shíhou yìdiǎr-yě-bù-xiǎode-shi-cuò-le. Yíge-lǎo-tóngzhì-kāi-mén, wèn-wó-zhǎo-shéi. Wǒ-shuō zhǎo-Lán-Dàwén. Nèiwèi-lǎo-tóngzhì-shuō zhèlǐ-méi-yǒu-xìng-Lán-de. Wǒ-cái-xiǎode-shi-cuò-le. Nèiwèi-lǎo-tóngzhì-shuō suǐrán-cuò-le qǐng-jìnlai zuò-yìhuěr. Wó-xiǎng wǒ-bú-rènshi-nèiwèi-lǎo-tóngzhì, bú-yào-máfan. Wǒ-shuō: "Xièxiè, bú-bì-le."

I hadn't seen Lan Dawen for two or three years. Yesterday I went to his home to see him. Actually I knocked on the wrong door. When I was knocking on the door I wasn't at all aware I was wrong. An old comrade opened the door and asked who I was looking for. I told him I was looking for Lan Dawen. That old comrade said there wasn't anyone by the name of Lan here. Only then did I realize I had made a mistake. That old comrade said although I had made a mistake to please come in and sit a while. I thought, I don't know that old comrade and don't want to trouble him, so I said: "Thanks, it's not necessary."

#### Note

1. In the PRC the term Guówén 'Chinese' (as a subject of study in school) has been superseded by Zhōngwén or, better still, when there is no possible confusion with other languages, by yǔwén, literally 'language (and) literature.' The latter can be made more specific, as in Zhōngguo Yǔwén, the name of an important journal published from 1952-1966. Yǔwén appears to be used chiefly in secondary schools and Zhōngwén in universities.

### LESSON 21

#### New Vocabulary

fúwùyuán attendant, waiter (N) [lit. serve matters person] (See Note 1)

#### Exercises

fúwùyuán

waiter

fúwùyuán-tóngzhì

comrade waiter

1. Fúwùyuán-Tóngzhì, qǐng-ni-bāng-zhu-wōmen xiǎng-jǐge-cài. Comrade waiter, please help us order a few dishes.



2. Yán: Lǎo-Xiè, fúwùyuán-zài-nǎr? (Old) Xie, where's the waiter?  
 Xiè: Nǐ-kǎn, jiù-zài-nǐ-hòubiar. Look, he's right behind you. He's  
 Láile. come.  
 Yán: Oh, wǒ-kànjian-le . . . Oh, I see . . . Comrade, please bring  
 Tóngzhì, qíng-bǎ-cài-dār- the menu.  
 nálai.
3. Dài: Wǒmen-dōu-yīnggāi-xuéxi We should all learn from Vincent  
 Bái-Wénshān xué-Zhōngwén- White's excellent experience in study-  
 de-hǎo-jīngyàn. ing Chinese.  
 Lán: Duì-le! Xuéxi-tā-xué- Right! Studying his experience in  
 Zhōngwén-de-jīngyàn yīdìng- learning Chinese will certainly be a  
 duì-wǒmen yóu-hěnde-dà-de- big help to us.  
 bāngzhu.
4. Bái: Nǐmen-zhèr gěi-fúwùyuán- Do you give the (comrade) waiters  
 tóngzhì-xiǎofèi-ma? tips here?  
 Gāo: 'Bù-gěi. Wǒmen-zài-Zhōng- No. In China we don't give tips.  
 guo shi-méi-yóu-xiǎofèi-de.
5. Xiè: Wàn-Tóngzhì-de-gōngzuo- Comrade Wan has more work experi-  
 jīngyan bǐ-wǒmen-duō. ence than we do.  
 Bì: Duì-le! Wǒmen-yīnggāi- Right! We should ask him to tell us  
 qǐng-ta bǎ-tāde-gōngzuo about (lit. introduce) his work expe-  
 jīngyàn 'jièshao-jièshao. rience.
6. Gāo: Qǐng-wèn-tóngzhì, dào- May I ask you, Comrade, how does  
 gōngyuán-qù zěnmō-zǒu? one get to the park?  
 Yán: Cóng-zhèitiáo-lù wàng-dōng- Go east from this street. That's a  
 zǒu. Nà-shi-yítiao-xiǎo-lù. small road. From here it's also pos-  
 Cóng-zhèr zǒu-dà-lù yé- sible to take (lit. walk) a big road, but  
 kéyǐ, kěshi bǐjiào-yuǎn-le- it's a little longer (lit. farther).  
 yidiǎr.
7. Máo: Nǐn-mǎi-shénmo? What would you like?  
 Bái: Wó-mǎi-Zhōngguo-dìtú. I'd like a Chinese map.  
 Máo: Wǒmen-yóu-liángzhǒng, We have two kinds, one big and one  
 yīzhǒng-dà-zhāng yīzhǒng- small.  
 xiǎo-zhāng.  
 Bái: Wǒ-yào-dà-zhāng. Duōshao- I want the big one. How much is it?  
 qián?  
 Máo: Liǎngkuài-wǔ. Two-fifty.  
 Bái: Wǒ-yào-yīzhāng. I'll take one.
8. Wàn: Kuài-dào shíèrdiǎn-zhōng- It will soon be twelve o'clock. Let's  
 le. Wǒmen qù-chī-fàn, go eat, O. K.?  
 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?

- Lán: Dào-nǎr-qù-chī-ne? Where shall we go to eat?
- Wàn: Wǒmen dào-Sānyǒu-Fànguǎn-qù-chī-ba. Let's go eat at the Three Friends Restaurant.
- Lán: Wó-yǐjīng-qùguo yíci. Tāmende-cài-bù-hǎo. Chǎo-xià-rér-lǐtou fàng-jiàngyóu. I've already been (there) once. They put soy sauce in their fried shrimps.
- Wàn: Dàgài nà-shi běifāng-de-zuǒfǎ. Maybe that's the Northern way of cooking.
- Lán: Kǎo-yāzi shi-hēi-de. The roast duck is black.
- Wàn: Dàgài kǎo-de-shíjiān cháng-yidiǎr-le. Maybe they cook it a little too long.
- Lán: Èrqiě chīwánle-yí-suàn-zhàng hái-hēn-guī. Moreover, after you've finished and they figure the bill, it's very expensive.
- Wàn: Nènmo wǒmen-dào-Běi-Hú-Xiǎo-Guǎn-qù-chī. Then let's go eat at the Little North Lake Restaurant.
- Lán: Hǎo. Wǒmen jiǎndān-yidiǎr-chī. Jiù-lái yíhú-jiǔ, chī-jiǎozi huòzhě-miàn. O.K. Let's eat a little simply. Let's just order a pot of wine and have dumplings or noodles.
9. Zuótiān wǒ-gēn-wǒ-àirén kànle-yíchāng-diànyǐng. Wǒ-juéde nèibù-piānzi-de-gùshi hén-yǒu-yìsi, kěshi wǒ-àirén-shuō yǎnyuán-yǎn-de-bù-hǎo. Yesterday my wife (or husband) and I went to see a movie. I thought the story (of that movie) was very interesting, but my wife (or husband) said the actors performed badly.
10. Gāngcái wǒ-dìdi mǎile-yībēn-xiǎo-zìdiǎn. Wǒ-yí-kàn jiù-xiǎode shi-yībēn-yǐqián-de-zìdiǎn, yīnwei zìdiǎnshang jiù-yǒu-huǒji méi-yǒu-fúwùyuán, yǒu-màipiàoyuán méi-yǒu-shòupiàoyuán. Just now my younger brother bought a little dictionary. As soon as I looked at it I knew it was an old (lit. previous) dictionary, for it had only huǒji and not fúwùyuán, (only) màipiàoyuán and not shòupiàoyuán.
11. Yán-Wénshān zài-dàxué yǐjīng-xuéxile-sānnián-le. Tā-hěn-cōngming. Xuéxí shùxué. Tā-dìdi yě-zài-dàxué-èrniánjí-xuéxí. Xuéxí-lìshǐ. Kěshi tā-dìdi-xuéxí-de méi-yǒu-tā-nènmo-hǎo. Méicì-kǎoshì bú-shi-kàncuòle-tímu jiù-shi-xiēcùole-zì. Yan Wenshan has already studied for three years in college. He's very bright. He studies mathematics. His younger brother is also studying in the second year. He's studying history. But his younger brother doesn't study as well as he does. At every exam if he doesn't read a topic wrong he miswrites characters.

## Notes

1. In the PRC huǒji 'waiter' is used only for joking. A waiter is now referred to as fúwùyuán, a generalized term for a person (yuán) who serves (fúwù). This expression for 'to serve' embodies the well-known concept of 'serv-

ing the people.' Hence fúwùyuan suggests greater respect than the equivalent English terms 'waiter' or 'attendant.' A waiter is addressed directly as Fúwùyuan Tóngzhì, or simply as Tóngzhì, the latter being less formal.

2. In the PRC tipping is no longer practiced. Waiters and other personnel who provide service of one kind or another should not be offered a xiāofèi 'tip.' Hence the word has largely disappeared from Common Speech in China, although Chinese of course have to use it when they travel abroad or when they discuss past or foreign tipping practices.

## LESSON 22

## New Vocabulary

kùnnan difficulty, trouble (N); difficult, troublesome (SV) [lit. distress trouble] (See Note 1)

## Exercises

- |    | kùnnan  | difficulty  |
|----|---|---|
|    | hén-yǒu-kùnnan  | has many difficulties   |
| 1. | Nèige-shìqing duì-wǒ hén-yǒu-kùnnan.  | That matter has many difficulties for me.   |
| 2. | Bái: Nǐmen-bìyè-yǐhòu xiāng-dào-nǎr-qu-gōngzú?  | After you graduate where will you go to work?   |
|    | Lán: 'Nǎr-you-kùnnan, wǒmen-jiù-dào-nǎr-qù.   | Wherever there are difficulties, there we will go.  |
| 3. | Gāo: Wǒ-kàn xué-Hànzì bú-tài-nán-ne.  | It seems to me that learning Chinese characters isn't too hard.   |
|    | Bái: Xué-Hànzì yǒu-hěnduō-kùnnan.   | There are a lot of difficulties in learning Chinese characters.   |
|    | Gāo: Shénmo-kùnnan?   | What difficulties?  |
|    | Bái: Xué-Hànzì yǒu-liǎngge-kùnnan. Yíge shì-méi-fázi-xiǎode zěnmo-niàn, yíge-shì bīxū-jìzhu-xiěde-fāngfǎ.                                     | There are the difficulties in learning Chinese characters. One is there is no way of knowing how to pronounce (lit. read aloud) them, one is you have to memorize the way they are written.                       |
| 4. | Zhāng: Lǎoshī, wèi-shénmo xué-de-Hànzì wǒ-bù-néng-jìzhu?  | Teacher, why can't I remember the Chinese characters we've studied?   |
|    | Wáng: Nà-jiùshì-yīnwèi nǐ-xiě-zì xiěde-bù-gòu. Jì-Hànzì yào-duō-xiě-jǐcì. Yàoshi-xiěde-tài-shǎo, jiù-róngyì-wàng. Hái-yào-zhùyì xuéxí-fāngfǎ. | That's because you don't write characters enough. To memorize Chinese characters you must write them a few more times. If you write too little, it's easy to forget. You must also pay attention to how to study. |

5. Bái: Zhèige-zì niàn-shénmo? How is this character read?  
 Yán: Shì-huǒji-de-huǒ. It's the huǒ of huǒji.  
 Bái: Yóu-jǐhuá? How many strokes does it have?  
 Yán: Yǒu-liùhuá. It has six strokes.  
 Bái: Guòjiǎng-de jiǎng-yóu-jǐhuá? How many strokes does the jiǎng of Guòjiǎng have?  
 Yán: Yóu-jiǔhuá. It has nine strokes.  
 Bái: Qǐng-nín xiě-yi-xiě. Please write (it for me).
6. Gāo: Yǔyán-gēn-wénxué shì-bu-shì-chàbuduō? Are language and literature about the same?  
 Bái: Bù. Yǔyán-shì-yǔyán, wénxué-shì-wénxué, shì-bù-yíyàng-de. No. Language is language, literature is literature. They're not the same.
7. Yán: Nǐ-huì-huá-quán-ma? Do you know how to play "guess-fingers"?  
 Lán: Wǒ-huì. Yes, I know how to.  
 Yán: Tīngshuō xiànzài zài-Zhōngguode-fànguānli bù-huá-quán-le. I hear that "guess-fingers" is no longer played now in Chinese restaurants.  
 Lán: Yǒude-rén shuō-huá, yǒude-rén shuō-bù-huá-le. Some people say it's (still) played, others say it isn't.
8. Wàn: Nǐ-àirén-zuò-de-fàn zhēn-hǎo-chī. The food your wife made is really delicious.  
 Yán: Nálǐ. Wǒ-àirén bù-zěnmohuì-zuò-fàn, kěshì cháng-zuò, bǐjiào yǒu-yìdiǎr-jīngyan. Bǐfang-shuō, hóng-shāo-yú yào-fàng-duōshāo jiàngyóu, chǎo-niúròu yào-fàng-duōshao, dōu-bù-yíyàng, bú-néng-suíbiàn-fàng. You flatter us. My wife isn't such a good cook, but she cooks frequently, and relatively (speaking) has a bit of experience. For example, how much soy sauce to put in red-cooked fish and how much in sautéed beef are not the same. You can't put it in haphazardly.
9. Bái: Guǎngdong-chǎo-miàn gēn-běifāng-chǎo-miàn yíyàng-bu-yíyàng? Are Cantonese fried noodles and Northern fried noodles the same?  
 Gāo: Bù-yíyàng. Běifāng chǎo-miàn bǎ-ròu-gēn-cài dōu-chǎo-zài-miàn-lǐtou. Guǎngdong-chǎo-miàn bǎ-ròu-gēn-cài dōu-fàng-zài-miàn-shàngtou. They're not the same. In Northern fried noodles the meat and vegetables are both fried in the noodles. In Cantonese fried noodles the meat and vegetables are placed on top of the noodles.  
 Bái: Nǐ-juéde néizhǒng-hǎo-chī? Which do you think is tastier?

Gāo: Wǒ-juéde Guǎngdong-chǎo-miàn-hǎo-chī.

I think Cantonese fried noodles are tastier.

10. Wǒmen-xuéxí-Zhōngwén. Shàng-kè-de-shíhòu, lǎoshī-shuō-Zhōngwén, wǒmen-zhùyì-tīng. Wǒmen-tiāntiān-liànxi-tīng, yě-liànxi-shuō. Wǒmen-bìxū-hǎo-hāor-xuéxí, bùrán bù-néng-bǎ-Zhōngwén-xuéhǎo.

We are studying Chinese. When we go to class, the teacher speaks Chinese, and we listen attentively. We practice listening every day, and we also practice speaking. We have to study hard, otherwise we won't be able to master Chinese.

11. Zhāng-Tóngzhǐ bú-shì-wǒmende-Zhōngwén-lǎoshī, kěshì tā-yě-bāngzhu-wǒmen xué-Zhōngwén. Tā-chángcháng-wèn-wǒmen xuéxí-shang yǒu-shénmo-kùnnan, hái-wèn-wǒmen-wèntí. Tā-cháng-cháng-duì-wǒmen-shuō, bú-yào-pà-kùnnan, yǒu-bù-dǒng-de-dìfang, jiù-wèn-tā. Tā-bùdàn shì-wǒmende-péngyou, yě-kéyì-shuō shì-wǒmende-lǎoshī!

Comrade Zhang is not our Chinese teacher, but he still helps us study Chinese. He often asks us what difficulties we have in studying, and asks us questions. He often says to us that we shouldn't fear difficulties, and if there are things [lit. places] we don't understand just ask him. He not only is our friend, one can also say he is our teacher!

12. Wǒ-shì-yíge-wàiguó-xuésheng. Wǒ-xuéxí-Zhōngguó-yǔyán, duì-lìshǐ yé-hén-gǎn-xìngqǔ. Xiànzài néng-shuō jiǎndānde-Zhōngguó-huà, yě-néng-kàn jiǎndānde-Zhōngwén-shū. Zài-kāishǐ-xuéxí-de-shíhòu hěn-kùnnan. Wǒde-lǎoshī kāishǐ-jiāo-wǒ-fāyīn, Hànzì, cér, yúfǎ. Guānyú-wǒ-xuéxí, zuì-dà-de-nánchù shì-sìshēng, qīngzhōngyīn. Shénmo-jiào-qīngzhōngyīn-ne? Bǐfāng xuésheng shì-liǎngge-yīnjié. Dì-yíge-yīnjié shì-xué, shì-dì-èrshēng. Dì-èrge-yīnjié shì-shēng. Suǐrán shì-dì-yīshēng, kěshì yào-niàn-qīngshēng. Xiàng-zhèizhōng-cér hěn-duō. Èrqiě sìshēng hái-yào-zhǔn. Wáng-Jiàoshòu zhēn-hǎo. Tā-chúle-shàng-kè-yǐwài, měitiān hái-yòng-hěn-duō-xiǎoshí gēn-wǒ-zài-yíkuài yánjiu-fāyīn. Wàiguó-rén-xué-Hànyǔ zuì-dà-de-kùnnan shì-xué-fāyīn. Wǒ-suǐrán-méi-xuéhǎo, kěshì yòngle-bu-shǎo-shíjiān.

I'm a foreign student. I'm studying the Chinese language, and I'm also very much interested in (Chinese) history. Now I can speak simple Chinese and read simple Chinese books. When I first studied Chinese it was very hard. My teacher began by teaching me pronunciation, characters, words, and grammar. In my studies, the biggest difficulty was the four tones and the neutral tone. What is the neutral tone? Xuésheng, to take an example, is two syllables. The first syllable is xué; it is second tone. The second syllable is shēng. Although it is (originally) first tone, nevertheless it must be read as neutral tone. Words like this are quite numerous. Moreover the four tones must be accurate. Professor Wang is really nice. In addition to going to class, every day he devotes many hours to work on pronunciation with me. The biggest difficulty for foreigners in studying Chinese is learning pronunciation. Although I haven't learned it well, I've devoted not a few hours (to it).

13. Wǒ-cóng-Niǔyue dào-Jiùjīnshān-lái. Zài-méi-líkai-Niǔyue-yǐqián

I came to San Francisco from New York. Before leaving New York I

wó-géi-Xǔ-Dàwén-dǎ-diànhuà,  
shuō-xià-xíngqī-yī wǒ-zuò-fēijī  
dào-Jiùjīnshān-qu, xīwang-tā-jiē  
wǒ. Wǒ-dàole-Jiùjīnshān-yǐhòu  
gāng-xià-fēijī jiù-kànjian-Láo-  
Xǔ gēn-ta-àirén zài-nèr-dēngzhe-  
wǒ. Tā-kànjian-wǒ-dàole hèn-  
gāoxíng. Nèige-shíhou shi-chī-  
fàn-de-shíhou. Láo-Xǔ-shuō  
wǒmen-xiān-qù-chī-fàn. Tā-wèn-  
wǒ xiǎng-chī-shénmo. Wǒ-shuō  
xiǎng-chī-Zhōngguo-cài. Wǒmen-  
sānge-rén jiù-dàole-yíge-xiǎo-  
fànguǎn. Yàole-yíhú-jiǔ, sānge-  
cài, yíge-tāng: yíge-chǎo-xiārér,  
yíge-hóng-shāo-jī, yíge-chǎo-  
báicài. Láo-Xǔ hái-xiǎng-yào-  
yíge-kǎo-yāzi. Wǒ-shuō-  
chībuliǎo, bú-yào-yāzi, zài-yào-  
shíge-jiǎozi-déle. Sānge-rén  
chīde-hén-bǎo. Chīwánle-fàn  
fúwùyuán yí-suàn-zhàng yígòng-  
cái bāyuán-sìjiǎo. Gěile-yíyuán-  
liùjiǎo-xiǎofèi yígòng-shíyuán.

phoned Xu Dawen to say next Monday I was taking a plane to San Francisco and hoped he would meet me. After reaching San Francisco just as I got off the plane I saw (Old) Xu and his wife waiting for me there. He was very glad to see me arrive. The time was dinner time. (Old) Xu said we should first go and eat. He asked me what I would like to eat. I said I would like to eat Chinese food. The three of us then went to a small restaurant. We ordered a pot of wine, three dishes, and a soup: a fried shrimp, a red-cooked chicken, and a fried cabbage. (Old) Xu also thought we should order a roast duck. I said we couldn't eat it, not to order a duck but to have ten dumpling and let it go at that. The three of us ate until we were quite full. After we finished eating when the waiter figured the bill it came altogether to only \$8.40. We gave a tip of \$1.60, (making) altogether \$10.00.

## Note

1. In the PRC nánchū 'difficulty' occurs less often than kùnnan, a term of wider meaning and usage. The latter is used as a noun and as a stative verb in the meanings 'difficulty, trouble; difficult, troublesome':

Xué-Hànzi yóu-hěn-dà-de-kùnnan. 'There are great difficulties in studying Chinese.'

Xué-hànzi hěn-kùnnan. 'Studying Chinese is very difficult.'

## LESSON 23

## Exercises

1. Xǔ: Nǐ-shuō Lǎo-Zhāng-huà-de-huàr 'hǎo-bu-hǎo? What do you think of the painting that (Old) Zhang does?  
 Bì: Wǒ-shuō-bú-cuò. I think it's not bad.  
 Xǔ: Wǒ-bù-xiǎode tā-huà-de I don't know what the good points are  
 huàr hǎochù-zài-nǎr. in his paintings.  
 Bì: Tā-huà-de-huàr xiàng- His paintings look like real scenery.  
 zhēnde-shānshuǐ.  
 Xǔ: Huà-huàr zuì-yàojǐnde shi- The most important thing in painting  
 děi-qù-lǔxíng kànkān- is that one must travel and see fa-  
 yǒumíngde-shānshuǐ. mous scenery.

2. Lán: Wǒ-zhèicǐ shì-dì-yīcǐ dào-Rìběn-qu. This is my first trip to Japan.
- Máo: Dào-Rìběn yào-jǐge-xiǎoshí? How many hours does it take to get to Japan?
- Lán: Dàgài qī-bāge-xiǎoshí. Approximately seven or eight hours.
- Máo: Nǐ-zhèicǐ zài-Rìběn yào-duōshao-shíhou? How long will you be in Japan this time?
- Lán: Dàgài yào-yīnián huàzhě-èrnián. Probably one or two years.
- Máo: Wǒmen-yào hěn-cháng-de-shíjiān bú-jiàn-le. We won't be seeing each other for a long time.
- Lán: Duì-le. Right.
- Máo: Nǐ-zhèicǐ dào-Rìběn-qù háishi-jìxué-xuéxí Dōng-fāng-lìshǐ-ma? In going to Japan now will you continue to study Oriental history?
- Lán: Shì. Wǒ-hái-jìxué-xuéxí Dōngfāng-lìshǐ. Yes, I'll continue to study Oriental history.
- Máo: Zàijiàn-le. Zhù-nǐ-yí-lù-píng'ān. Good-bye. Have a nice trip.
- Lán: Zàijiàn. Láojià-nǐ-lái-sòng-wǒ. Good-bye. Thanks for taking the trouble to come see me off.
3. Cóng-yī-jiǔ-qī-sān-nián dào-xiànzài wǒ-dào-Zhōngguó qùle-sāncǐ. Jīnnián yòu-qùle-yīcǐ, kěshì-zhèicǐ zài-Zhōngguó-de-shíjiān-bíjiào-duǎn, lián-Běijīng yě-méi-qù. From 1973 to the present I've been to China three times. I went once again this year, but this time in China the duration was relatively short. I didn't even go to Peking.
4. Wǒ-zuótiān zài-Dōngfāng-Hóng-Shūdiàn kànjian-yībēn-guānyu-xuéxí-yǔyán-de-shū. Shū-míngzìshì Zěnyàng-Xuéxí-Hànyǔ. Zhèibēn-shū duì-wǒmen-xuéxí-Hànyǔ-de-rén hén-yǒu-bāngzhu. Kāishǐ xiān-gàosu-nǐ zěnyàng-liànxí-fāyīn, shénmo-shì-qīng-zhòngyīn, sishēng, shénmo-shì-cér, shénmo-jìào-yīnjié. Rúguǒ bǎ-zhèixiē-jìzhu-dōu-dòng-le, wó-xiǎng xuéxí-fāyīn-gēn-sishēng dōu-néng-bíjiào-zhǔn. Yesterday at the East is Red Bookstore I saw a book on studying the language. The title of the book was How to Study Chinese. This book is very helpful to those of us studying Chinese. To begin with it first tells you how to practice pronunciation, what the neutral tone and the four tones are, what words are, what is referred to as syllables. If one remembers and understands all these things, I think the study of pronunciation and the four tones can all be comparatively accurate.
5. Zuótiān wǒ-dào-fēijīchǎng-qù jiē-Mǎ-Dàwén. Dēngle-yóu-liǎngge-xiǎoshí fēijī-yě-méi-lái, Yesterday I went to the airport to meet Ma Dawen. After waiting a couple of hours the plane still hadn't ar-

suóyǐ dào-cāntīng-qu-zuò-yīhuǒ.  
 Dàole-cāntīng-yīhòu, wǒ-ràng-  
 cāntīngde-fúwùyuán géi-wǒ-ná-  
 cāi-dān-lái. Wǒ-yào-le-yíge-  
 chǎo-miàn. Yībiān-chī yībiān-  
 děngzhe. Bǎ-miàn-chīwán-le  
 gāng-líkai-cāntīng kànjian-Mǎ-  
 Dàwén-xiàle-fēijī. Wǒmen-  
 liǎngge-rén shi-lǎo-péngyou,  
 jiànle-miàn dāngrán-hěn-gāoxìng.  
 Tā-gàosu-wǒ, míngnián tā-kāishǐ-  
 shàng-dàxué-le. Wǒ-wèn-ta duì-  
 shénmo-gǎn-xìngqu. Tā-shuō tā-  
 duì-shùxué zhèi-fāngmian hén-  
 gǎn-xìngqu. Wǒ-wèn-ta Wàn-  
 Lǎoshī duì-ta-zěnmoyàng. Tā-  
 shuō: "Wàn-Lǎoshī hén-hǎo. Wǒ-  
 gēn-ta xuédao-bù-shǎo-de-dōngxi."  
 Tā-hái-gàosu-wǒ Wàn-Lǎoshī  
 chūle-yánjiu-xuéwen-yīwài, hén-  
 xǐhuan-lǚxíng, tā-xiànzài bú-  
 xiàng-yíqián xǐhuan-hē-jiǔ-huá-  
 quán. Wǒmen-liǎngge-rén líkai-  
 fēijīchǎng zuò-zài-chē-shang hái-  
 jìxude-shuōxiàqu zhèi-liǎngnián-  
 de-shìqing. Mǎ-Dàwén-shuō tā-  
 zhèici-lái dàiláile-yíge-hén-hǎo-  
 de lùyīnjī shi-sònggēi-wǒ-de.

6. Xīngqīliù wǒ-dào-túshūguǎn-qu  
 jiè-shū. Dàole-túshūguǎn, wǒ-  
 duì-nèr gōngzuò-de-tóngzhì-shuō:  
 "Tóngzhì, wǒ-xiǎng-jiè-yībēn wǒ-  
 néng-kàndǒng-de-Zhōngwén-shū.  
 Qíng-ní-gēi-wǒ zhǎo-yībēn-ba."  
 Nèige-tóngzhì-zhǎole-yībēn-gēi-  
 wo. Wǒ-shuō: "Zhèibēn-shū 'nán-  
 bu-nán?" Tā-shuō: "Suírán-  
 zhèibēn-shū yéxú-yǒu-xiē nǐ-bú-  
 rěnshi-de-zì, kěshi-shàngbiar-  
 yǒu-huàr, kéyi-bāngzhu-nǐ-  
 kàndǒng-yìsi." Jǐntian wǒ-yòu-  
 dào-túshūguǎn-qù-jiè-shū, nèige-  
 gōngzuò-tóngzhì-wèn-wǒ: "Shàngci-  
 jiè-de-shū nǐ-dōu-kàndǒngle-méi-  
 yǒu?" Wǒ-shuō: "Yǒude-dìfang-  
 méi-kàndǒng, kěshi-dàgàide-yìsi  
 dōu-dǒngle."

rived, so I went to the cafeteria to sit  
 a while. After getting to the cafeteria,  
 I had the waiter (in the cafeteria)  
 bring me the menu. I ordered fried  
 noodles. As I ate I waited. Just as I  
 left the cafeteria after finishing the  
 noodles I saw Ma Dawen getting off  
 the plane. The two of us are old  
 friends, so on seeing each other we  
 were naturally very happy. He told  
 me, he was going to start attending  
 college next year. I asked him what  
 he was interested in. He said he was  
 very much interested in mathematics.  
 I asked him what Teacher Wan's atti-  
 tude toward him was. He said: "Teach-  
 er Wan is very nice. I learned a lot  
 of things from him." He also told me  
 that apart from acquiring knowledge  
 Teacher Wan was very fond of travel-  
 ing and now no longer liked to drink  
 and play "guess-fingers," as he had  
 before. After the two of us left the  
 airport we got in the car and continued  
 talking about matters of the past two  
 years. Ma Dawen said that he had  
 brought a very nice tape-recorder  
 this time that he was presenting to  
 me.

Saturday I went to the library to bor-  
 row some books. When I got to the  
 library, I said to the (work) comrade  
 there: "Comrade I'd like to borrow a  
 Chinese book that I can understand.  
 Please find one for me." That com-  
 rade found one and gave it to me. I  
 said: "Is this book difficult?" He said:  
 "Although this book perhaps has a few  
 characters that you don't know, still  
 it has illustrations that can help you  
 understand the meaning." Today I went  
 to the library again to borrow books,  
 and that (work) comrade asked me:  
 "Did you understand all of the book  
 you borrowed last time?" I said:  
 "Some places I didn't understand, but  
 on the whole I got the general idea."



## Notes

- Besides being the name of a popular song that is widely sung and played, Dōngfāng Hóng 'The East is Red' is also the title of a two-hour long documentary depicting the background of the People's Republic and appears in the names of many institutions (such as communes) which have taken the name because of the special aura that surrounds it.
- Some PRC speakers have abandoned the polite expression bùgǎndǎng 'I don't dare accept (your praise, assistance, etc.),' in favor of newer stereotyped phrases expressing such ideas as 'This is the merit of the people and the party (and not my own).'

## LESSON 24

## Exercises

- Lán: Xiànzàide-fúwùyuan cóng-qíán-jìào-shénmo?  
 Bái: Cóngqíán-jìào-huǒji.
- Xǔ: Gāo-Lǎoshī, qǐng-wèn jǐngyan-de-yàn yóu-jǐhuá?  
 Gāo: Yǒu-shíhuá.  
 Xǔ: Cāntīng-de-tīng yóu-jǐhuá?  
 Gāo: Sìhuá.
- Bì: Má-Lǎoshī nǐ-'máng-bu-máng?  
 Mǎ: Xiànzài-bíjiǎo-máng.  
 Bì: Nǐ-yìtiān jiāo-jǐge-xiǎoshí-de-kè?  
 Mǎ: Wǒ-yìtiān jiāo-sānge-xiǎoshí-de-kè. Yéxǔ jiānglái shǎo-jiāo yíge-xiǎoshí-de-kè.
- Zhāng: Rúguó-nǐ-dào-shūdiàn-dài-yìběn-shū-lái 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?  
 Wáng: Kéyǐ kényǐ. Nǐ-yào-mǎi-shénmo-shū?  
 Zhāng: Shì-guānyú-yǔyánxué-de-shū.  
 Wáng: Shū-míngzi shì-shénmo?  
 Zhāng: Hànyǔ-Fīnyīn-Liànxī-fǎ.
- Dài: Zhè-jiǎozi zhēn-hǎochī. Lǐ-tou-yǒu-shénmo?  
 Yán: Zhūròu-xiārér.  
 Dài: Yǒu-jiàngyóu-ma?  
 Yán: Yǒu. Nǐ-huì-zuò-jiǎozi-ma?  
 Dài: Bù-huì. Wǒ-yǐngdāng gēn-nǐ-xuéxí zuò-jiǎozi, kěshì lǎo-méi-shíjiān.
- Wǒde-Zhōngguó - yǔwén shì - zài - Měiguó-xuéxí-de, yǐjīng-xuéxíle-sìnián. Wǒ-zhèici-dào-Zhōngguó-lái háishi-yào-jìxude-xuéxí. Xuéxí - Zhōngguó - yǔwén, zài - gāng - xuéxí-de-shíhou, juéde-yǒu-diǎrkùnnan. Zài-kāishǐ-xuéxí-de-shíhòu, zuì - yào-jǐn - de shì - sishēng, fāyīn, qīngzhōngyīn, cǎi dou-děi-jìzhu. Zuì-dà-de-nánchū shì-sìshēng - gēn - qīngzhōngyīn, yīnwei bixū - niànde - zhǔn. Bǐfāng - shuō-cér-ba, yíge-cér yóu-liǎng-sāngē-yīnjié, měige - yīnjié - de - qīngzhōngyīn bù - yíyàng, bixū - jìzhu. Bùrán nǐ-shuōchulái bié-rén-tīng-budòng. Suǒyǐ yǐnggāi-hǎohāorde-xuéxí. Xiànzài suǐrán-méi-xuéhǎo, kěshì wǒ-gēn-Zhōngguó-péngyou-shuō-huà tāmen - dōu - tīngdedòng. Wó-gěi-Zhōngguó-péngyou-xiě-xìn tāmen-yě-kànde-míngbai.
- Zuótian Yán-Tóngzhǐ bāngzhu-wǒ-

qù-lùyīn. Cóng-liángdiǎn-zhōng lù-  
dào-liùdiǎn-zhōng. Yǐjīng-shì-chǐ-  
wǎnfàn-de-shíhòu-le. Wǒ-shuō:  
“Wǒmen-dào-fànguǎn-qù chǐ-kǎo-  
yāzi 'hǎo-bu-hǎo?” Yán-Tóngzhī-  
shuō: “Liǎngge-rén chǐ-yíge-kǎo-  
yāzi zěnmó-chídeliǎo-ne? Wǒmen-  
dào-fùjīn-de-cāntīng, chǐ-yídiár-  
diǎnxīn, yíge-rén zài-yào-yíge-

miàn jù-gòu-le.” Wǒ-shuō yé-  
hǎo. Wǒmen-dàole-cāntīng, ràng-  
fúwùyuán xiān-géi-wǒmen-láile-  
yíhú-chá. Chá-hén-hǎo. Yán-Tóng-  
zhī wèn-wǒ zhèizhōng-chá shì-  
nǎr-de. Wǒ-shuō dàgài-shì-Háng-  
zhōu-de. Chīwánle-fàn fúwùyuán-  
yí-suàn-zhàng yígòng-cái-liǎng-  
kuài-sīmáo-qián.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Some 500 additional vocabulary items are provided here for those who wish to acquire a greater stock of words concurrently with learning the basic patterns of the language. The items fit into the grammatical patterns studied in each lesson. Many can also be used in ways not covered by the patterns, but it is not advisable to spend too much effort studying these expanded usages, as it would conflict with the emphasis this book places on rapid mastery of the basic patterns of Chinese.

For those who wish to limit the classroom language to Chinese as soon as possible, a list of useful classroom phrases is given first. (Some of these also occur elsewhere in the book but are included here for ease in reference.)

### Classroom Phrases

Zǎo. Good morning.

Qíng-nǐmen-ānjing. Please be quiet.

Xiànzài-shàng-kè-le. Class has begun.

Wǒmen-xià-kè-le. Class is over.

Zuòxia. Sit down.

Zhànqilai. Stand up.

Zhànqilai-shuō. Stand up and recite.

Jú-shǒu. Raise your hand.

Wǒ-shuō, nǐmen-tīng. Listen to what I say.

Nǐ-tīng wǒ-shuō. Listen to me.

Wǒ-shuō, nǐmen-xiě. Write down what I say.

Gēnzhe-wǒ-shuō. Repeat after me.

Zài-shuō. Repeat.

Zài-shuō-yíbiàn. Repeat once.

Ní-dǒng-ma? Do you understand?

Wó-dǒng. I understand.

Wǒ-bù-dǒng. I don't understand.

Nǐ-dōu-dǒng-ma? Do you understand everything?

Xiānsheng, wǒ-bù-dǒng. Teacher, I don't understand.

Qǐng-nín zài-shuō-yíbiàn. Please say it again.

Qǐng-wèn. . . May I ask. . .

Zhèige-zì shi-dì-jǐshēng? What is the tone of this word?

Zhèige Zhōngguo-huà jiào-shénmo? What's this called in Chinese?

Jīntian niàn-dì-jǐkè? What lesson are we studying today?

Dǎkai-shū. Open your books.

Bǎ-shū héqilai. Close your books.

Kàn-dì-shíyè. Look at page 10.

Nǐ-'tīngyitīng. (You) listen.

Nǐ-'niànyiniàn. (You) read.

Ní-'xiěyixiě. (You) write.

Wǒ-shuōde-huà, nǐmen-zhùyì. Pay attention to what I say.

Wǒ-shuō-yíjù, nǐmen-gēnzhe-shuō-yíjù. I'll say a sentence, and you repeat it after me.

Zhùyì-sìshēng. Pay attention to the four tones.

Jìzhù. Fix in mind.

Jìzhù-le-ma? Have you got it firmly in mind?

Zài-hēibǎnshang-xiě. Write it on the blackboard.

Wǒmen-dàjiā yíkuàr-shuō. Let's say it all together.

Dàjiā 'yíkuàr-shuō. (You) say it all together.

(Qǐng)-shuō kuài-yìdiǎr. (Please) speak more quickly.

(Qǐng)-shuō màn-yìdiǎr. (Please) speak more slowly.

Bié-shuō-huà. Don't talk.

Nǐmen yǒu-wèntí-ma? Do you have any questions?

Wǒ-wèn, nǐmen-dá. I'll ask, you answer.

Nǐmen-wèn, wǒ-dá. You ask, I'll answer.

Qíng-ni 'dà-shēng-shuō. Please speak loudly.

### Lesson 1

The following syllables, some of which are full words and others only combining forms, are used also as surnames:

duàn	section (N)	jiāng	(large) river (N)
fèng	phoenix (N)	kǒng	hole (N)
gǔ	ancient (SV)	lǐ	plum (N)
huáng	yellow (SV)	lì	chestnut (N)

tián	field (N)	yún	cloud (N)
xióng	bear (N)	zhū	vermilion (SV)
yáng	poplar (N)	zǔ	ancestor (N)

The following nouns are also used as titles :

bóshi	Ph.D., Dr.	tuánzhǎng	delegation head
jiāngjun	general	xiàozhǎng	principal, headmaster
lǚshi	lawyer, attorney	yīsheng	doctor, M.D.
mùshi	minister, preacher	zhǎngguǎde	manager
shénfù	priest, Father	zhǔxí	chairman
tóngzhì	comrade		

## Lesson 2

The following are additional names of countries :

Āiji	Egypt	Jiānádà	Canada
Àodaliyǎ	Australia	Ménggǔ	Mongolia
Àoguo	Austria	Miǎndiàn	Burma
Bājisītǎn	Pakistan	Mòxīgē	Mexico
Bīlishí	Belgium	Nuówēi	Norway
Dānmài	Denmark	Ruìdiǎn	Sweden
Déguo	Germany	Ruìshi	Switzerland
Ēguo, Èguo	Russia	Sūlián	Soviet Union
Fàguo, Fǎguo	France	Xībānyá	Spain
Gǔbà	Cuba	Yuènnán	Vietnam
Hánguó	Korea	Yìdàlì	Italy
Hélán	Holland	Yìndù	India

## Lesson 3

For new nouns, an appropriate measure—if other than ge—is given in parentheses.

bǎ	(measure for chairs)	dēngpào	light bulb (N)
chǐ	ruler (N) (gēn)	dèngzi	stool (N)
dēng	lamp (N) (zhǎn)	fénbǐ	chalk (N) (gēr)

gēn	(measure for sticks)	suànpan	abacus (N)
gēr	(measure for chalk)	táidēng	desk lamp (N)
kèběr	textbook (N)	xiàngpí	eraser (N) (kuài)
kuài	(measure for solids)	yǐzi	chair (N) (bǎ)
qiānbǐdǎor	pencil sharpener (N)	yuánguī	compasses (N)
shǒutíbāo	briefcase (N)	zhǎn	(measure for lamps)
shūbāo	book bag (N)	zìláishuǐbǐ	fountain pen (N)

## Lesson 4

bào	newspaper (N) (fèr)	Xībānyá-	Spanish (language and
bàozhǐ	newspaper (N) (fèr)	wén	literature) (N)
Déwén	German (language and	Yìdàlì-wén	Italian (language and
	literature) (N)		literature) (N)
Èwén,	Russian (language and	zázhì	periodical, magazine
Èwen	literature) (N)		(N) (běn)
Fàwén,	French (language and	Zhōng-Dé	Chinese-German, Si-
Fǎwén	literature) (N)		no-German
fěnhóng	pink (SV)	Zhōng-Ē	Chinese-Russian, Si-
fèr	(measure for news-		no-Russian
	papers)	Zhōng-Fà	Chinese-French, Si-
hēibǎn	blackboard (N) (kuài)		no-French
huàbào	illustrated journal (N)	Zhōng-	Chinese-Spanish, Si-
	(běn)	Xībānyá	no-Spanish
kǎpiànr	card (N) (zhāng)	Zhōng-Yì	Chinese-Italian, Si-
lǜ	green (SV)		no-Italian
shūzhuō	desk (N) (zhāng)	zhuōzi	table (N) (zhāng)

## Lesson 5

ài	love (TV)	huítóu	a little later (MA)
báitiān	daytime (TW)	jiàn	cheap (SV)
chéng	be O.K. (IV)	kěn	be willing (AV)
guì	expensive (SV)	kòngr	leisure time (N)
hèn	hate (TV)	lìngwài	additionally (MA)

piányi	cheap (SV)	yèli	night (TW)
qīnqi	relative (N)	yuànyì	be willing (AV)
shēng	not well acquainted (SV)	zǎoshang	morning (TW)
shú	well acquainted (SV)	zhái	residence (N)
xíng	be O. K. (IV)	zhōngwǔ	noon (TW)

## Lesson 7

bǎihuòdiàn	department store (N)	jiē	street (N) (tiáo)
bàndǎo	peninsula (N)	jǐngchájú	police station (N)
bówuguǎn	museum (N)	lǚguǎn	hotel (N)
chéngshì	metropolis (N)	mǎlù	highway (N) (tiáo)
dàjiē	avenue (N) (tiáo)	mǎtou	dock (N)
diànbàojú	telegraph office (N)	miào	temple (N) (zuò)
dòngwuyuán	zoo (N)	pùzi	store (N)
dūshì	metropolis (N)	shì	metropolis (N)
hǎi	sea, ocean (N)	shāngdiàn	store (N)
háidǎo	island (N)	wūzi	room(s) (N) (jiān)
hé	river (N) (tiáo)	xiāngxia	the country (PW)
Héběi	Hopeh province (PW)	yīyuàn	hospital (N)
Hénán	Honan province (PW)	yínháng	bank (N)
huǒchēzhàn	railroad station (N)	yóujú	post office (N)
hútòng	alley (N) (tiáo)	záhuòdiàn	grocery store (N)
jiān	(measure for rooms in a house)	zuò	(measure for build- ings)

## Lesson 8

In the following names for subjects of study, the suffix xué 'study' is optional if enclosed in parentheses.

cáizhèng(xué)	finance (N)	huàxué	chemistry (N)
dìzhǐ(xué)	geology (N)	jiàoyù(xué)	education (N)
dòngwùxué	zoology (N)	jīngjì(xué)	economics (N)
gōngchéng(xué)	engineering (N)	jīxiè(xué)	mechanics (N)

nóngxué	agriculture (N)	wùlǐ(xué)	physics (N)
shāngyè(xué)	business studies (N)	xīnlǐxué	psychology (N)
shèhuìxué	sociology (N)	yàoji(xué)	pharmacology (N)
shēngwù(xué)	biology (N)	yīxué	medicine (N)
shénxué	religion (N)	zhèngzhì(xué)	political science (N)
tiānwénxué	astronomy (N)	zhíwùxué	botany (N)

## Lesson 9

cānjiā	take part (in) (V)	píxiédiàn	shoe store (N)
cèsuǒ	toilet (N)	rénmín	people (N)
chējiān	workshop (N)	sānlúnchē	pedicab (N) (liàng)
dàxuéshēng	college student (N)	shǒushi	jewelry, ornament (N)
gànbù	cadre (N)	shǒushilóu	jewelry store (N)
gōngchǎng	factory (N)	shuāng	pair (M)
gōngrén	worker (N)	shuǐguǒ	fruit (N)
gúdǒng	antiques (N)	shuǐguǒdiàn	fruit store (N)
gúdǒngdiàn	antique store (N)	tào	(measure for suits of clothes)
gǔwán	antiques (N)	xiǎoxuéshēng	elementary-school student (N)
gǔwándiàn	antique store (N)	xīfú	Western-style clothing (N) (tào)
huǒchē	train (N) (liè)	xīfúdiàn	clothing store (N)
láodòng	do physical labor (V)	yùnshūchē	truck (N) (liàng)
liàng	(measure for vehicles)	zǎotángzi	bath house (N)
liè	(measure for trains)	zhōngxué-	middle-school student (N)
lífǎdiàn	barber shop (N)	shēng	
màozi	hat (N) (dǐng)		
màozi diàn	hat store (N)		
nóngmín	peasant (N)		
píxié	leather shoes (N) (shuāng)		

## Lesson 10

bófù	father's elder brother (N)	fùmǔ	parents (N)
érzi	son (N)	gēge	elder brother (N)



gōnggong	husband's father (N)	xīungdì	brothers (N)
gūgu	father's sister (N)	yí	mother's sister (N)
gūniang	girl (N)		
jiějie	elder sister (N)	yuèfù	wife's father (N)
jiùjiu	mother's brother (N)	yuèmǔ	wife's mother (N)
nǚ'er	daughter (N)	zhínǚ'er	brother's daughter (N)
pópo	husband's mother (N)		
shūshu	father's younger brother (N)	zhízi	brother's son (N)
		zǐmèi	sisters (N)
wài zǔfù	mother's father (N)	zǔfù	father's father (N)
wài zúmǔ	mother's mother (N)	zúmǔ	father's mother (N)

## Lesson 11

bàiwang	visit, call on (TV)	qiántian	day before yesterday (TW)
chūcì	the first time (TW)	qiáo	see, visit (TV)
dà-qián-nian	year before year before last (TW)	Rìwén	Japanese (language and literature) (N)
dà-qián-tian	day before day before yesterday (TW)	shòuhuò-yuán	sales person (N)
dànshi	however (MA)	sùshè	dormitory (N)
dìquè	actually (AD)	wǔfàn	lunch (N)
huòchuán	freighter (N) (tiáo)	yàoshi	if (MA)
jìrán	since (MA)	zǎocān	breakfast (N)
lúnchuán	steamship (N) (tiáo)	záodiǎn	breakfast (N)
pèngjian	encounter (TV)	zhōngfàn	lunch (N)
qiánnian	year before last (TW)		

## Lesson 13

ǎi	short (SV)	héqi	congenial (SV)
bàngōngshǐ	office (N)	huài	bad (SV)
chéngshi	honest, reliable (SV)	jiāo'ào	proud, arrogant (SV)
chūzhōng	lower middle school (N)	jùyuan	playhouse, theater (N)

kèshǐ	classroom (N)	shànliáng	kind (SV)
lǎn	lazy (SV)	shítáng	dining hall (N)
lǎoshi	honest (SV)	shòu	thin (SV)
lǐbài	week (N)	tóngyi	agree (V)
liáojiě	understand (V)	xì	drama (N)
pàng	fat (SV)	xìju	(modern) play, drama (N)
qióng	poor (SV)		

## Lesson 14

bànfǎ	method (N)	tú	drawing, sketch (N)
běnlái	originally (N)	wànyī	by chance (MA)
búguò	only (MA)	xiāngdāng	fairly, rather (AD)
dāngchū	at first (MA)	xiāngxìn	believe (TV)
jiù	old (of things) (SV)	xīn	new (SV)
liáojiē	understand (TV)	xìnfēng	envelope (N)
qīngchu	be clear, be clear about (SV)	xìnzhi	writing paper (N)
qùwei	interest (N)	yòuzhiyuán	kindergarten (N)
sǐ	die (IV)	zhìshǎo	at least (MA)
tǐng	very (AD)	zǒng(shì)	always (AD)
		zuì shǎo	at least (MA)

## Lesson 15

Bāilí	Paris (PW)	liúshēngjī	phonograph (N)
Bólín	Berlin (PW)	lìyòng	use (TV)
bù-shūfu	uncomfortable; inclined to be disposed (SV)	Lómǎ	Rome (PW)
diànshì	television (N)	Lúndun	London (PW)
fēiděi	must (AV)	Mòsikē	Moscow (PW)
fúdǎo	to coach (V)	Shànghǎi	Shanghai (PW)
gōngshè	commune (N)	shèyuán	commune member (N)
Huáshèng-dùn	Washington (PW)	shūfu	comfortable (SV)
lǐngdǎo	to lead; leader	tàng	(measure for trips)
		xūyào	require, need (TV)

yìqí	together (AD)	zìrán	naturally (AD)
------	---------------	-------	----------------

## Lesson 16

béng	don't (AV)	měilì	beautiful (SV)
bícǐ	mutually, among our- selves (AD)	qíngxíng	situation, condition (N)
bìngqiě	but also (MA)	qíshí	(but) actually, in fact (AD)
chéngjì	record (of achieve- ment) (N)	sànbù	stroll (IV)
fēngjǐng	scenery, view (N)	tǎolùn	discuss (seriously) (TV)
jiǎnzhí(de)	simply, just (AD)	xīnshǎng	admire, enjoy (TV)
kǎishuǐ	boiled water (N)	yùbei	prepare (TV)
lái huí	back and forth (AD)	zhāodài	entertain (IV)
liáoliao	discuss casually, chat about (TV)	zhāodàishì	reception room (N)
liūda	take a stroll	zuì jìn	most recently (AD)

## Lesson 17

chūmíng	famous (SV)	kě	thirsty (SV)
dāngshí	at that time (MA)	lěng	cold (SV)
diū	lose (TV)	liángkuai	cool (SV)
duō	(measure for single flowers)	línhūn	divorce (IV)
è	hungry (SV)	píng	bottle (N)
fēng	wind (N)	píngzi	bottle (N)
gànmá?	why? what for?	qìhou	climate (N)
guā	blow (IV)	rè	hot (SV)
guā fēng	the wind blows	shū	lose (IV)
háojǐ	good many (NU)	xià xuě	it is snowing
hǎoxiàng	seem as if	xià yǔ	it is raining
huār	flower (N)	xuě	snow (N)
káfēi	coffee (N)	yǔ	rain (N)

## Lesson 19

biǎndòu	string beans (N)	lìzi	chestnut (N)
bízi	nose (N)	lóbo	turnips (N)
bōcài	spinach (N)	méimao	eyebrow (N)
bózi	neck (N)	mógu	mushroom (N)
chāzi	fork (N)	pánzi	(large) plate (N)
chízi	spoon (N)	píngguǒ	apple (N)
chúzi	cook (N)	pútao	grapes (N)
dāozi	knife (N)	qíncai	celery (N)
dàshifu	cook (N)	sháor	spoon (N)
diézi	(small) plate (N)	shìzi	persimmon (N)
dōngsǔn	bamboo shoots (N)	shǒu	hand (N) (zhǐ)
dòuyár	beansprouts (N)	suàn	garlic (N)
ěrduo	ear (N)	tóufa	hair (on head) (N) (gēr)
gēbei	arm (N)	tuǐ	leg (N) (tiáo)
guā	melon (N)	wāndòu	peas (N)
huánggua	cucumber (N)	xiāngjiāo	banana (N)
huāshēng	peanuts (N)	xuědòu	snow peas (N)
hújiāo- miànr	(ground) pepper (N)	yán	salt (N)
jiāng	ginger (N)	yǎnjing	eye(s) (N)
jiǎo	foot (N) (zhǐ)	yáng	sheep (N) (zhǐ)
jīdàn	eggs (N)	zuǐ	mouth (N)
júzi	orange (N)		

## Lesson 20

bàn	manage, do (V)	gǎnkuài	hurry up (and do something) (AV)
bìxū	necessary (SV)	gàojià	ask for leave <u>or</u> time off (IV)
bùguǎn	no matter, don't care	hūrán	suddenly (AD)
fāngbian	convenient (SV)	jiǎ	false (SV)
fǎnzhèng	anyway, anyhow (MA)	juédìng	decide (V)
fēicháng	extremely (AD)		
gǎn	dare (AV)		

kěxí	too bad, it's a pity (that)	mà	scold, abuse (TV)
líng	zero	pèifu	admire (TV)
lìngwài	separately, extra (MA)	xìngkuāi	fortunately (MA)
liúli	fluent (SV)	xiūxi	rest (V)
		yǐwéi	think (wrongly) that (V)

## Lesson 21

bāozi	stuffed steamed bread (N)	guāzǎo	melon seeds (N)
bǐng	cake (N)	kètīng	living room (N)
bǐnggān	cookies (N) (kuài)	mántou	steamed bread (N)
chàng	sing (V)	miànbāo	bread (N)
chōu yān	smoke (VO)	pángbiān	side (PW)
chuáng	bed (N) (zhāng)	pǔtōng	ordinary (SV)
chuānghu	window (N)	tàiyang	sun (N)
chúfáng	kitchen (N)	tiān	heaven (N)
dàjiā	everybody (present)	wòfáng	bedroom (N) (jiān)
dàngāo	cake (N)	xīngxīng	star (N)
dī	low (SV)	yīfu	clothes (N)
dì	earth (N)	yīshang	clothes (N)
gē, gē	song (N)	yuèbing	moon-cakes (N)
		yuèliang	moon (N)

## Lesson 22

báihuà	colloquial language (N)	cǎo zì	grass characters, cursive writing (N)
báihuàwén	vernacular literature (N)	dáying	agree (to), answer affirmatively (TV)
bàogào	report (N)	fānchéng	translate into (V)
bèi	memorize, recite by heart (TV)	fāngyán	dialect (N)
biǎo	table, chart (N)	fānyì	translate (TV)
		fēnbié	difference (N)

gēnběn	fundamentally (MA)	qiángdiào	intonation (N)
guóyǔ	national language (N)	shàngxiàwén	context (N)
huì	meeting (N)	tǔhuà	dialect, patois (N)
huídá	answer (V)	wénzhāng	essay, article (N)
jiángyǎn	lecture (N, V)	wèntí	problem (N)
jù	according to (CV)	wényán	literary language (N)
kāi huì	open a meeting (VO)	xíng shū	Running Hand (N)
kǎi shū	regular characters (N)	yánjiǎng	lecture (N, V)
kóuyǔ	spoken language (N)	yìjian	view(s) (N)

## Lesson 23

bànyè	midnight (TW)	nào	be noisy, make a noise, disturb (V)
bùhǎoyìsi	embarrassed, diffident (SV)	nǚlì	hard-working (SV)
chūntiān	spring (season) (TW)	pī	(measure for horses)
dàlù	continent, mainland (N)	qiūtiān	fall (season) (TW)
dàodǐ	after all (MA)	rènao	bustling, full of life (SV)
dōngtiān	winter (TW)	shàng	morning (TW)
gǎndòng	be moved (V)	bàntiān	
jiěfàng	liberate (V)	wǎn bàn-	late afternoon (TW)
kèfú	overcome (V)	tiān	
kuàihuo	happy (SV)	xià bàn-	afternoon (TW)
kuàilè	happy (SV)	tiān	
lóng	dragon (N) (tiáo)	xiàtiān	summer (TW)
mǎ	horse (N) (pī)	xǔ	permit (TV)
nánguò	saddened, depressed (SV)	zháojí	nervous, upset (SV)
		zhǔn	permit (TV)

## INDEX OF PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

(Numbers in parentheses refer to pages)

### Unit I

- Lesson 1. I. The Unaspirated-Aspirated Contrast (8)  
II. Contrasts in Tones (8)  
III. Combinations of Tones (8)  
IV. Changes in Third Tones (9)  
V. Intonation Contrast (9)
- Lesson 2. I. The e-en, e-eng Contrast (18)  
II. Lip-rounding versus No Lip-rounding (18)
- Lesson 3. I. Non-Palatals versus Palatals (30)  
II. The i-in, i-ing Contrast (30)
- Lesson 4. I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Sibilants (41)  
II. Practice on Initial r (41)
- Lesson 5. I. Contrast of Retroflexes and Palatals (52)  
II. Some Sibilant-Retroflex-Palatal Contrasts (52)
- Lesson 6. I. Review of the Four Tones (57)  
II. Review of the Neutral Tone (57)

### Unit II

- Lesson 7. I. The i-ü Contrast (80)  
II. The ie-üe Contrast (80)  
III. The in-ün Contrast (80)
- Lesson 8. I. The u-ü Contrast (98)  
II. The un-ün Contrast (99)  
III. The uan-üan Contrast (99)
- Lesson 9. I. Contrast of "i" after Retroflexes and "i" after Sibilants (115)  
II. Contrast of "i" and i (115)
- Lesson 10. I. Contrast of "i" and e after Retroflexes (132)  
II. Contrast of "i" and e after Sibilants (132)
- Lesson 11. I. The Tone-Toneless Contrast (148)  
II. Tonal Shifts in Stressed bù and yī (149)

- Lesson 12. I. Review of Two-Syllable Combinations (154)  
 II. Review of "i" and i (155)

## Unit III

- Lesson 13. I. The in-ian-an Contrast (182)  
 II. The ou-uo Contrast (182)  
 III. Contrast between h and Zero Initial (183)
- Lesson 14. I. Contrasts in ui (212)  
 II. Contrasts in iu and you (212)  
 III. Contrasts in Stress (213)  
 IV. Contrasts in Juncture (213)
- Lesson 15. I-IV. Suffixed r (235)
- Lesson 16. Contrast of Initials in Two-Syllable Pairs (263)
- Lesson 17. I. Contrast of Finals in Two-Syllable Pairs (287)  
 II. Tonal Shifts in Three-Syllable Expressions (288)
- Lesson 18. Review of Three-Syllable Expressions (295)

## Unit IV

- Lesson 19. Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (I) (328)
- Lesson 20. Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (II) (349)
- Lesson 21. Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (III) (370)
- Lesson 22. Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (IV) (392)
- Lesson 23. Review of Four-Syllable Expressions (V) (414)
- Lesson 24. I. Sentences Distinguished Only by Context (422)  
 II. Sentences Distinguished by Tonal Contrasts (422)



GLOSSARY AND INDEX

Items both in Vocabularies (V) and in Notes (N) are included here. References after each item are to lesson and section. The notation 4V, for example, refers to the Vocabulary of Lesson 4; 4N3 refers to Lesson 4, Note 3. Notations preceded by S refer to Vocabulary and Notes of the Supplementary Lessons.

Entries are arranged alphabetically by syllables. Thus jǐzhu (jǐ + zhu) precedes jìn.

The following abbreviations designate Chinese parts of speech:

AD	Adverb	NU	Number
AV	Auxiliary verb	PR	Pronoun
CV	Coverb	PW	Place word
EV	Equational verb	RV	Resultative verb
IV	Intransitive verb	SP	Specifier
M	Measure	SV	Stative verb
MA	Movable adverb	TV	Transitive verb
N	Noun	V	Verb
		VO	Verb-Object

a (question particle) 1V, 1N14

abbreviated forms 4N2

abbreviations 10N9

adverbs 1N12, 7N4, 8N3, 10N2

àirén husband, wife, fiancée; lover  
(N) S1N1, 16V, 16N

aspect 13N1-9, 19N6

auxiliary verbs 2N9, 7N4

bā eight (NU) 4V

bǎ take (CV) 16V, 16N10, 17N7,  
20N2

ba (final particle) 2V, 2N7, 5N8

bái white (also, a surname) (SV) 1V;  
uselessly (AD) 21N4

bǎi hundred (NU) 14V, 14N7

báicài cabbage (N) 19V

bàifāng make a call on (someone) (TV)  
11V; S11N1

bàn half (M) 11V

bāngzhu help (TV) 21V

bǎo full, satiated (SV) 19V, 19N9

bēi cup (M, N) 17V, 17N8

běi north (PW) 7V

Běi-Dà Peking University 10N9

běifāng the north, northern region (PW)  
20V

Běijīng Peking (PW) 23N5

Běijīng Dàxué Peking University 10N9

bēizi cup (N) 17V, 17N8

bēn volume, copy (M) 3V, 3N4, 4N4

bèn stupid (SV) 13V

běnzi notebook (N) 4V

bǐ pen, pencil (N) 3V

bǐ compare (TV); compared to (CV)  
10V, 10N1, 17V

bǐ must, have to (AV) 15V

bǐděi must, have to (AV) 15V, 15N14;  
S15N2

bǐfāng example (N) 22V, 22N12

bǐfāng shuō for example 22N12

bǐjiào, bǐjiào relatively (AD) 21V

bixíng my surname is . . . 13N16

bìxū must, have to (AV) S15V, 15N2

biyè graduate (IV) 13V

biān, biār side (PW) 7V; S7N1

biàn-fàn plain food (N) 19V

biāo watch (N) 13V

bīng sick (SV); sickness (N) 15V

bié don't (AV) 16V

bié(de) other 15V

bù, bú, bu not, no (AD) 2V, 7N4,  
13N7, 14N6

bù (measure for movies, sets of books)  
20V

bù-bǐ don't have to 15N14

- bú-cuò not bad 16 N 18  
 búdàn not only, not merely (MA) 16 V  
 bùdéliǎo awfully 17 V, 17 N 10, 19 N 12  
 bùfen section, part, member (M) 22 V  
 bùgǎndāng (I'm) not equal to the honor,  
 I don't deserve it 23 V, 23 N 12;  
 S 23 N 2  
 bùrán otherwise (MA) 21 V  
 bú(-shi) . . . jiù(-shi) either . . . or  
 19 N 3
- cāi guess (that), figure out (TV) 20 V  
 cái (only) then, not until then (AD)  
 15 V, 15 N 13, 20 N 1  
 cài dish, course; vegetable (N) 19 V,  
 19 N 14  
 calendar years 11 N 7  
 cāntíng cafeteria (N) 23 V  
 cér word (N) 22 N 4  
 chá tea (N) 17 V  
 chà differ, fall short, lack (TV) 10 V,  
 10 N 5  
 chàbuduō almost 10 V  
 cháng long (SV) 21 V  
 cháng often (AD) 11 V  
 chāng (measure for movies) 20 V  
 chángchū advantage (N) 22 N 5  
 chǎo sauté, fry (TV) 19 V  
 chǎo báicài fried cabbage 19 N 15  
 chǎo dòufu fried beancurd 19 N 15  
 characters 22 N 4  
 chē vehicle (N) 9 V  
 chéng city (N) 7 V  
 chī eat (TV) 5 V  
 choice-type questions 2 N 4  
 chū exit from (TV) 16 V  
 chū (noun suffix) 22 N 5  
 chúle except for (MA) 19 V, 19 N 5  
 chuán boat, ship (N) 11 V  
 cí word (N) 22 V  
 cì time, occasion (M) 11 V, 11 N 4,  
 15 N 8  
 clock hours 5 N 6  
 combining forms 17 N 8, 22 N 5  
 comparison 10 N 1, 3, 6  
 compass directions 7 N 14  
 compound descriptive phrases 8 N 1  
 compound verbs 16 N 6-8, 19 N 7  
 cóng from (CV) 9 V, 9 N 2-5  
 cōngmíng clever, bright, intelligent  
 (SV) 13 V  
 cōngqián formerly (TW) 17 V  
 conjunctions 11 N 5  
 coordinate expressions 1 N 18, 10 N 7, 12  
 countries, names of 2 N 1
- coverbs 7 N 2-4, 9, 8 N 3-4, 9 N 1-5,  
 10 N 1, 14 N 1, 15 N 16, 16 N 10-11  
 cù vinegar (N) 19 V  
 cuò wrong, mistaken (CV) 16 V, 16 N 18
- dǎ hit (TV); from (CV) 20 V, 20 N 3  
 dà big (SV) 7 V, 10 N 6; much (AD)  
 21 N 4  
 dǎ diànhuà call on the phone 20 N 3  
 dǎ mén knock on the door (VO) 20 N 3  
 dàgài likely, probably, in all probabili-  
 ty, approximately (MA) 20 V  
 dǎkai open (RV) 20 V, 20 N 3  
 dǎsuan plan to (V) 21 V  
 dàxué college, university (N) 8 V  
 dài wear (TV); also, a surname 13 V  
 dài carry, take along (TV) 23 V  
 dān, dār list, bill (N) 21 V  
 dāngrán naturally, of course (MA) 15 V  
 dào go to (TV); arrive at (IV); to (CV);  
 9 V, 9 N 1, 3, 5; (postverb) 16 N 8  
 dé get, attain (TV) 23 V, 23 N 10  
 de (subordinating particle) 5 V, 5 N 2-  
 5, 7 N 5, 7, 14 N 10, 16 N 13; (after  
 stative verbs) 17 N 10; (in subordinate  
 clauses) 14 N 2, 4; (in expressions of  
 manner) 10 N 2; (in resultative verbs)  
 14 N 6  
 de-duō by much 10 N 1  
 de-shíhou when 13 N 11  
 definite object 16 N 10  
 definite references 7 N 9  
 déle O.K., enough 23 N 10  
 děi must, have to (AV) 15 V, 15 N 14,  
 19 N 1; S 15 N 2  
 děng wait (for) (V) 17 V  
 dì (ordinalizing prefix) (SP) 11 V  
 dìdi younger brother (N) 10 V  
 dìfang place, space (N) 15 V  
 dìtú map (N) 4 V  
 diǎn dot, hour (of the clock) (M) 5 V,  
 5 N 6  
 diànchē streetcar (N) 9 V  
 diànhuà telephone (N) 20 V  
 diànyǐng motion picture, movie (N)  
 13 V  
 diànyǐngyuàn movie theater (N) 20 V  
 diǎnxīn dessert, pastry, cakes (N) 21 V  
 diār a little 10 N 1, 19 N 1  
 directive verbs 16 N 2, 4, 20 N 2  
 disjunctive questions 7 N 12, 8 N 6  
 disparity 17 N 2-6  
 distance 8 N 3-5  
 dōng east (PW) 7 V  
 dǒng understand (TV) 14 V

- Dōngběi Manchuria (PW) 7 V, 7 N11  
 Dōngfāng Orient, the East 23 V  
 Dōngfāng Hóng The East is Red S23 N1  
 Dōngjīng Tokyo 23 N5  
 Dōngshēng 'East Born' 10 N10  
 dōngxì (concrete) thing, object (N) 15 V  
 dōu all, both, entirely (AD) 1 V, 7 N7, 16 N11, 19 N4, 21 N2, 23 N1  
 dòufu bean curd (N) 19 V  
 doubling see reduplication  
 duǎn short (SV) 22 V  
 duǎnchū disadvantage, shortcoming (N) 22 V, 22 N5  
 duì correct (SV) 8 V; (postverb) 20 N4  
 duì (facing) toward, to, regarding (CV) 14 V, 14 N1  
 duìbuqǐ sorry, excuse me 21 V  
 duō numerous, many, much (SV); -odd 8 V, 8 N7, 10 N1, 19 N1  
 duó(mo)? how? to what degree? (AD) 8 V, 8 N7  
 duōshao? how many? how much? 3 V, 3 N9, 14  
 duration of time 15 N3-7  
 enumerative comma 1 N18  
 equational verbs 2 N3  
 èr two (NU) 3 V, 3 N9, 14  
 érqiě but, also (MA) 16 V  
 fā put out, emit (TV) 22 V  
 fā method, way (N) 22 N5  
 fā yīn pronounce 22 V  
 fāyīn pronunciation (N) 22 V  
 fāzi method, plan (N) 16 V  
 fàn rice, food (N) 5 V  
 fānguǎn restaurant (N) 19 V  
 fāng region, part (N) 20 V  
 fāng put (TV) 21 V  
 fāngfǎ method, technique (N) 14 V, 22 N5  
 fāngjià have vacation (IV) 20 V  
 fāngmian side, aspect (M) 23 V  
 fāngzi house (N) 7 V  
 fēijī airplane (N) 11 V  
 fēijīchǎng airport, airfield 23 V  
 fēn part, cent (M) 4 V, 4 N7  
 fēn (measure for minutes) 10 V  
 fēn tenth 14 N13  
 fēng (measure for letters) 23 V  
 free forms 22 N5  
 fùjìn vicinity (PW) 20 V  
 fùqīn father (N) 10 V  
 fùshang (your) residence (N) 11 V; S11 N1  
 full forms 4 N2  
 fúwùyuán attendant, waiter (N) S21 V, 21 N1  
 gāi should, ought to (AV) 15 V, 15 N15  
 gǎn to feel (emotion) (V) S14 V, 14 N1  
 gǎn xìngqù be interested (in) S14V, 14N1  
 gāngbǐ steel pen (i.e. fountain pen, ball point, etc.) (N) 4 V  
 gāng(cái) just (now), just a moment ago (AD) 21 V  
 gāo tall, high(also, a surname) (SV) 1 V  
 gào su inform (TV) 11 V  
 gāoxìng be happy (SV) 20 V  
 gāozhōng higher middle school (N) 13 V  
 gē (general measure) 4 V, 4 N3-4  
 gěi give (TV); for, to (CV) 14 V, 14 N1; (suffix) 22 N5; (in passive) 23 N7  
 gēn (together) with (CV) 15 V, 15 N16; S17 N2  
 gèng (still) more (AD) 10 V, 10 N1  
 gōngfū (leisure) time (N) 5 V; S5 N1  
 gōnggòng public 9 V  
 gōngyuán park (N) 7 V  
 gōngzuò work (N/V) S10 V, 10 N2  
 gòu be enough (SV) 17 V, 21 N4  
 gùshi story, narrative 20 V  
 guà hang (TV) 23 V  
 guāi turn (IV) 9 V  
 guānyú concerning, regarding (CV) 22 V  
 Guǎngdōng Canton, Kwangtung Province (PW) 19 V  
 guixíng? What is your name? 2 V; S2 N1  
 guó country, nation (N) 2 V, 2 N1, 4 N9  
 guò (in time expressions) 10 N5  
 guò pass (TV) 9 V  
 guo (verb suffix) 14 V, 14 N5  
 guòjiǎng (you) flatter (me) 19 V; S19 N1  
 guówén Chinese (N) 20 V, 20 N6; S20 N1  
 hái additionally, in addition, still more (AD) 3 V, 7 N12, 10 N1, 15 N2, 19 N5  
 hai (sigh of dejection, regret, etc.) 20 V  
 háishi or 7 V, 7 N12, 8 N6  
 háishi... hǎo better 20 N5  
 háizi child (N) 10 V  
 Hàn China, Chinese (N) 22 V, 22 N14  
 Han Dynasty 22 N13  
 Hànrén Chinese (person) 22 N13  
 Hànyǔ Chinese language 22 N13  
 Hànzì Chinese characters 22 V, 22 N13  
 Hángzhou Hangchow (PW) 16 V  
 hǎo good, well; fine, O.K. (SV) 1 V, 19 N13  
 hǎo (postverb) 19 N10

- hào number; day of the month (M) 9 V, 11 V; (M for bus routes) S9 N2
- hǎo-bu-hǎo? O.K.? 5 N8
- hǎo-jiǔ-bú-jiàn Haven't seen you for a long time 5 V
- hǎo-ma? O.K.? 5 N8
- hǎochu advantage (N) 22 V, 22 N5
- hǎoxiē good many 17 N9
- hē drink (TV) 17 V
- he! Gosh! My! 19 V
- hēi black (SV) 4 V
- hěn very (AD) 1 V, 14 N11, 17 N10
- hóng red (SV) 4 V
- hóng chá black tea 21 N7
- hóng shāo red-cooked (see footnote, p. 313)
- hòu rear (PW) 7 V
- hòu afterwards (AD) 9 V
- hú lake (N) 7 V
- hú pot (N, M) 21 V
- Húběi Hupeh Province (PW) 7 V, 7 N11
- Húnán Hunan Province (PW) 7 V, 7 N11
- huà, huà stroke (M) 22 V
- huà speech, language (N) 2 V
- huà paint, draw (TV) 14 V
- huà quán play 'guess-fingers' (see footnote, p. 273); S17 N1
- huàfǎ way of painting (N) 22 N5
- huānyíng welcome (TV) 13 V
- huàr painting, drawing (N) 14 V
- huí return (to) (TV) 13 V
- huì able to, can (V) 2 V, 8 N8
- huihuà conversation (N) 22 V
- huó live (IV) 14 V
- huǒji waiter, clerk (N) 21 V; S21 N1
- huòzhě or; perhaps (MA) 9 V, 9 N10
- if 19 N3
- imminent action 13 N6
- indefinite reference 7 N9
- inferiority 17 N4
- intensification 13 N15, 14 N10-11
- Japanese (see footnote, p. 380)
- jī chicken (N) 19 V
- jǐ how many? (NU) 3 V, 3 N9
- jì remember, memorize (TV) 22 V, 22 N5
- jīhui opportunity (N) 15 V
- jìe in the extreme, extremely 13 V, 13 N15, 14 N11
- jìxu continue (AV) 23 V
- jiā home, house (SV); (suffix) 23 N3
- jiàn see, meet (TV) 5 V
- jiàn (measure for matters, tasks, etc.) 20 V
- jiǎndān simple, uncomplicated (SV) 8 V
- jiānglái in the future, hereafter (TW) 15 V
- jiàngyóu soy sauce 21 V
- jiāo teach (TV) 15 V
- jiǎo dime (M) S3 V, 3 N1
- jiào be called (IV) 10 V
- jiào (in passive) 23 N7
- jiàoyuán teacher (N) 10 V
- jiàoshòu professor (also, a title) (N) 16 V
- jiǎozi dumplings (N) 21 V
- jiē greet, receive (TV) 20 V
- jiè borrow (TV) 8 V
- jiēhūn marry (IV) 17 V
- jièshào introduce (TV) 16 V
- jìn near (SV) 8 V
- jìn enter (TV) 16 V
- jīnnián this year (TW) 11 V
- jīntian today (TW) 5 V
- jīng capital (N) 23 V, 23 N5
- jīngyan experience (N, V) 21 V
- jiǔ nine (NU) 4 V
- jiǔ wine (N) 17 V
- jiù immediately, then (AD) 10 V, 11 N5, 13 N3, 19 N3
- jiù (with question words) 21 N1
- jiù (with yí) 20 N1
- jiù definitely, indeed, precisely (AD) 5 V
- jiù only, merely (AD) 2 V
- Jiùjīnshān San Francisco (PW) S16 N2
- jiùshi even (MA) 21 V, 21 N2
- jiùshi . . . dōu even if . . . still 21 N2
- jiùshi . . . yě even if . . . still 21 N2
- jiúyǎng Pleased to meet you 16 V; S16 N2
- jù (measure for sentences) 16 V
- juéde have the feeling that (TV) 21 V
- jùzi sentence (N) 22 V
- kāi open (door, etc.), drive (car) (TV) 16 V
- kāishǐ begin (to do) (AV) 15 V
- kàn look at, see, read (TV) 8 V
- kānfǎ way of looking (at something) (N) 22 N5
- kànjian see (TV) 11 V
- kǎo roast (TV) 21 V
- kǎo take or give an examination (in a subject, for a school) (TV) 13 V
- kǎoshì take or give an examination (IV) 13 V

- kè quarter (of an hour) (M) 10 V  
 kè class (N); lesson (M) 13 V  
 kěnéng possible (SV), possibility (N) 23 V  
 kèqi polite, ceremonious, formal (SV) 13 V  
 kèren guest (N) 16 V  
 kěshi however, but (MA) 11 V, 11 N 5, 14 N 10  
 kēxué science (N) 14 V  
 kéyi, kéyi may, can (AV) 5 V, 8 N 8, 19 N 13, 21 N 3  
 'kéyi-bu-kéyi? O.K.? 5 N 8  
 kéyi-ma? O.K.? 5 N 8  
 kǒngpà fear, be afraid of, afraid to (TV) 20 V  
 kǒu, kǒu mouth, opening (N) 9 V  
 kuài fast (SV) 10 V, 19 N 1  
 kuài soon (AD) 21 N 4  
 kuài lump, dollar (M) 3 V, 3 N 4  
 kuàizi chopsticks (N) 19 V  
 kùnnan difficulty, trouble (N) S 22 V, 22 N 1  
 lái come (IV) 9 V, 9 N 1, 6, 15 N 11  
 lái (as postverb) 16 N 2-8, 20 N 2  
 lái bring (TV) 21 N 6  
 lán blue (SV); (also, a surname) 4 V  
 lǎo old (chiefly animate things) (SV) 14 V; S 1 V, 1 N 1  
 lǎo (combined with names) (see footnote, p. 246)  
 lǎo (as adverb) 21 N 4  
 láohu tiger (N) 10 V  
 láojià Sorry to trouble you 23 V, 23 N 13  
 lǎoshī teacher, tutor (N) 23 V, 23 N 4; S 1 V, 1 N 1  
 le (suffix indicating perfective aspect) 13 V, 13 N 1-9, 17; (duration of time) 15 N 5-7; (not used with cái) 15 N 13  
 lèi tired (SV) 23 V  
 lí (separated) from (CV) 8 V, 8 N 3-4  
 lǐ inside (PW) 7 V; (suffix) S 19 N 1  
 lǐ Chinese mile (M) 8 V, 8 N 4  
 líkai leave, depart from (TV) 11 V  
 lìshǐ history (N) 20 V  
 lián even, even including (CV); (also, a surname) 16 V, 16 N 11, 21 N 2  
 liànxì practice, learn how to (TV) 22 V  
 liǎng two, a couple (NU) 3 V, 3 N 10-12  
 liǎo (resultative verb ending) 14 V, 14 N 6  
 liù six (NU) 4 V  
 location 7 N 1. See also place words  
 lù dew (N) 17 V  
 lù road (N) 7 V, 7 N 10, 8 N 4; (M for bus routes) S 9 N 2  
 lù record, make a recording of (TV) 15 V  
 lù-yīn record (sound) (VO) 15 V  
 lùyīn recording (N) 15 V  
 lùyīnjī (tape) recorder (N) 15 V  
 lǔxíng travel (IV) 16 V  
 ma (question particle) 1 V, 1 N 13  
 mā (one's own) mother 16 V, 16 N 15  
 máfan cause trouble to, disturb (TV); troublesome (SV) 13 V  
 mǎshàng immediately 23 V  
 mǎi buy (TV) 3 V  
 mài sell; sell for (TV) 3 V, 3 N 18  
 màigei sell to 22 N 5  
 màipiàoyuán ticket seller (N) 10 V; S 10 N 1  
 màn slow (SV) 10 V, 19 N 1, 21 N 4  
 máng busy (SV) 13 V  
 manner of actions 10 N 2-4, 19 N 1  
 manners, Chinese 13 N 16  
 máo hair, feather, dime (N) (also, a surname) 3 V, 3 N 12  
 máobǐ Chinese writing brush (N) 3 V  
 me (particle indicating obviousness) 20 V, 20 N 8  
 measures 3 N 2-3, 5-6, 4 N 3, 15 N 2, 22 N 3  
 méi not (AD) 4 V, 13 N 7, 10, 17 N 4, 21 N 3  
 měi beautiful (SV) 16 N 14  
 měi each, every (M) 8 V  
 méiguī rose (N) 17 V  
 Méiguī Lù Rose Dew (note, p. 273)  
 Měiguó America, the United States (PW) 2 V, 2 N 1  
 mèimei younger sister (N) 10 V  
 Měiyīng (girl's name) 16 N 14  
 men/r (pluralizing suffix with pronouns) 1 V; (with nouns) 23 N 2  
 mén door, gate (N) 9 V  
 miàn noodles (N) 21 V  
 míngbai understand (TV) 17 V  
 míngnian next year (TW) 23 V  
 míngtian tomorrow (TW) 9 V  
 míngzǐ name (N) 10 V, 10 N 10  
 modification 5 N 1-5  
 mòshuǐ ink (N) 4 V  
 movable adverbs 9 N 9  
 multiplication table 4 N 6  
 mǔqīn mother (N) 10 V  
 nǎ which? (SP) 3 V, 3 N 19

- nǎ hold, grasp, carry, take (TV) 16 V  
 nà that (SP) 3 V, 3 N7, 3 N19  
 nágei give to (V) 22 N5  
 nǎlǐ where? (QW) S19 N1  
 nàlǐ there (PW) S19 N1  
 nǎlǐ, nǎlǐ you flatter me S19 N1  
 nàme see nènmo  
 nǎzhu hold firmly (TV) 22 N5  
 Nakayama (Japanese surname) (see footnote, p. 380)  
 names 10 N10-11, 16 N14 (note, p. 380)  
 nán south (PW) 7 V  
 nán difficult (SV) 8 V  
 nán male 10 V  
 nánchu difficulty (N) 22 V, 22 N5; S22 N1  
 nánfāng the South, southern region 20 V  
 Nánjīng Nanking 23 N5  
 nǎr? where? (PW) 5 V, 16 N12  
 nǎrde huà not at all 23 N13  
 ne (question particle) 1 V, 1 N15  
 ne (with disjunctive questions) 7 N12  
 ne (with question words) 9 N8  
 ne (showing continuation) 3 N17, 19 V2, 22 N11  
 negation 13 N7-8, 17 N4, 19 N3-4  
 nǎi which? (SP) 3 V, 3 N19  
 nài that (SP) 3 V, 3 N7, 3 N19  
 nàiren (one's own) wife (N) 16 V, 16 N16  
 néng able to (AD) 8 V, 8 N8  
 nènmo, nàme in that case (MA); so, that (AD) 15 V, 15 N18, 17 N4  
 nèr there (PW) 3 V  
 nǐ you (PR) 1 V  
 niàn study, read (aloud) (TV) 8 V, 13 N14  
 nián year (M) 11 V  
 niànfǎ way of reading or studying (N) 22 N5  
 niánjí year of school (M) 13 V  
 nín you (singular, polite form) (PR) 1 V; S1 N1  
 niú cow, ox (N) 19 V  
 niú ròu tāng beef soup 19 N6  
 Niùyue New York (PW) 15 V  
 nouns 1 N2, 3 N2, 4-6, 3 N11, 7 N5-7, 9, 10 N7, 14 N2, 4, 15 N2  
 nouns, omission of 3 N11, 4 N7  
 nuǎnhuo warm (SV) 17 V  
 numbers 3 N1-2, 4 N5-6, 10 N8, 12, 11 N7, 17 N7  
 nǚ female 10 V  
 objects 10 N4, 11 N3, 14 N8, 15 N4, 16 N4, 6, 10-11, 13, 19 N7  
 or 3 N13  
 pà fear, be afraid of (V) 20 V  
 pào run (IV) 10 V  
 parts of speech 1 N1, 3 N2, 15 N2, 22 N7  
 passive 23 N7  
 péngyou friend (N) 5 V  
 piǎnzi reel, movie (N) 20 V  
 piào ticket (N) 10 V  
 piàoliang attractive, elegant, beautiful (SV) 16 V  
 pīn spell(out), write in alphabetic script (TV) 22 V  
 pīnyīn alphabetic writing, transcription, spelling, pīnyīn (N) 22 V, footnote, p. 380  
 píng'ān peaceful, at peace, pacific, safe (SV) 23 V  
 place names 7 N11  
 place words 7 N1, 5-8, 11  
 plural 23 N2  
 postverbs 16 N2-7, 20 N2, 4  
 potential form (of resultative verbs) 14 N6  
 pronouns 1 N2-3, 10  
 qī seven (NU) 4 V  
 qìchē motor vehicle (N) 9 V  
 qíguài amazing, amazed (SV) 10 V  
 qǐlái get up (IV) 20 V, 20 N2  
 qiān thousand (NU) 14 V, 14 N7  
 qián money (N) (also, a surname) 2 V, 3 N11, 4 N7  
 qián front (PW) V7, 23 N16  
 qiānbǐ pencil (N) 4 V  
 qiánnián year before last (TW) 23 N16  
 qiántian day before yesterday (TW) 23 V, 23 N16  
 qīng light (in weight) (SV) 22 V  
 qǐng invite, request, ask, please (TV) 2 V  
 qǐng-wèn? May I ask? 2 V  
 qǐngzhòngyīn stress 22 N10  
 qù go (IV) 9 V, 9 N1, 15 N11  
 qù (as postverb) 16 N2-8  
 qùnian last year (TW) 11 V  
 quán fist (N) 17 V  
 quán the whole 21 V  
 questions 2 N4-6, 7 N12, 8 N6, 13 N9  
 question particles 1 N13, 15  
 question words 3 N8-9  
 question words as indefinites 16 N12, 21 N1  
 r (suffix) 22 N2-3, 7  
 ràng let, request (TV); by (CV) 23 V, 23 N6-7  
 reduplication 11 N6, 22 N2-3, 8  
 relative time 13 N11  
 rén person, man, people (N) 2 V

- rènshi recognize, acquainted with (TV) 11V  
 repetition of verbs 19N6  
 resultative verbs 14N6, 16N7, 9,  
 19N8-10, 20N4  
 Riběn Japan (PW) 11V  
 róngyì easy (SV) 8V  
 ròu meat (N) 19V  
 rúguǒ if (MA) 11V, 11N5, 19N3
- sān three (NU) 3V  
 Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn Three Friends Book-  
 store (see footnote, p. 138)  
 Sānfánshì San Francisco (PW) 15V  
 school system 10N8  
 sentences without verbs 3N15  
 separation 8N3-5  
 shān hill, mountain (N) 7V  
 Shāndōng Shantung Province (PW) 7V  
 shānshuǐ scenery, landscape (N) 16V  
 Shānxī Shansi Province (PW) 7V  
 shàng top (PW) 7V  
 shàng ascend, go to (TV); to (CV) 9V,  
 13N13, 16N5  
 shàng last 13N14  
 shàngwǔ forenoon (TW) 23N8  
 shāo roast, braise (V) 19V  
 shǎo few, scarce, rare (SV) 8V,  
 19N1  
 sharing 8N2, 9N7  
 shéi? who? 5V, 16N12  
 shēng sound, tone (N) 22V, 22N10  
 shēng be born (IV); give birth to (TV)  
 17V  
 shèng(xia) have left over, be left over  
 (V) 21V  
 shēngyīn noise, sound (N) 22V  
 shénmo?, shénme? what? 3V, 3N14,  
 16N12  
 shí ten (NU) 4V  
 shì affair, matter, work (N) 10V  
 shì be, am, is, are (EV) 2V, 2N3  
 shì (in concessive construction) 19N6  
 shì (in disjunctive questions) 7N12,  
 8N6, 20N5  
 shì (joining verbal phrases) 16N17  
 shì (stressed) 15N17  
 shì (in N shi V de) 14N9  
 shì (as suffix) 21N5  
 shì (in 'if' clauses) 19N3  
 shì...de 11N2, 14N9, 16N13  
 shífēn very (AD) 14V, 14N13  
 shíhou(r) time (calendar or clock) (N)  
 5V, 13N11  
 shíjiān (period of) time S5V, SN1  
 shìqīng matter, affair, business (N)  
 20V  
 shǐzi lion (N) 19V  
 shǐzi tóu lion's head (see footnote, p.  
 311)  
 shōushi straighten up, put in order,  
 pack (TV) 23V  
 shòu sell (V) S10N1  
 shòupiàoyuán ticket-seller S10V, 10N1  
 shū book (N) 3V  
 shūdiàn bookstore (N) 9V  
 shùxué mathematics 20V  
 shuǐ water (N) 16V  
 shuō speak, talk, say (TV) 2V  
 shuōbudìng unable to say for sure, per-  
 haps 23N15  
 shuōfā way of speaking or saying (N)  
 22N5  
 sì four (NU) 3V  
 similarity 17N1-6  
 sìshēng (four) tones 22N10  
 sòng escort, send, give (TV) 22V  
 sònggei give to (V) 22N5  
 specifiers 3N7, 14N3  
 split-choice-type questions 2N5  
 stative verbs 1N11, 8N1, 3, 10N2,  
 14N9, 11, 13N4, 17N1, 10, 19N1,  
 21N4, 22N2  
 stress 2N6, 7N13, 11N2, 14N11,  
 15N17  
 Sūzhou Soochow 16V  
 suān sour (SV) 19V  
 suàn reckon, calculate (TV) 21V  
 subject 1N19, 16N11  
 subordination 5N1-5, 14N2  
 suǐ year (of age) (M) 10V  
 suǐbiàn as you please, any way one likes  
 (MA) 19V, 19N13  
 suǐrán although (MA) 11V, 11N5  
 Sun Yatsen 7N10, footnote, p. 380  
 suǒ, suǒr (measure for buildings) 7V  
 suóyì therefore (MA) 13V  
 suóyóude all (before nouns) 16V  
 surnames 1N4-7  
 syllables 1N17, 22N5
- tā he, she, him, her (PR) 1V  
 tāmen (as summarizing expression)  
 7N7  
 tài too, excessively (AD) 8V, 14N10-  
 11  
 tàitai married lady (N); Mrs. 1V,  
 2N2, 16N16; S1N1  
 tán converse, talk (IV) 10V  
 tāng soup (N) 19V  
 táng sugar (N) 19V  
 táng cù yú sweet-and-sour fish 19N15  
 tèbié special (SV) 19V  
 telephone style of numbers 11N7  
 tense 15N3-7

- tí carry, lift, bring (up), mention (TV) 20 V
- tímu topic, problem 20 V
- tiān day (M) 8 V, 13 N13
- tián sweet (SV) 19 V
- tián suān yú sweet-and-sour fish 19 N15
- tiānqì weather (N) 17 V
- tiāntáng heaven (N) 16 V
- tiáo (measure for roads) 7 V
- time 10 N5, 11 N1
- time, relative 13 N7
- time words 5 N7, 15 N4
- times, number of 15 N8
- tīng listen (to) (TV) 14 V
- tīngshuō hear (it said) that (TV) 14 V
- titles 1 N7, 2 N2
- tones 1 N10, 3 N14, 8 N7, 22 N2, 8
- tóngshí at the same time 22 V
- tóngzhì comrade (N) S10 V, 10 N1
- topic and comment 14 N8
- tóu head (N) 19 V; (suffix) S7 N1
- tou (substantive suffix) 7 V
- transitive verbs 1 N9, 8 N1
- transformations 16 N13, 21 N3, 23 N7
- túshūguǎn library (N) 8 V
- two 3 N9
- verbal expressions 8 N6
- verbs 1 N8, 3 N2, 3 N16, 10 N2, 4, 13 N1-6, 8-10, 14 N8, 16 N1
- voice 14 N8
- wài outside (PW) 7 V
- wai Hello! 5 V
- wàiguó foreign country (PW) 3 V
- wán finished, completed, done (TV) 15 V
- wǎn late (SV) 13 V
- wǎn bowl, cup (N, M) 21 V
- wàn ten thousand, myriad (NU) 14 V
- wǎnfàn dinner (N) 11 V
- wǎnshàng evening (TW) 5 V
- wáng king (N) (also, a surname) 2 V
- wàng, wǎng toward (CV) 9 V, 9 N4
- wàng forget (V) 13 V
- wár amuse oneself (with), play (with) (TV) 15 V
- Warring Kingdom Period 17 N11
- wèi (polite measure for persons) 5 V
- wèi shénme? why? 17 V
- wěiba tail footnote, p. 134
- wén language, literature (N) 4 V
- wèn inquire, ask (TV) 2 V
- wénfǎ grammar (N) 22 V, 22 N14
- wénhuà culture, civilization (N) 23 V
- Wénshān 'Literature Mountain' 10 N10, footnote, p. 336
- wèntí problem, question, theme (N) 22 V
- wénxué literature (N) 8 V
- wǒ I, me (PR) 1 V
- words 1 N17
- wǔ five (NU) 3 V
- wǔ noon (TW) 23 V, 23 N8
- wǔfàn lunch (N) 23 N8
- xī west (PW) 7 V
- Xī Shǐ (name of a person) footnote, p. 271
- xǐhuan like, like to (V) 8 V
- xīwang hope (N, V) 11 V
- xiā shrimp (N) 21 V
- xià bottom, below (PW) 7 V
- xià next 13 N14
- xià descend (TV) 9 V
- xiārér (shelled) shrimp (N) 21 V
- xiàwǔ afternoon (TW) 23 N8
- xiān first (AD) 9 V
- xiānsheng gentleman, husband, Mr. (N) 1 V, 2 N2; S1 N1
- xiànzài now (TW) 5 V
- xiǎng think (of), think to, plan to (V) 5 V
- xiàng resemble (TV) 17 V, 17 N4; S17 N2
- xiàng such as 19 N11
- xiǎo small (SV) 7 V, 10 N6; S1 V, 1 N1
- xiào laugh at (V) 23 V
- xiǎode know (V) S7 V, 7 N2
- xiǎofèi tip (N) 21 V; S21 N2
- xiàohuà(r) joke (N) 23 V
- xiáojie young (unmarried) lady, daughter (N); Miss 1 V; S1 N1
- xiǎoshí hour (N/M) S15 V, 15 N1
- xiǎoxué elementary school (N) 10 V, 10 N8
- xiē few (M) 17 V, 17 N9
- xiě write (TV) 8 V
- xiéǎ way of writing (N) 22 N5
- xièxie thank (TV); thanks 1 V
- xìn letter (N) 14 V
- xīng have such-and-such a name, be called, be named (EV) 2 V, 10 N10
- xíngli baggage (N) 23 V
- xīngqī week (N) 13 V, 13 N12
- xìngqu interest (in) (N) 14 V, 14 N15; S14 N1
- xīngrér almond (N) 21 V
- xīngrér chá almond tea 21 N7
- xǔ permit; (a surname) S19 V



- xué study (TV) 8 V  
 xuéfǎ way of studying (N) 22 N5  
 xuésheng student (N) 8 V  
 xuéwen learning, scholarship (N) 16 V  
 xuéxí study (N/V) S 8 V, 8 N1  
 xuéxiào school (N) 13 V
- yā(zì) duck (N) 21 V  
 yǎn act (in), put on (a performance)  
 (TV) 20 V  
 yánjiū study, make a study of, investi-  
 gate (TV); study, research (N) 14 V  
 yánse color (N) 4 V  
 yānyuán actor (N) 20 V  
 yàng kind (M) 17 V  
 yào want (to), order (V) 3 V, 19 N14  
 yàoburán otherwise (MA) 21 V  
 yàoǐn important (SV) 23 V  
 yě also, too (AD) 1 V, 14 N14, 15 N12,  
 16 N19, 19 N4-5, 21 N2  
 yě (with lián) 16 N11  
 yě (with jiùshi) 21 N2  
 yě yet 19 N4  
 yéxǔ probably (MA) S 9 V, 9 N1  
 yī one (NU) 3 V, 3 N15, 11 N6  
 yī whole of 23 N1  
 yí, yí as soon as 20 V, 20 N1  
 yī...cái as soon as... then 20 N1  
 yī...jiù as soon as... then 20 N1  
 yìdiǎr a little 10 V, 10 N1, 16 N19, 19 N1  
 yídìng be certain (SV) 11 V  
 yìgòng altogether, in all (MA) 3 V  
 yìhuěr a moment (TW) 14 V  
 yìhòu after, afterwards (TW) 13 V,  
 13 N11  
 yǐjīng already (AD) 13 V  
 yíkuài together 15 V  
 yílù-píng'ān Bon voyage! 22 N11  
 yǐqián before, formerly 13 V, 13 N11  
 yìsi meaning (N) 11 V  
 yìwài except for 19 V, 19 N5  
 yíyàng same (SV) 17 V, 17 N2-3, 5; S17 N2  
 yìzhí(de) straight (AD) 9 V  
 yīn sound (N) 22 V  
 yīnjié syllable (N) 22 V  
 yīnwei because, since (MA) 13 V  
 yíng win (TV) 17 V  
 Yīng-Měi British-American 4 N2  
 yīngdāng should, ought to (AV) 15 V,  
 15 N15  
 yīnggāi should, ought to (AV) 15 V,  
 15 N15  
 Yīngguo England (PW) 2 V, 2 N1  
 Yīngwén English language and literature  
 (N) 4 V
- Yīngyǔ English language (N) 22 N5  
 yòng use (TV); using, with (CV) 14 V,  
 14 N1  
 yòngchū use (N) 22 N5  
 yònggōng studious, hard-working (SV)  
 13 V  
 yóngyuǎn forever, always (AD) 23 V  
 yǒu have (V) 4 V, 7 N8, 8 N2, 13 N10,  
 21 N3  
 yǒu (in expressions of similarity) 17 N4  
 yǒu again (AD) 13 V, 15 N12, 19 N5  
 yǒude some (before nouns) 16 V  
 yǒu míng famous 17 V  
 yóuqí(shì) especially, above all (MA)  
 21 V  
 yǒu xiē some 17 N9  
 yǒu yìdiǎr have a little; somewhat 17 N1  
 yú fish (N) 19 V  
 yǔ speech, language (N) 22 N5, 15  
 yúfǎ grammar (N) 22 V, 22 N14  
 yùjian encounter, meet (TV) 11 V  
 yǔwén language and literature; Chinese  
 (N) S 20 V, 20 N1  
 yǔyán language (N) 14 V  
 yǔyánxué linguistics, linguistic science  
 (N) 14 V  
 yuán yuan; dollar (M) S 3 V, 3 N1  
 yuǎn far (SV) 8 V  
 Yuǎn-Dà Far Eastern University 10 N9  
 Yuǎndōng Far East (PW) 10 V  
 Yuǎndōng Dàxué Far Eastern University  
 10 N9  
 yuánlái originally; actually (MA) 14 V  
 yuè month 15 V  
 yue month of the year (M) 11 V, 15 N1-2  
 yuè...yuè the more... the more  
 22 V, 22 N1  
 yuè lái yuè more and more 22 N1
- zài again (AD) 9 V, 15 N12  
 zài occupy, be at (V); at, in, on (CV)  
 7 V, 7 N3, 6, 8  
 zài (with zhèng) 22 N12  
 zài (postverb) 15 N10  
 zàijiàn good-bye 1 V  
 zǎo early (SV) 23 V, 23 N9  
 zǎochen morning, forenoon (TV) 13 V  
 zǎofàn breakfast (N) 13 V  
 zāogāo messed up (SV); Darn! 20 V,  
 20 N7  
 zěnmò?, zěnmè how? how come that?  
 (AD) 9 V  
 zènmò, zènmè so, thus (AD) 15 V  
 zěnmò(yàng)? like what? how about it?  
 well? 17 V

- zhàn stop, station (N) 9 V  
 zhāng (measure for flat objects; also, a surname) 4 V  
 zhǎng grow (IV) 17 V  
 zhàng bill (N) 21 V  
 zháo (suffix indicating accomplishment) 19 V, 19 N 8  
 zhǎo seek, look for (TV) 5 V  
 zhè this (SP) 3 V, 3 N 7, 3 N 19  
 zhe (suffix indicating progressive action) 19 V, 19 N 2  
 zhèlǐ here S19 N 1  
 zhèi this (SP) 3 V, 3 N 7, 3 N 19  
 zhēn really (AD) 10 V  
 zhènmo, zhènme so, thus (AD) 15 V, 15 N 18  
 zhèng just (now), precisely, exactly (AD) 22 V, 22 N 12  
 zhèng zài just in the act of 22 N 11  
 zhèr here (PW) 7 V  
 zhī (measure for long slender objects) 3 V, 3 N 4  
 zhǐ only (AD) 14 V  
 zhīdao know (that) (V) 7 V, 7 N 13; S 7 N 2  
 zhōng clock (N) 5 V, 5 N 6  
 zhǒng kind of (M) 21 V  
 zhòng heavy (SV) 22 V  
 Zhōng-Měi Chinese-American 4 N 2  
 zhòng-yīn stress 22 N 9  
 Zhōng-Yīng Chinese-English 4 N 2  
 Zhōngguo China (PW) 2 V, 2 N 1, 4 N 1  
 zhōngjiān middle (PW) 7 V  
 Zhōngshān Sun Yatsen 7 V, 7 N 10, footnote, p. 380  
 Zhōngshān Lù Sun Yatsen Avenue 7 N 10  
 zhōngtóu hour (N) 15 V; S15 N 1  
 Zhōngwén Chinese language 4 N 1  
 zhōngwǔ noon (TW) 23 N 8  
 zhōngxué middle school, high school (N) 10 N 8  
 zhū pig (N) 19 V  
 zhù live (at) (TV) 15 V  
 zhù (suffix indicating firmness) 22 N 5  
 zhù wish 23 V  
 zhùyì pay attention to 22 V  
 zhǔn accurate (SV) 22 V  
 zì character (N) 8 V, 22 N 4  
 zì (suffix) 22 N 6  
 zìjǐ self 22 V  
 zuì most (AD) 14 V, 14 N 10-11  
 zuì hǎo best 14 N 12  
 zǒu walk, travel, depart, go (V) 9 V  
 zuǒ left (PW) 7 V  
 zuò ride (on a vehicle) (TV); by means of (a vehicle) (CV) 9 V, 9 N 5  
 zuò do, make (TV) 10 V  
 zuò as 17 V, 17 N 7  
 zuòfǎ way of doing something (N) 22 N 5  
 zuò-shì to work, make a living S10 N 2  
 zuótiān yesterday (TW) 11 V